



I have been having back to back meetings since I got in my office. I have to make sure before the end of the day at least the paper work is done so the products can be shipped to where they must go. My assistant brings me lunch. He leaves it on the table and closes the door behind him. Knocks come and go

in my office signing papers amongst other things. My phone rings. Not my office phone but my personal phone.

“ Hello? ”

“ Where are you? ” my older brother asks.

“ In my office. Where would I be? ” what’s wrong with him?

“ don’t leave. We are on our way ”

“ Ok ” I hang up. I wonder what is wrong now. It’s unlike them to come here. They don’t like Pretoria. Who doesn’t like this place?.

I have my lunch and after I’m done I continue to work. Someone knocks in my office.

“ come in. ” the door opens and I look up.

“ Sir I just got call from our clients. They say their furniture hasn’t been delivered and I’ve been trying to get hold of the truck that was supposed to deliver but the tracker has been turned off on the route from Durban two days ago ”

“ This happened two days ago and you’re coming to me now? ” she looks down.

“ did you call the tracking company and find out where our truck is at? ”

“ I did sir and they are busy with it ”

“ They are busy with it now? But couldn’t see the same day when it just vanished on their raider? ” she looks down.

“ is it not your job miss Duma to find out if everything is delivered the same day? ”

“ It is but as you know everything has been busy in the company... ”

“ stop talking. I know that you are here because you have a job to do. You get paid lots of money to do your job. That’s what I pay you to do. You have people working under you but all of you failed to do your job! ”

“ Sir... ”

“ I said stop talking! If that truck is not found today you will get your first written warning. Tell one of my assistants to put me through the tracking company on your way out ”

“ I’m sorry sir. ”

“ leave miss Duma ” she gets up and leaves.

My assistant Calvin comes in after a while takes my phone and dials the number.

“ Why didn’t you just put me through? ”

“ something is wrong with my line. ” he says holding the phone “ hello? Can you put me through to your bosses boss. The main boss?... ” he says. I shake my head.

“ hello

Advertisement

this is Calvin from Khawula Luxury Furniture's... yes please hold. ” he gives me the phone then walks out.

“ hello? ”

“ Mr Morake sir? ”

“ why is my truck missing John?. Do I not pay to make sure that my property doesn't go missing? ”

“ Sir we were told this morning that the truck had been missing sir and I'm sorry but we are busy with the situation right now ”

“ if my truck is not found today the contract we have with you will be terminated immediately cause this is the second time this is happening.”

“ I know I'm sorry. This will be the last time sir ”

“ Find my truck! ” I hang up. Can this day get any worse.

I keep working and making phone calls when the door opens and my brothers come in. Great!. I close my laptop, we shake hands and they sit down.

“ What's wrong? ” I ask them.

“ we have a huge problem ” my older brother Karabo says

“ what is it? ”

“ our truck went missing ”

“ I know it is. I have contacted the tracking company and they are looking for it.”

“ there wasn't only furniture in there ”

“ what did it have? ”

“ our diamonds ” our youngest brother Kane answers.

“ What? How the hell did our diamonds get in there? ”

“ you know there were five shipments and one of them had the diamonds. The guy that was suppose to drive the truck and bring it to us didn't show up and when we found the truck the diamonds were missing ”

“ what?! Where's the furniture?” this is fucken bad.

“ they took it too. The truck was empty. We found it last night and we have been searching all night for the driver. ”

“ I told you guys smuggling the diamonds with the furniture was a bad idea. I knew something like this was going to happen ” I get up. “ who was driving it and where do they live? ”

“ It's a guy we hired three months ago. His home town is in Ermelo. If he took them and hiding then he's there ”

“ Can't believe you guys! ”

“ kabela you can't blame us. We didn't know this would happen ” Kane says.

“ how the hell do you trust someone you just hired three months with that kind of shipment. Did he know what was inside? ” I ask them.

“ no he didn't ” Karabo says.

“ Unless someone who knows tipped him off. What if they did something to him and he's missing? ” I ask them.

“ we have someone watching his house. They haven't seen him. If he shows up we will know. ” Kane says.

“ send phakiso the address. He’ll watch the place and I’ll go there when he shows up. You’ll let me handle it ” karabo takes his phone and calls our cousin phakiso.

“ That’s okay with us but please kabelo don’t do anything stupid ” Kane says “ like mess up the way you too did? No. ”

“ fine. Let’s go for dinner I’m hungry anyway. ” Kane says.

I take my things and we leave. I hope the driver didn’t steal our diamonds because if he did. He’s going to be sorry. He will regret it. No one steals from us.

CHAPTER 1

[PREVIOUS](#) PAGE 3 [NEXT](#)

My phone rings, I look at it and it phakiso. I wonder if he’s calling about if that fucker has showed up because my patience is running thin. I hate not being in control of a situation. It puts me in a very bad mood..

“ Why are you calling so early? ”

“ sometimes I forget that you are not a morning person and by the way I’m fine since I’ve been sleeping in car for the last three days man ”

“ You’ve slept in worse places than that. Have you found him? ”

“ That son of a bitch hasn’t showed up. No one knows where he is ” I did not want to hear this.

“ So why are you calling me? ”

“ Man you need to get laid. That temper of yours is beefing to get some pussy ”

“ Careful now cousin. Remember whom you’re talking with ”

“ Sorry man. Look I sent you a video just now. Take a look at it then call me ” I hang up.

A message pings and I open the video. The first thing I see is a young woman. She’s outside the house cleaning the yard. I put my tea mug carefully then watch the video. She sweeps the yard, when she’s done she leaves and comes back with a bucket and a cloth. She dusts the windows then begins to mop the stoep until she’s done.

Phakiso or whoever was taking the video zooms on her and she turns like she can see they are recording but she’s talking to some girl and she laughs. She throws her head back, closes her eyes and shakes her head. They hug with the her friend I assume and walk inside the house. The video stops and another one plays.

She’s walking down the street to somewhere then comes back after a while carrying vetkoeks inside the plastic. No baby that’s bad for you. Warm food inside a plastic is bad for your health. My cousin zooms on her body and I want to punch him. She’s the most beautiful woman I have ever seen. She walks past the car and looks at it like she’s suspicious and the videos stops. I call him.

“ who is she? ”

“ his little sister. Apparently it’s just the two of them and they live together. ”

“ good. Keep watching the place. He won’t leave her for that long. He is going to show up and when he does call me immediately. ”

“ Sure cuz ” I hang up and sigh.

“ is everything okay sir? ”

“ Yes. I’ll be late tonight. Don’t make dinner ”

“ Yes sir ”

I get up, take my suitcase and leave the house. My drivers me to work. When I get there my assistant Calvin is already here. He always makes sure he’s the first one in the office. No matter how early I think I am.

“ Good morning Calvin ” he looks up and stands.

“ Good morning sir. Your tea is already in your desk ”

“ Thank you Calvin. Come to my office when you are done with your breakfast. ”

“ Yes sir ”

I get in my office drink my tea. Calvin walks in after a while and we go through how my day is looking.

“ sir don’t forget we have to confirm if you are attending the design Indaba conference this year ”

“ Yes Calvin. Confirm and book a hotel for us.”

“ us sir? ”

“ yes Calvin. You’re coming with me this year ”

“ Oh thank you sir. I will do that now... ” someone knocks then they come in.

Mandisa looks like a mess. I look at the clock and it 7:30 am.

“ sir I am so sorry I’m late the...”

“ This is your last warning miss Jali. Go fix your clothes. This is a professional environment. ” she gets up and leaves.

“ Are we done Calvin? ”

“ Yes sir.” I nod. He stands up and leaves.

I take my phone and call. The phone rings and someone answers.

“ hello? ” I sigh. It’s a man’s voice.

“ tell her to call me. ” I hang up.

The clock ticks and business hours are over. Calvin asks if I need anything before he goes home and I tell him no.

“ Calvin wait. What’s going on with Mandisa? ”

“ I don’t know sir. She won’t talk to me. ”

“ tell me if you see anything out of the ordinary with her ”

“ I will sir. I’ll see you tomorrow ”

“ Bye Calvin. ”

After an hour or I decided to leave and drive to my older brothers house in Middleberg and be close incase that fool shows up. I park my car outside the garage. I open the door and get it.

“ Kane? ”

“ He’s not here. Who are you? ” I look at this girl walking in half naked. Why are these kids now so afraid of wearing clothes that cover their bodies?.

“ Where’s Kane? ”

“ he went to the mall. He’ll be back wait... . Your Kane’s brother. You look like him ” I don’t answer her.

I go to the living room and pour myself a glass. It tastes good.

“ Can I make you something? ”

“ No. You can leave ” she frowns looking at me and I stare at her until she looks away. Good girl. She stands up

“ uhm okay just wait there ” she leaves.

Kane likes changing girls. Every month is a new girl and honestly he’s giving me whiplash with all these girls he keeps changing and bringing them around us. He comes back Carrying groceries.

“ Baby? Baby? ”

“ She went to the bedroom ” he pulls out a gun and points it at me.

“ man don’t ever do that! ”

“ Get that thing out of my face Kane ” he drops the groceries, puts his gun on his back and sits down.

“ When did you get here? ”

“ why is your house not locked. Anyone just gets in and you left some girl here alone in your house? ”

“ I wasn’t that long okay. Why are you here? ”

“ since when do you ask me that? ” he keeps quiet. “ our diamonds are still missing and soon the collector is going to ask what’s taking us long to deliver them and you’re asking me why am I here? ”

“ We messed up I know okay.”

“ no we didn’t mess up. I know it was you Kane with your shady friends. Our older brother was just covering up for you. This has you written all over it ” he keeps quiet. I fucken knew it. “ how could you be so stupid! ”

“ I’ll fix it okay? ”

“ you have done enough damage. I will fix it myself. ”

“ baby what’s wrong? ” his girlfriend cones in.

“ Take the groceries to the kitchen and cook. ”

My phone rings. It’s phakiso

“ Cousin? ”

“ He’s here. He just came in the house. ”

“ get out of there. He will see the car and run off! ”

“ We are not in the car but we are watching everything close by. You better come before he runs away. ”

“ I’ll be there in 15 minutes ”

“ I’m coming with you ”

“ Fine but you better keep your mouth shut! ”

“ I will damn man. You’re angry these days! ”

“ you’re the one who’s putting me in a bad mood with your stupidity. Let’s go and you’re driving. ”

We get in the car and drive to Ermelo. On our way there I ask him where he is and he sends us his location. Less than 30 minutes we are there. We drive through the township and park the car outside this house. Phakiso comes out and gets in the car..

“ He’s inside that house? ”

“ No. He’s at that house. He hasn’t left since he came in. I’m sure he’s right there.” Phakiso says.

“ we should wait till they switch off the lights then get in. He’s not expecting idle to show up. ” I tell them.

“ what if he is. What if he runs away while we’re sitting here ”

“ Kane I said I’ll deal with it. If he has the diamonds he will leave them inside if he’s hidden them somewhere. Either way I’m not leaving without my diamonds. ” he keeps quiet.

“ My guys are ready cuz. As soon as those lights turn off. We are there. ” phakiso says.

“ Who’s house is that and how did you explain spying on their neighbours? ” I ask him.

“ I just gave her money and a one dick. She won’t ask questions ”

“ I don’t want collateral damage cousin. ”

“ I know. Don’t worry about it. ”

We sit in the car for almost two hours when the lights go out. I take my gun out of my passenger front seat and put it on my back. We step out of the car. Phakiso slowly opens the gate.

“ tell your guys to surround the house in case he runs away. ” he tells them.

I take out my handkerchief and put it under the door. I pull my knife out of my pocket and slide it in the key hole. I keep pushing it until the key falls out then I pull my handkerchief out with the key then open the door and we all get in.

Kane begins to search the house and that mother fucker is not here. He is gone. They look everywhere for the diamonds but they are not in the house. I see this big teddy bear on the couch. Intake it I feel my blood boiling and my anger over takes me.

“ Maybe he’s sleeping with her in that bedroom ” Kane says laughing.

“ shut the fuck up Kane! ” he raises his hands.

My cousin opens the bedroom door and we all get in. He switches the light on and I see her sleeping so beautifully and I almost want to run my hand on her cheek. I feel sorry for her. I pull the blankets off of her and she turns but doesn’t wake up. I pull off another one and she’s left with only one blanket.

I watch her trying to look for her blanket then she opens her eyes and sees us and screams. We just watch her screaming her lungs out calling her brother’s name and tries to run out of the bedroom. I grab her leg and push her back to the bed. I take out my gun and point it at her and she keeps screaming.

“Shut up!. Shut the fuck up!. Take her to the dining room ” I tell them.

“ take her she’s smaller than you ” Kane says to one of the guys.

“ No

don’t touch you fucken piece of shit! ” she says. She’s fighting him. She’s got fire.

“ Can you fucken shut the fuck up!. ” I ask her again. The guys laugh and I look at them and they stop. She quickly gets up and jumps off the bed and tries to run out of the bedroom again. I pull her by her hair roughly some come off and she creams. Fuck she can scream and she’s giving me a headache. I slap her to just shut her up and I hear something snapping and she falls down.

“ Good that shut you up!. Now tell me where the fuck is your brother and you better tell me truth if you want to live! ”

“ bring me a chair to sit her on. Pakzo go get a towel in my car then Bring me that whole container of water ” she’s still on the floor sobbing. Pakzo brings me a chair and I sit down after un buttoning my suit jacket.

“ pl...ple...please...I don’t know...what you are talking about. ” she begs.

“ the only thing that will out an end to this is to tell me where your said he’s going to. Talk! ”

“ I left him watching TV and I went to sleep. He is in his bedroom go and check, you will find him there please!.” She says. They lift her up and sit her in front of me . She’s looking at the bucket of water and towel. Her body is literally shaking.

“ please let me go!...please just go!. I don’t know anything!.”

“ Did I give you permission to talk?. ” she shakes her head no. “ I’m going to ask you again. Where is your brother because he did not come out of this house since he entered. Where is he hiding?. ”

“ If he is not here then I don’t know where he went I swear to God.” If I wasn’t a cold bastard I would have felt sorry for her but I don’t. The fact that she’s lying and crying is just kissing me off. I hate liars.

“ cuff her ” I tell Kane.

They try to take both her hands to bind her wrists but she fights back and I find myself punching her on her stomach and slap her twice after that.

Something is happening in me as I’m seeing her on that chair helpless. She bites her lip to stop herself screaming.

“ wake up don’t sleep on me now. If you want to live you have to be honest with me. Where did your brother hide my diamonds?.” My is she pretending to be shocked?.

“ I don’t know anything about diamonds. He never said anything about them or give me anything. Please sir my I work at KFC and I know that my brother works a furniture company and he’s a delivery man. My brother is not a criminal and he will not steal from you sir or anyone.” I chuckle. Her brother is a thief who stole from me. I take off my jacket takes it off and fold my shirt to my elbows.

“ pakzo give me that towel. Wet it then put it around her face. Wait take off her clothes first “ she screams, begs and pleads with us to not take off that thing

she's wearing. She needs to sleep in silk not in that thing. Oh Fuck no!. My cousin holds a pair of scissors and cuts that thing into pieces. She's crying hysterically.

" hmmm. " she's got a beautiful body.

" sir please call his phone and ask him where he is or let me call him. He will answer my phone call. " She looks at me with her eyes and begging me.

" I want my diamonds that he stole!. Where are they fucken at!.

" I swear on my parents grave sir. He gave me no diamonds, please believe me!. " I can hear the desperation in her voice. It almost touches me. Or is it her trying to play me so I can let her go.

" little girl you think this is a game?!. That I am playing here!. You think that I believe that you know nothing about my diamonds?. "

" I know this is not a game!. It's my fucken life and you want punish me for something I didn't do or know about. You know what? Kill me then!. Just fucken kill me!. " she's got fire in her and I want to dim it. She's doesn't know whom she talking to like that. I love inflicting pain. I enjoy it.

"hmm let's see then. Your wish is my command pakzo do it " pakzo wraps the towel on her face covering her with it. Kane pours water on it and she kicks and tries to fight. I signal to the guys to hold her legs and body so she will stop moving and they do. Her chest is raiding and falling and I can see she's struggling to breath. Pakzo has the towel tight and he's making it hard for her to breath and the water is choking her.

" Stop!. Remove the towel. You want to tell me the truth now? "

" I... I... don't know... an....anything." She says between taking deep breaths and choking.

" she's still lying boss. She knows where he is. " pakzo says looking at her with hate.

I take off my belt and she weeps. Fuck!. I wrap the tip part of my belt twice and leave the buckle part hanging. I'm going to whip her with that steel. If she doesn't confess and tell me the truth where be is then she really doesn't know where he is.

" un cuff her and get her off that damn chair. " pakzo does as I say. She falls down on the floor. I lift my hand up and use all my strength and my belt kisses her skin. Fuck I feel my dick getting hard. Down boy. This is not the time. I keep whipping her asking her to tell me the truth and she's still denying it. I keep whipping her until her whole body goes numb and she looks like she's high. She looks beautiful in that state. It makes me wonder how would she look like when I'm doing this to give her pleasure.

" you still want to die sweetheart?. You can't joke about death like that unless you mean it." I crouch down to her level and try to touch her but she moves her face away from me. I stop and look at her eyes deeply and I see hate. She hates me and I don't blame her and or even care. That turn thing is sticking to her skin and it bloody. She even peed on herself.

“ You are coming with me. I am not going to leave you here so that you and your brother can run away with my diamonds. Pakzo take a blanket, cover her and take her to the car. ” Phakiso lifts her up roughly and she groans in pain. I look down there’s too much blood. They take her to the car.

“ Kane make sure that you find someone now to clean this whole house. Pack some of her clothes, not all of them and things she might need and you’ll bring them to my house.”

“ you’re taking her to your house? ” he asks surprised.

“ I am. ”

“ You’re keeping her? ”

“ She’s not a toy Kane ”

“ but you still are. Is it because you want her brother to come out from hiding or is it for your enjoyment. ”

“ Both. Clean this mess. ”

“ why does it have to me who does? ”

“ We are in this mess because of you. Clean it ”

“ man! ” I leave him there.

I get in the car and we drive to Pretoria.

CHAPTER 2

[PREVIOUS](#) PAGE 4 [NEXT](#)

We drive back to Pretoria and my mind is all over the place. I don’t understand how an someone just escape without being seeing by anyone unless pakzo is lying to me and he wasn’t watching the whole house the entire time. Maybe her brother left when he was fucking the owner of that house he was scouting at. I look at him and sigh.

I don’t know what I was thinking when I said she’s coming with us. I could have left her there for her brother to find her but another part of me didn’t. She was really hurt and she’s going to need a doctor look at those bruises that will begin to come out. I could have handled things better with her but here was just something about her that called to me and I couldn’t ignite it.

Another part was I kept thinking what if her brother doesn’t work alone and those people come at her home like we did. A lot of bad things can happily to her.

“ boss, why did you take her? ”

“ her brother will come out of hiding when he learns that she’s missing ”

“ ok but why are you taking her to your house? ”

“ Cousin is there something you want to say? ”

“ I mean we could have just killed her you know. There was no need for you to bring her with us ”

“ she doesn’t know where her brother hid those diamonds ”

“ or she knows and she’s playing you ” I let that slide.

We drive to my house and park the car

“ take her to the dark room and be careful with her ”

“ yeah sure ” I really have no time for his attitude.

I get in the house and walk straight to my bedroom. I take off my clothes and get in the shower and let the water flow down my back. I stand for a while then come out. I dry myself then get in bed and sleep. The next morning I wake up, shower then go downstairs. I find Belinda with pakzo and she’s laughing loud from whatever he’s telling her.

“ Good morning sir ” she greets me.

“ morning Belinda.”

“ morning boss ” he’s grinning

“ cousin ” we fist bump. “ get a bucket and fill it with water and follow me ” he does that and we go to the dark room. “ Why are your friends in my house phakiso? ”.

“ I thought they might watch the room in awe she tries to run ” I stop walking and look at him.

“ You thought she might run out of here? ” he looks away.

“ look you might trust her and all but I don’t okay. I know she knows where them diamonds are at ”

“ That’s not for you to decide cousin. Open the door. ” he does.

She’s sleeping on the mattress. I walk closer and stand above her. She’s breathing and that’s enough for me.

“ wake her up ” I move back and watch pakzo throw cold water on her and she screams gasping. She moves to the corner away from us.

“ You ready to tell me the truth? ” I asks her.

“ Yes.....I’m ready ” she says.

She tells me the same story she's been saying the whole entire time and it hasn't changed. She really doesn't know where her brother went after she got in bed and it's clear to me she has no idea about the diamonds. She's telling the truth and I believe her but she doesn't have to know that.

" it's either you're telling me the truth or you are a really good actress. I'm going to give you some time to really think through about the truth you are going to tell me when I come back. Let's go " I look at phakiso. He locks the door after leave.

" I'm going to Cape Town for a few days. I need you to make sure that you will give her another clean mattress, food and water.

Make sure Belinda cleans that mess in there do you understand? "

" I will do it " he says. We walk to the kitchen and have breakfast. The door bell rings and Belinda goes to attend to it and Calvin walks in.

" Good morning Sir, phakiso. "

" morning Calvin "

" Stabane " phakiso says to him grinning.

" I know you want me phakiso and one day. I'll show you what I really am. " he says walking close to him and phakiso comes and stands behind me.

" tell your assistant to stay away from me! " he says.

" why? You like his attention. Isn't it why you're always picking on him? "

" Hell no man! " he shakes his head furiously. Calvin laughs

" Have some breakfast before we leave. " he was already making himself one.

" Uhm sir? " I look at him. " I went to Mandisa's place last night "

" Where's that fine piece of ass? " Calvin rolls his eyes at him.

" What did you find out? "

" I think her boyfriend is hitting her. " I put my tea down.

" you saw that? " I ask him.

" I saw bruises on her back. Like belt marks when she was picking something " my cousin and I look at each other.

" Did you ask her about them? "

“ I did and she denied it sir but I know what I saw. Those marks look really deep and purple. He is hitting her ”

“ she denied it how? ” Pakistan asks him.

“ She said I wouldn’t understand and he’s not hitting her. Sir you’ve seen what a mess she has been the last week. He’s abusing her and she’s in denial. Sir please try to talk to her ”

“ I will Calvin. Thank you. ” phakiso looks at me like he wants to say something and I shake my head no.

“ Sir your things are in the car ”

“ thank you Belinda.”

I get up and Calvin follows me. He takes my suitcase and we leave the house.

“ don’t worry about us. I’ll make sure that it is still standing when you’re back ” Calvin gets in the car and I turn and look at my cousin.

“ Come here. ” he walks to me. I walk closer to him and grab him by his nape tight and dig my nails on his skin

“ Man what the fuck! ” I wrap my other hand around his throat and chokes.

“ if you or your minions put your hands on her I will kill you cousin. You better not touch her do you understand me? ” he doesn’t answer me.

“ I do boss. I won’t touch her! ” I remove my hands on him and he coughs.

“ you better behave.” He nods. I step in the car and we leave.

FIVE DAYS LATER.

The conference took longer than what I had expected but all in all it was good. We have found new clients and my business is growing so I can’t be mad at being there the whole entire time. I haven’t talked to my cousin the whole week intentionally. I want to see if he has done what I asked him to do and I wouldn’t be surprised if he didn’t.

I walk in my house and Belinda is surprised to see me. Huh?.

“ What’s wrong? ” she fidgets.

“ Good evening sir. Nothing is wrong? ” I walk to her and I can see her trembling.

“ Look at me. ” she lifts her face. “ you’re lying to me now? ”

“ Non sir..... Yes sir ” I give her the continue look. “ phakiso left after you did and he hasn’t been back until a few minutes ago sir. She has been crying in there but I never opened up. He told me you said we should leave her there until when you come back and I believed him sir.” Damn you phakiso!

“ Go and prepare the bedroom that’s next to my older brother’s.”

“ Yes sir. ”

“ Did anything else happen? ”

“ no sir. ”

“ Go. ” she walks away almost running.

“ Pakzo what are you doing? ” he’s crouching down and touching her face. Fury unlike anything I have ever felt consumes me.

“ huh boss, uhm... . I think she’s dead. ” he wasn’t expecting me cause he almost falls to the floor. I look around and see blood.

“ why is there so much blood?. Did you beat her?! ” I walk closer.

“ no boss you asked me not to touch her and I didn’t I swear!. After you went out of town I didn’t come back to check on her until tonight...now. ”

“ you didn’t give her any food and water for three fucken days?! ” her back is on us. I crouch down and touch her neck as I try to find her pulse. She flinches like she’s hurt. I move my eyes from her back to her buttocks and I see blood on her thighs and on her ass. My first thought is maybe phakiso's friends raped her but then I remember Belinda said he hasn’t been here since I left. Oh my God she got her period and she was sleeping in this filthy mess. I am so going to kill him!.

“ you fucken fool!. I’ll deal with you later fuck!. ” I take off my suit jacket and cover her back then I lift her up from the floor. She whimpers like she’s in pain. Of course she is in pain. She has been sleeping on a cold hard floor for almost a week

“ you clean this whole room. I want it clean when I come back. ” he body freezes then she sniffs. I’m not taking her back there.

We leave the darkroom with her in my arms and she hides her face on my chest. I know she's embarrassed but she really doesn't need to be. I am just so sorry that she had to have her periods that way and have no way to protect herself. I hate that I didn't check up on her and I definitely hate that I left phakiso in charge. I should have asked Kane to come. He would have taken better care of her. He's soft and kind and nothing like me. Fuck!.

Belinda watches me carrying her to the bedroom. I am so pissed and I want to kill my cousin right now. The door is already opened, we get in and I close it with my foot and gently place her on the bed. I go to the bathroom and fill the tub with water.

" can you walk? " I ask her when I walk back in. She gets up slowly but her body is in so much in pain because she almost falls. I quickly catch her but she screams and tries to crawl away from me like I'm going to hurt her. Why is she running away from me? I pull her to me and wrap hand on throat and shake her roughly.

" stop!. I'm not going to hit you. I was going to put you in the bath but if you want to crawl your way there then go ahead and be my guest." I unwraps my hand around her throat and she fall down. I shake my head, picks her up and walk with her to the bathroom and put her inside the bath.

She scream when the water touches her skin. Fuck it must be too hot.

" I will get the doctor to come and check on you. How bad do you bleed? " I ask her. She buries her head on her knees

wrapping her arms around her legs like she's protecting herself from me. She won't talk look at me.

" talk!. " why does she want me to be hard on her?.

" heavily. " she says weekly.

" and your cramps how bad are they? "

" very bad. " she says.

" when did you get your periods? "

" Yesterday " she sniffs. She looks so broken.

" I'll be back. "

I leave her in the bath and go to the kitchen. I go to the Medicine cabinet and look for ibuprofen and find them. I take a glass and fill it with water.

“ Cuz? ”

“ get the fuck out of my way! ” he looks at me shocked and I go upstairs.

When I walk to the bathroom I get the shock of my life!. I take a deep breath and close my eyes. This girl sure knows how to push my buttons. I carefully place the glass on the vanity and the pills. I walk to the bath bend down then roughly pull her out of the tuba and she coughs the water out and choking on it. What the fuck is she thinking!

“ stupid! Stupid! Girl. What the hell do you think you are doing?!. ”

I place her down on the cold floor.

“ let me die!. I would rather die than let you do the things you are planning to do to me!. Let me die! ” she says slapping me with her hands and fists. If I wasn't so pissed I'll find it cute.

“ you don't know what the fuck you are talking about!. Believe me you don't want to die now! ” she has no idea what she's talking about.

“ just kill me, get it over and done with!. ” She's really testing me and lucky for her. I like to be tested. I look at her and her eyes are filled with raging fire. I roughly pull her up and put her back in the water again and hold her head down under the water tight.

“ why are you struggling?! You said you wanted to die so I am helping you die. Stop struggling! ” I her head deeper and hold her down for a few minutes then pull her up and she tries to get air in her lungs but I drown her again and push her chest down with my hands.

When I see her body beginning to lose the fight I pull her out and drop her the cold tiled floor hard. She coughs for air and taking deep breathes. She begins to cry hysterically still on the floor. I close my eyes and pinch the bridge of my nose with my hands. She's going to give me trouble. I can just feel it. I bend down and let the water out and fill it with another one.

“ get up and get in the damn bath!.” She struggles to get up but eventually does.

“ If you ever and I mean ever think of trying to kill yourself again I will kill you first before you even blink. Do you understand me?! ” she nods sniffing. I take the oils that Belinda left and pour them in the water. I leave her again to the kit hen and come back with a mop and mop the floor. Something I haven’t done in years. I place a clean carpet next to the bathtub and kneel down. I take a small towel and begin to wash her back, arms and legs. She’s looking at me surprised. I don’t know who is more surprised between the two of us because I didn’t plan on doing this. Fuck!

“ get up. ” she gets up. I wash her between her things, stomach and chest. “ open your legs and crouch down. Hold on the edge of the bath for balance. ” she does as I instruct her. I wash her down there making sure my hands don’t touch her skin.

“ do you feel clean? ” she nods. “ get up and turn around. ” I wash her legs and ass then stop when I feel she’s thoroughly clean. I take the towel and cover her with it then lift her up from the tub. I take her to the bedroom and lay her the on the bed.

I look at her and realise she’s so young and maybe innocent. Her face is badly bruised and I want all of that gone. I want to see her beautiful skin and feel it with my hands. I dry her until I’m done. I like that she’s not fighting me. There’s still fire in her eyes though and that has to go.

“ the doctor is going to examine you. You will not give him any trouble, I have a tampon for you and underwear to wear. Don’t try anything stupid. ” she nods.

“ say it. ”

“ I promise I won’t do anything stupid. ” good girl. The only word missing was sir. I look at her then get up and leave. I have to go change my clothes. I’m wet and bloody.

I go to the living room and find doctor Charles with phakiso. Is he is as smart as I know he is, he would left the moment I told him to get out of my way. Doctor Charles has been my doctor for many years. We shake hands. He looks at my clothes.

“ what happened? ” he asks.

“ that’s not mine. She’s on the second bedroom to your left upstairs. ”

“ what do I need to know? ”

“ She’s badly bruised and maybe she has an Infection I don’t know but I was thinking if you can ask her about birth control. ” he nods and goes upstairs.

“ Birth control? Really kabz? ” I walk to him and punch his nose hard. “ what the fuck man! ” he says covering his bloody nose.

“ what did I say to you when I left? ” he keeps quiet. “ you don’t do as I ask now cousin? ”

“ man why you care about her? She’s nothing but a lying bitch ass thief! ”

“ get the fuck out of my house! ” I tell him.

“ you are going to punch me for some bitch?! ”

“ She’s not a bitch phakiso. Get the fuck out of my house! ”

“ What did that bitch say to you man?! This is not you! ”

I take out my gun and point it at him. He looks at me.

“ Get. The. Fuck. Out. Of. My. House!. ”

“ oh it’s like that now?. Some bitch just comes in and now you point a gun at me?. Your blood? ” I cock it and he raises his hands up. “ ok fine I’m leaving!. ” he looks at me and shakes his head then leaves.

I put my gun back on my back. Charles comes down stairs.

“ she’s not badly bruise. She doesn’t have any broken bones or ribs. It’s just the wind on her head that needs to heal then she’ll be fine.”

“ thanks man. What did she say about birth control? ”

“ she said no. ” he looks at me. I expected as much. “ I took a sample of her blood. So I’ll send it to the lab and send you the results.”

“ Thanks man. Thanks for coming at this time. ”

“ Anything time man. ” we shake hands and I see him out.

“ Sir? Her food is ready. ” Belinda says.

“ take it to her and help her dress. Take Jane with you ”

“ yes sir. ” she leaves.

I go to my bedroom and change my clothes. After shower I sit on the bed and call my older brother.

“ why are you calling this late? ” he answers. I sigh.

“ sorry bro. Did you find anything about her and her brother? ” I hear shuffling

“ I did. She’s Amahle Gumbi, she’s 23 and it’s just her and her brother. Well they have an uncle that is living at their parents house but it’s just them. She’s working at KFC and she’s looks like she has a good head on her shoulders. No known boyfriend, she had a friend Dudu ”

“ thanks bro. ”

“ ngwana papa what’s wrong? ” I tell him everything our cousin did and what I did too.

“ I told you he’s getting out of hand. You need to reel him in. I understand why he’s upset and why you’re also upset. You like her? ”

“ I don’t know. ”

“ her innocence is calling on you to dominate and protect her right? ”

“ It is and it’s scarring me. ”

“ maybe you have found what you’re looking for. She’s young, innocent and she knows nothing about our world. Ask her to be your submissive. ”

“ have you forgotten why she’s here in the first place? ”

“ I know that you could have left her there. There was no reason for you to take her with you but you did cause you knew you couldn’t leave her there like that. We will deal with her brother. Wena just talk to her about being your submissive.”

“ what if she says no? ”

“ I’m sure you’ll convince and show her why she should say yes.”

“ Ok bro. Well talk. ”

“ Kabelo? ”

“ bro? ”

“ I know how intense you are and I know you can’t change that but be gentle with her. She’s nothing like you’ve ever had before okay? ”

“ I know. I’ll try. ”

“ Don’t try to kill her again. ” we both chuckle and hang up.

CHAPTER 3

[PREVIOUS](#) PAGE 5 [NEXT](#)

Her phone keeps ringing on my dressing table. Kane left it here in my bedroom with some of her things and out them in my closet. He did this cause he thought he was trying to piss me off for making him clean her house but I like that her clothes are with mine. However we need to change her wardrobe and have her wear clothes that suit her.

I pick up her phone and it’s written best friend. Have people noticed she’s missing?. If that is her best friend why is she calling now and why hasn’t her brother reached out to her?. That mother fucker left his sister alone knowing very well what he did?. Doesn’t he care about her safety or he thought no one will think it’s him who stole his diamonds?. I leave the bedroom and see Belinda coming out of Amahle’s bedroom. She has a beautiful name and it suits her. She is beautiful.

“ Is she done? ”

“ yes sir but she didn’t want us to dress her ”

“ Did she give you trouble? ”

“ She was asking allot of questions. About who we are and you sir. ” I’ll deal with her.

“ That’s okay ” I walk to her bedroom and open the door. She is sitting on the bed watching TV. She shifts uncomfortably when she sees me. I take the pills next to the dresser and give them to her. She takes them and drink them with water. She looks much better now that she has eaten and wearing pyjamas although I want her naked in those sheets. Fuck I shake my head.

“ Amahle Gumbi. Where is your brother? ” She yawns.

“ sir I told you I left him watching TV and went to sleep. He didn’t say anything about the diamonds. He gave me a teddy bear, maybe the diamonds are inside the teddy bear. ” She just c allied me sir. Is that Belinda’s doing?.

“ we cut that teddy bear into pieces. There was nothing. ” Hurt crosses her face. I know now she loves teddy bears. I’ll replace it.

“ I swear then I don’t know where he hid them. ” I believe her. O swear I’m going to fuck his brother up when I see him for doing this to her. He could have taken her and kept her safe but no. Mother fucker just left her alone and he calls himself her big brother?.

“ Your best friend has been calling today. I fail to understand why is she calling you after a week you disappeared though. If she is your best friend why didn’t she call you the next morning?. ” she looks away from me.

“ Maybe she thought my brother is home. ”

“ That’s no excuse Amahle. You will call her and not say anything about the diamonds or your brother. You will tell her that you met someone and you are visiting him but you don’t know when are coming back and she will see you and she must stop looking for you. You understand? ”

“ I do. ” she says

“ I know where she lives and with whom. If you say anything or give her even a hint about what is going the neighbours will wake up and find all of them dead. Here’s my phone talk to her. ” I program the numbers then call her on loud speaker.

“ private number hello? ”

“ Phelisa it’s me Ama ” she gets teary.

“ ama where are you? I’ve looking everywhere for you. I was worried about you! Are you okay? Are you with your brother? ”

“ calm down I’m okay...well I met someone” she’s very convincing.

“ are you okay cause you sound like you’ve been crying?, wait what did you just say? ”

“ I’m not crying Phelisa. I have a hangover I got drunk yesterday so my voice is a little scratchy. Look I was saying that I met someone, he’s been coming to work to buy food you know so he would ask me out and I’ll always say no but last week I decided to give him a chance and we’ve been together since.” Now that is convincing. She looks at me and I’m standing there watching her with his arms folded.

“ but how cause even at your work they are worried about you?, you stopped coming and what’s wrong with your phone huh? No text no calls amahle? ” Ok her friends sounds like she’s really worried.

“ I don’t know where I left my phone that’s why I couldn’t call and we’ve been busy you know...” she says the last softly. “so I’ve been staying at his place and as for work I’m done working there ”

“ wow I never saw this coming but Ama why didn’t you tell me you met someone? ” I don’t like her tone.

“ I’m sorry I didn’t tell you. It is still knew and I didn’t want to jinx it you know?. ” I smile.

“ ok I get it. So when are you coming home and introducing this guy to me cause he has to get my blessings and I must see if his is a good fit for you?.” Who the hell does she think she is?.

“ you’ll meet him soon okay? I’ll let you know when.” Ama looks at me.

“ what’s his name ?” she asks. I walk to her and sit on the bed.

“ it’s Kgabu Phelisa how are you ?” he says

“ uh I’m good. I’m on loud speaker? ”

“ yes I wanted to hear the friend Amahle can’t stop talking about. ”

“ okay. Nice to meet you kgabu take care of my best friend treat her right. She’s the sister never I had ok.” She means it.

“ don’t worry I’ll take really good care of her ” I look straight in her eyes as I say that.

" I hope you mean it. I miss you Ama, why don't you guys come over for late lunch we can meet somewhere " her friend suggests.

" I'm afraid it's not possible cause we're in Pretoria " she looks at me shocked. Where did she think she was?.

" wow Amahle you don't waste time? " what does that mean?

" Phelisa it's not like that " her tears fall. I don't like her friend.

" what do you mean by that Portia? " I ask her.

" it's just that she must love you if she has already quit her job for you and moved in with you. Are you rich Kgabu? " why do I sense jealousy from her friend.

" are you saying I'm a gold digger Portia?. I thought you knew me better than that? How can you say that to me? " she sniffs.

" Phelisa, is amahle a gold digger so I can know right now? "

" well she grew up poor and I know she has been looking for an opportunity that might change her life. She's not a gold digger though but I think she will use any opportunity she has to change the current situation of her life. " I am stunned . This girl calls Amahle her best friend then she says something like this? Wow!. She throws the phone on the bed and face the other way. I take the phone on the bed and watch her shoulders shake. I lift my hand to sooth her back but I stop cause she might scream.

" thank you for your honesty but I don't think amahle will be calling you again cause you don't sound like you are a good friend. Goodbye. " I hangs up.

" company you keep. " I shake my head. She looks at me.

" I'm not a gold digger " she says. I know she isn't.

" I don't know you. She's the one who knows you, your best friend as you said. " she looks down.

" where in Pretoria am I? "

" don't worry yourself with that. "

" what are you planning to do with me? "

" you really don't want to know?." Oh I so badly want to tell her but she had a long day and night.

" are you going to sell me? " her voice breaks as she's asking me that.

" if your brother doesn't give me my diamonds then I am going to sell you. " I watch how she reacts to that. I will not sell her. Ever.

" is there another way I could make you not sell me if my brother doesn't give you back your diamonds? " I take my hand and sooth her back. She freezes.

" you don't know what you are saying. Be very sure and think about what you're asking very carefully and clearly. " I have to be sure she means what she's saying even though I know she's saying it out of desperation.

" please sir I don't want to be sold. I will do anything but please don't sell me. " She says it again.

" saying that to a man like me is very dangerous amahle. You will do anything? " I pull her face and make her look at me in my eyes.

“ anything sir ” she whispers and those words go straight to my dick and I instantly get hard.

“ sleep Amahle cause that medication is making you say things you don’t actually mean. When you say something like this your mind needs to be cleared and not drunk of medication. ” if she really means it. She will say it again tomorrow but I know she means it.

“ what were you going to do if you found my brother and me? ”

“ I was going to beat him to a pulp with you watching. ”

“ were you still going to take me even if you found the diamonds? ”

“ I was going to take you. ” I wasn’t going to live her behind.

“ why?, you would have gotten what you wanted? ” but not you. I have to have you.

“ I would have done it to teach your brother a lesson. ”

“ are you going to rape me when I’m asleep? ” my beautiful sweet innocent Ama.

“ I don’t rape amahle. Ever. ”

“ but you asked them to take my clothes off why? ” I wanted to see what thing she was wearing was hiding. I knew she had a beautiful body.

“ enough with the questions!. Sleep amahle. ” I say harshly. She sighs and closes her eyes. I stands there for a while watching her breathing get even as she sleeps. I look at her one last time then leave. I firmly close the door behind me. I hope she will get enough rest and not worry about anyone coming to rape her.

I can’t sleep. I keep turning and tossing because of Amahle. Her words keep playing in mind. “ I’ll do anything Sir... ” fuck. I get up and walk to her bedroom. I know she’s sleeping so I’ll watch her sleeping. I get in and she’s not in bed. My heart almost stops but then I see blood on the sheets then hear water in the bathroom. She did say she’s a heavy bleeder. She walks in and get startled seeing me.

“ uhm I’m sorry I stained them I... ”

“ it’s okay Ama. ” I walk around the bed and remove the duvet completely off the bed. “ it’s like someone was stabbed here ” we need to get something for her periods.

“ did I stain the bed too? ” She sounds worried.

“ no you didn’t. ” I press a button next to the side lamp then I look at her. She covers herself.

“ stop doing that, covering yourself. ” I look looking at your bruised body.

Belinda and Jane knock on the door “ get in ” they walk in.

“ change the bed sheets and put on clean ones then get her something else to wear. ”

“ but I can do that myself. She doesn’t need to do that? ”

“ who said you can talk?, are you working here? ” she frowns. “ I asked you a question?!. ”

“ no. ” she says with so much attitude.. That fire in her eyes returns. Hmm.

“ don’t speak unless I tell you to speak, do you understand me?. ”

“ yes. ” she folds her hands and her boobs rise higher.

“ yes what? ” huh?

I look at the girl and she’s looking down.

“ ye..... Yes sir. ”

“ Stop talking to them. They are here to work and not answer your stupid questions. If I hear that you asked them questions or talked to them or gave them any trouble, you will be in trouble. Do you understand?. ” I mean it.

“ Yes sir. ” I look at her then look at them. They know what I mean. I leave them closing the door. I stand behind it and listen and sure enough she’s asking them questions.

I walk down the stairs to the kitchen. Breakfast has already been prepared. I am hungry and grumpy. I didn’t sleep good at all.

“ Good morning. ” I greet Belinda and Jane.

“ morning sir. ”

“ Go get Amahle for breakfast. ”

“ Yes sir. ” Belinda walks.

“ can I get you anything sir? ” Jane asks.

“ I’m good for now Jane. ”

“ thank you sir. ” she leaves. Belinda comes back.

“ She was sleeping sir but she refused to come and she kept asking what my name was. ”

“ Next time make sure she’s awake on time for breakfast. ”

“ Yes sir. ” she leaves.

I have my breakfast and think that maybe she will come down for breakfast but she hasn’t and I’m almost done when I realise she hasn’t come down.

Amahle likes testing me. I hate waiting for someone. I get up and walk upstairs. She’s not in bed. I walk in the bathroom and she’s in the bath with her eyes closed.

I walk to her wrap my fingers around her throat and she gets startled and her eyes shoot up looking at me. I watch her waiting for her to scream or call me names but she sits up and looks at me. Her body gets covered in goose bumps and she shudders. I affect her. Good.

“ is the water cold? ” she shakes her head no. “ speak up. ”

“ it is not cold... ..sir. ”

“ do I have to be worried about you taking baths cause you might decide to try killing yourself again? ”

“ no sir I wasn’t trying to kill myself. ”

“ get up. ” She slowly gets up. I take the towel and open it. “ step out ” she tries the base of the tub and steps out. I dry her whole body and she’s standing there like she’s not breathing. Is she scared of me, my touch or she’s scared that she feels something when I touch her?. I take another towel take her hand and lead her to the bedroom. I lay the towel on top of the bed. “ lay on top of it facing up. ” she gasps in shock but does as I say.

Her breathing changes and I can see her chest moving up and down fast. She's scared. Does she think I'm going to rape her?

"open your legs for me." She tears up.

"you said you don't rape." she's accusing me of rape again. She's going to get me upset and it takes all to upset me.

"did I give you permission to talk?"

"no sir." she separates her legs, opens herself from me. She cries out when she hears the plastic tearing.

"please sir, I'm still on my periods." I move my hands to the inside of my thighs as I separate her thighs further apart making sure it's just my fingertips touching her. I am denying myself the pleasure of feeling her soft skin. I use my fingers tips and to separate her vulva. Damn that soft skin. I take a deep breath and swallow. She quickly closes her legs again.

"open your legs amahle!" what is she doing.

"no!" I chuckle.

"look at me and open your fucken legs!"

"no!. I won't let you rape me, I won't! ." she's pissing me off.

"you think if you scream or shout that someone is going to walk in here and stop me!. Girl there is no one in this house who is going to help you. That must never leave that pretty head of yours!. For the last time open your fucken legs!."

"no!". I slap her right thigh then left thigh so hard, she screams and opens them. I curse then move off my hand but put it back again and separate her vulva again

I move my finger inside her pussy and it comes out wet with her blood. I move my hand to my nose and smell it. Not bad. I take a tampon and push it in her. Her body relaxes and she cries.

"did I put it in correctly?" she nods sniffing. "does it feel uncomfortable?" she shakes her head no. "move off the bed." She wipes her tears and stands next to the bed.

I take the same towel, sit on the edge of the bed then lay the towel on my lap.

"lay your stomach and thighs on my lap." She does what I say without hesitation. Her round beautiful ass is looking at me. I can feel her clit on my thigh. Fuck!.

"the bruises of the belt are still visible. Do they still hurt?" She nods. "you may speak."

"They do sir."

"amahle umuhle kodwa awulaleli." (you are beautiful but you don't listen." I say brushing her buttocks up and down. "what did I say last night before I left?" she goes rigid.

"you said I must not talk to them or ask them any questions."

"did you do as you were told?" she turns to look at me but I put my hand between her shoulder blades and press her body down. "I asked you a question amahle!."

“ I didn’t do as you said sir. I’m sorry sir.” She quickly says.

“ why do you fail to follow simple instructions? ” she keeps quiet. “ amahle?! ”

She keeps quiet again. I spank her ass so hard she yelps.

“ I’m sorry sir. I won’t do it again. ”

“ what did Belinda say to you when she woke you up? ”

“ she asked me to go and take a bath cause you are expecting me at the breakfast table. ”

“ did you come? ”

“ no I was going to come but then I fell asleep and... . Aaaww!. ” I spank her again.

“ so you are a liar amahle! ”

“ no I am not!. ” I land another hard spank on her ass and she cries.

“ you asked her what is her name, you gave her trouble and you refused to come and have breakfast. ” I spank her with every word I say.

“ I nicely ask you to come eat breakfast with me but you decide not to. I’m late for my meeting then I find you here planning to kill yourself again amahle!. ”

“ I... I wasn’t... . ”

“ shut up!. ”

“ where are my diamonds ” I ask her again.

“ I fucken told you I don’t know where the fuck are those diamonds and if I knew where they were I would have taken them, ran away and began a new life for myself! ” that’s what I wanted. That fiery side. She fucken swore at me. I grin and shake my head.

“ don’t you fucken talk to me that way!. Is that what your brother did?. Run away with my diamonds and start a new life? ”

“ he didn’t and if he did he would have taken me with him and not leave me to face a fucken psycho like you!. ” she says with so much hate and she’s making me real hard right now. My dick is painfully hard.

“ Please stop! I am sorry I won’t do it again but please stop spanking me!. ” it is on fire. I can feel it as I keep spanking her and the fight leaves her body.

“ You deserve so much more than these spanks. You called me a fucken rapist!. You thought I was going to rape you after I told you I don’t rape and then you call me a psycho! !. ”

“ Well I’m sorry okay!. Why didn’t you just tell me that you wanted to put a tampon on me than make me think that you are going to rape me?!. ” she says screaming. She’s stubborn and I can see that she can tolerate pain.

“ raise your voice at me again and you’ll see what I’ll do to you. ”

“ what could be worse than you fucking beating me up with a belt and trying to drown me?. ” she screams.

“ I was helping you kill yourself since you so badly wanted to die. You think that was a worse beating with a belt?. Princess you would kill yourself after the first real lash you’ll feel on your skin from me. ”

“ What do you exactly want from me cause you know I don’t have the diamonds?. ” I get up with her on my lap then throw her on the bed and get

between her thighs. Hands over her shoulders, my face above hers. My body is hovering over hers.

“ I know you don’t have the diamonds princess. ” I whisper in her ear then inhale her neck. She holds her breath.

“ please let me go! ” she begs.

“ Go where? ”

“ Home. Back to my life ”

“ no. ”

“ why not? ” she asks.

“ because I don’t want to!. ” our eyes lock. She looks at my face then lips. I move my face close, very close to her lips and they are almost touching with mine when the door bursts open and we both turn. I see that fucken bitch pakzo. Fuck him!

“ Kabelo.....” he’s looking at us surprised.

“ who the fuck told you to get in without knocking on the door?! ”

“ I thought... ”

“ get the fuck out! ” I say. His eyes move to Amahle and I raise his eyebrows on her. He turns and leaves. I will address the way he looked at her like she’s a piece of trash.

“ your name is label on? ”

“ I am princess ”

“ then who is kgabu? ”

“ a name I gave your friend. ”

“ please let me go? ”

“ no. ”

“ are you still planning on selling me? ” she asks desperately

“ I haven’t decided yet. ” I lie.

“ is there anything I can do so you won’t punish me for my brothers act? ”

“ hmmm there might be. ”

“ please tell me. I’ll do anything! ” that again.

“ anything? ” I need to be sure.

“ yes. ” she nods too.

“ be my submissive. ” she frowns.

“ what the hell is that? ”

“ Belinda will give you books to read and you’ll use the internet. Don’t ask her anything.. Any questions you have or want to know anything ask me and I’ll tell you everything ” I get up from her.

“ where are you going? ” she asks me. A smile ghosts my face.

“ work. Dress up and go have breakfast. Don’t give anyone trouble or else I’ll will do worse than spanking you. ” I kiss her forehead and leave her.

CHAPTER 4

I close the door behind me and go downstairs. I see Belinda talking to pakzo, they are not talking but actually whispering. I still have to deal with what pakzo did to Amahle because I had asked him to make sure she has food and not let anything bad happen to her. He may think he's forgiven but he has no idea what I'm going to do you him.

I hate people who don't listen to me and follow my rules. Pakzo knows very well what kind of person I am but he just likes to push my buttons and it is time I remind him who the fuck I am. "What are the both of you whispering about?" they stop talking and pakzo looks at me. Belinda looks down.

"boss I was asking Belinda how the girl is doing?" he says fidgeting.

"her name is Amahle not the girl. Who gave you the permission to talk to my stuff phakiso and why the fuck would you want to know how Amahle is doing?"

"uh because she's... .."

"shut the fuck up!. She's none of your business!. Go and wait for me in the car.

"he hurries out of the house. Belinda stands there shaking.

"do I need to remind you of my rules?" she keeps quiet. "answer me?!"

"no Sir please!. I tried to leave but he wouldn't let me go."

"do I look like a fool to you?" she quickly gets on her knees and kneels down bowing her head, hands on her lap.

"sir I'm sorry I disrespected your rules. Sir can punish me the way he wants."

I stand close to her and I can see her body literally shaking.

"are you forgetting your place in my house?, you are comfortable now and you know how to talk to my men?."

"no sir. I know my place and my job sir."

"do you want me to take you back where I rescued you?" she sniffs. I fucken hate tears.

"sir please. I cannot go back there. I will take any punishment but please sir don't send me back."

"talk to any of my men without my permission I will take you to a much worse place than the one we found you in. Do I make myself clear?!"

"yes sir." she says.

"get up." she gets up. "you will give Amahle the books in my study about being a submissive. Tell her to use the internet and search everything about BDSM Dom and Submissive relationship. Answer all the questions she has even if they are not related to BDSM. You will tell me everything she asked"

"yes sir. I will do that."

"make sure she has everything she needs. She will only leave her room when she's going to my study only. She will not wonder around this house." for now until I can trust her.

"I will let her know sir." I leave her standing there and get inside the car pakzo drives off. "uhm cousin?"

"shut the fuck up and drive. I'll deal with you later." He drives off and my phone rings. I look at the screen and my mood changes.

“ you have five minutes talk. ”

“ you didn’t send me money!. ”

“ Who’s money? ”

“ My allowance kabelo!. Why haven’t you sent it? ”

“ when are you coming back? ”

“ I’m still busy okay! And things are actually hectic here!. ”

“ What is wrong with your voice? ” I ask her

“ uhm... nothing. ” I can ask her who’s the man that answered her phone but she will just lie to me.

“ so you are shouting at me for fun. Is that how you talk to me? ”

“ don’t be dramatic okay!. I’m sorry I’m shouting at you geez. Send me my money. ” she is skating on thin ice. I’m about to lose my shit on her!

“ be careful Pamela. I will let it slip this one last time. Do it again and you’ll be sorry. ” she gets silent. “ I’ll send you the money.”

“ uh... Ohk...uhm kabelo I will be back okay. Just give me time and thank you. ”

I hang up and I just want to punch something or someone. I transfer money to he account. Every time she calls she leaves me feeling fucking mad. I hate that I allow her to get away with a lot of stuff and she knows it too. I’m slowly losing my patience with her. Pakzo drives in the underground parking lot and parks. I take my briefcase get in the elevator and hit the top floor button to my office. My personal assistants have not arrived, they are both late. I open my office door and put down my briefcase down and begin working. There is a knock in the door, it must be Calvin my assistant.

“ get in ”

“ good morning boss. Here is your coffee and your warm bagel. ” he places them down. He doesn’t sound okay .

“ Sit down Calvin ” I haven’t looked at him but I know something is wrong. He sits down and gets quiet. I close my laptop then look at him. He has a busted lip and he tried to cover it up.

“ talk. ” he looks down then looks at me.

“ I’m sorry I am late. You know that I am never late and I come to work before anyone else. I got attacked when I left my apartment by some guys that I always pass when I go to work. They followed me and beat me up because I am gay and they hate gay people and hate the way I dress. ”

“ They way you dress? ” I ask him confused because Calvin always dresses well.

“ my make up and my clothes.. I guess I don’t dress like how a man is supposed to.” those homophobes!.

“ did you call the cops and open a case of assault? ”

“ No sir and I’m not because the police are not going to do anything. ” he says and he’s right.

“ go to the doctor, get yourself checked out and see if you have no concussion. Cover that lip, change those clothes then I want you back here at work. ”

“ Thank you sir. ” he gets up.

“ go to H.R and tell them to give you a company car that you will start using from today. ”

“ Really, oh air thank you. I promise I'll take good care if it. ”

“ You better because if anything happens to it, the money to fix it will come out from your salary. ” he nods. “ where is Mandisa? ”

“ she's not here sir. I don't know if she's coming or not. ” I'm going fire that girl.

“ you will leave once she gets here. Let's work. ” he opens his diary and we go through what needs to be done. I have back to back meetings the whole day and I end up eating lunch in my office. My office phone rings.

“ Calvin? ”

“ sir your mother is on line 2. Can I put her through? ” what does she want now? .

“ It's fine. ” he hangs up then I hear my mothers voice.

“ I cannot believe I have to be put on hold before I get to talk to you. ” she says

“ Afternoon mother, how can I help you? ”

“ why are you always this cold Kabelo? ”

“ You didn't call me to ask me about that. What do you want?. ”

“ I'm still your mother label on and why can't you talk to me like you actually care about me? ”

“ that's because I don't care. You have five minutes. Talk”

“ I want us to have a family dinner. You, your brothers then me and your dad. ” dad is married or has this woman forgotten.

“ And dad agreed to this dinner?, they all did? ” she keeps quiet. They didn't because we all can't stand her.

“ I was hoping you could talk to them and convince them. Kabelo I'm trying here. When are you going to stop punishing me? ”

“ I'm not punishing you. I want nothing to do with you. I'm not coming to that dinner you want us to have. Goodbye. ” I hang up. I am so frustrated. Firstly it was Pamela now my mother!. Fuck this shit. This pent up rage I have inside of me can be fixed by one thing. A rough Fuck. I take my cell phone, scroll down the click on her name it rings few times before she picks up.

“ hey stranger, long time. ”

“ usual place 20 minutes. Don't keep me waiting. ”

“ but kabelo I'm at work now ” I don't fucken care.

“ I got you that job. 15 minutes ” I hang up, take my car keys and leave my office “ Calvin I'll be out the rest of the day.. Schedule my messages for tomorrow and send me Mandisa's home address. You can go to the doctor then home after you're done here.” He nods and I leave.

I get on my car and drive myself. When I get to the hotel I use and already she's waiting for me not wearing anything good girl. I lock the door take off my clothes and she comes to me.

“ don't touch me. Get on your knees.” She does and I take out my cock

I'm already hard and she opens her mouth and I shove it in. She almost gags but we've done this before and she knows how I like it. She sucks me off playing with her tongue and nails on my sack and I hold her head with my hands and fuck her mouth and when she struggles to breath I let go and she coughs.

" get on the bed face down ass up." I pull her to the edge of the bed and take out my belt and give her four very hard slaps on her ass and that bitch trembles enjoying this. I put on a condom and whip her again two more times going as hard as I can and she starts sobbing.

" don't you fucken cry and you better not come or you'll regret it. " I shove my dick inside of her and she groans. I hold her waist and start to fuck her going all in but I'm not enjoying it. I look at her back and it's not of the person I want right now. I close my eyes and imagine it's her....amahle with her soft body and skin, I imagine her smell, how she would feel on me, in me and under me and my hands on her hair.

" aaah kabela you're hurting me " I don't pay attention to her. My dick gets more hard and I imagine fucking amahle like this, going all rough on her and I will do that and thinking about it makes my blood boil. I am going to come hard, I feel this tingly feeling from the souls of my feet. It shoots straight to my dick and I come hard filling the condom and I imagine how amahle's pussy would be milking my dick and I groan.

I fuck zanele 3 more times and leave her R10000 cash sleeping. I dress up, get in my car and leave. I wonder if amahle followed my rules or she gave nandi a hard time. For her sake I hope she did. I wonder how far karabo is with finding mduduzi. I'm sure by now he knows that I took his sister. Whoever he is working with better help him because when I do get my hands on him, he's a dead man. His sister is going to be the only left in this earth. I am going to kill him.

I take out my phone and call him.

" ngwana papa" (brother) he says.

" how's the search coming along? " he sighs frustrated

" mduduzi is working with someone because that boy doesn't have the money to just disappear and it will take long for him to sell the diamonds and whoever buys those diamonds will know they are ours and are stolen. " he says
" I think he was paid money to steal from us and now that person is hiding him. "

" or maybe when they got what they wanted and they killed him. We could be looking for someone who is already dead. "

" fuck!. I didn't think about that. If he is dead we are never going to know who he was working with and why they decided to come after us. " he can't be dead.

" Zalo we have to be careful. It could be our business partners or someone who really knows us. " he's right. " how's Amahle. Is she as beautiful like her name. A ghost smile spreads across my face.

“ She is stubborn and talks back a lot. She is beautiful” he Chuckles.

“ so what are you going to do with her if she doesn’t agree with being your submissive or when we find out diamonds? ”

“ I’m keeping her whether we find the diamonds or not. ”

“ She’s not a pet kabela. You can’t keep her. ”

“ I asked her to be my submissive like you suggested”

“seriously? What did she say? ”

“ She has no idea what it is.”

“ Is she submissive though? ”

“ man I just told you she backchats a lot and very stubborn. ”

“ and you are going enjoy teaching her everything.” He chuckles.

“ I asked Belinda to help her with everything she would need to know. ”

“ How is she? ”

“ she’s better but I’m worried about pakzo. I found him talking to her and he hates amahle. ”

“ he’s getting to big for his boots that one. We need to remind him what his role here is. ”

“ Do that or I am going to shoot him on his kneecaps. Where’s Kane? ”

“ getting pussy God knows where. ” he says, we laugh.

“ our mother called. She wants to have dinner with us and she wanted me to talk to you guys including dad. ” he keeps quiet.

“ zalo? ” I can hear him breathing hard. I hate how our mother ruined our lives. “ karabo? ”

“ I have to go. We’ll talk. ” he hangs up. I hate this shit!

I drive to Belinda’s apartment. I tell the security guard that I am her boss and I need to see her. He tells me she hasn’t left her apartment since yesterday. He let’s me through, I park my car and go to the elevator and press her floor number. I walk to her apartment and knock on the door. I keep knocking until I’m about to leave when she opens the door and is shocked to see me.

“ Can I come in? ”

“ Yes sir. ” she steps away from the door and I walk in. Her apartment is nice.

“ how are you Miss Jail? ”

“ Uhm I’m fine sir. You can sit sir. I sit down.”

“ what’s going on with you? ” I ask her. She looks down.

“ If you are no longer interested in your job you can always resign. I hope you know that. ”

“ I love my job sir and I don’t want to resign.” I look at her and notice she’s wearing a jersey. In this heat?

“ Then why have you been slacking at work and coming late? ” she looks down. “ Are you sick Mandisa? ” she shakes her head.

“ look at me when I’m talking to you. ” I use my dominant authority voice. Her eyes shoot up at me and her busy goes alert. My! My! My!. Why did I not see this?. “ what is your name? ”

“ Mandisa.” I don’t want that name.

“ what is your name sub? ” she takes a deep breath.

“ Bunny sir. ”

“ who’s your Master? ”

“ Master David ” she says.

“ Get up. ” she does. Her head is now bowed down. If her Dom came in now and saw her with me he might think I’m trying to steal his sub away from him and that is the number one rule of all Dominants. You do not steal, pouch another submissive from another Dom unless he agrees. I’m doing this cause what Calvin said really puzzled me and I need to be sure.

“ Take off that jersey and sit on your knees. She does and like a good sub she puts her hands on her lap.

“ where is your master? ”

“ I don’t have a master a more sir. ”

“ What happened? ”

“ He broke my trust sir ” oh he fucked up. You can never. Ever break your sub’s trust because it is the most important thing in your relationship to work. She needs to trust you whole heartedly and know that you can never break that trust and hurt her.

“ Do I want to know? ”

“ of sir insists. ”

“ was he abusive to you?. Is he the reason why you have been slacking? ”

“ yes sir he was and he is the reason why I was not focused at work sir.” I nod.

“ how long have you been in this lifestyle? ”

“ three years sir.”

“ are you looking for a Dom or are you taking a break or done? ”

“ I know not all Dom’s are abusive like my former master sir. I am looking for a new Dom.” I smile.

“ get up miss bunny and sit down. ” she does. The bruises on her arms are disappearing.

“ I think I know someone who would like to have a sub like you. I will give him your details with your permission of course but know that he isn’t a man easy to please and he might be hard on you. He will push you to your limit but he will do that with your permission and trust. So I need to be sure if you want that before I give him your details. ”

“ Can I think about it sir? ”

“ You may bunny and you will let me know a when you have decided about what I just said”

“ I will sir. ”

“ Miss Jalisco you will go to HR tomorrow and fill in the firms of laid leave for a month. That should give you time to sort out whatever that you need to sort.”

“ Thank you sir. ”

“ if your former Dom contacts you again meaning you harm in anyway call me and don’t let him in. I would suggest you stay away from the clubs until you find yourself a Dom. Okay? ”

“ I will sir ”

“ Good then. I will be expecting your call. Have a nice afternoon Miss Jalisco. ”

“ you too sir. Thank you for checking up on me and I’m sorry for not letting you know. ”

“ It’s okay miss jali.” I get up and leave. Who is this Dom that was abusing her?. Intake my phone and send my brother a message. “ I think I have found you a perfect sub.” I grin.

When I get to my house I see pakzo is already here. Why did this fucker come here to my house when I’m not here. I hope he stayed away from Amahle or so help me God!.

I open the door walk in and I see no one. I go to the kitchen and I find him and Belinda fucking in my kitchen. She is holding in to the vanity and pakzo is behind her fucking. I have never fucked anyone in my kitchen let alone the whole house. Why do people feel like they can do what they want in my house or say whatever the fuck they want to say to me. I go to the fridge, open it then take out bottled water and they both get shocked and stop.

“ Oh don’t let me disturb you. Please continue ” she tries to push pakzo off of her but I take out my gun, sit down and point it to them. “ the both of you have the guts to have sex in my kitchen. Where my food gets prepared!. I asked you Belinda what is going on and you straight up lied to my face and you know I fucken hate liars. Continue! ” pakzo’s pants are shaking. I cock my gun and point it to them. “ I said continue!. ”

“ sir please I’m sorry! ” she says sniffing.

“ Belinda I have seen you doing much worse than this and you know I fucken hate tears. Pakzo you want me to shoot you in the ass? ”

“ no boss. I’m sorry, I won’t do it again. ”

“ you have your own cottage but you choose to fuck him in my fucken kitchen!. Pakzo how many times have I told you to stay away from my staff? ”

“ many times boss. I promise this was the last time. ” Belinda is now crying and it’s fucken annoying me.

“ and how many times have you said the same thing?. ”

“ Many times but this was really the last time!. ” he looks scared and he should be.

“ go to kane. He has a job for you. Get out!. ” he picks up his pants and leaves running out. Belinda pulls her dress down.

“ So I take it you are healed. ” she keeps quiet. “ why haven’t you said anything? ” she keeps quiet again. “ talk Damn it! ”

“ I was scared that you will send me back? ”

“ I didn’t bring you here to my house so you can disrespect me like this. I took you out of that place because you needed help and you begged me to. I asked you one thing only and that is what?!. ”

“ respect you, follow your rules. Respect your home and not cause any trouble for you. If I fail to do all of that you will send me back ” she cries

“ Have you done that? ”

“ non sir but I... .. ”

“ you are no longer going to work for me or live here. I am not taking you back there cause if I do, they will do much worse than gang rape you. You will leave with Karabo if he agrees. ”

“ sir please don’t send me to him! ”

“ I am. You took advantage because you knew that I know what you have been through that’s why you see fit to lie and do as you please in my house. You need a firm hand and he will give you that. ”

“ he will kill me sir!.”

“ then you better behave yourself and stay in line. Where is Amahle? ”

“ she is in her bedroom. She contacted someone on Facebook then deleted the message before I can see it. ”

“ How do you know that? ”

“ I left to make her something to eat and I came back and saw her deleting the message. ”

“ I’ll look at the camera’s. Go and pack. We will talk in the morning. ”

“ I’m sorry sir. ” she says and leaves I go to my bedroom take off my clothes and get in the shower. After I’m done I wear my pyjama pants and go to Amahle’s bedroom. I want her to tell me exactly who did she talk to on Facebook before I look at the camera’s.

CHAPTER 5

[PREVIOUS](#) PAGE 7 [NEXT](#)

I open the door and she’s sitting on the bed looking outside. She looks back and she can’t hide the surprise on her face. She stands up, looks down and begins to play with her fingers. I walk closer to her and her body trembles and takes a step back. She’s woman. She has all the right curves in all the right places but she’s tiny when I’m standing next to her. I use my index finger under her chin so she can look at me but her eyes don’t look at me. That’s disrespectful.

I have to get Calvin to come here so he can take her measurements and do some shopping for her. She has an amazing body and she must dress it beautifully. That dress she’s wearing is not doing her beautiful body justice.

“ Good afternoon Amahle.” She swallows. Her skin pebbles.

“ Good afternoon sir.”

“ are you cold? ”

“ no sir.” I move my hands to her arms and rub them.

“ Look at me ” she does. “ how was your day? ”

“ uhm it was okay sir.”

“ you look better ” colour is starting to come to her face.

“ thank you sir. ”

“ come with me.” I take her and walk with her out of the bedroom.

I show her the whole house and she looks like she likes it cause her eyes keep moving around looking and touching.

“ you have a beautiful home sir ”

“ thank you Ama.”

I open my study and we walk in. She was here with Belinda earlier doing to what I both told them to do. She sits down on the couch and I sit opposite her. She looks down again and plays with her fingers. I realise that when she’s nervous she does that.

“ did you think about what I said? ”

“ I did sir. ” she butts her lips and grips her hands. She’s scared.

“ calm down Amahle. Tell me why you’re nervous and getting scared. Look at me.” I shouldn’t have said the last part harshly.

“ uhm Belinda showed me some photos and told me what being a submissive is and the books also helped. ” she’s still not sure.

“ what kind of photos did she show you? ”

“ women in different positions restrained, being beating up, being fuc...uhm having sex with two men or more at once. She showed me different toys that are used. She told me that all those things are fun and I will enjoy them. I will enjoy the pain and pleasure I will receive. She also told me that being a submissive is me submitting to you and making you happy. I must always do what you say.” She stops talking. The more she talked the agitated she got.. I am so fucken pissed right now.

The way Belinda said those things to her was in a wrong way. She got her scared because she told Amahle that this is all me and not her. I don’t understand why she would do that. I want to throttle her. I take a deep breath.

“ The books explained it better than how she put it although I still don’t understand everything sir. The internet and the videos I saw also helped me. I think Belinda wanted to scare me when she said all those awful things about what’s going to happen when you punish me. Are

you going to beat me up and use a knife to cut my skin so you can mark me. Sir? ”

What the hell was I thinking asking Belinda to talk to her. She clearly had an agenda here. She will be sorry.

“ is that all? ”

“ I was hoping you an explain it to me since you said if I have any questions I must ask you sir.”

“ come here and sit on my lap ” her breath hitches. She slowly stands up and walks around the table. She stands in front of me looking nervous. I want her to do it on her own without me helping her. She lifts her dress a little then her hands sandwich my head. She places her bum on my lap then looks at me. Our eyes lock, she looks at me until she can't stand my stare and look away. She then surprises me when she wraps her arms around my neck, lays her head on my shoulder and breathes out. I am in shock because I didn't expect this from her.

I move my hands to her back and begin to sooth it. Her warm breath hits my neck and that does things to me.

“ I thought Belinda would be the perfect person to explains to you want being a sub means because she is also a submissive but I realise now that I shouldn't have asked her to hello you cause all she did was scare you.”

“ she did sir ” God. She feels so soft and her sweet voice is just hitting everyone nerve in my body. I don't know how to feel about this.

“ I am a Dominant Ama. A dominant is someone who has power and always in control in all aspects of life. I always want things to be done a certain way. I make the rules and I expect them to be followed. If the rules are not followed there will be punishment. A submissive is someone who willingly submits the authority to another person. To me a Dominant. Meaning if you agree to be my submissive you will let me make all the decisions. All of them Amahle. You let me lead you, guide you, protect and care for you in all ways. Physically, mentally and sexually. The Dominant and Submissive relation is not based on kinky sex only like how people think. It's not about me making you and forcing you to do things you don't want to do. It's about you giving me your trust. All of it knowing that I will take care

of you and not put you in harms way. It's about you letting me make all the decisions in and out of the bedroom. You give me your trust and you submit to me willingly. Are you listening Ama? ”

“ I am sir. ” she breathes.

“ In this type of relationship there are strict rules that you have to follow. They are not extreme but they have to be followed and respected for the relationship to work. We will later talk about what I want from you and what you're willing to do for me as your Dom. The power is all in your hands Amahle. I will never force you to do things you do not want to do however I know you might say you don't want to do something because you are afraid. That's where I come in. I lead you and guide you to overcome those fears but I will never push you past your limit to something you can't handle. Do you understand? ” she sits up and her ass moves forward to my groin.

“ Belinda played that 50 shades movie. I didn't understand at first what was happening and why he was doing those things to her but she explained that what he was doing wasn't to degrade her or embarrass her but it was how he was. He likes doing that because it gives him pleasure and he wanted her to feel that pleasure it can both bring them.” Ok it seems like Belinda didn't do a bad job after all. But it still doesn't excuse the other things she said. “ are you like

“ if you agree and I hope you do then you have to be open-minded and not be afraid to try new things with me. ”

“ if I agree then it means that I will no longer make decisions about my life and about myself? ”

“ we talk about it but at the end it is me who'll make that decision. Those decisions will benefit the both of us. Not just me only because I want you to be happy as my submissive. Seeing you happy and safe will make me happy too. ”

“ You talked about punishment too. What kind of punishment will there be sir? ”

“ we first have to talk about what I expect from you, those are the rules then you will also tell me if you can do what I expect from you or not then from there on wards we talk about the punishment you will receive when you don't follow those rules.”

“ ohk. Sir ” I smile. “ Can I ask a question? ” now she's asking?.

“ Go ahead Ama ”

“ why do they call you sir? ”

“ because I am A Dominant. No calls me by my name other than my brothers.”

“ Phakiso calls you by your name.

“ he’s my cousin.”

“ Do I have to call you sir too? ”

“ you already do.” She looks at me.

“ If I agree will you let my brother go and not kill him and you will not sell me? ”

“ I’ll have to talk to my brothers about that.”

“ ohk sir.”

“ is there anything else you want to tell me or ask me? ” I ask her.

“ no sir. Not wow.”

“ Are you sure? ” he pupils dilate. I move my hand to her waist.

“ What were you doing on Facebook? ” she gasps and tries to get off me but I quickly hold her and lay her on her back with me on top of her in the couch. Her hands grip my shoulders. Damn she feels perfect beneath me. “ I won’t ask you again. ”

“ I want on Facebook ”

“ do you want me to spank it out on you? ”

“ no sir. ” she bites her lip.

“ Talk!. ”

“ I logged in my account and I sent my brother a message on Facebook. I told him I was not at home. That... . That some men came and took me asking about their diamonds.”

“ Did he respond? ”

“ No he didn’t.”

“ Your brother is going to think that we made you send that message. He’s not going to reply back. If he’s working with someone they will face where you sent that message and it will lead them here. Which h is good because we want whoever that is behind this and for your brothers sake I hope everyone didn’t steal it for himself. ” she sniffs.

“ What... What if he’s dead and...”

“ We will find him. Don’t worry.” I lick her rear and she stills. “ do you have a boyfriend Amahle? ” she shakes her head no. “ why not? ”

“ because I didn’t have time and my brother made dating hard for me. ”

“ have you ever had a boyfriend though? ”

“ I have. We broke up four months into our relationship. ”

“ Why? ”

“ He was impatient with me. ”

“ how? ”

“ He wanted sex and I couldn’t give him that ”

“ Have you ever had sex before? ” please God let her say yes. I don’t do virgins ever!.

“ I did. Once though. It hurt too much so I stopped and never did it again sir.” I sigh and close my eyes. He popped her cherry so that’s good. I won’t be responsible for breaking her virginity although I won’t mind breaking some orifices of her virginity.

“ when was that? ”

“ When I was 21 sir.“ what?. My dick gets hard as I imagine how tight she must be. She swallows and licks her lips.

I move my head down and she closes her eyes waiting for the kiss. I smirk. I kiss her below her ear and she moans. I could kiss her and fuck her brains out right now in this couch but that will have to wait. She still has to agree to me.

“ Let’s go have dinner. I’m hungry. ” she sighs disappointed. Good.

“ Can I go and change sir? ”

“ change what? ”

“ My tampon? ”

“ Be in the sitting room in ten minutes.”

“ yes sir.” I look at her then move off of her helping her up.

She fixes her dress but has a wedgie between her ass cheeks. I move my fingers to her ass and take out that wedgie. She stills and gasps then walks out without looking back. I grin.

I walk down stairs and Belinda is on the table putting the utensils down. I go to the kitchen wash my hands then come back and sit down. Amahle comes back and she smells fresh. She too a quick

shower before coming here. Was she wet, was she bleeding heavy?. I don't know but I approve she did that. I stand up and pull a chair next to mine. She sits.

“ You can plate up Amahle.”

“ yes Sir.”

The door bell rings. I look at the time and wonder who it is that just came in announced. Janet goes to open the door and I hear the silence. I smile to myself. I knew he would come. He walks in, Belinda goes to her knees and looks down. Her body is literally shaking. My eyes move to Amahle and I can see her getting scared. He always has that affect on people. He does scare me too sometimes. He goes to her and Amahle hasn't hidden the shock on her face. I almost laugh. She is speechless and she keeps looking between us. Realization dawns on her and her mouth hangs open.

“ Good evening miss Amahle.” he says taking her hand and kissing the back of it.

“ Good evening uhmmm....” She looks at me and sees my amused face. “ good evening Bishop.” She says with her sweet soft voice.

“ how nice if you to join us uninvited ”

“ Manners ngwana Papa. Aren't you going to introduce us? ” I Shane my head

“ Amahle this is my older brother Mpendulo also known as Bishop Mpendulo Ntanzi.”

“ Nice to meet you Bishop. ” he grins.

“ I'm Bishop when I'm not with my family. I'm with my family now so please call Mpendulo. ” oh he's testing her. Don't call him.

Mpendulo Amahle.. Don't.

“ Yebo bhuti Mpendulo.” We look at each other and he nods. I guess hell take that.

“ Belinda please did for me..” She thinks he's here for him.

“ it would be my pleasure Bishop.” She says standing up.

serif">“ how has your stay been with us Miss Amahle? ” he asks her. She looks at me.

“ it has been good sir. Bhuti Mpendulo. ”

“ your bruises will heal.”

“ Thank you bhuti Mpendulo.”

“ what brings you here? ” I know very well why he's here.

“ your text message ” he says.

“ I thought you would call. I didn't think you will actually drive here.” He lives in Sandton and hates Pretoria with passion.

“ I had some business to take care of and so I thought let me come and see Miss Amahle.”

“ Thank you Bishop for coming. Please bless the food. ” intense him. He chuckles.

“ let's let miss Amahle here to bless us the food since she's our guest. Please bless the food for us. Kneel down so I can feed you pet.” He says to Belinda.

“ can we close our eyes. ” we do. “ thank you God for watching over us and the food we are about to eat Amen. ” her voice was shaky. I can hear that she's not used to praying. We all say Amen.

My brother and I chat as he's asking me about the other side if out business. He keeps feeding Belinda which is kneeling on the floor. Amahle's eyes are glued on her plate after she saw how my brother was feeding Belinda. With his hands. I know she's dying to look again but she doesn't want to be rude. She's going to make a good submissive. She does things without being told. It comes naturally to her. She keeps fidgeting in the chair cause she's uncomfortable around us. She's not yet used to us but she will.

“ I can see your full princess. You can go to your room now.”

“ Thank you sir. Good night Bishop bhuti Mpendulo.” She says without looking at us.

“ A good night to you little one.” He says. I get up, she stands up and I pull her chair and she walks until. She's out of sight. I sit down and my brother is smiling. “ I know it's very early to say this but I know she's good for you.” I know what he wants to say.

“ Just say it.”

“ She's good for you kabelo. She's what you need. Open your mouth and drink pet.” Belinda opens her mouth and he fills it with water. She almost chokes but dare spit any of it out.

“ Thank you sir.”

“ Are you full? ”

“ I am Bishop and thank you for the food ”

“ you’re welcome pet. Go and pack your bags. You’re coming with me.” Belinda’s eyes get misty and she begins to cry. “ oh don’t cry pet. Not yet anyway. Get up and go pack. ”

“ thank you sir.” She says sniffing and walks out.

“ what did she do? ” he asks me.

“ She has healed and didn’t day anything. I only know because I found her and our cousin fucking in my kitchen.”

“ that’s not nice. Food gets prepared in there. We don’t want to eat their DNA. ” he says amused.

“ And when I asked her to explain what a submissive is to Amahle she told him everything you never tell someone who has no idea what all of that is. She scared him and she might not agree.”

“ And what if she doesn’t agree? ”

“ she said she’ll do anything. I mean anything for me to not sell her and spare her brothers life.”

“ What are you going to do? ”

“ Is that a trick question?. You’re the one who advised me to ask her to be my sub brother. ”

“ You were going to do that regardless if I suggested it or not.”

“ You know very well I can’t force her to be one. She has to agree on her own.”

“ she’s young but I know shell learn and shell be what you need and want. ”

“ There you go again with what I need.”

“ she is what you need to get you out of that bitches life.”

“ Is that why you came here? To talk about her? Fuck of karabo! ”

“ You better calm down ngwana papa. Remember whom your talking with.”

“ I just hate that we have to talk about her all the fucken time! ”

“ She has her claws so deep in you and I’m sick and tired of her. I want her out of your life kabelo.”

“ it’s not that simple. ” I sigh.

“ she ruined your life and you’re still living in the past and I can’t anymore. I’m done. ” he says it so family but I know deep down he’s fucken mad. That’s how much he hates her and my brother never hates anyone unless you piss him off big time.

“ I called her a while ago and some man picked up her phone. She called me days later and asked why I haven’t sent her money.” He shakes his head.

“ This is the same bullshit I’m talking about!. Let her go kabela. There’s nothing tying you to her.”

“ She’s the way she is because of me. How the hell do I just let her be like that without anyone caring for her. I’m all she has.” He chuckles.

“ she needs you only when she needs money. She has men she fucks and then she guilt trips so you can not cut her off. She’s a cancer little brother and it’s time we cut the cancer out.”

“ what are you going to do? ”

“ what you should have done the first time you caught her with phakiso.” I keep quiet. “ yeah I know about that and many other things that you hid from me because of her. How the hell do you even know the child she supposedly lost was yours? ”

“ she said it was mine.”

“ After you caught them and threatened to kill her. She hid the pregnancy from you then later claims the baby was yours after she miscarried Kabela!. ” ok he is really mad now. He never raises his voice.

“ I know she did many things but I don’t think she lied about the baby. She wouldn’t be that wicked.”

“ you know I wasn’t going to tell you this but you’ve left me no choice. She didn’t lose the baby. She had an abortion when she discovered that the baby was not yours. She didn’t want to lose all the money and the nice life you provided her with.” What?

“ who was the father? ”

“ her many lovers that she fucking behind your back. Do you know that she’s never stopped taking drugs? ” oh my God. I’m going to kill this bitch.

“ The money you’re sending her is feeding her habit. Get that bitch out of your life before I intervene kabela cause we both know it won’t be good.”

“ I will.”

“ We are never going to have this conversation again. Do we understand each other? ”

“ we do. ”

“ Good. Back to Amahle now. We got a lead.”

“ what is it? ”

“ this was an inside job. The person obviously knows our route and where everything is hidden. I think he paid her brother a hefty some to take the truck and disappear with the furniture. ” fuck!

“ Who do you think it is? ”

“ who has been giving us trouble the last few months? ”

“ Phakiso. Does Kane know? ”

“ I told him to watch out for her.”

“ Fuck! I can’t believe I didn’t see it.”

“ Well you don’t see allot of things these days.”

“ I think we should pretend that we don’t suspect him and have him followed.”

“ already on it.”

“ what about her brother though? ”

“ it’s up to you. Amahle is going to be a very important member of this family. So if you kill her brother will you be able to look at her everyday knowing what you did? ” he smiles then we laugh.

“ I may be a sick fuck nut nothing compared to you. We could recruit him to work for is since he already knows.” I say.

“ I don’t mind that but if pull comes to shove. We kill him.” He says.

“ agreed.”

“ maybe you should bring Amahle to the club so she can see before she agrees.”

“ What if that freaks her out? ”

“ then she’s not the one. You let her go.” Can I do that? ”

“ I don’t think I want her to see the world’s most respected Bishop naked and whipping someone.” We laugh.

“ kabela you know the rules. ”

“ I made those rules too. Don’t worry. She’ll never speak to anyone of what she saw in here or what she will see. We can’t afford to let the world know that you are the Master of all Dom’s in Africa. The Bishop in both worlds. That would be the biggest scandal to ever hit the Christianity world. The whole world at large.” He laughs.

“ good thing is that will never happen and we happen to know each and every little dirty secret all of them have who know about us. I love being The Bishop. ” we laugh. “ tell me about the girl you found.”

“ it’s not just any girl. It’s Mandisa.”

“ Hell no!. ”

“ I think she is what you need. She is your type.” He shakes his head.

“ I’ve been around the girl many times kabela and never have I even sniffed that she might be.”

“ Cause she hides it well. I was surprised too when... ” I tell him about what happened when I got to her place.

“ She’s not your typical submissive. She’s BDSM TPE brother. ”

“ fuck no. ”

“ Oh yes. Let’s see if she will call me.. Then you can take it from there.”

“ Ok brother. I will hear from you. I hope you’re not wrong and I hope she won’t freak out when she finds out it’s me.” He says.

“ me too brother.”

“ We have a meeting tomorrow don’t be late.”

“ why don’t I know about it? ”

“ Because I’m the one who called it.”

“ Karabo what are you planning now? ” he grins.

“ you’ll find out tomorrow. Come pet. It’s time to go.” He pulls me to a hug.

“ Sort that bitch out. Or I’ll send something to sort her out for good. I love you.”

“ I love you too.”

“ walk on Pet. ” Belinda looks at me begging me with her eyes and I shake my head. This is her punishment.

As they are out of sight in sit down and take a deep breath. My blood is boiling. I am so fucken mad. I am going to kill Pamela with my bare hands. She lied and continued to lie to me for months and months. I take my phone and call her..

“ Hello baby ” she giggles.. She’s fucken high.

“ get your ass back in here now! ” she takes a deep breath.

“ I’m. In Ibiza kabela bathong?! ” I hang up.

I type my speed dial and she picks up after one ring.

“ Sir”

“ I need you to fly to Spain and get Pamela in Ibiza. Before the sun sets I want her here.”

“ done sir. Is that all sir? ”

“ That’s all.” I hang up and sigh.

“ is everything okay? ” Amahle asks me. Fuck I didn’t hear her come in. What did she hear and what is she doing here?.

“ who told you to come out of your room? ” she stills. “ go to your fucken room and stay there until I tell you otherwise!. ”

“ I’m sorry sir.” She sniffs then runs away. Fuck!

CHAPTER 6

[PREVIOUS](#) PAGE 8 [NEXT](#)

Advertisement

I am surprised to find amahle in the dining room table eating her breakfast and she has showered. I go to her and kiss her cheek. She startles cause she wasn’t expecting it. I smile to myself.

“ Good morning sir ”

“ Good morning amahle. Did you sleep well? ”

“ I did sir.” I pull my chair and sit next to her. Jane comes and pours me my tea. I thank her. I dish up my plate and amahle is looking nervous. I don’t know what’s wrong with her.

“ You’re agitated. What’s wrong? ”

“ Uhm I just wanted to say I’m sorry for last night. I didn’t mean to eavesdrop sir. I wanted some water but then I heard you ok the phone.” So she did hear me.

“ And you stood there and listened instead of getting your water and going back to your room. ” she keeps quiet. “ why did you listen? ”

“ I was worried sir ” this girl.

“ you were worried about me or what you think you heard? ”

“ Worried about you sir.” I chuckle.

“ Do you know me? ”

“ No sir ”

“ so why would you be worried about me or things that don’t concern you?. Don’t you know it’s rude listening to our people’s conversations? ”

“ I’m sorry sir ”

“ I’m not your friend, brother or your boyfriend. It’s cute that you were worried about me don’t concern yourself with me or my business unless I ask you to. Do you understand? ” her face goes pale.

“ I understand sir. I won’t ever do it again. ” good girl.

“ you met my brother yesterday and you know that he is a Bishop right? ”

“ I do sir and you look like him and your other brother. I don’t know why I failed to see that you are you. ”

“ What do you mean by that? ”

“ You are the a Ntanzi. Everyone knows your family. You’re all famous.” Which is why we are very private people.

“ We need to talk about what you saw during dinner. What my brother was doing. ”

“ I will never tell anyone about your family business or about what I saw. I would never do that. I swear on my parents grave.” I believe her.

“ If you ever think of doing it or do it just know that there isn’t a place where you would hide and think we won’t find you. We will find you and it will not be pretty. Always remember that in case you get any ideas.”

“ I will not sir... . ” she has something on her mind. She keeps biting her lip to stop herself from talking.

“ talk amahle before your lip gets bloody.”

“ I know I shouldn’t ask sir but is your brother like you? ” I smirk.

“ He’s worse than me. You don’t want to ever get on his bad side. Ever.” She keeps quiet. “ what happens in this house amahle stays here. Whatever you will hear or see around my family stays here. I hope you understand what I’m saying. ”

“ I do sir. I thought since he’s a Bishop he took the vow of celibacy for life.” I chuckle.

“ I didn’t say he wasn’t celibate.”

“ But then... ”

“ It’s none of your business Amahle and don’t ask questions about him.”

“ I won’t sir.”

“ I’m going to work. Calvin my assistant will come and take you to shopping. You will buy everything you need. He will help you with that. You will go to the salon to get your nails done and hair. Don’t worry yourself about the price. I need you to be looking beautiful always.”

“ thank you sir.”

“ don’t make Calvin’s job hard. Listen to him. He has style.”

“ What do I say when he asks me what am I to you? ”

“ He won’t ask you.” I get up. Kiss her cheek and leave.

Calvin is already in and busy working. He joins me in my office with hot tea. I love my tea and I blame my grandmother for my sweet tooth and always wanting me to make tea. I haven’t talked to her in a while. I have to call her.

“ sir, your brothers assistant called to me to make sure that you attend the meeting at 11 am.”

“ So early? ” I sigh.

“ yes sir. I moved all your meeting to tomorrow cause I know you usually take the whole day when you’re there. And Mandisa was here. She told me that you told her to take leave.”

“ Will you need some help? ”

“ no sir I can manage but if it gets too much I’ll let you know. Thank you sir for not firing her.”

“ She needs get her head right. She’s good at her job. When I leave for my meeting you will also leave and go to my house. My driver will take you there. There’s someone I need you to take for shopping. Buy everything she will need then take her to the best salons for her hair and nails. She’s a simple girl. I want her to be beautiful and elegant. Not a slay queen Calvin.”

“ Make up sir? ”

“ I don’t care if she wants it or not. It’s her choice.”

“ I’m so excited ” he says grinning ”

“ Her name is Amahle. Here’s the card you will use.” He takes it

“ the pin sir? ”

“ Not needed. You may leave. ” he grins and walks out.

Two hours later I'm on my way to Sandton. I hope amahle won't give Calvin trouble cause really I'm not in the best of moods. I keep thinking what my brother said about Pamela and Phakiso. Kane is going to be there and I wonder what he did with our cousin. The security let's me in and I drive to the parking lot. I get in the elevator and press the 7th floor.

“ good morning Master K.” she stands up.

“ morning Lucy ”

“ Bishop k is in the board room with Sir Kane.” I nod and walk to the boardroom.

Both my brothers are already there and Kane looks mad. We hug then I sit on my righted side next to my brother. I am his right hand man after all.

“ What's wrong with you? ”I ask Kane.

“ Phakiso. I don't like he's treating my girl.”

“ you always have girls Kane. What special about this one? ” karabo asks him.

“ I like her, she's a good girl and I'm afraid that if I leave her alone with him he might do something to her.”

“ Are you talking about the girl I found in your house? ”

“ No another one. I really like that one and I'm close to shooting pakzo's ass.” My brother and I shake our heads. Another girl again.

“ I can't keep up with you and all these women you keep changing.” I tell him.

“ They are using me so I'm using them too.” He says.

“ remember Kane who we are. You can't be seen with different women.”

“yeah well I'm not like you two. These girls like me because of our family and you mpendulo. Every girl that knows about us want to know about the mysterious kabelo and Bishop Mpendulo. That's the reason why the like me.” He's says it like it hurts him and I don't like it.

“ You know you’re more than that Kane. You will meet a girl that likes you for you. You have to stop changing girls every week man.” I tell him.

“ Last born he’s right. There is a vile watching you and waiting for you to change your ways. You will see her but as kabelo said take it down a notch with these girls.”

“ I’ll try but I want phakiso out of my house or else I am going to kill him. ”

“ Speaking of him. Jacob told me that phakiso was seen with Amahle’s friend. He said the girl went to his car and they drive off and went to some house then came back and hour later.”

“ What? What the hell is he doing with her? ”

“ Jacob put a tracker on his car and listening devices in his apartment and car too. We will soon know what he’s up to ” Karabo says.

“ why is our cousin meeting with the friend of the girl that we took? Is he in on this and does the girl know where amahle is? ” Kane asks.

“ She might know and maybe know more than she should. Phakiso is starting to be a very big problem for us.” I say.

“ we need to contain this situation very fast before it gets out of hand.” Karabo says.

“ thank god he doesn’t know about this business of ours.” Kane says.

“ what if he does and he’s pretending like he doesn’t know. He’s always around in your house brother and he knows where the listening devices are and cameras.” Fuck!

“ I’ll get someone to check the whole place for bugs. If we find any then we are fucked! ” I’ll kill my cousin myself if I find any.

“ well have to kill him. We can’t risk anyone at all. It could not only ruin our family’s name or your brother but our whole clients.” Kane says..

“ if we find anything

Advertisement

I’ll het someone to make it look like an accident but for now be cautious and don’t show him he’s our suspect.” Karabo says. We agree

“ how is Amahle doing? ” Kane asks.

“ she’s stubborn.” They laugh.

“ I heard that Pamela will be landing in tonight. Your call. ” karabo says.

“ finally. I want that girl out of lives.” He also felt that way?

“ Yeah well I need answers and then I’ll take it from there.”

“ call me if you can’t care of her.” Kane says.

“ No. I’ll deal with it myself.”

The other board members all come in. Everyone is wearing all black. Even the shirts and ties That’s the code. We have 15 board members including us. Rules, decisions are all made here but the three of us are the ones who take and force the final decisions. 6 of our members come from the Western to the Eastern parts of Africa.

“ Thank you everyone for coming at short notice and I apologize again for the inconvenience however what I have to day needed all of you to be here.” I hope karabo is not planning on stepping down.

“ As you have seen from our meeting and quarterly reports that our clubs are growing tremendously and we are running out of space especially here. I know we don’t want to lose potential clients so I think we should have more branches cause we only have 4 clubs in Nigeria, Ghana and Kenya and the biggest one is this one. I was thinking we must expand the clubs. Kenya for now is good the demand hasn’t been that high but if it does we will expand it. The problem is right here in South Africa. Demand is high and this club can’t accept all potential clients. I was thinking that we open another clubs in Cape Town and Durban to cater for our international clients.” Ohk . He’s not stepping down.

“ i think that’s a good idea cause flying in every time you want to have some fun can be exhausting at times.” I say and the others agree.

“ I’m glad to hear that you agree. Master Michael I hope that won’t be too much for you.” Karabo says. Master Michael runs the club in Nigeria.

“ It will not be Bishop K. I was going to bring this up in our next meeting for us to expand the club. I am happy that we will have that mow. Thank you Bishop.”

“ And you Master Kojo? Will you be able to handle it or you’ll need help? ” he asks Master Kojo who runs the club in Ghana.

“ I will need help Bishop k. My wife is pregnant and she’s driving me insane.” We chuckle and congratulate him.

“ Congratulations Master Kojo. Who do you want to help you run the club in the mean while? ”

“ my right hand man Bishop K.”

“ I think we can all agree that Sir Tano will handle the job. ” we agree.

“ Thank you Bishop K.” he nods.

“ And then then we are here. I was thinking that you Sir Kane will run the club in Cape Town.” Kane grins. I guess this is the opportunity he was waiting for.

“ I accept. I need a change of scenery. It will be my honour to run the club in Cape Town Bishop K. Thank you ” we chuckle.

“ Master K. Will you run the club in Durban?. ”

“ Bishop I have a business here that I run. I can't just be to Durban and forget about my business.”

“ you run that business for fun Master K we both know it. I need you in Durban brother. I know you can make that club more than what this is now.”

“ I might be doing it for fun but I love that fun. It's my business Bishop.”

“ I have money in that business too. So does dad, grandfather and... . ”

“ Kananelo shut up!. ” I say. He hates his full name.

“ Why didn't you ask someone else we trust to run the club in Durban? ”

“ Brother I did. Do you remember the IT guru guy who installed our security system and he was one of our members in the club? ”

“ yeah I remember him. It's Mbuso Gumede right? ”

“ Yeah last week I talked to him was when I found out he lost his mother when I was in France attending the conference and apologized for not being in the funeral. I called him to see if he can run the club for us belittle he refused and said he's no longer part of the lifestyle and his wife will kill him. I asked where his best friend was Sibusiso Mbatha and he said he's going to be crowned King soon. Those are the only people other than you whom I thought could run the club. I need you to move to Durban and run the club kabelo. Please.”

“ what about my business? ”

“ that Duma girl can run it. You know she’s good at her job and she loves it. Please brother.”

“ ok fine. When must I leave? ”

“ As soon as they have finished renovating the building we bought.”

“ I will run the club in Durban. Bishop K. Thank you for the opportunity. ” he smiles.

“ Before we conclude. I want to remind everyone here that please make sure that every Dom that joins the club is thoroughly checked and the submissive is not here against their will or bought and kidnapped from somewhere. We do not kidnap, sell and buy men, women and children. If anyone is found doing any of that as you know there will be hefty consequences.”

“ yes Bishop K.”

“ Thank you all for coming. We will meet again during our monthly meetings and please have some refreshments before you leave.” We all shake hands.

My phone vibrates on my breast pocket. I take it out and see Calvin’s number flashing on screen. What did Amahle do now. I silently leave the boardroom and go to my brothers office. I close the door then answer it.

“ Calvin? ”

“ Sir I don’t know what happened. One minute she was in the dressing room and the next she was gone... . ”

“ Calm down Calvin and tell me what really happened.”

“ We were at this boutique Sir. She was trying on evening dresses in the changing room. I got worried when she was taking long to come out so I went to check on her and she was gone sir. I swear sir I didn’t leave her side.. I was right here and I have no idea how she just left without me seeing her. I’m sorry sir.

“ Calvin come down and go to my house. Stay there until I come. Take everything that you bought.”

“ ok Sir. I am so sorry. ”

“ Calvin it’s not your fault. I will find her.” I hang up. Fuck Amahle! Where did you go!

“ what’s wrong? ” karabo asks

“ Amahle ran away.”

“ how? Where was Janet? ”

“ I told Calvin to take her for shopping.”

“ what? ” Kane says.

“ I knew she might try to do something like this but I didn't think she would be stupid enough to actually do it.”

“ Jacob?... Come in here. ” my brother asks our Hit man and cleaner. Everything dirty that needs to be done, he does it.

“ Where do you think she might have gone to? ” Kane asks.

“ it's either she went home or her brother came and took her. ”

“ how the hell. Would her brother know where she is? ” oh he's going to be pissed.

“ a few days ago Belinda told me that she was on Facebook. When I asked Amahle what she was doing she said she sent her brother a message that we have her.”

“ Really kabelo! And you're only telling me this now! ”

“ brother we don't really know if it's really her brother that came. Did actually confirm that the message she sent was to her brother and not that friend of hers? ” Kane asks.

“ I didn't. I took her word from it. What would she gain by lying to me.”

“ I can't believe you right now! You don't know this girl and you just believed her? Yoh Kabelo! ”

“ I messed up ok I know.” Jacob walks in.

“ Good afternoon Triple K's ”

“ were they at the mall and where is Calvin now? ” Kabelo asks.

“ I think so. I told Calvin to go to my house. ”

“ Jacob go to kabelo's house. He will tell you everything you need to find Amahle and where she disappeared too.”

“ I'm on it Bishop.” He leaves.

“ What if Amahle was forced to leave? ” Kane suggests

“ Who will force her Kane? ” I ask him.

“ Look. Phakiso has been busy with her friend in the last few days right?. What if Amahle contacted her friend and told her where she really was?. Jacob saw our cousin with her friend and they went to some house and phakiso knows very well where Amahle is at. What if this is their plan and phakiso has cameras and listening devices in

your house like how Bishop said. Maybe he followed her and Calvin and saw an opportunity and took her.” Kane says.

“ I wouldn’t put it past that little weasel. ”

“ I know we don’t hurt family but I’m past that now. Phakiso is fucking with us and I can smell trouble coming from him.” Kabelo is pissed.

“ what if he also knows where our diamonds are at and her brother?. What if he killed her brother after he got what he wanted so he wouldn’t rat him out? ” I don’t know why I’m thinking this but phakiso could be the one responsible.

“ you might be right kabelo but for us to be sure. Our cousin has to answer some few questions we have for him. Call him.”

I take my phone and dial his numbers the phone doesn’t ring. It just sends me straight to voicemail. I try his other number and it also sends me to voicemail.

“ His phones are off and that never happens.”

“ I guess then we are going to pay him a visit. Let’s go.” Kabelo says.

CHAPTER 7

[PREVIOUS](#) PAGE 9 [NEXT](#)

Advertisement

I don’t know what to make of Amahle's disappearance. I don’t know if she ran away on her own? Had help from her friend and or hot help from phakiso or also if her brother came for her but why would he have left her on her own on the first place knowing very well what he did. Surely he knew that we will come from him unless of course he is working with our cousin just like my brother Kane thinks. If phakiso has a hand in this and stealing the diamonds I will kill him with my bare hands and watch the light go out in his eyes.

If Amahle really left on her own then I am going to let her think that she has succeeded before I get her back again because I want her back here with me. She is moving to Durban with me and I am taking Calvin with me too. He’s the best assistant and I don’t want another one. The problem is how am I going to convince him to work for the club cause he might not like it at all. I hope he agrees though cause he’s a really trustworthy person and it’s hard to find people like that.

We arrive at phakiso's apartment. Kane parks the car, we step out and walk in the building. We don't sigh in cause they know us and have seen us here many times but my brother karabo doesn't come here at all. He is wearing his cap to keep his face hidden from people but I think they can see him cause already people are whispering. We get in the elevator and go to phakiso's floor apartment.

We are outside his apartment door. Kane puts his ear on the door cause we can hear voices of people inside cause it sounds like they are shouting at each other.

" Kane stop doing that " karabo says and knocks. The shouting seems to stop. He knocks again but they don't answer.

I push the door open and we get in. Phakiso is there with some other girl. Is this Amahle's friend cause she looks at us like she recognizes us?.

" That's rude to keep people waiting outside when they are knocking and you're inside." Karabo says starring at him.

" I didn't hear you guys knocking. Big brother how are you? "

" great cousin and you? " karabo says.

" I'm good. Uhm what brings you here? You didn't tell me that you were going to come? "

" why are you nervous? " Kane asks him.

" I don't get to see the three of you coming to my house at once. So what brings you here? "

The girl clears her throat for phakiso to introduce her. I sit down and make myself comfortable although everything inside of me is anything comfortable.

" uhm this is Petunia my friend." The girl can't hide the surprise in her face. Phakiso why are you lying and most importantly what are you playing at?.

" hi Petunia " we greet her.

" Nice to meet you all. This is an honour truly. I can't believe..." This girl is Amahle's friend. I recognize her voice.

" excuse us Petunia.. We'd like to talk to our cousin alone." Kane it's her off.

" uhm ohk. Ah phakiso I'm going to go. You know where to find me when you're done here. " she takes her hand back and leaves. I look at

her and she looks away. She closes the door behind her. I pull my phone out of my pocket and send Jaco a message telling that Amahle's friend has just left Phakiso's place.

Karabo walks to Phakiso slowly. Phakiso gets up and takes steps away from him. My brother walks to him until Phakiso is on the corner.

“What's your problem running after Kane's girl?”

“What? Which one?” he asks confused

“you mother fucker! How many of my girls have you lasted after?”

“how the hell would I know cause you're always bringing a different piece of ass every time?!”

“I'm not going to let you make me lose my cool. Stay the fuck away from my girl or you'll be sorry.” Kane points his finger at him.

“Fuck off man. I don't care about those bitches” Pakzo says.

“What are you doing cousin?” Karabo asks him.

“what do you mean?” he asks with a shaky voice.

“What are you hiding from us?” Kane asks him.

“I'm hiding nothing man. What the hell is this? You come into my house and start asking me questions? Man fuck that!”

“where is Amahle Phakiso?” I ask him

“She's missing” I can see a ghost smile appearing on his face. This mother fucker knows where Amahle is.

“she is and we don't know where else is or who took her.”

“Maybe that's a good thing she is gone. I mean you were already turning into something I don't recognize”

“Did you take her to spite me?” he grins.

“nah I didn't. Although I would have loved to see your face when you realised she is gone.” he says laughing. One strike.

“I'll pretend I didn't hear you say that”

“is there anything you're hiding from us?” he stops laughing when Karabo asks him.

“I told you I'm not hiding anything ok.” He lies through his teeth.

“hmm” Karabo says. “if I ever find out that you hid something from us, we will kill you cousin. I hope you don't have a hand in her disappearance. For your sake.” Karabo warns him.

“I didn't take that bitch I swear!” second strike.

“ We are family phakiso and I hope you never betray us cause that would be a shame and it would divide the whole family.” Karabo warns him again.

“ I’m not hiding anything. ”

“ Let’s go. Phakiso doesn’t know anything about amahle. If you hear anything cousin please tell us.”

“ sure I will. ”

“ don’t ever come into my house. Ever again.” Kane says. Phakiso shrugs his shoulders.

“ mine too. I don’t trust you after what you did.” I tell him also. He looks at me shocked. Karabo doesn’t need to tell him cause he doesn’t go to his house too and he always avoids him at all costs.

“ Why? What did I do? ” phakiso asks looking at me.

“ You can’t be trusted around the women we love. ” Kane says. What the hell?. I look at him and he raises his eye brow at me.

“ Man fuck that!. I don’t need you!. Now get out of my house! ”

“ don’t shout at us. We are leaving ” Kane says. We leave his apartment and he shuts the door and lo is it.

“ He knows where she is.” I tell them.

“ Of course he does. He has the worst poker face. Jacob has some guys watching his apartment. They will follow him.” Karabo says.

“ and that girl? His friend. ” Kane says.

“ That’s amahle’s friend. I recognized her voice.”

“ so the two or three or maybe even four of them are on this together ”

“ We will know the truth soon.” Karabo says.

We get in the car and leave phakiso’s apartment building. If Amahle is with him and her friend I hope she is safe. But if phakiso took her on his own then I don’t think she will be safe. I doubt though that he could have taken her on his own and she agreed unless if he threatened to kill her.

“ why didn’t we ask him what business he has with amahle’s friend? ” Kane asks.

“ He doesn’t know that we know. We have to him think that he’s smarter than us so we can know what he’s hiding and planning.”

Karabo explains.

“ Ok. Where to now? ” Kane asks.

“ My house.” I say.

“ Drop me off first. I have a meeting with the other bishops in an hour. I have to get ready.”

“ what is the meeting about? ” Kane asks.

“ you really want to know? ”

“ hell no. No offence Bishop Mpendulo.” Kane says and we laugh.

“ You haven’t been to church in a while. You have to attend at least once a month.”

“ I don’t know how you do it bro. We used to attend church every Sunday ever since we were born until we were 25 cause we just couldn’t do it anymore but you... . You juggle both worlds like it’s nothing man. I don’t wish to be you. Doesn’t it get hard sometimes? ”

Kane is one person that speaks his mind. He tells you the truth when you want to hear it or not.

“ it does get hard sometimes like when I have to fast and meditate then I’ll be thinking about all the wicked things I would like to do to a sub while she’s on the cross naked and... .. ”

“ oh please stop. I don’t want to hear anymore ” Kane says and we laugh..

Advertisement

serif">“ let me know what Jacob finds and don’t disturb my meeting unless someone is dying except for our mother.”

“ She called me.” Kane says.

“ And? ” I ask him.

“ I let it ring then blocked her number. ”

“ she’s not going to stop until we hear what she has to say. ” I tell them.

“ have you two ever thought that maybe she’s the reason why we are so fucked up?. Why the three of us like a certain type of woman and stay the fuck away from a woman that resembles anything that our mother has? Well I do. I don’t want her anywhere near me. We give her money, we finance her lifestyle then what more does she fucken want huh?! I’ll talk to you later. He gets out of the car and goes to his house. We drive away.

Karabo might be a Bishop and preaches the word of God cause that’s how we grew up but the hate he has for our mother is never going to

stop or go away. She has out us through things no child was supposed to.

“ He’s never going to forgive her ” Kane says.

“ I don’t blame him. You know Kane there are times when I think about how to kill our mother. A slow painful death.”

“ and I was thinking that therapy helped him, helped us but who are we kidding. That shit did nothing. I hate my life sometimes when I think about those times.”

“ I know bro. Drive carefully I don’t want to die ” I tell him.

“ how the hell does he live with so many people? ” Kane asks paying attention to the road.

“ You know he hates being alone ”

“ I know but one helper is fine. Three guards are fine but more than that is crazy.”

“ you are going to need protection in Cape Town Kane. We will be moving into someone’s territory and running the most elite and very private sex club. That comes with a lot of enemies so please be aware who you surround yourself with there.”

“ I only trust my brothers and my men. What are going to do with the warehouse in Middleberg? ”

“ the person who was running it when you weren’t there will take over.” He nods.

“ how is amahle. Really? ”

“ she’s young, very stubborn and she’s beautiful too. I don’t think she likes being told what to do and that makes me want to punish her you know. Sometimes I think she’ll be a good submissive and other times I think she’ll question everything I will ask her to do. ”

“ but like you said she’s young and doesn’t have that much life experience and then there’s you and you want to tame her and make her to be this person that you want. She might agree now but then later hate you for what she has become. Why don’t you let it happen naturally.” Kane says. I sigh.

“ I don’t think I can do that. There’s something about her that just draws me and makes my dominant side come out in full force. I have never felt it before Kane and I don’t know how to explain it.”

“ That sounds to me like it’s love.” He says.

“ now how did I know you were going to say that?. I hardly know the girl for me to be feeling that way. Hell no. I don't live her.” he chuckles.

“ I think it is love and you are just in denial. Lets say phakiso really took her and he has his hands on her right now and you got to saw it. What will you do? ”

“ I'll kill him cause he'll be touching her for all the wrong reasons. To hurt her and piss me off.”

“ did you see how he was smirking and said when you told him amahle is missing? ”

“ He's no two strikes. Third strike well... We'll be having a funeral at home. ”

“ as long as our grandparents don't find out it was us who's smoked him.”

“ they won't brother ”

We step out of the car and go inside my house. Calvin is paying up and down in the living room and he looks like he was crying.

“ Calvin? ” he bursts into tears. Kane rolls his eyes and I sigh. “ Sit down. It's okay Calvin. Well find her. Don't cry ”

“ Sir. That man who was here is scary and he made it seem like I knew where amahle ran to and I helped her. I swear sir I would never betray you.” He sniffs. I sit down next to him and give him my handkerchief.

Calvin is like not my son but my little brother that I really care about. He used to come to my office building every Monday dropping his CV off even when they receptionist told him that the company was hiring but he never gave up. I would watch him in my office whenever he came and he never stop for three months. He came early and was always dressing short like he's going to work and go to his corner office. I liked that about him. He became the main talk on my building and his persistence paid off one Monday morning when I came in and he was in the reception area.

He saw me, greeted me and gave me his CV. I asked him if he were to work here what will he bring and his answer wasn't what I expected. He said “ whatever you need sir. I'm that man for the job. You can trust me.” And I said to him follow me and he was hired and proved

himself better than Mandisa. He's been working for me for three years and I've never regretted my decision to hire him.

"Jacob was doing his job Calvin. He just wanted to know what really happened. Don't take it too personal."

"Ok sir. Uhm Miss Janet took the things we brought sir. He's your card." I take it.

"Your car is at work?"

"yes sir."

"ok. I'll have my driver drive you home. Then he will pick you up in the morning again. He's outside."

"thank you sir." he gets up, takes his bag and leaves.

"This has been one long ass day man." He can say that again.

"let's get something to drink." Jane comes in the living room.

"Good afternoon Sirs. Dinner will be ready in 15 minutes"

"Thank you Jane." She leaves.

The door bell rings and Jane walks back to open for the person. She comes back with Jacob. We shake hands and sit down.

"Drink?"

"I'm good." He says.

"what have you got for us." I ask him.

"not good news I'm afraid." My heart skips a beat and I begin to think about all worse scenarios that happened to Amahle.

"Did you find her?"

"I was chasing a lead before you called and told me about amahle missing." Kane and I look at each other. "Her brother is dead. His body was discovered yesterday at a road close to Balfour. They said he was left at the side of road and cars passing by saw a body of a man and called the police." Oh my God.

"Did they say what happened to him?" I ask him

"my contact said he has bruises around his hands and knees and it looked like he was held somewhere then was shit multiple times.

They don't know if he was tortured or not."

"My God. Do they have any living family members or it was just the two of them?" Kane asks.

"They have an uncle that lives at their parents house with his wife and two daughters. I sent that uncle a message that his nephew is at

the morgue in Balfour with Bishop's permission of course. They stayed with him after their parents died but then the uncle chase them out of the house from what I discovered and they went to live with their grandmother until she passed away and then mduduzi found them a place to stay and they have been living there since."

"Thank you Jacob." Amahle is going to be devastated.

"have you found any leads about amahle?" Kane asks.

"The footage from the boutique revealed her walking out with another woman and it was her friend. Calvin was in his phone when they walked out and they did it quickly."

"So they followed them to the mall and phakiso is the one behind everything." I say.

"that fucker betrayed us. He could be the one who murdered her brother." Kane says.

"Everything points to him. He's behind everything." Jacob confirms.

"of phakiso killed him then it means he killed him to shut him up so her brother won't rat him or maybe he killed him cause the brother wouldn't tell him where he hid the diamonds and now he's using amahle's friend to find out if Amahle really has no idea where he hid the diamonds or maybe she knows and will tell her friend."

"I think k so too."

"He has always been a selfish bastard. You just didn't see it or maybe you did but you just didn't want to believe it. What do we do now?" Kane asks.

"if she already knows then she has to go to her parents house and prepare for the funeral. We will go tomorrow to offer our condolences." I tell them. "I'll ask Calvin to call Hr and find out if he had any life policies and funeral cover then we'll take it from there." They nod.

I wonder how she is feeling right now cause I'm sure she already knows. This is going to be really hard on her and since they chased them out at their parents house. I wonder how the uncle is going to behave towards her. I'm worried about her cause she's surrounded by people she can't trust. Especially that friend of hers.

I call Calvin and let him know that amahle is safe and tell him to call the people at hr and find out about Amahle's brother. The only people

I can trust to be there for her are Calvin and Jane. They have to be there to and be my eyes and ears and make sure that amahle is okay. I know I'm the last person she's going to want to see but I have to be there for her whether she likes it or not. She'll just have to out up with me them and all of us.

CHAPTER 8

[PREVIOUS](#) PAGE 10 [NEXT](#)

Advertisement

I kept tossing and turning all night worried about Amahle. I know by now she k it's that her brother is dead because Jacob called me at 5 am that a car came and took Amahle and her friend to her parents house. She's there now and I wonder how the situation is and how she's handling everything. Kane didn't leave last night he slept here cause he also wants to be there when we go offer our condolences. I don't know how she's going on react when we get there. She might blame and accuse us of killing her brother.

One thing I know for sure is phakiso has a hand in her brother's death. It all makes sense as to how her brother would suddenly go missing when he was the one watching the place the whole time. Which means he told him that we are coming then pretend to help him by hiding him. Her brother could have been watching us the whole entire time. Phakiso maybe promised him that nothing will happen to his sister and her brother believed him. It makes sense cause no man will go into hiding and leave their vulnerable sister behind. This was phakiso plan all along and when I took her with us maybe that changed his plan cause he wasn't expecting it.

" Excuse me Sir? " Jane says. I look at her. " Miss Jess is here." Already?

" bring her in. " she leaves. Jess walks in and she has a bruise in her right eye. I smile..

" Morning sir." She sits.

" Morning Jessica." Kane comes in and greets us and begins to fill his plate.

" what happened to your eye? " Kane asks Jess.

" Pamela took a swing at me when I wasn't watching "

“ you’re going soft Jess. Where is she? ” I ask her

“ At your old house Sir. I have my guys watching ”

“ Keep her there and she mustn’t talk to anyone. Thank you Jess”

“ thank you sir.” She gets up and leaves.

“ what are you going to do to her? ”

“ I have an idea.”

“ ok bro. When is karabo coming? ”

“ anytime from now then we’ll be on our way.”

“ what if she has told them that we took her against her will and they chase us out? ” Kane asks.

“ Who in the hell will chase us out. Especially when we are with karabo? And Amahle didn’t tell them anything. I know she won’t. ”

“ so much faith on someone you don’t love ” he says quoting the word love. I shake my head.

“ shut up Kane.” He chuckles.

Calvin walks in the house and he looks like he hasn’t slept and that makes me worried. He greets us then sits down and sighs.

“ Sir I was with HR and requested the information you asked for. They gave this papers this morning. Mduduzi had a life policy of R50000 and a funeral cover if R30000 which he made his sister his one and only beneficiary. They go a call this morning from a man claiming to be Amahle ‘s uncle and asking about mduduzi’s money. Hr didn’t give him any information and they only told him that Amahle is the only one who has a right to that information.”

“ That uncle seems like he’s a problem and he might force amahle to want that money for the funeral. Calvin I need you to take a few days off and pack your clothes for a few days. I need you to be with amahle and make sure that her family is not taking advantage of her. Be my eyes and ears Calvin. Jane will come with you too.”

“ really sir? I would like that.”

“ go to your place and pack. We will pick you up ”

“ ok sir.” He leaves.

“ Jane pack a bag for a week. You’re going with Calvin to Amahke9 place.”

“ yes sir ”

I could be doing all of this for her and maybe she freaks out or tells us to leave her a line she doesn't need our help. I'm hoping though she won't say that and maybe be grateful that we want to help.

“ we have to see what that uncle is really about. ”

“ I think Jacob has already done that. Karabo will tell us what Jacob found out about her uncle.”

“ Yeah you're right. ”

THREE HOURS LATER.

Our brother came and picked up Calvin and we left with four cars. One was for Jane and Calvin and a driver, second one for Jacob and his two men. Third one was our Brother's bodyguards cause he always travels with them and the fourth one was for us and one bodyguard. Jacob was the leading the way cause he knows where amahle's home is. I wonder where phakiso is hiding.

Amahle's home is beautiful. Her parents must have been working well to build a beautiful home but they why would the uncle chase them out?. There are people in the yard going up and down and some are just sitting outside. I don't see amahle anywhere. A bus filled with members from our church arrives too.

“ How did they know we are coming here? ” I ask Karabo

“ I told them.” Karabo says. What?

“ what exactly did you say brother? ”

“ I told them that your girlfriends brother passed away.” He steos outside the car after saying that and Kane chuckles. What he means is he told our grandparents about amahle. My God why did karabo do that

“ I knew I'm not the only who saw that you feel something for miss Amahle. Our soon to be Makoti ” he says laughing.

“ do you realize that since he told him then that means our grandparents and parents know. Koko knows oh God! ” he laughs.

“ oh she's going to fuss all over her. I can't wait. You're fucked! ” I am fucked.

“ come out you two. We are waiting for you.” Karabo says.

“ I don't really like you right now Mpendulo ” I whisper to him.

“ Oh but you will thank me one day. Come.”

It's Deacon Nkabinde, Reverend Yeni and my brother Bishop Mpendulo (Karabo) Ntanzi leading in the front with us behind them and church choir. The whole yard has gone quiet as we walk in singing " kulungile baba" We grew up in church and so singing is like second nature to us. A woman leads us to the front door and we get in singing until we are in the bedroom. We sing two more songs until we stop and my brother leads us in prayer. We open our eyes and my eyes don't see amahle anywhere in the room. Where is she?. My brother opens the Bible and reads a version from the book of Revelation 21:4. And they preach after a little offering words of comfort. The uncles eyes look like they are about to jump out of his socket.

" Gumbi Family we are here to offer our condolences to the family. I'm sure you're all surprised to see us here.....uhm before we continue. I see that everyone is here but we don't see Mduduzi's younger sister Amahle Where is she? " they look at each other. A woman whispers to another girl and the girl stands up and walks out. We keep quiet and wait until she comes back. What I see breaks my heart. Amahle looks like a mess. She looks likes she was making fire cause her hands are dark and her dress has ash. Her face has marks of dried tears like she was crying. I am so mad right now. I don't understand why she is there outside not here. Karabo looks at me and I know he's telling me to come down. Why didn't the girl allow her to wash her hands and change her dress?. She sits down on the floor on the mat and looks down. I doubt she saw us cause her whole head has been down.

" Thank you for getting her. I am Bishop Mpendulo Ntanzi from The Core Anglican Church and with me is our Deacon Nkabinde, Reverend Yeni and my brothers and our church choir. Not only am I a Bishop but I'm also a business man. UMduduzi was working for our company when the unfortunate happened. We are very sorry for your loss Gumbi family and especially you Amahle. Know that your brother loved you very much and I know that he didn't want to leave you but God had other plans for him. He is in a better place now and he is with your parents and they all watching over you. You are not alone Amahle. " Amahle's head shot up when she heard my brothers

voice and when her eyes found mine and tears streamed down her face.

“.... We as the church offer our services to you if you would have us. Again we sorry for your loss and may the Lord’s like shine upon you all.” Amen we say. We sing and the choir begins to leave the room and so do we. When we get outside a man I assume is Amahle’s uncle comes to us and asks us to come in the house. My brothers and I walk back in the house and we sit down in the living room. I see Calvin, Jane and Amahle walking to another direction of the house.

“ what an honour to meet all of you. On behalf of the family I would like to thank you for coming here. Thank you and it will be our honour for you Bishop to lead the service.”

“ The honour is ours Mlotshwa. This is our offering to the family for the whole funeral. We think it will be more than enough.” The uncles eyes light up.

“ Thank you very much. This will help. ”

“ Before I give you this Sambulo. We want you to know that the money from mduduzi's work will only be given to amahle only not you. You will not want the money from her. This offering is enough to take care if everything you need for her brother to have a dignified funeral. Do we understand each other? ”

“ yes definitely Bishop. His death was a shock to my loving nephew. I raised these kids when their parents past away and it has been hard and his death has hurt me the most. I will make sure that my loving nephew gets the respected funeral he deserves ” The nerve of this man.

“ right now I’m not speaking as a Bishop but as a business man. Inside this envelope is a R100000. Use it wisely.” He gives him the envelope and sambulo takes it.

“ Thank you Mr Ntanzi.” he says.

“ we have to talk about something else too but I don’t know if this is the right time.” My brother says and I know where he’s going.

“ feel free sir.”

“ I am the eldest in the family and when I speak I mostly speak for everyone in my family and my brothers especially. I don’t want to get involved in your family’s business and how you run things here but

we saw that amahle was working when she was supposed to be mourning for her brother... ..” my brother stops talking when a girl comes and puts tea and scones in the table. Kane looks at the tea.

“ uhm excuse me. Who made this? ” Kane asks her smiling.

“ it’s me. ” the girl smiles back. And looks at me.

“ Can you ask amahle to ask Jane to make us tea. Please. ” I add. Her face falls. She takes the whole tray and storms out.

“ is there something wrong with the tea my daughter made? ” oh?

“ there isn’t sir. We only drink tea made by people we know and trust. It’s a family thing and I’m sorry if we are offending you ” I explain.

“ Oh no I understand.”

“ As I was saying. We would like it of amahle was only focusing on the mourning of her brother because she’s really special to us. To my brother especially. So we would like you to make sure she’s taken care of cause we do want to have a relationship with this family. It would be a shame if our future sister in-law is being mistreated in her own fathers home. You get where I’m going Mlotshwa? ”

Advertisement

serif">“ yes sir I do. I’ll make sure she taken care of and doesn’t do any work.” I don’t trust this following at all.

“ I’m glad we understand each other. We will be on our way now. We’ll come back on Friday so we can go and fetch his body at the morgue. Has he been transferred here... .. ”

“ Yes sir. Amahle gave us all the details.”

“ I guess we will be on our way then. Again we are sorry for your condolences.”

“ Please have some tea.”

“ thank you but we have to be on our way now. We have people waiting for us outside.” We shake hands and leave the house.

I wonder where all these people came from cause the yard wasn’t this full when we came in. We walk out of the yard, walk to our car and people are starrng. We are used to it but having their eyes on us in this situation feels wrong. We stand outside the car when we see phakiso's car coming. I don’t know if he’s stupid or what but he continues to drive until he stops outside the gate where amahle's friend steps out of it and walks to the house. We look at each other

and laugh. His car moves again and it's then he sees us cause he stops in the middle of the street.

“ I wonder how he's going to explain this one ”

“ we won't do anything. I want to be there for amahle during this difficult time cause she needs me even though she doesn't know it.” I tell them.

“ yeah we will deal with him after the funeral. By the time were done with him. He'll be sorry.” Karabo says.

“ my favourite cousins. I am so glad I caught you before you left. Why didn't you tell me you were coming here?. ” phakiso's says.

“ But you're here now and you came to drop your friend off ant amahle's home. Wow cousin! You never cease to amaze us.” I tell him.

“ no I came at your house and Jane told me that you came here and I drove here too. Amahle's friend asked for a lift and I gave her one. ” he lies.

“ What was she doing at your apartment then? ” he fails to answer and looks down.

“ leave us cousin while were still nice to you.” Kane says. He quickly runs to his car and drives off.

“ you can leave. I need to talk to amahle ”

“ Jacob's men will stay and watch them. All three of them will be safe. Don't worry. ” karabo says.

“ thanks brother.”

“ I'm going back to Middleberg. I'll see you on Friday. My soon to be Makoti misses me too ” he says laughing. “ guys who's driving me home? ” he says walking to the car.

“ Why did you tell her uncle that brother? ”

“ cause I know it's going to happen. Later.” We bro hug then he leaves. One of Jacob's men gives me car keys.

I walk to the car and call Calvin.

“ Hello Sir? ”

“ is amahle with you? ”

“ she is sir. Please hold on ” I hear whispers on background and I'm sure amahle doesn't want to talk to me.

“ hello? ” I close my eyes and breathout. Hearing her voice does something to me.

“ I’m outside. I mean can I see you? ” fuck why did I first say that.

“ my uncle said I mustn’t leave the yard. ”

“ don’t worry about him. Come outside. I’m in the white SUV alone ”

“ ok. I’m coming.” She says and hangs up. Ok I wasn’t expecting that she will agree to come.

I see her walking out and she has showered. She looks really beautiful. All eyes are on her as she walks. The only thing I don’t like is why is her head down but I understand she’s hurt and broken. She just lost the one person who was there for her and loved her unconditionally. She opens the door and climbs in. She smells beautiful too and I know this is all Jane and Calvin’s idea. I have to thank them. I start the car and drive off.

I continue to drive until I see a group of boys playing in a soccer field. I park there then step out of the car and go to her side. I open her door, take her hand and help her step out. I gently pull her to me then close the door. She looks up and her eyes are red and puffy. I cub her face and tears stream Her beautiful face. I lay her head on my chest with my hand, wrap and let her cry on me while I’m holding her. Her body shakes then she cries out and wraps her hands around me grabbing me really tight. I hold her tight to me and listen her crying out. I shouldn’t have brought her here but I also know taking her somewhere excluded was going to freak her out.

“ it’s okay baby. I’m right here. I’ve got you.” She continues to cry until she stops. I give her my handkerchief chief and she wipes her tears then blows her nose. “ let’s get in the back seat ” she nods and we get in.

“ I’m sorry about your brother. We heard last night what happened. I’m really sorry baby.”

“ I thought you are going to be mad at me.” She says.

“ I was but I’m not now. I know you didn’t leave at your own accord.”

“ I don’t know how phelisa found me. She told me she was sent by my brother and he was waiting for us in the car. I didn’t think of anything else and I left. When I got in the car it wasn’t my brother

who was there but phakiso. I tried to run but they wouldn't let me. Phakiso said he said my brother was at home and was waiting for me. They begged me until I agreed... .”

“ you don't have to explain amahle. That's not why I wanted to see you. I'm here for you not because I want to know what happened and I don't care. I'm just happy to know that you are safe and alive. Anything else can wait ”

“ I want to explain though.” She says looking at me. I thread our hands.

“ not now amahle. You have lost your brother in the most brutal way baby. Your brother was your everything and that is hard. I don't know how you're feeling cause I haven't lost my brothers but I know it's very hard for you. I am here for you and I'm not going anywhere. Whatever you need I'm here.”

“ You mean that? ” I kiss her forehead.

“ every word. Calvin and Jane will help you with everything. We gave your uncle one hundred thousand Rands for everything. If he tries to give you trouble or ask you for money call me cause we talked to him and he agreed that he will make sure you're nit bothered. Here's your phone.”

“ Thank you for bringing Calvin and Jane here. At least now I know there are people who has my back. I want to leave after the funeral.” She says.

“ What? Why cause you have to cleans and at least stay ten days there ama. It's your fathers house. ”

“ The same house he kicked us out of when he started to touch me inappropriately. ” amahle says and my blood, mind and heart all go black.

“ He molested you? ” my God

“ I told MDU and when he confronted him, he kicked us out of our home.” That mother fucker!

“ did you get counselling? ”

“ He didn't rape me. He would only touch me.” Maybe he should be touched too and see if he'll like it.

“ you still should have gotten counselling. Jane will stay with you until you have cleansed. We have men watching the three of you so you’re safe.”

“ thank you.” She says so fly.

“ you’re beautiful. ” she smiles. Wow I’m lucky today. I get a smile and a hug from her.

“ Thank you. Jane came with some of the clothes we bought. I love them ”

“ I didn’t say you look beautiful. I said you’re beautiful ” I wipe her tears.

“ Thank you. ” she looks down.

“ Don’t do that. Walking with your head down when you walk No. I know you’re mourning but put your head up. You have me, my brothers and my whole family. Walk tall baby even when you down and out but know that the world hasn’t knocked you down and it won’t as long as you’re with me. Will you do that for me? ”

“ ok... .. Ok I will sir.”

“ Don’t call me sir. ”

“ what do I call you? ”

“ I’m not sir right now. I am Kabelo.” She looks at me for a while like she’s studying me.

“ you can be mean at me at times and then get sweet I think. I...you confuse me. ”

“ You do the same to me.” She removes her hand in mine and I miss her soft hand in mine.

“ what is going on kabelo? ”

“ What you mean? ”

“ with us. This, now? ”

“ I don’t know amahle. You... ” my phone rings and it’s Calvin. “ It’s Calvin. I’m sure they are looking for you. Let’s go.”

We step out and I hug her again then drive her home.

CHAPTER 9

#NotEdited

It’s Friday night and we have just arrived at Ermelo. I have been talking to amahle the whole week and she would sound like everyday is getting harder and harder for her. I know Calvin said she’s doing

okay become he's keeping an eye on her but I just know that she's putting a brave face in front of everyone. My house was checked for bugs and camera's and indeed there were. Phakiso got his third strike when he lied about why he was dropping that girl. What we know for sure is that that girl knows more than we know and Kane will make sure he gets everything out of her. After the funeral and everything. Our cousin is in for a surprise. He will know that he shouldn't have gone against his cousins. Nothing and no one will save him.

"Are you sure this place is fine cause we could have driven to my house?" Kane asks me. We checked in at the hotel Calvin booked for us.

"I want to be closed to amahle. Driving to your house will take time from her."

"Can't believe you fell for her just like that. I mean it didn't take you long."

"Kane who said I have fallen for her?"

"Your actions said so. I have seen you with many girls but your eyes have never lit up they way they did when you first saw her. When I saw you looking at her that day we were here. I knew I was seeing the same thing our older brother was."

"when is he getting here?" I'm ignoring everything he has just said.

"Oh you're going to do that?" he asks laughing.

"leave me alone Kane" he huckles. "let's go and see amahle."

"does she know you're coming?"

"She doesn't. She thinks I'll be here tomorrow morning."

"Has her uncle been behaving?" we get in the and drive to her parents house.

"she said so and Calvin confirmed it."

"What are you going to do with her uncle?"

I told them about what happened to amahle and Karabo was pissed but I will decide what happens to him. I have to see what kind of man he really is before I find the perfect punishment for him. What he really deserves.

When we get there, there are so many cars and people moving in and out of the yard. I don't want her to walk to the car alone when there are so many men here. I park the car then step out of it.

“ we are not going in that yard.” Kane says.

“ fool we are going to stand outside the gate while we wait for amahle to come out.” He chuckles. Kane is annoying me.

I take out my phone and call her as we're walking towards the gate and moving between people who are drinking alcohol I assume. Her phone rings and I think it's ringing somewhere here outside. I look at the time and it's 9 pm. I hang up and call her again and her phone is ringing outside the yard. I follow the sound and there she is with her friend and some other boys and girls. I count how many girls and they are just three of them surrounded by guys. Where is Calvin and Jane?. We stand there and I watch her looking at her phone then she debates if she should answer it or not. She says something to them then turns but one boy hugs her and the other boys hug her too. I take a deep breath and close my eyes then open them again and she's walking away typing something on her phone. I call her again for the third time and she doesn't answer my call and I am a little disappointed.

“ They look like they know each other bro. Maybe they are people she worked with or grew up with and they were just comforting her.”

“ They why isn't she picking up her phone?. I came all the way here to see her and comfort her but... ”

“ but nothing bro. Look she went back to the house. Maybe she got scared that you'll call Calvin and he will tell you she's outside.”

“ Don't speak for her like you know her. ” he raises his hands up in surrender.

I call Calvin.

“ good evening sir.”

“ Hi Calvin. Where's amahle? ”

“ she's here sir.”

“ come with her outside.” I hang up.

“ Calm down. You're going to scare her. Right now you look like an angry bear.” He says chuckling.

They walk to us and she now has a cardigan on her body. That doek on her head looks beautiful on her. Fuck!. I shake my head.

“ Good evening ” they both say.

“ Calvin let's talk ” Kane says and they go to stand a few feet away from us.

“ How are you? ”

“ I’m good and you? ” ok she’s good.

“ what’s wrong with your phone? ”

“ Nothing is wrong with it. ”

“ Why were you not answering my calls? ” She looks down.

“ My phone was on silent ” I chuckle in disbelief

“ I have never lied to you amahle so don’t start lying to me now. I can see you’re good like you just said. Have a good night.”

I turn and walk to the car. Everything in my body tells me to look back and go hug her like I wanted but I ignore that feeling and get in the car. What the fuck am I doing here with a girl who clearly doesn’t want to be anywhere near me?. There are so many women who give anything to be my submissive but no! Here I am. A 36 year old running after a 23 year old. What the fuck is wrong with me?!. Kane gets in the car.

“ What happened? You just left her there? ”

“ Take me to the hotel ”

“ what? ” I look at him. “ ok fine. I’ll take you. ”

He drives us to hotel and parks outside.

“ I’m going to drink. I’ll see you in the morning. ” he says.

“ be safe last born.”

“ Sure KB ”

I step out of the car and walk in the reception area. I sign in and go to my room. I take my clothes off and go to shower. Maybe I should let this whole thing about amahle being my submissive go and forget about her. She’s too young, stubborn and she lies. How will we make this thing work when she lies about the littlest things like answering her phone?. I finish showering then walk out, Dry myself and get in bed. I set the alarm for 4 am and I’m about to switch the lights off when someone knocks on the door. That someone is definitely Kane. What does he want?.

“ What do you want Kane? ”

“ open the damn door ”

I get up and walk to the door. I unlock it and pull it open and it’s not Kane who’s at the door. It’s amahle.

“ what are you doing here? ” her eyes are on my chest and they move lower and she gasps and looks behind me. Does she think I have someone here? “ come in. ” she hesitates then walks in and I close the door. She sits on the chair and I just stand there and watch her.

“ Uhm can you put some clothes on? ”

“ you didn’t come here to discuss my nudity. Talk.”

“ I’m sorry ” she says

“ What are you sorry for? ”

“ Lying to you about my phone and ignoring your calls. I’m sorry I lied to you.”

“ you’re forgiven. Is that all? ” She nods. “ Kane will take you back home then.”

“ he left.” I know what he’s doing and he’s pissing me off.

“ I’ll call him to celebrate and collect you ”

“ please don’t. ” She hasn’t looked at me at all.

“ Amahle they will see that you’re at home and they would start wondering where you are.”

“ They won’t care of I’m there or not. ”

“ amahle you have to be there for your brother ”

“ Calvin and Jane are also here in Kane’s room. We will leave in the morning.” What? Kane is in so much trouble.

“ Ok. You will leave in the morning then.” I walk to the door and open it.

“ Kabelo wait? ”

“ What’s wrong now? ” she looks at me and swallows.

“ I want to stay. ” I look at her and raise my eyebrow at her. “ Here. With you.”

“ why do you want to stay here with me? ” she looks away.

“ because I... . I want you to hold me. ” she says softly.

I close the door and lock it. I walk towards her and stand in front of her.

“ look at me.” She does.

“ You want me to hold you how?. Like how those little boys were hugging you?” she gasps then shuts her mouth. “ Is that how you want me to hold you? ” she shakes her head.

“ it was just innocent hugs. I swear.”

“ Take off your clothes. ” her hands shake as she takes off her cardigan and dress revealing her beautiful breasts. “ all of them.” She moves her fingers to her underwear and drags it down her legs and steps out of it.

She stands there looking beautiful and shy. I can see she badly wants to cover herself. I take a step closer and her body trembles. She’s small compared to my frame even though she has a full figured body. Hips, breasts and that ass. I could pick her up, she would wrap her legs around me and I would fuck her hard against the wall. If she were to look down below my waist she would see how painfully hard I am for her.

“ Go to the bathroom and wash off that alcohol smell and cheap perfume of those boys. The bathroom is that way.”

“ thank you.” She says and walks to the bathroom.

I go back to bed and close my eyes. I can be a gentleman give her my shirt to wear and let her sleep on the bed but I’ve never been a gentleman so I won’t. This is going to be an experience for both of us. The water stops running in the bathroom. I listen to her shuffling in there and it takes her 15 minutes to finally emerge from the bathroom. She walks in and stops. She came here to me so I can comfort her but she didn’t bring any sleepwear?. I chuckle to myself.

“ come to bed ama.”

She walks to bed and drops the towel. I pull open the comforter and she gets in smelling like me. She turns her back to me and pulls the comforter to her neck.

“ what time must you be at home? ”

“ At 5 am.”

“ Ok. Good night amahle. ”

“ good night kabelo.”

Her body is stiff. I could touch her but that might scare her off. I close my eyes and let her be. I put my hand on her shoulder over the comforter and she sniffs.

“ amahle? ” she sniffs again then turns facing me and I pull her to my embrace and comfort her that through her tears. “ let it all out. It’s ok. I’m right here.”

“ It hurts so much ”

“ I know it does baby. I know ”

“ why did he leave me then? Why! Why!... ”

I hold her as she sobs comforting her until she stops and falls asleep on my arms. I listen to her until her breathing gets even then move her to sleep comfortably. Hearing her cry like that upset me cause someone did this intentionally. Jacob is also taking long to find out what really happened to her brother but what we are all sure of is phakiso has a hand in everything. Whomever he's working with is fucked like him. I watch her sleeping until I also fall asleep.

She shifts, she keeps squeezing her thighs. She's breathing hard but she's trying not to make noise or move a lot. I'll be damned!. In all my life since I was born and slept next to a woman. I have never caught a woman masturbating on my bed and not from my command. Amahle is a lot of things. I didn't know if she's sleepover or she's knows what she's doing. Maybe she hopes she'll be finished by the time I'm awake.

I slowly lift my head to see her properly and she has her eyes closed. The comforter is down to her stomach exposing her beautiful skin, hard dark nipples and hand between her legs. Never in my wildest dreams did I ever think of will wake up to a sight like this. Amahle is full of many things and behind that innocence I know there's a side of her that wants to be awakened and I can't wait. She bites her lips and I know she's going to cum soon. I can watch her until she's done but that's not going to happen.

“ amahle? ” her body goes still but her chest is moving so fast. Oh she's near. I pull her hand out and put my leg on top of hers to prevent her from squeezing her thighs. “ open your eyes and loom at me.” She shakes her head no. I chuckle. “ Come on. Open them.”

“ no.” I smile..

“ don't be embarrassed. I loved watching you play with yourself ”

“ I wasn't doing that.. I was sleeping.”

“ Time to wake up and shower. Come.” I get off the bed and her eyes go wide. “ the way you're looking at me you'd swear you've never seen a naked man.”

She looks away and follows me to the bathroom. I open the toilet bowl and pee. “ what? ” she's looking at me.

“ You couldn’t wait until I was done? ”

“ Why? It’s not like I’m taking a dump. ” she shakes her head. “ oh amahle? ” she looks at me. “ don’t touch yourself again. Do you understand? ”

“ I do. ” she says after some time.

“ if you do. There will be punishment and you won’t like it. ” she swallows and gets in the shower.

I let her shower and wait for her. I call Kane and he tells me that they are waiting for amahle. She comes out and wears her clothes and she’s sad.

“ it’s going to be okay. I’ll be with you. Just come to me when it gets too much okay? ” she nods. “ hey don’t cry. They are waiting for you. ” She nods. I pull her to my arms and hug her tight. I kiss her cheek and walk her out to Kane’s room and they leave. I head to my room and prepare for the funeral. Kane comes to collect me after he’s done too and tells me that karabo is already at amahle’s house.

He drives us to her house and the whole street is full of cars. We end up parking down at the street corner.

“ Are we late? ” I hate being late.

“ no we’re not. Jacob and his men are here. Apparently amahle’s uncle has given instructions that we should be seated at the front. ”

“ What’s wrong with that man. Why would he do that?. We are not even family or close friends. Hell we have had a hand in mduduzi death because a member of our family did that. I hope you told him we are not seating there. ”

“ I told him that we are not those kind of people. We are here cause we want to help not to be praised or treated like special guests yet. ” He looks at me and laughs.

“ the reason you are like this is because karabo dropped you on your head when you were little and you turned out like this. You are annoying. ”

“ you too Mr I’m always serious and never smiles. Amahle will deal with you for me. Oh hell. No! ” I follow his eyes where they are looking at and I am surprised.

“ They are here. Why would karabo do this to me? ”

“ how the hell did he explain the whole reason we are here? ” Kane asks.

“ how would I know and I asked him nicely to not tell our grandparents.” I can see where they have placed her brother’s body since he can’t enter the yard.

We walk to where our family is standing and surrounded by security detail. Our grandparents, Parents meaning our dad and step mom but she’s our mother to us, our uncles and their wives are there including phakiso and his parents and some of our cousins.

We greet them and I go to kiss my gran's cheek. My mom’s cheek and shake my grandfather’s hand and dad’s and the rest of my uncles and aunt. Koko looks at me and takes my hand.

“ I can’t believe we had hear from your cousin that your girlfriend brother passed away Kabelo.” Koko says. I am so going to kill phakiso.

“ which cousin Koko? ” kane asks her brushing her cheek and she gently smiles. God I love this woman.

“ bathong phakiso of course.” I look at the mother fucker and he smiles at us.

“ Well just like he said koko. She’s just a girlfriend and nothing more ” I don’t know why I’m lying to my grandmother. God forgive me.

“ she must mean something to you for your brother to involve the church and offer to lead the service.” Our mom says.

“ maybe it’s time she becomes more than just a girlfriend. It’s a sign baby don’t you think?. We are all already here supporting a girlfriend we have never met and almost the whole family is here. We need this family to grow.” Koko says. I look at her. “ Ok I know this is not the time but I want to meet her before we leave.”

“ Ok Koko. ” she smiles.

“ Where’s Bishop? ”

“ they are inside praying oh here they come.”

THREE HOURS LATER.

The service was hard but my brother did handled it amazing. Seeing amahle breaking down talking about how she grew up, how much her brother loved and protected her and how she feels like she’s alone

now in this world will always stay with. It took everything in me to not go to her and hold her. I'm thankful that Calvin was there holding her hand. I think those two are going to be close. I haven't seen here since we got back from the cemetery and that is 30 minutes ago. She could be helping around the house or sleeping but I don't know why I feel uneasy.

"Have you seen amahle since we got back?" I ask Jacob.

"let me ask my men." he stands up and walks to the house talking on the phone.

"what's wrong?" karabo asks.

"I have this uneasy feeling about amahle. I haven't seen her since we came back" he frowns. Jacob comes back.

"she's not in the house. No one has seen her. My man says she saw her getting in a car and thought it's was coming here."

"Where's Calvin and Jane?"

"They are in the house." Jacob answers.

"She was riding with the family but she's not here?" I look around for phakiso and I don't see him.

"where is phakiso?" karabo asks him.

"he's here eating."

"Kabelo calm down. She might be somewhere alone in the house. Maybe she needs some time alone." Karabo suggests

"what's wrong" our dad asks.

"kabelo thinks amahle is missing. His girlfriend"

"I think of know where she is but keep looking for her Jacob. I will call you if I find her. Give me your keys."

"I'm coming with you." Karabo says

"You're still needed here. I will call you."

I take the keys from Jacob and run out of the tent and drive to where she lived with her brother. I park the car and run to the yard. I knock and knock calling her name. I look at the key hole for a key and it is there. I grab the door handle and push the door and it opens. I close the door and walk in and out hear her soft sobs. Thank God she's here. I follow her sounds and she's on the bed laying down crying holding her brother's t-shirt to her face. I take off my shoes and get on

the bed and pull her to me. I hate seeing her like this. Phakiso will pay.

CHAPTER 10

[PREVIOUS](#) PAGE 13 [NEXT](#)

Advertisement

She holds me tight as she pours out her grief on my chest. I so badly want to take away the pain she's feeling right now but I cant. The only thing I can do now is to be there for her and help her through her grieving period and put the rest of the stuff on hold and focus on her. She has fallen asleep now and my shirt is wet. I gently move her to sleep comfortably. I slowly get off the bed and cover her with a blanket that's on the chair folded. I take off my suit jacket, wear my shows and leave the bedroom. I am not surprised to find Kane, Calvin and Jane. I thought the whole family would be here since they sometimes can cross boundaries. There's food on the table too. They must have brought food from the funeral.

“ Thanks for bringing the food. She's going to wake up hungry.”

“ How is she? ” Kane asks.

“ it's going to take some time for her to heal.”

“ sir we came with her clothes. We found her cousin going through her things. ” Jane says.

“ didn't her uncle ask where she is?”

“ no sir they didn't. We told him are coming here to look for her and. He didn't care. ” Calvin informs us.

“ The funeral is over and so is the act of pretending like he cares. ” Kane says. Hmmm.

“ I'm going to make a call.” I step out of the house and call her uncle's number.

“ hello? ” he answers

“ Gumbi unjani? ”

“ Oh I'm fine Ntanzu despite the circumstances. Today has been hard for all of us. ”

“ especially for amahle. ”

“ Yes, yes of course my poor niece.”

“ I was calling to ask if maybe she’s needed for the cleansing? ”

“ yes she is. We have decided to have it this afternoon so she can leave cause sure she wants this to be over as soon as possible.” Or he does.

“ Do you know where she is now? ”

“ Uhm ”

“ You really don’t care about your niece. You haven’t even noticed that she’s not there with the rest of you.”

“ my daughter wanted to come and look for her but amahle's friends d said she left with you so I knew she was safe. ” he says with his voice a little shaky.

“ I’ll bring her once she’s done packing her brothers clothes.”

“ please do.” I hang up.

Now that the funeral is over, it is pretty clear that amahle’s uncle wants to be done with her. I don’t know if it’s the guilt of what he was doing to her and now seeing her is making him uncomfortable because he doesn’t know if amahle will say something or not. Fact is he won’t know what hit him.

A car stops outside the gate and her fake friend steps out. I saw that man at the funeral. He must be her father. He raises his hand greeting me and I do the same then he drives off. The girl walks in with a huge smile on her face.

“ Hi. We haven’t been properly introduced. I am Phelisa. Amahle’s best friend ” she sticks her hand out for me to shake it.

“ What are you doing with phakiso? ”

“ what?... Uhm I didn’t know that you two knew each other ”

“ I asked you what are you doing with him? ”

“ he’s a friend... well maybe more than ” stupid girl doesn’t realise that much cousin used her to do his dirty work.

“ was it your idea or his to take amahle from the boutique? ” she looks down. “

“ he said amahle reached out to him and said he must find me so we can get her out of there because you are holding her against her will.”

I look at her and I know she’s lying. She’s covering for him and I wonder what my cousin promised her.

“ Why did you say amahle is a gold digger? ” she looks away

“ Well I didn’t say those exact words but I mean... . ”

“ Listen here little girl and listen to me very carefully. You will get on the house and say your goodbyes to amahle then you will leave and never ever contact her again. You will stay the hell away from amahle ”

“ who the fuck are you to tell me to stay away from my best friend? ”

“ oh sis you don’t want to know. You see right now you’re talking with the nice KB. He’s calm cause he’s worried about his woman and he’s asking you nicely. So if I were you I would listen to him and do what he says. Stay the fuck away from amahle and phakiso. ”

“ Or else what huh?. Phakiso told me that you are bullies. All three of you have always bullied him!. ” kane and I share a look. We both know now that phakiso is fucked cause he mentioned our names to this girl.

“ the three of us? ” Kane asks her.

“ Yes! You, him and B... .. ”

“ Shut the fuck up! You will not say my brother’s name or speak of it.” I warn her.

“ oh please I can say the fuck I want to say!. You can’t tell me to shut up!. Who the fuck do you think you are....”

She doesn’t see me lifting my hand and wrap my fingers around her throat and squeeze tight. She looks at me shocked and tries to pull my hand away from her throat. Kane blocks her view so people won’t see me choking her.

“If I ever hear that you said anything about amahle or what phakiso told you about me and my brothers to anyone at all? You will be sorry do you understand me? ” her face goes pale.

“ you’re the one who’ll be sorry if you don’t let go of me now!

Amahle? ” she says trying to talk and filling her lungs with oxygen. I squeeze my fingers a little tighter and her eyes her teary and red. “ please stop I can’t breathe... ”

“ You don’t want to know what I will do to you if you don’t listen to what I’m telling. Stay the fuck away from amahle and my cousin! ”

“ Ok... . Ok I will... .. ”

“ Kabelo? ” amahle calls my name. I let go of the girl and she almost falls but Kane catches her.

I turn around and she walks out of the door to us. Her eyes though are not on me but on her friend. Her face is hard and she's not looking pleased to see her friend or maybe she saw me chocking her and she's not happy about it.

“ what's going on? ” she asks.

“ Oh amahle you won't believe what he just did to me... . ” she shoves off Kane 's hands from her. “ look at what he did to me! He was choking me amahle. This man is crazy and you have to stay away from him.” She says faking her tears. “ Phakiso was right about him amahle2 he's going to hurt you friend.”

“ what are you doing here Phelisa? ” amahle asks her standing next to me and has her hands folded.

“ What do you mean? I came to see you cause I was... I am worried about you.”

“ Did I not tell you to stay away from me? ” she did?

“ friend you're just upset and you didn't mean what you said.”

“ You lied to me and said my brother was outside waiting for me while you knew very well that it wasn't him. It was phakiso!. When I told you that I didn't want to leave with the two of you, you forced me to leave with you and said you knew where my brother really was but you were lying again and I believed you. I told you that our friendship is over because I cannot trust you. ” she's getting upset.

“ I know of lied but I was trying to protect you. These people are dangerous friend and you can't trust them.”

“ but I can trust you right?. A friend who calls me a gold digger?. Phelisa has been asking questions about all of you. I don't know of she's up to something or it's because your cousin told her to do so but the two of them are up to something.” Amahle says.

“ how can you say that about me? We have been friends for years amahle and you know me better than that.”

“ I thought I knew you but obviously I didn't. Our friendship ended the day you called me a gold digger. Tell me something though phelisa. Do you know anything about my brother's death? ”

“ of course not amahle what is wrong with you? ”

“ Why are behaving like I asked you if you had a hand on his death or not? ” her friend keeps quiet.

“ You know what? I don’t need you and this bullshit! You are turning on me and behaving this way towards me amahle? Me?. You will need me one day when he hurts you cause I know he’s going to and for your sake. I hope I’ll still be there for you cause we are family. Whatever this is you’re doing with him will end in tears.”

“ I’ll take my chances Phelisa and my family died the day my brother died.”

“ you will regret this amahle I promise you!.” She’s mad.

“ Goodbye Phelisa.”

She looks at amahle one last time then me and Kane and she leaves.

She takes out her phone and calls someone probably Phakiso.

“ Are you okay? ” I ask her.

“ Yeah I’m fine.” She’s not. Her voice is scratchy.

“ your uncle said you have to come for the cleansing. It’s this afternoon.”

“ do I have to? ” she asks..

“ yes you do. ” Kane and I say at the same time.

“ ok. Did you choke her? ” she asks me.

“ I did. Come and eat before we leave.” I take her hand and walk with her back to the house.

ONE WEEK LATER.

I walk in and she’s in the lounge with her feet up and watching tv. I stand there and watch her laughing at something on the Tv . Seeing her looking happy and not bothered gets me upset. She has lost so much weight with her addiction. She takes a bar of chocolate and nibbles it. Her hand shakes a little. She hasn’t had her fix yet. I walk in again and stand in front of the TV. Her face goes ash white.

“ How.... What are you doing here? ”

“ That’s how you talk to me? ” I ask her.

“ Good afternoon Kabelo. ”

“ Pamela. ” I sit down on the coffee table. Jessica walk in.

“ Good afternoon sir.” She sits down on the couch.

“ What is she doing here kabelo? Why are you holding me like a hostage in this house? ” her voice gets loud.

“ did you forget your manners when you woke up? Whom are you shouting at? ”

“ I’m sorry but kabela you can’t treat me like I’m a criminal. I have people watching my every move. ”

“ do you value your life Pamela? ”

“ I didn’t do anything wrong kabela I swear! ”

“ are you on drugs? ” she keeps quiet. “ am on talking alone? ”

“ if you want us to talk about this then she has to leave. ”

“ She’s not going anywhere. Answer my damn question! ”

“ I am not on drugs damn it! ”

“ Watch your tone Pamela.” Jessica warns her.

“ what exactly does this bitch do for you? Does she fuck you or what? ”

”

“ sit your ass down and answer my question before I lose it.”

“ Yes I am on drugs so what? ” she throws her hands up.

“ You use my money for drugs? The same money you demanded from me cause you said it’s for your acting career. But you take my money her fucking high with your friends! My hard earned money Pamela! ”

Advertisement

serif">“ yes I did. It’s the least you could do after what you did to me. The stress you put me through that made me lose my child. Our child kabela! ”

“ you mean yours and phakiso’s child that you aborted and lied to me about it! ” she gasps in shock. “ you think I don’t know that you have been fucking my cousin behind my back! Cheating on me with him and then you had some fucken nerve to pin the pregnancy on me! ”

“ how... . He’s lying kabela! He’s the one that forced me to lie to you about me miscarrying... ”

“ did he also force you to cheat one and lie to my family! ”

“ Kabela I’m sorry! I didn’t mean to hurt you! ”

“ you fucken lied to me Pamela! You made me think that I had lost a child of didn’t even know you were carrying! ” she sniffs. “ those crocodile tears streaming down that lying face of yours won’t work on me. You take me for a fool. You fuck my cousin in my own house without using protection! You could have gotten me sick! ”

“ But you didn’t what’s the big deal! Yes I lost my child. Now you know so what huh? ”

I am not a person that easily gets upset but Pamela just gets me so mad.

“ Say that again? ” she looks at me and shakes her head. She then springs out of the living room running and Jessica runs after her and I hear screams, slaps and punches. Jessica comes back dragging Pamela by her leg and Pamela is kicking her. Jessica slaps her legs hard then throws her in front of me.

“ Let go of me! Tell her to let go of me! ”

“ Where the hell do you think you’re going? ”

“ Kabelo I know you. You want to hurt me! ”

“ You claim to know me but you still do things that you will piss me off? ”

“ I made a mistake and I’m sorry! ”

“ If you did it once then I would forgive you but you continued to do it over and over again. You knew exactly what you were doing because you thought you were clever than me Pamela and for a moment you fooled me.”

“ kabelo I love you. You have always been my first love even though you didn’t love me but I know you care about me. I know you don’t want to hurt me.”

“ I did care about you until you betrayed me. What will your punishment be Pamela? ”

“ Nooo kabelo please! ”

I look at Jessica and she nods taking her phone out. I pull my gun and put it on the coffee table. Pamela screams wrapping her hands around my legs. Jacob comes in and smiles at his girlfriend and walks to me.

“ Sir you called for me.”

“ Is everything prepared? ”

“ It is. I’m just waiting for your go ahead ”

“ Kabelo please don’t kill me. That would break my aunts heart please! ”

“ the Aunt you don’t give a damn about? How convenient for you.”

“ I’m sorry please! ”

“ I never want to see you or hear from you ever again. Go with Jacob and he will take wherever you want to go.” She stops crying.

“ you’re letting me go? ”

“ you want me to shoot you rather? ”

“ No please! ”

“ Then get the fuck off me and leave now! ”

“ Thank you kabela I promise I’ll be good and not bother you again. ”

“ Leave Pamela.” She nods and gets up. Jacob takes her hand and they walk out.

“ Where is he taking her? ”

“ In the trash like the junkie she is. ”

“ are we cleaning up or? ”

“ No. I want them to find her body.”

“ why don’t we frame phakiso sir? ”

“ we don’t need that scandal in the family and you know very well that he wouldn’t spend a night in jail.”

“ You’re right sir.”

“ I’m going home. Make sure the house is clean of all her prints.”

“ I will sir. Good night sir.”

“ good night Jessica.” I take my gun, put it on my back and leave.

I get in my car and take a deep breath and drive out. When I walked into the house my sole purpose was when I find out the truth I was going to wrap my hands around her throat and watch the light leaving her body but then I thought about how I used to know her from the little girl she was and now she’s just a mess. I then decided to go to plan B.

I park my car in the garage and walk in the house. Jane has cooked and it smells wonderful but the house is quite though. It has been since we came back from her brothers funeral. Jane has told me she has been quiet and in her room a lot. I’m worried that she might slip into depression because losing a loved one can set anyone off.

“ good evening sir.” Jane says from behind me.

“ good evening Jane. Where is she? ”

“ In her to sleeping. ”

“ Has she had dinner? ”

“ She did but she won’t leave her room still.”

“ I’ll sort it out.”

“ I will go prepare your food sir ”

“ just put it on the oven.”

“ I will sir.”

I walk upstairs to my bedroom, take my clothes off and go straight to the shower. After I'm done I go to the closet and wear my pyjama pants then walk out to amahle's bedroom. I open the door and walk in and close the door. She looks like she's sleeping peacefully. I walk closer and her eyes are wide open.

“ amahle? ” she looks at me. “ How are you feeling? ”

“ I'm okay.” She clears her voice.

“ I'm worried about you.”

“ don't be. I'll be fine.”

“ you won't be if you continue to stay here alone in your room. ”

“ What do you want me to do kabela. I'm not working or studying. The only thing I can do is stay in here and think about my brother.”

“ he's not coming amahle. ” fuck why did I say that?

“ Don't you think I know that? ”

“ I'm sorry. ”

“ Get out! ”

“ I know I shouldn't have said and I'm sorry. I'm worried about you ”

“ don't pretend that you care about me when we both know you don't ”

“ I care about you amahle.”

“ Why cause now I'm alone and my brother is not here to watch over me from the likes of you? ” what the fuck?

“ the likes of me? ”

“ Yes you. You want to turn me into your play thing and when you're done with me you're just going to toss me aside like a piece of trash!. ”

“ amahle when did I treat you like a piece of trash? ”

“ You want me to be your submissive kabela! ”

“ You mean that if you agree to be my submissive that would mean I'm going to treat you like a piece of trash cause you're just a thing I want to use? ” she looks down. “ Have I used you since you came into my home? Have I treated you like trash or made you do something you didn't want to do? ” she keeps quiet and looks away. “ Answer me amahle.”

“ no you haven't.”

“ and what makes you think I will when you agree? ”

“ I don’t know. You might change when I agree.” I sigh.

“ you can’t judge me when you haven’t even given me a chance amahle. You can at least give it a try and see if you can do it or not. I will not force you to do anything you don’t want to do amahle I swear on you.”

“ I’m scared kabela. I really am.” I sit down and thread my hand with hers.

“ I will not hurt you amahle. I will be with you every step of the way. Look tomorrow we will talk about the rest of the things we didn’t talk about the last time we were at my office.”

“ ok.” She nods.

“ alright then have a good night ”

“ kabela? ”

“ is something wrong? ”

“ I’m no. I just wanted to ask you...umm...”

“ say it amahle.”

“ if I agree to this, me being your submissive. What is that going to mean for us? ”

“ I’ll be your Dom and you’ll be my submissive ”

“ I mean like...are we going to have a boyfriend and girlfriend relationship? ” so that’s what she wanted to ask me?.

“ is that what you want?.”

“ I want us to be in a relationship before we try that other relationship.”

“ are you telling me that if we try the normal relationship you want then you will give the relationship I want with you a chance? ”

“ yeah I will.”

“ ok. Let’s do it then.” She actually smiles at me. “ I’m going to bed.ypi should get some sleep too.” I get up.

“ kabela? ”

“ baby?”

“ are you not going to kiss me?” she’s asking me to kiss her? The shy amahle?. I miss her forehead.

“ good night baby.” I walk out of the bedroom and close the door behind me. What the hell did I agree to?. The last time I did the

normal relationship I was an 18 year old boy and now I'm about to be in one again. What the he'll am I doing?.

CHAPTER 11

[PREVIOUS](#) PAGE 14 [NEXT](#)

Advertisement

#NotEdited

Getting everything ready for my leave at my company is getting more hectic than I expected. I have been busy signing papers the whole day after the board meeting I had telling everyone that I'm stepping down as the CEO and moving to Durban. The board agrees that Miss Duma will take over and be the company's CEO. Calvin was really worried about his job but I told him that we will talk. I know he doesn't really know about my life and I have to explain to him that if he's decides to come with me then he will be working at a very different environment and I don't know how he's going to receive it once I explain it to him.

I have to look for a house and not just any house but a very private one and big one cause my family is big. We have to deal with phakiso before I leave but we can't go and her him cause he's at our grandparents house. We know he's there intentionally cause he knows we won't touch him when he's there and he's right. Well have to make him think that we have forgiven him and then strike.

" Calvin. In my office." I hang up.

The door opens and he walks in and sits down. He's really worried about his job and I don't blame him.

" don't look so nervous Calvin. I didn't call you hear to tell you bad news...well it depends how you will receive them."

" am I fired sir? "

" no Calvin you're not. I'm sorry you had to find out in front of everyone about me stepping down as the CEO and leaving the company."

" Why sir if I may ask? "

“ you know me and my brothers have differs companies and now o have to go and run one of our businesses in Durban. Calvin you have been the best assistant I have ever had and it would be a shame for me to loose you and I don't want to loose the best assistant I have ever had. I want you to come with me to Durban and continue to being my assistant and of course your salary will be double, you will live in an apartment paid the company and you will have a driver and body guard on you wherever you go.” He looks more nervous the more I talk.

“ Sir why does it sound like...uhm the job you'll be doing I'm Durban is dangerous? “

“ cause it can be. I can't tell you about it unless you agree to come and continue to work for me. Look Calvin you know I don't easily trust people but I trust you and I need someone like you to be on my side....”

“ I'm in sir. I'll move to Durban with you.”

“ Calvin....”

“ Sir I trust you and I know you wouldn't have asked me if you didn't think I am the best for the job. I can do that job better than the one I have been doing here. Working for you sir has changed my life and made me a better person. I look to you as a man and business man you are. I know this opportunity will help me grow in my career and I'm ready for the opportunity.” That's what I like about him. He's always eager to learn something new.

“ how close are you to Mandisa?”

“ we are close sir but the last few weeks as I told you she has been distant. “

“ when did you last talk to her?”

“ a week ago. She sounded better sir.”

“ I take it you know something's about her right since you two are close? “ he fidgets. “ Calvin remember you told me about seeing bruises on her hands and body? “

“ yes sir “ he looks away.

“ Did she maybe explain how she got them?”

“ Sir....”

“ Calvin what you say stays here between us.”

“ Sir I knew or know what mandisa did on her spare time.”

“ what did she do? ”

“ she would tell me that she goes to sex clubs so she can find herself....a...uhm a Dominant.” He says.

“ Mandisa is a submissive. The marks you saw on her body was caused by her former Dom. I know this cause I asked her and she told me.”

“ she told you she was a submissive sir? “

“ she didn’t have to tell me she was because I knew she was when I went to see her at her place.”

“ how did you know sir if I may ask? “

“ you may ask since you’ll be working in a sex club that I will be running in Durban “

“ Sir? “

“ Calvin I am a Dominant. Not just a Dominant but Thee Master and we run the most exclusive very private club in the whole of Africa that only the rich and very powerful know about. They call me Thee Master K.”

“ wait you're real? Mandisa has said that there's one they call the Bishop, Master and Sir. Only a few know who they are but many don't. They are the one's who run every.....wait Sir?.” He looks at me shocked when he realizes that he’s talking about me and my brothers.

“ You can never ever tell anyone that Calvin. You’re one of the few who know.”

“ I would never sir and I will sign any documents you want me to.”

“ and you will. What happens in the club or what you will see, you will never share with anyone at all matter what. You will always have protection everywhere you go cause being in this kind of business is very dangerous Calvin and you’re safety is a prior to me.”

“ I will take the job sir but what is it that I will have to do exactly? “

“

“ You will be working with someone who will show you the ropes like going through the applications of those who want to join, renewal of contracts and payments. Complaints, grievances and

everything else before it lands on my table like how we work here. Do you understand? “

“ I do sir. “

“ you will be available to me 24/7 whenever I need you and you will not Calvin. I repeat. You will not be in any relationship with the club members. You will attend shooting classes and self defense classes. Do you still accept the job? “

“ I do sir.”

“ remember Calvin you work for me more than the businesses okay? “

“ yes sir “

“ everything's else you need to know will be shown around and taught.”

“ yes sir.”

“ the paper work will be ready tomorrow. Get your things in order and be ready for next week when we move. What we talked about stays here in this room and no one else will know what we talked about cause I would hate to hurt you Calvin. I hope you understand me clearly.”

“ I do sir.”

“ Do you have any questions? “

“ not now sir.”

“ you may leave then.”

“ thank you sir. I promise you, you won't regret taking me with you.”

“ I know you won't.” he nods and leaves.

This turned out better than I have expected. My cellphone rings on the table. It's my brother.

“ first born “

“ ngwana papa “ he chuckles.

“ how are you doing? “ I ask him.

“ I'm good bro. How is amahle doing?.”

“ she's doing better I guess “

“ you sound like there's something on your mind.? “

“ Amahle said she wants us to be boyfriend and girlfriend before she agrees to be my submissive “

“ what did you say? “

“ I said I’ll give it a chance “ he keeps quiet.

“ just like that? “

“ yes.” I chuckle.

“ I know you would never agree to something like that. What are you up to kabela? “ I chuckle

“ oh I just made her think she got what she wanted. Me to be her boyfriend.”

“ and we both know that’s not what you are.”

“ She thinks just because I asked her to call me by my name, now she can make demands and tell me what will happen before she agrees. She thinks she has the upper hand now

Advertisement

calling the shots and getting what she wants.”

“ while she’s in for a rude and hard awakening. She obviously thinks she might know you cause you've been soft on her since her brother died.”

“ exactly brother “

“ she shouldn’t have said that. If only she waited for you until you explained everything to her about what a submissive is.”

“ maybe she thinks if we do this her way, I will forget about wanting her to be my submissive.”

“ You can't forget or change it. It’s in us and we are it and that is never going to change.”

“ she doesn’t know it and maybe it’s time she saw the real me.”

“ Don’t scare her.”

“ it’s time she knew the real me. Dominant kabela and not the man she has met who’s been nice to her.”

“ Don’t show her Master K.”

“ she’s not ready for him and I don’t know if she ever will.”

“ I think so too. If it ever gets touch for her let her go “

“ that’s what I’m going to do but “

“ it’s going to be hard but I believe she is what you need bro so be patient with her.”

“ Why do you always say that?.”

“ just like I said. You’re what she needs and she’s what you need too.” I sigh.

“ we shall see “ I say

“ ok bro. The reason I was calling is I just got a call from Papa.” We call our grandfather Papa.

“ what did he say? “

“ he told me they received a call from Pamela's parents.

Apparently she was found in the hotel dead with a needle stuck in her arm and some drugs in her room.”

“ finally.”

“ you did a clean job. It won’t come back to us.”

“ I’m glad she’s gone and I won’t ever have to deal with her.”

“ it was about damn time. Well Papa also said he needs to talk to the three of us. I have no idea why.”

“ phakiso is with them. He might have said something about amahle's brother.” I tell him.

“ I’m going to kill phakiso myself. Our grandfather won’t save him.”

“ when does he want time we us? “

“ he said he’ll let us know when.”

“ ok bro. “

“ Go home kabelo. It’s late and your girlfriend is waiting “ we laugh

“ that’s not funny bro “

“ alright. I was thinking we go to Durban tomorrow and check out how far they are with getting done.”

“ what time? “

“ 9 am sharp. Don’t be late.”

“ I won’t. Later “ we hang up.

I look at the time and it’s 7;30 pm and I'm exhausted. I just want to go home, eat and sleep. I take my gadgets and put them in the bag and leave. I say goodbye to Calvin and her in the car as my driver takes me home. The house smells good and my stomach grumbles. I don’t like eating before showering but tonight I will just have to. I put my bag on the dining table and walk to the kitchen. Jane is washing the dishes.

“ Jane “

“ good evening sir.” She says facing me.

“ how was your day? “ I don’t miss the look of surprise on her face.

“ it was good sir and yours? “

“ long and exhausting “ I walk to the sink, she moves and let’s me wash my hands and go sit down. She pours me a glass of water and brings the utensils. She takes out my plate from the oven and it’s still warm.

“ here’s your food sir.”

“ thank you Jane. Where is Amahle? “

“ she went to her room after dinner.”

“ how is she towards you? “

“ she’s nice sir “

“ has she given you any trouble? “

“ no sir she hasn’t.”

“ tell me if she does “

“ I will sir. “ I nod.

Amahle walks in dragging her feet. She sits down and looks at me.

“ can I get you anything miss Amahle? “

“ no. “ she says rather rudely.

“ thank you Jane. You may excuse us.” She nods and leaves.

The food tastes good. I enjoy it until I am done and full. I get up, wash my plate and wipe the table where I was eating. I take my jacket and walk out of the kitchen.

“ so you’re just going to ignore me Kabelo? “ I stop walking. Turn and look at her. “ where were you? “ oh she’s getting bold. I raise my eyebrow at her.

“ where are your manners Amahle? “ she looks at me confused.

“ my manners? “

“ did you fall and hit your head when you were coming down the stairs thirty minutes ago? “ she keeps quiet. “ you come in the kitchen and you don’t greet me. When Jane asks you if you need anything you answer her rudely and you have some fucken nerve to ask me where the fuck I was at? “

“ I wasn’t rude it’s just that.....”

“ did I say open your fucken mouth and talk! “ she opens her mouth and closes it. I take slow, calculated and measures steps towards her until her back hits the wall.

“ in this house you will greet and be respectful to everyone who lives, works and walks in this house. You will never ever ask me where the fuck I was at no matter what time I walk in through that door. Just because I let you call me kabela it doesn't mean that you will talk to me any way you want. Don't think you know me because I call you baby. I have called many women by that name it's nothing special. What you have to remember is this is my fucken house and I don't answer to anyone and definitely not you. You are a guest in this house amahle don't forget your place. Do we understand each other? “ a tear streams down her face.

“ yes.....yes sir I understand.”

“ good girl.” I lick her salty tear then walk away from her to my bedroom. As soon as I take off my clothes I shower then go straight to bed and sleep.

I don't know if I'm dreaming or what but I can hear a phone ringing. It stops then rings again and again. Who the fuck could be calling me this late?!. I groan and sit up. I light my side lamp and take my phone. I see mandisa's missed calls. What the fuck! I call her numbers and it sends me straight to voicemail. The only reason mandisa could be calling me is if her former Dom was there and she's scared. I quickly get up and run to the closet and wear clothes.

When I walk out someone is knocking on my door. I walk to it and open it and it's amahle looking scared.

“ what's wrong? “

“ Jane said I must call you there's a woman in there and she's....” I take her hand and run with her downstairs and the first thing I see is Jane holding a bloody Mandisa in her arms.

“ Mandisa what happened?! Call an ambulance! “

“ sir no.....please....he'll kill me.” I pick her up and take her don't be bedroom close to the lounge and lay her on the bed.

“ Jane call Bishop and tell him to come here with our doctor and Jacob ”

“ yes sir “ she runs out.

“ amahle get me towels and cold water and my phone in the closet“ she goes to the bathroom. Mandisa coughs and winces. Her former Dom has messed up big time. As soon Bishop gets here his head has a price now and he will be shunned from all the sex clubs on Africa until he stands before us. He committed a crime against his former sub and that doesn't go unpunished.

“ I'm sorry sir....I didn't know where else to go “

“ how did you get here? “

“ I drove myself “ she says crying.

Of course she did. She knows the gate security code. I should have had someone watch her in case that fucker comes back. Fuck!

“ he's the phone and towels.” I take them and dial Jess's number. I wipe her face with the towel.

“ Jess I need you here now! “ I tell her when she answered.

“ coming boss “

“ I should have made sure you're safe mandisa and I'm sorry. He won't hurt you again I promise you.” I failed as a leader. I should have made sure she had protection on her. I can feel amahle's eyes on me as I'm wiping the blood on mandisa's face. I hope he didn't break any of her bones.

“ Mandisa? “ she looks at me. “ don't sleep...hey look at me. Did he violate you? “ she shakes her head. Thank God.

Bishop walks in with the doctor, Jacob and Jess. He goes to stand next the bed and looks at mandisa.

“ leave us.” He says. We all walk out leaving him, Mandisa and the doctor.

CHAPTER 12

[PREVIOUS](#) PAGE 15 [NEXT](#)

#NotEdited

“ Boss what do you need me to do? ” Jess asks me.

“ I news you to go to Mandisa's place and talk to the security guys to give you the tapes so we can see who was her Dom cause she's not going to tell us. Jacob when we find out who he really is you will dig

out every little secret he thought he buried. I want to know who was his first grade teacher. Everything about him then we're going hunting."

"On it boss." They both leave.

"Jane go change and clean the blood in the living room." She nods and leaves too.

I look to my side where Amahle is standing and she looks really freaked out. I walk to her and she shakes her head and takes a step back from me. I understand why she's behaving this way and I can't blame her cause if I was in her shoes right now I would also be freaking out.

"Tell me how your feeling right now." She's looking at me like she's studying me. "Amahle?"

"this is what you do?" I take a deep breath. I knew she was going to paint me with the same brush of that good for nothing piece of shit.

"can you sit down so we can talk and I would explain some things to you." I take another step from her and she takes two back.

"don't come near me"

"Why?" she shakes her head. "are you scared?" she nods. "talk Amahle"

"I am scared"

"Of what you saw or of me?"

"Both" she says and grips her gown tight like she's seeking comfort or protection from it.

"I'm sorry you had to see that and I wish you didn't have to but you did. We are going to find the person who did this to her and he will pay." She keeps biting her lip. "did I do something that made you feel scared of me?" she nods. "tell me." She shakes her head.

"Amahle this nodding and shaking your head won't work cause I want you to tell me what I did that made you feel that way so I can fix it if I can or apologize. I need words not your head movements. Tell me why you're feeling scared of me." She looks at me and debates whether to tell me or not.

"The way you spoke to me earlier scared me. It was like I was seeing a different side of you and the way you were with her was... confusing for me." She explains

“ Sit down amahle.” I command her and she does. I pull a chair and sit facing her. “ I am a Dominant amahle. I demand and command respect in all aspects of life. You do talk to me like you’re talking to your friend. You will address me with the same respect I show you. I may not be your Dom right now but that doesn’t mean you don’t answer to me. You live here under my care and that means you are my responsibility and I have to make sure you’re safe and taken care of. I understand that maybe you were worried about me but you don’t ever talk to me like that or dismiss anyone like how you did with Jane. There was a respectable way you could have asked me where I was. If you were my sub you would have known why I was late. I have never asked a sub or anyone to call me by my name. Only my family and close friends do. I’m either Master K to those who know I’m a Dom, Sir to my staff here on the house and Mister Ntazi to everyone else. I asked you to call me by name cause you mean something to me and I really want you to be my sub.”

“ That woman is a sub and look what he did to her? Do you all do this? ”

“ I need you to not say that. I am not perfect but I’m certainly not anything like that animal who hurt mandisa. As your Dom amahle it’s my duty to always make sure that you taken care of on every way and not hurt you like how he hurt mandisa. Yes there will be pain and that pain will lead you to experience pleasure like you have never had before. I could never do to you what was done to Mandisa ever.”

“ what if one day I say something out of line and you snap and do the same thing? ”

“ That’s why we have rules and a safe word. You follow the rules and you won’t be out of line. When you break the rules there will be consequences. A safe word is a word you will choose and know that you will never say it unless you absolutely mean it and you want to stop what will be happening at that time. You will not say it because you are afraid or don’t want to cause I will push you past your fears and limits but not above what I know you can’t handle. You will have to trust me as your Dom amahle and know that I could never hurt you intentionally. When you say your safe word know that the

relationship we will be having between us will stop completely and we will go our separate ways. Do you understand? ”

“ you talk as if I have already agreed.”

“ Stand up.” She does. I lean back and open my legs apart. “ come here and stand between my legs.” She swallows air and does as I say without hesitation. “ can I touch you? ”

“ You may.” I take her hand and thread it with mine.

“ why did you do as I instructed you to just now? ” she looks away. “ talk amahle ”

“ I don't know. ”

“ I will tell you why. I speak and you obey. You respond to my Dominance that's why. You crave it even though it scares you. You want it even though you're trying to fight it. Your standing before me and your body is shaking and covered in goose bumps not because you're scared but your body is excited and responding to me. You crave for my touch on your body. I know because every time I get close to you like now. Your body goes soft and begs for my touch.” Her breathing has changed. She's taking deep breathes in and out. I drop her hand.

“ If I were to touch you and sink my fingers in your pussy right now I'm sure they would come out coated with your juices... ” I move my body backward a little, bend my head a little and be eye level with her pussy and sniff it.

“ I can smell your scent. Your arousal. Tell me baby what has gotten you wet? ” she bites her bottom lip. “ Has Master K gotten you wet just by talking to you? What will happen when he touches you?

Kisses you and Fucks you? ” she closes her eyes and a moan escapes from her lips.

“ You would love that wouldn't you my little one? You are dying to put your hand between your thighs and relieve the ache you're feeling right now don't you?. Beneath this sweet little girl innocence there's a little kinky woman who's waiting to be let out. I know you're kinky cause you wouldn't have masturbated next to me on the bed. You will never touch yourself ever again as long as you're with me unless I tell you to.”

“ I haven't agreed to be your sub.”

“ You haven’t said those words out loud but you’re heart, body and soul already have. They are just waiting for you to spill them out. It’s all on you little one but best believe that there will be a day where I’m going to fuck you and bring out the kinky goddess in you. ”

“ What if I don’t say them? ”

“ I won’t force you and I also won’t touch you in any kind of way until I get the permission to touch you in all ways everywhere in and out of your body.” Her bottom lip is swollen now from her biting it. “ Go to sleep amahle. I need to talk to my brother. Good night. ”

“ good night sir.”

“ don’t shower, don’t wipe yourself and do not touch yourself. Do you understand? ”

“ I do sir. Good night ” I watch her walk upstairs and she looks uncomfortable.

“ You are mean ” karabo says chuckling

“ Didn’t your mother teach you it’s rude to eavesdrop on other people’s conversations? ”

“ Koko did and mother well we know she was too busy to teach us that.” We look at each other as he sits down.

“ how is she? ”

“ he didn’t break her bones but she has bruises from the Kane he was using. It tore her skin apart and she’s going to have deep bruises and scarring.”

“ he will stand in front of us and explain himself. ”

“ Whoever he is obviously doesn’t know that she’s working for you. If he knew then he wouldn’t have done that.” Karabo says “ You already sent them? ”

“ yeah they went to Mandisa’s and we know they won’t sleep until we have what we need.”

“ she’s the one you were telling me about she’s exactly what I need? ”

“ She is.”

“ I don’t know if she will still continue being a sub when she’s going through something like this and being what I need was going to work before she was hurt like this but now I doubt it.” He sighs.

“ She’s stronger than this don’t give up just yet. You say amahle is what I need right so is Mandisa. She is what you need I promise you.”

“ I’m going to kill him ” karabo says and it’s a promise.

“ did you ask her who he is? ”

“ she refuses to tell me.” He hates it when you won’t do as he says.

“ she’s doesn’t know who we really are ”

“ I told her and she freaked out.”

“ I don’t blame her. She knows what’s going to happen to her former Dom. ” I tell him.

“ I think it’s someone we know ”

“ brother we know every one. Who could it be? ” I ask him.

“ someone close to us? ”

“ Maybe. I’ll talk to her tomorrow. She will tell me. Sleeping in your room? ”

“ no. I’ll be with her. ” I smirk.

“ ok I’m going to bed. Is Doc staying too? ”

“ he works for us so he’s staying. Where are you sleeping? ” he asks.

“ My bed fool ” we laugh.

“ she’s close to giving in ”

“ I know. ”

“ she’s a virgin KB. You have to be gentle ”

“ She’s not a virgin bro. Don’t stress me ” he laughs

serif">“ Where’s Belinda? ”

“ she’ll be here in the morning. ”

“ How is she? ”

“ Behaving like she was supposed to. You want her back? ” he smirks.

“ what did you do to her? ”

“ Reminded her who she really is ” I shake my head.

“ You sadist fuck ” we laugh.

“ Don’t act as if your better than me.” He says

“ I guess we aren’t going to Durban? ”

“ let’s deal with this fucker then Durban.. Damn I almost forgot. Papa is coming tomorrow.”

“ Alone? ”

“ With dad. ”

“ Why? ”

“ I suspect that little weasel said something to them. ”

“ I wouldn’t be surprised. Are they coming here or to your house? ”

“ we must go to my house so they won’t come here and see all of them.”

“ you’re right. I’m out ” we fist bump and I walk to my bedroom and sleep.

Karabo and I are on the living room having breakfast when amahle walks in. She looks so beautiful wearing a beautiful dress that fits her body perfectly. We stand up and she looks confused.

“ good morning sirs ” she says.

“ Good morning amahle. Did you sleep well? ” karabo says. I pull a chair for her and she sits down.

“ I did sir. ” I greet her back whispering and kiss her cheek. She blushes and looks down.

“ at home I’m bhuti Karabo don’t forget. ”

“ I will try not to bhuti. Uh may I ask something? ” she looks at me.

“ You may. ” I tell her.

“ how is sis Mandisa ”

“ she will be okay. She had a rough night but she will be fine.”

Karabo says but we both know that Mandisa has a long road to recovery. I could hear her screams every time she woke up and they were hard to listen to.

“ I hope she will recover.” Amahle says.

“ I hope you know that my brother will never do that to you.” She steals a look from me.

“ And if he ever does by a mistake then? ”

“ then we answer to someone who gets us straight when we are out of line.” Karabo tells her. She looks at me.

“ plate up and eat your food ” she does.

Jane comes walks in with Jess and Jacob. They greet us then sit down. We have breakfast then I ask amahle to excuse us and she does.

“ what did you find out? ” I ask them?

“ at first we weren’t sure but then we had to double check. Here are the pictures.” Jacob gives them to us. Karabo and I look at them and I frown.

“ wait..... Him? ” fuck no!.

“ this changes things.” He says sighing

“ no wonder why Mandisa didn’t want to say. He was intimidating her.” I say.

“ she obviously knows where he comes from. Is he a full member in our club? ” karabo asks

“ he is Bishop but hasn’t been coming in frequently since the last year ” Jacob says

“ we can’t kill him unless we want to start war work the Royal house. Damn him! ” Karabo says. He’s fucking mad. I am too.

“ He knew exactly what he was doing. Sakhile might be Sbu's cousin but that doesn’t mean we can’t touch him. He has to answer for what he did. We will set up a meeting with sbu first then take it from there.” I tell them.

“ we also found out that he wants to challenge sbu for his throne even though he’s not in line to inherit it. Sakhile is not exactly the favourite in the family. He’s likes causing trouble and he’s close to being banished in the Royal Family Homestead. ” Jess shares.

“ Royal person not. This is not how a Dom treats his sub. He will pay. Let me call his cousin.” He takes his phone and calls sbu. “ that’s weird. It’s not going through. ” he frowns.

I take my phone and get on the clubs database and look for sbu's number and hit dial. It says the number doesn’t exist.

“ Call his best friend. ” karabo tells me and I do. It rings.

“ Master K. To what do I owe this please to get a call from you? ” I can hear the surprise in his voice.

“ Maestro G. Why am I not surprised to know you know it’s me who’s calling? ” he chuckles.

“ You know me and what I do best.” He says.

“ and I’m calling because we need help Maestro G. We can’t get hold of King M. His phone is not going through.” He sighs.

“ Is there something wrong? ”

“ We have a problem with his cousin Sakhile and we need to talk to j first before we call Sakhile before the council. ”

“ That fuck!. Is the Bishop with you? ”

“ Yeah he is.” I hear clicking of something then he curses.

“ fly to Durban so we can talk. Someone is listening to us. They are tapping your phone. Bring all your gadgets including those of Bishop’s.” He hangs up.

“ fuck! ”

“ what’s wrong? ” karabo asks

“ he wants us to fly down and someone was listening to our conversation. My phone is bugged and we must bring all our devices.”

“ Jess book us tickets. You will watch over them while we fly down.”

He instructs her.

“ Yes Bishop. ”

I go to the kitchen and amahle is not there.

“ She’s sitting outside sir ”

“ Thanks Jane. ”

I open the back door and she looks deep in thought. I sit next to her.

“ are you Okay? ”

“ I am sir.” She’s not.

“ Look at me. ” she does. “ I know you miss him and he does too but know that he’s watching over you.” She nods and lays her head on my chest. I love it when she does random things like that without thinking.

“ My brother and I have to go to Durban now but we will never back tonight ”

“ what if the man who attacked Mandisa comes here? ”

“ You’re safe. The whole house is guarded don’t worry.”

“ ok sir.” I gently move her head and stand up. She looks at me with sad eyes. I kiss her forehead then walk.

“ Kabelo? ” I grip the door handle tight. It’s not that she called my name but it’s how she called it cause it went straight to my heart. I don’t turn but stand there. “ Come back to me. I don’t think I would be able to handle losing you too. You’re all I have now. ” She says softly. I close my eyes and take a deep breath closing the door behind me with her words still ringing in my ears. Oh amahle you don’t know what you have done. If you knew you’d be really scared right now.

CHAPTER 13

Advertisement

#NotEdited

I could have turned around and looked in her eyes when she said those words that refuse to get out of my head. I can still hear the desperation in her voice and it tugged my heart. No one has ever said those words to me ever and hearing them come out of her lips woke something in me and I hope she is going to be able to handle it. Karabo has been watching me and I know he wants to say something but he also knows when to let me be.

We are now on our way to Mbuso's house and it's been a while since we last saw him. We brought everything he told us to bring and I hope he will be able to tell us who's bugging my phone. I should have also asked them to check my gadgets too.

"Damn look at where he's living" Jacob says.

"Who knew this would be him?" Karabo says watching me. I ignore him. "bro you okay?"

"I am. Just got a lot on mind."

The gate opens and our driver drives in and their home looks beautiful. We step outside of the car and we hear voices of children laughing. They must be playing. Mbuso walks out of the front door and walks towards us.. He doesn't look like himself... . He looks different some how or maybe it's because we haven't seen him in years. My brother and I look at each other as we watch him standing in front of us.

Ever since I have known Mbuso one thing I know about him is. The man has an Aura that is unlike any that only a few men like us have . You never forget the kind of man we are even when we haven't said

a word to anyone. There is only one Mbuso Gumede and this man right here is not him at all.

“ Your Rank? ” karabo says. The man frowns. Yep it’s not him. The man smiles.

“ Not everyone can tell us apart. I am Busani. Mbuso's twin... ”

“ Thought you were already gone bro.” A voice says behind us and we turn. It’s the main man himself. “ I can see my brother has already introduced himself ”

“ was leaving too.....”

“ wait bro and let me introduce you. These are the two of the three famous Triple K brothers. This is the older brother like me Bishop Mpendulo aka Karabo and younger brother like you Kabelo Ntanzu and the last born is not here. This is Jacob their brother from another mother. Welcome to my home guys.”

“ I wish I could stay but I have to leave. Hope to see you again.” We shake hands and he leaves.

“ Please let’s go on the house.” Mbuso says and we follow him and walk to the lounge.

I am a am who appreciates style and luxury and this home is very beautiful, luxurious but also home and comfortable. I really like it. There are a few toys lying around the house.

“ please wait here so I can introduce my wife... . ” he stops talking as we watch his wife walking in holding a baby and smiling to it. She looks up and her eyes go to her husband and they light up.

I hear Bishop taking a deep breath and I do too. We always see beautiful women in the club clothes and also naked but this woman in front of us is something else. Mbuso’s wife is really beautiful. My God.

“ uhm I’m sorry. I didn’t realise we had guests. Good afternoon.” She greets politely standing next to her husband. The baby coos.

“ Guys this is my world, my everything, mother to our four beautiful kids and my wife Lungile Gumede. These are.... ” she looks at him and smiles.

“ Bishop Mpendulo Ntanzu and his brother Kabelo. It is an honor to meet you both. I wish my husband would have told me that we will be having honoured guests and I would have prepared lunch for you. ” she says softly. Her voice is soft like amahle’s. She makes me think that amahle is going to be beautiful like her when she’s at her age. The baby looks so beautiful like her mom and I can’t take my eyes off of her.

“ the honour is ours Mangcobo. Thank you for welcoming us into your lovely warm home ” my brother says. “ and who’s this little one? ” he asks.

“ this is Amazuluanathi Gumede. She’s just four months old. Her twin brother is sleeping. Would you like to hold her?... ”the baby smiles and I do too. Can she see me? Babies are weird man.

“ Kabelo?... Kabelo? ” my brother nudges me and I look at him.

“ what? ” MaNgcobo giggles. Fuck I was day dreaming about babies. What is wrong with me.

“ would you like to hold her? ” uh what?

“ MaNgcobo I don’t want you to kill me when I drop your child.” I explain and they laugh at me.

“ You won’t drop her. Hold her like this ”

She places my arms in a certain way then places the baby on me. I instinctively cradle her head and bring her closer to my chest. She smiles and I feel a smile forming on my face.

“ she smells so good... . Can she see me? ”

“ Yes she can “ ama’s mom answers.

“ Wow. Babies are scary and fragile but they are also amazing little beings. When they love you they just love you. You’re so beautiful Ama. You are going to break so many boys hearts and it’s going to drive your dad is going to go crazy... ” I can’t just imagine.

“ She already has him wrapped around her little fingers. I can’t wait to see her growing up and driving her crazy.” maNgcobo laughs.

“ I almost feel sorry for him but I don’t. She’s beautiful like her mom.” I brush ama’s cheek and she giggles. I wonder what kind of babies I will have with... . Fuck no. I look up and I notice it’s only me and mbuso’s wife. “ When did they leave? ”

“ A while ago. Your focus was on her only.”

“ I’m sorry I didn’t mean... . ”

“ it’s okay.” She says smiling. I give her back the baby and I feel weird. She takes her and sits down. I sit too although I know I should be with my brother and mbuso.

“ who is she? ” I look at her? “ the woman in your life?... I’m sorry for asking but I know that look.”

“ what look? ”

“ the look that tells you when there’s someone special in your life and you don’t know how go about it cause what she’s making you feel scares you right? ” what the hell?

“ uhmmm ”

“ my husband tried to fight what he was feeling but at the end look at where we are. I know it’s none if my business but Mr Kabelo trying to fight what you feel for her will just make it worse cause you’ll

keep pushing her and end up hurting her in the end. Love is a beautiful thing and you must not be afraid to embrace it. Allow it into your life and heart and you will realise that it's the best thing you have ever done for yourself. Everyone deserves to be loved. No matter who they are. That includes you too. When you have found her you would know and I think you already have. My husband's office is that way. " she tells me then walks away. What just happened?

I follow the way she pointed me at and see an office. I knock then walk in and sit down. They look at me then laugh their asses off. I end up joining them.

" Are you over your baby fever? " Mbuso asks.

" man she just looked so adorable and I couldn't help myself. " the chuckle. " Fuck me! "

" that's babies for you. Are we going to expect yours soon? "

" what? Hell no. "

" there's a but in there. " Karabo says.

" he should be asking you that. Not me."

" I don't want kids." Karabo says and it's not the first time he has said this.

" you say that now but when you meet you're one. That idea will be out of your head." Mbuso says very sure.

" How did you know she was the one? " I ask him.

Advertisement

serif">" I knew she was the one when this one time I fucked her and I just saw her pregnant carrying my child who looked like her. When she left me pregnant and I was terrified that it was going to be the last time I saw her. It was one of the worst days of my life. I followed her the next day and stalked her for a week until her dad caught me sleeping in the car outside her yard. I

knew then that there was nothing I wouldn't do for her after she took me back after all pain I put her through. When you have found her KB you will know. "

" your wife said the same thing to me."

" she's smart and always right."

" Who knew this would be you today? Happily married with four kids? Damn man. " karabo says.

" My greatest accomplishments in my life. I wouldn't trade all of this for anything. Even the club" we laugh.

" where is Mbatha? " my brother asks.

" It's been four months now since he's been missing. I only found out last month that he has been missing for three months and they didn't even think of telling me. I have been looking for him since then and it's like he has just disappeared from the face of the earth."

" has his family had any news or anything? "

" They haven't. I have my men searching for him all over South Africa. Sbu and I have tracking chips implanted. Someone who knows removed that chip the moment he got on N3 and also destroyed his phone."

" Do you think he told anyone about the chip? " I ask him.

" I think his brother knows about it and maybe he told that good for nothing piece of shit Sakhile. If he has a hand on my brother's disappearance I will kill him myself."

" Sakhile knows what happened to his cousin cause he's been causing trouble at the Royal Homestead. I'm pretty sure of that " I say.

" what did he do to you? " mbuso asks.

“ The sub Mandisa is my assistant and she was his submissive and hid it from me that she was a submissive. So she ended their relationship and that sick fuck didn’t like it cause he beat her up the first time when I went to see her again her house. I failed cause I knew I should have had her protected in case he came back again and he did and this time did the worst. We didn’t know that it was Sakhile until we saw his pictures. Mandisa is really scared and she doesn’t know that we know it’s him cause he’s been intimidating her.” I tell him.

“ How hurt is she? ”

“ it’s bad and the healing process is going to be hard and long for her. He broke every code a Dom has and I’m afraid that Mandisa might not be his first or only victim. When we find him. He’s mine.” Karabo says.

“ That mother fucker! We’ll share him and make him sorry for even thinking of fucking with us. Is the girl special to you Bishop? ”

“ she could have been but I doubt she will want to be a sub again after this.”

“ And knowing you and how you are will probably send her over the edge of no return. You’re not just any Dom. You’re Thee Bishop and you are into total power exchange. You think she would have handled it? ”

“ she would have cause she told me so. Bishop finally found the perfect sub then Sakhile ruined her cause he wouldn’t accept her decision.” I tell him.

“ If she was into TPE then she can still be in it. It takes a strong person to be in that relationship and I doubt they would easily give it up because it’s what they need. Don’t give up on her Bishop. Give

her all the time she needs while eating her trust and you'll see what happens."

" I will think about it."

" still a hard heard I see " mbuso says and we laugh.

" fuck you man "

" God is watching you " we laugh hard. " I will have my men start looking for Sakhile "

" We are also on it. There's a price for his head and I doubt she would pull the royalty card crab cause this time it won't save him." Karabo says.

" I agree. Your devices are now fixed and your cousin phakiso has been listening to your conversations and that's not all."

" What else? " I ask him.

" we need to seriously update the security system of the club because your cousin downloaded the list of every member the club had and ever had and that includes me. I don't take likely to someone trying to mess my life or be up in all my business digging in my past." He's pissed. I am livid and Bishop is fucken mad.

" why is phakiso doing this? What is he really up to?! "

" Your cousin is working with someone cause it's a professional who hacked your system and made sure that you don't find out. Fire the security you have a contract with cause they are not doing their job. I don't know why your cousin is working against you but you need to sort him out quickly before I do. "

" he's family Maestro G. We can't just get rid of him." My either tells him.

“ he’s not my family though and I don’t give a fuck what happens to him. I will not have my past come back and be aired for everyone to see. Bishop, Master you do realise the power he has on his hands right now?. He can ruin the whole of Africa by simply releasing that list or selling it to our enemies. Everyone will come for you cause this will be done by one of your own. Bishop I cannot even think what it will do to you.”

“ we will fix it Maestro ”

“ or I can fix it for you without you knowing the details. Is your cousin really worth the risk you want to take and piss off every fucken member you had and still have? ” he asks us.

“ We are fucked! ” Bishop says.

“ yes you are and that’s not all. You two own me ”

“ What you mean you owe you? ” I ask him.

“ I was going to let it go at first but then your cousin fucked me up again when he stole that list and now I can’t let it go cause I paid lots of money for my product that I never got.”

Bishop and I look at each other.

“ What product are you talking about Maestro? ” Bishop asks him.

“ I want my fucken diamonds that your cousin stole and framed your girlfriends brother!. ”

“ what! ” Bishop and I are shocked.

“ Yes they are mine. I asked someone to buy them for me for some reasons and when they told me what happened I was livid. I wanted to ask you myself but then I thought I should give you time to find them but that obviously failed cause the boy was killed and my diamonds missing.”

“ if we knew they were yours we would have sorted it out a while ago ”

“ Kabelo I don't want the money I paid. The money you sent back I don't want it. I want my fucken diamonds because they were going to be a gift to my wife for her birthday. Your cousin knows where the diamonds are and they are hiding them. I understand you guys don't get your hands dirty but sometimes you must. Your cousin had fucked with me twice and that's enough for me. There won't be a third time. So Bishop and you Maestro with all due respect what the fuck are you going to do with him? . I need you two to promise me that you will deal with him before I do and I'm telling you this because of respect for you and your family. I could have handled the moment I knew but since I knew what kind of men we are I knew you wouldn't let accept his death just like that.”

“ We thank you for that Mbuso and I promise you, we will deal with him and we'll get other diamonds for you. I'll personally deliver them myself.” Karabo is going to phakiso no matter heat anyone says. He has pissed us off for the last time now. He's fucking with our money and with very dangerous people's lives. The mother fucker doesn't know what he has unleashed.

“ I want the diamonds back and I will come down to Joburg next week and upgrade the system myself. My company will now handle everything that involves the clubs including the new ones and your homes security. You guys are gambling with your lives.” Fuck!

“ we owe you man. If you didn't tell us we wouldn't have known.” Bishop says.

“ I would have contacted you after I have cleaned your mess. We've always had a great relationship and I like you guys. I would never do this for just anyone. I hope you know that.”

“ we do man. Anything you need don't hesitate to call us. ”

“ O I will. Let’s go have late lunch cause I’m sure she’s cooking and I’m hungry. ” we agree.

“ I thought getting married and having kids will soften you up but no. You’re now worse.” My brother says and Mbuso just shrugs his shoulder and smirks.

One thing I know is Mbuso has a reputation and it perceives him. He’s known and feared and today I saw a glimpse of that side. I know now to never fuck with him. Ever. This is one crazy mother fucker.

CHAPTER 14

[PREVIOUS](#) PAGE 17 [NEXT](#)

#NotEdited

Seeing Mbuso again at his home with his family after many years was eye opening for me. I still cannot believe the man I saw again was the same man who vowed to die a bachelor cause he loved being a Dom but today I saw a completely yet still a same man. It’s amazing how a woman can come into your life and change it. It’s so fucken crazy how love can make you think things you’ve never imagined. Meeting his wife and kids then sitting down with them together while we had lunch was so beautiful. Holding both the little twins was an experience I will never forget. Bring there with them made me think allot of things. It made think about my life. My future. I’m 36 years old and not getting younger. Mbuso said to me I don’t want to be a 40 years with no kid or having a one year old and running after them. He also advised me that I shouldn’t take chances in love cause not everyone finds it so when you do. You hold on to it and make sure it doesn’t pass you by. He made me think a lot of things.

One thing I can say for sure is the man has a beautiful family. The way he looks at her and the way she looks at him like he’s the only thing she sees was amazing. Her eyes would light up and smile and so would his. You can feel the love they have to each other without them saying anything. I will never forget the way the both welcomed us

into their home. Mbuso really helped us allot and we didn't even know what kind of shit we are deep in because of our cousin. Phakiso has really screwed with us and what's worse he pissed off a man you never want to get on his bad side. Mbuso is deeply connected to sheikhs, prime ministers, the Albanian Mafia like this man is the last person ever you would want to be on his bad books. We have to fix this whole mess before he deals with our cousin. Problem is how do we get home out of our grandparents house but one thing is for sure. He has to be eliminated. I never thought we will ever have to eliminate one of us. Our blood but he made his bed and now he has to lay on it.

Mbuso promised us that he will let us know when Sakhile has been found so we can all deal with him. He said he's giving us at least two weeks to deal with him or he will. I just don't get why phakiso had to betray us. His whole family. And the list he stole? Does he fucken know the dangerous people who are there?. Fuck man!

“ Phakiso really fucked with us ” Bishop says sighing.

“ not only us but pissed off a man you can't fuck with. A man who comes after you and your family. Fuck! ”

“ He was fucken mad. I didn't know the diamonds were his. How come we didn't know? ” Bishop asks.

“ that's cause kgotso said it's his private client. I couldn't ask who it was since they paid a huge amount of money. He still wants his diamonds and not the money. Kane has to contact those guys. He has to have the back before the week ends ”

“ that's true. I never thought mbuso will this family man. He has changed in some ways but he's still a mother fucker. Badder than before.” He says.

“ The honest truth is we need him more than he needs us. I'll m just glad he'll be here upgrading the system himself and he will need a place to stay. He can't stay in a hotel ”

“ I would offer them my place but I doubt his wife will be comfortable with my living arrangements ”

“ mbuso might tell her but I get what your saying. I guess he will have to stay with me until he leaves.”

“ Please bro. I know he said he’s doing it for us but we all know there’s nothing for free and he did say that he will collect one day.”

“ god knows what he will ask for. ”

“ and it won’t be something small that we know. ”

“ His wife is... . She’s fucken beautiful man! ” that’s a man talking not Bishop.

“ she really is. You almost stopped breathing when you saw her ” he laughs.

“ Fuck yeah! What hot blooded make wouldn’t?. Your jaws were clenched ”

“ I was trying to keep my mouth closed. I didn’t want to disrespect mbuso by looking at his wife like that. And I did look brother... I did” we laugh.

“ One lucky son of bitch! I still can’t believe how they met ” Bishop says. Mbuso told us the whole story of the 2 million random.

“ he knew he had to have her. One way or another and he did. Look at him now ” Bishop says. “ I saw how your whole face changed when you held little ama. ” a smile breaks out of my face.

“ Bro I don’t know what happened. I couldn’t take my eyes off of her. It’s like she was calling for me to hold her and when I did. Everything just disappeared. It was like it was just the two of us. I wonder if everyone feels the same way when they hold babies for the first time ”

“ I have baptised my new horns and babies but I have never felt that.” Bishop explains.

“ man it’s a weird feeling. I wonder what it would be like holding my child the first time... you know there was something about MaNgcobo that made me think of amahle. It made me wonder how amahle would be when she’s older ”

“ When you were holding ama did you Invision having a baby with amahle? Her pregnant with your child? ”

“ I don’t know... . Maybe I did ”

“ I think you did. Lemon me ask you this brother and be honest.”

“ ok shoot. ”

“ do you see yourself some day having a family like mbuso? ”

“ Honestly bro that scares me. Our mother wasn't a good example for us. She hardly cared for us and didn't give a damn. What if I happen to have a child with amahle and she decides she doesn't want to be a mother?. I don't want my child to experience the trauma we went through. Did you mean it when you said you don't want kids? ”

“ I did. I don't want kids.”

“ you would make a great dad. Kids love you and you love them too. You're their favourite uncle.”

“ it's different bro with other people's children. I have the same fears as you bro. Maybe one day when I meet the right woman I might consider it ” he says. We both keep quiet

Jacob drives in my yard and my stomach drops as I see my fathers car.

“ What is he doing here? ” I ask Bishop

“ How the heck would I know! Dad didn't say anything about coming. I only know it's Papa coming and he didn't say yes coming with dad.”

“ I hope that good for nothing piece of trash didn't say anything about amahle and the diamonds.”

“ Calm down ngwana papa. Let's hear what they have to say. Jacob tell the guys to come in so they can eat. ”

“ yes boss ”

We step out of the car and walk in the house and it smells amazing. My stomach grumbles like I haven't eaten. There are voices talking and we follow them. My grandfather and dad are sitting in the dining room having baked biscuits and tea. What?. Bishop and I look at each other.

“ Good evening Papa. Dad ”

“ finally you're home. Did you two not get my messages? ” our dad asks.

“ We just did.” We hug them then sit down.

“ when did you arrive? ” Bishop asks them.

“ three hours ago. Kabelo. Who is that girl badly beaten in the room and why is the whole yard surrounding with security? ” Papa asks.

“ She is mandisa my assistant. Her boyfriend beat her up and she ran away and came here. ”

“ why here and not the police station? ”

“ she felt safe her Papa.”

“ where her boyfriend now? ”

“ We were out looking for him ” Bishop says. P

“ Didimala Mpendulo (keep quiet) ” Oh shit. Why is he mad?.

“ your doctor is in there with her and he says she’s getting better.

What I don’t understand is why you didn’t take her to the hospital after she came here?. What would you have done had she died since you weren’t here? Do you know her family? Where she’s from? ”

well the background Jacob did on her was enough for me. She wasn’t a criminal and all her credentials were true.

“ No Papa ”

“ So you just invite strangers in your house kabelo? Had we not talked about your security before? ”

“ we have Papa ”

“ Then what’s this kabelo? Is there more than what you’re telling me? ”

“Mandisa Papa has worked for me for three years Papa you know that. She has been here before and has my home code. It’s only her and Calvin that do. No one else. I am not reckless with my security.”

“ Amahle lives with you now? ” Papa asks.

“ he’s doing vat' en sit with her ” my dad answers. I look at him.

“ answer me kabelo? ”

“ she is Papa ”

“ does her family know? ”

“ they do.”

“ and her uncle is okay with it? ” my dad asks.

“ I couldn’t leave her there or back to where she lived with her brother. She had to come here with me ”

“ had to? Did she not have a choice? ” Papa asks.

“ She chose to come live with me Papa. Why are you mad at us? ”

“ that is someone’s daughter kabelo. Even though her parents have passed on it doesn’t mean that their daughter is cohabitating here with you. This is not how we raised you kabelo ”

“ but...

serif">“ Ay man take these to the kitchen and come back. We need to talk about your cousin.” Bishop sighs and gets up. “ Where are you going Mpendulo?”

“ Papa I need a drink. Is that okay with you? ” Bishop asks him. He nods.

He takes the try from me and we both walk to the kitchen. Amahle is kneeling a dough concentrating on it. Her face is full of flour. I stand there and watch her. Jane is checking the oven and Belinda is at the sink doing something.

“ good evening. ” we greet them.

Amahle looks up smiles at me then sneezes. She looks so beautiful with flour and her weave a mess. A smile breaks out of my face. I find myself walking towards her. Her eyes follow me until I’m standing next to her.

“ I’m back.”

“ You’re smiling ” she says cocking her head to the side.

“ I guess I am ”

“ Why.. What happened? ” she looks at me suspiciously

“ You happened.” Her breath catches and she looks down. I lift her head up with my finger. “ you’re beautiful.” She frowns.

“ I look like a mess.” She says blushing

“ I didn’t say you look beautiful. I said your beautiful.”

“ are you okay? ”

“ I am now.” I kiss her forehead then walk out.

I realize that Bishop has been standing where I left him watching us. They all are. I leave them there and go to check on Mandisa. Seeing her in the kitchen kneading the dough, looking like a beautiful mess made my heart flip. Seeing her smile at me... fuck!

I open the door to the guest bedroom and Mandisa is sleeping. I walk to her and she still looks bad. I get why Papa is mad. Mandisa could have died in my home and caused allot of problems but thank God she died and hasn’t.

“ Mandisa?... Mandisa? ” she doesn’t say anything. I guess she’s sleeping. I walk out and go to the living room and there’s no one.

They are in my study. I walk there and open the door.

“... . Don't tell me that. I want the truth. What the hell is going on Mpendulo? ” I close the door and gonsot on the couch. Bishop is drinking and he rarely does.

“ Papa I had along day. Can we talk about this tomorrow morning? ”

“ We are going to talk about this now. One of you better start talking ”

“ Phakiso stole someone's diamonds, framed amahle's brother and got him killed. Bugged my whole house and our devices. Kidnapped amahle when she went shopping with Calvin. Then he had the fucken nerve to hack our business and steal very sensitive information that could ruin all our lives and get us all killed. The information he stole papa if it gets to the wrong hands we are all dead!. Me, you him the who fucken ken family!. One of those dangerous people already knows and it's only a matter of time before the others find out Papa. Phakiso gambled with our lives and for what reason I have no fucken idea why!. God! ”

“ I knew that little prick was up to something. He was always on edge.” My dad says.

“ which business kabelo cause I thought everything is going well with your business? ” I sigh.

“ another one we have on the side. The one where the three of us run.” Bishop says

“ You have another business that I don't know about? ”

“ oh but you know it Pa.” my dad says grinning looking at us. Fuck no! This cannot be! They can't know.

“ which one then? The one of you three smuggling diamonds?” Papa asks

“ uhmmmm...” Bishop and I look at each other.

“ yes Pa it's that one.”

“ I'm talking to the boys Martin not you. Karabo? Kabelo? ”

“ Papa? ” we both answer

“ You now know how to lie to me? ”

“ no Papa ”

“ you keep secrets from me now? ” he asks

“ no Papa ”

“ How the hell am I going to protect you when you hide things from me? ” we keep quiet. “ do you too think you’re smarter than me? ”

“ no Papa ” Bishop answers.

“ Do you really think I don’t know any of my children? ” we keep quiet. “ you two think you can hide things from me and I wouldn’t know? ” he can’t know. He doesn’t know. He cannot fucken know!

“ we are not...”

“ The fact that you keep lying to my face is what fucken pisses me off! I did not raise liars karabo! Kabelo! ” I shift in my seat. In all my years I have heard my dad shouting at my dad once and never at once.

“ Papa... ”

“ Which business karabo? Or should I ask Bishop K and Master K? ”

My face goes pale and I cover my face with my hands. They were supposed to never know. We made sure that they never, ever find out.

“ Papa we can explain please ” Bishop begs.

“ How did you find out Pa? ” our dad asks his father.

“ so you also knew and hid it from me? ” my dad looks down. He also knew

“ Pa we couldn’t just tell you that we are.... ”

“ You are what?... My children and you like and prefer things a certain way?. That you want control in everything? ”

“ Papa we didn’t want you to think that there was something wrong with us? ”

“ I didn’t know about the whole sex club thing but I have always know that the three of you and your dad are very Dominant males. Where do you think you get if from cause it surely doesn’t fall from the tree. I knew when we took you from your mother that you will grow up to be this way.” Oh my fucken God!

“ how did you find out about the club Papa? ”

“ Phakiso told me.” He sits down and sighs. “ he said allot of things. I need you two now to tell me the while truth and see how we are going to fix this mess. ”

And we tell him the whole thing. From when I received a call that our truck was missing until everything that happened yesterday and today. He’s been quiet listening. I didn’t tell him though about wanting amahle to be my submissive.

“ you boys are going to kill me I swear. If you made sure that you hid it from Phakiso then how did he find out about it? ”

“ He bugged my whole house Papa and I’m sure he went through my office when he was alone in my house ”

“ your cousin said to me that you want to kill him cause he knows about your sex club business and you are worried that he’s going to tell the whole family. He never told me all of the things you’re telling me.”

“ he knew that we are in to him and so he ran to you for protection. Papa we have to deal with Phakiso. He’s going to ruin My brothers life. Your legacy.” I explain.

“ He’s my grandson too kabelo. I cannot let you kill him!. ”

“ Papa Mbuso is not going to let this go. He won’t.”

“ I told phakiso to come here tomorrow so we can all have a meeting as a family and solve this whole thing. Mpendulo why couldn’t you take a back seat and operate from the dark. How can we be exactly sure that the few who know you will keep their mouths shut and not reveal your identity? ”

“ we have every little dirt on them Papa. The board members and everyone who’s part of the club.” Bishop explains.

“ so this mbuso guy. How sure are you that he’s going to fix the system, make sure he gets the list and the person who works with Phakiso? ”

“ He could have killed Phakiso dad the moment he found out he’s the one who stole the diamonds but he didn’t. What we are sure of is he’s goig to kill Phakiso dad cause he’s also on that list and his best friend the soon to be king. Those people Papa are connected and we can’t piss them off. He promised us he will kill him if we don’t and he will. He never bluffs.” I tell him.

“ The way you’re putting sounds like we need him as a friend rather than an enemy.”

“ We do Papa.” He shakes his head.

“ ok then. Let’s wait for Phakiso to come, explain himself then we’ll deal with it.” Papa says.

“ he’s not going to come Papa cause he knows we know the truth ” Bishop explains.

“ Which is why he doesn’t know we are here to hear what is really going on. I told him we will come and collect him at his apartment. ”

“ Ok Papa ” we say.

“ let’s go have dinner my soon to be granddaughter in law prepared ”
he looks at me daring me to say no. I shake my head and chuckle.

CHAPTER 15

[PREVIOUS](#) PAGE 18 [NEXT](#)

Dinner was okay but obviously very tense. No one was talking and we just wanted this dinner to be over. We have never had dinner like this before where everyone just wanted to leave the table. Even my grandfather wasn’t talking and he couldn’t stop looking at amahle and she had her head down the whole entire time. She asked to be excused as soon as she was done. I didn’t blame her. She probably couldn’t stand the tension in the dining table. My brother left too then my grandfather also the table.

Today has been a long ass day and I am tired. I just want to go to bed and sleep. Phakiso will be here tomorrow and I have no idea what my grandfather is planning but what I know for sure is he has to die and I know exactly what I’m going to do. I can’t let this go cause if I don’t fix it. Mbuso is going to kill him.

“ I’m going to bed. Good night dad ” I stand up.

“ sit down son ” I do.

“ You’re grandfather loves you all the same. You’re all his grandchildren but you know as well as I do that he hates when someone goes against the family. He won’t stand for disloyalty.”

“ I know that dad ”

“ you’re grandfather knows you kabela more than anything cause you’re the one who most takes after him. He’s the head of this family so let him deal with phakiso. I don’t want you or karabo to have his blood in your hands. He’s family and I don’t want one day that shit to come and bite you in the ass okay son? ”

“ dad what if he just reprimands him and that’s all? ”

“ He won’t. Trust me but if he does then well go to plan b.”

“ what is plan b? ”

“ I want that little snake out of our family cause he’s a danger to us especially your brother. We will get someone else to take him out not Jacob or that friend of yours mbuso okay? ”

“ Phakiso has done allot of things in the past and I let it all go. Karabo has been telling me to set him straight cause he was most close to me but he betrayed me dad. He did. I can’t just let Papa sort him out for me. If anyone has a right to take him out its me and I’m going to do it.”

“ Kabela... ”

“ No dad. I have always made sure that phakiso is taken of like the rest of us. We have never excluded him in anything other than the club business. Then he has some balls to bug my house, hack our business and threatening my brother's career and... ”

“ Hurting the woman you love right? ”

“ Dad... ”

“ what is she doing here kabelo? ”

“ she has no one. I have to keep her safe ”

“ Why? She can take care of herself. She’s a young woman but capable of being on her own from what I saw ”

“ we still don’t know whom phakiso is working with and I didn’t want them to come after her and hurt her. I knew I had to take her and keep her safe ” he shakes his head.

“ You could have rented her a place to stay and not bring her here. You know why you brought her here and you should stop denying it. You like her ”

“ Dad... ”

“ what’s really holding you back? Is it because she’s young and you’re afraid that maybe she hasn’t had time to really enjoy her life as a young woman? ” I sigh

“ I’ve thought about that too. I don’t want her to regret agreeing to come here with me. What I need from her dad is more than just a relationship. I want to own her and posses her. Mind, body and soul ”

“ I understand. What you need to do son is ease her into it. Don’t go full force cause that will scare her. Take it slow and by the time she realises. You’ll have her where you want her. Do you see long term with her? ”

“ I don’t know dad ”

“ when you’re not around her. How do you feel? ”

“ I worry even though I know she’s in my house safe. I want her next to me everywhere I go.” He smiles.

“ she mean more to you than what you’re admitting. Son there’s nothing wrong with letting love in. Not every woman is going to be like your mother. You do deserve to let a woman love you. I was watching her during dinner and her eyes were on you. When you took the first bite of that good she smiled. You know why? ”

“ No ”

“ cause she prepared it for you especially. She wanted to see if you love her cooking and when you continued to eat she took a deep breath out. You would have seen that if you weren’t so pissed at Pa. She likes you kabelo. Stop building this wall around you and just let your feeling lead you for once. You can’t wrong son. ”

I hear what he’s saying but I don’t know why something is holding me back. Saying something is easy but doing the damn thing is actually hard. I watch him as he stands up and leaves. Jane and Belinda come in and begin to clear the table. I leave too and go to my office and make a call.

“ well, well, well. Looks like Christmas came early this year. My master. To what do I owe this pleasure to receive your call this late? ”

“ where are you? ”

“ Where you know I am.”

“ I want in. ” I inform him.

“ No! Hell No! You said you are done with that life! ”

“ Are you saying no to me? ” he keeps quiet. “ I thought so. Let me know when and where. I want it arranged as soon as possible ”

“ Master K please... ”

“ do your job ” I hang up and close my eyes. What am I doing?

I sit in my office thinking about who is really working with phakiso and where the damn diamonds are. I make some calls and arrange for new diamonds to be delivered. It's going to cost us triple of what the last shipment cost us but it's worth it. Mbuso has got to have his diamonds. I check the time and it's 11:30. I don't want to go to bed and sleep cause I want to damn release. It's been damn too long since I fucked a woman. My whole body is tense and it's begging me for a release.

Zanele has been sending me text begging me to meet her. The bitch has forgotten who calls the shots here. Me and not her. She knows to never ever call me. I bet she's low on cash that's why she's been texting me. I could have gone to her and fucked her brains off but when I think about her. My dick doesn't even react. It reacts to one person only. Amahle. I haven't even fucked her yet and my dick is reacting this way.

My feet feel heavy as I walk upstairs to my bedroom. I take off my clothes the moment I shut the door dropping them down walking to my bathroom and take a cold shower. I resist the urge to jack off cause that won't be enough. I need pussy. I want to pound on it fucken hard and lose myself. I dry myself then walk to my bedroom. I switch the lights off and get in bed and close my eyes.

I'm about to doze off when my door opens and closes and her fragrance hits me. She walks in and stands next to my bed. She's been to my bedroom before cause she finds the bed in darkness. Or maybe it's the bathroom light that's making it easier for her. She stands next to the bed and debates what to do. I'm going to pretend that I'm sleep and wait for her. This is a bad idea. She shouldn't have came here while I'm feeling like this. I hear shuffling then she opens the comforter gets in bed and she's trembling. She knows it's a bad idea for her to be here but still here she is. Amahle has some balls and she will surprise you.

She moves closer to me and her body touches mine. She's naked. Damn amahle!. My dick raises up and gets painfully hard. She freezes when she feels my dick on her ass. I can feel her heartbeat beating fast. She takes a deep breath out. Her body is soft and warm. I move my head to her nape and inhale her. She swallows.

“ You want me to help you sleep? ” she nods. “ Tell me. ” I whisper in her ear.

“ Yes. I can’t sleep. I thought if I came here I would be able to sleep ”

“ Tell me what you want.” I move my hand to her stomach and bring her much closer to me so she can feel the extent of my arousal. She moans.

“ I... I’m ready ” she says.

“ You’re ready for what? ”

“ for you to touch me ” she can’t mean what I think she means.

“ amahle... ” she turns and looks at me. I press a button and lights go on around where the bed is at. She gasps. I need to see clearly. “ what do you mean you’re ready for me to touch you ” she looks away and then looks at me.

“ you said you’ll touch me only if I agree to be yours in all ways. I am saying yes to being your submissive.” She says looking at me dead in the eyes. She didn’t say that.

“ No! ”

“ What? ” she asks me. I get off the bed and stand. “ What do you mean no? ”

“ you’re saying this because you are horny and you want me to fuck you.

That’s all right? ”

“ No that’s not it... I am ready.” That’s her hormones talking not her.

“ Answer me this question truthfully. Do you understand? ”

“ I do. ” she sits up and her boobs are just pointing up looking at me. Begging my hands and mouth to play with them.

“ Are you horny right now? ” she blushes.

“ I am.” She whispers

“ do you want me to fuck you? ” she hides her face with her hands. “ Amahle? ” she removes them and her eyes land on my hard throbbing dick. I bet she can see the pre-cum leaking.

“ Yes. I want us to have sex.” She says.

“ Did you mean it when you said you want to be my submissive? ” she closes her eyes then opens then and looks at me straight up.

“ I mean it. I am ready and I want to be your submissive.” What is going on with her?

“ What changed your mind? ”

“ When you and your brother left. I was in your study doing some research on it when Jessica came and saw what I was doing. She asked me if I’m curious and I said yes. She then told me that’s she’s also a submissive. She explained many things to me and they made sense. She made me see this submissive thing in a different light. She explained to me that there are different types of submissive and Dom’s. She also explained that people tend to think that a submissive and Dom relationship is all about sex and it isn’t. It’s more than that. It feels good and very important giving your trust to someone and let them handle everything. You don’t get to worry cause you know that there is someone who will handle whatever problem there is. Yes, I know I have to please you as my Dom, do as you say but I also have the power too cause this relationship is about the two of us then Jane and Belinda as well shared their

experiences. I want to know what's it like too. I want to experience it with you and no one else."

I sit on the bed and palm her cheek.

" I hope you don't feel like they pressured you to agree or... "

" no they didn't. They also told me about the bad stuff too. It wasn't just the good things they shared. Kabelo I want to be your submissive "

" we'll talk about this in the morning. Let's sleep."

" what?... You're not... We're not going to... "

" I'm too tense. I don't want to hurt you " She sighs disappointed. Amahle has to learn to be patient. I can't have sex with her with my grandfather and dad here and I'll bet a million dollars that amahle is a screamer. I get in bed and pull her back to my chest. My dick curses at me in a million ways for not giving it what it wants. I kiss her cheek and close my eyes.

Fuck! Fuck! Fick! I blink again trying to force my mind to sleep but I fucken can't. My body is fighting me and it refuses to listen to me. Amahle is snoring softly sleeping. When she fell asleep I moved her body off from me a little so I can breath. My dick is fucken hard I can't sleep. Fuck me!. I slowly get off the bed

take the phone and look at the time. 3am fuck!. I walk to the bathroom and drink a glass of water and look at myself in the mirror. I will get in there and sleep. I will not fuck her. I will not fuck her. Yes I won't. I have to.

I walk back in again and stop. Amahle is now laying face up and the comforter has exposed her whole chest. Her boobs are facing up and her nipples are hard. God is really tempting me... or amahle is. If she's awake and knows what she's doing she's going to be awake for what I'm about to do. I walk to the bed and remove the comforter and she moans and opens her eyes.

" your playing a dangerous game little one " she smiles and doesn't hide her nakedness. My hands roam her body and end up to that little triangle that is giving me a hard night. She had shaved a few days ago cause her pubic hair looks like it's growing out. It's just how I love it.

" I felt you leaving the bed and I... " I get on the bed with my knees and her breath hitches

" You felt me leaving and so you thought, let me move the comforter so he can see my perfect beautiful body? ... is that right little one? " she licks her lip.

" uhmmm... "

" I will fucken tear this pussy apart and it would hurt sitting down. You'll even be afraid to touch yourself when bathing. Do you want me to touch you? "

" I do " I raise my eyebrow " touch me Sir. Please? " she begs me with her sweet sleepy voice.

" Where do you want me to touch you? "

I grab her legs, gently lift then up and separate them and I see manna from heaven coated with her juices. I get between her thighs and her skin pebbles.

" I won't touch you unless you tell me where you want me to touch you"

“ please touch me here sir ” she points at her lips and looks away. She wants my lips on her lips. Not the ones she’s pointing at.

I move my body down and lay on my stomach. My face is right on her pussy. She tries to close her legs but I push them apart.

“ I’m giving you what you want. Sit still little one. If you move even a little. I will stop. Do you understand? ”

“ I do sir ” oh I know she’s not going to stay still. I will let it go this one time.

“ bring your hands down and show me your pussy little one and move them. No matter what I do don’t remove your hands or else I stop.”

“ yes sir. I understand sir.....ahhhh ”

The moment she exposed her pussy to me and I see that glistening juice coating her pussy I bury my head and muff the fuck out of her. Fuuuuuuck! She tastes fucken good. My tongue moves all around her pussy licking her juices and tasting her fucken pussy. My dick begs me to be inside of her and fuck her until I blackout. Which is something I haven’t done in years. Fuck a woman until I fell asleep on top of her. I think fucking amahle is going to do that.

I move her hands away and she screams yes. I hold her waist down with my hands because she’s moving it like I knew she would. I plunge my tongue inside her pussy and she holds my head down and presses hard.

“ Oooh God yeeeeeeeeeeeeesssss! ”

Her pussy tastes so sweet. Her scent is intoxicating and making me muff her more. I move my head and attend the hard bud that has been begging for my attention. I stick my tongue out and move it up and down on her, side ways then cover it with my mouth and nibble on it. I watch her as she screams and throws her head back. Both her hands are on my head pressing me down.

She moans and calls my name. I use my teeth softly and she screams my name again begs me to not stop. I continue to suckle, nibble and bite her clit a until she tells me she’s coming then I feel the a huge gush as it splashes on my chin and I move away a little so it will flow down my neck and chest.

“ oh God....what happened...ahhh ” I smile to myself. There’ll be many more squirts from here. This is just the beginning. Her body shakes as she orgasms. I move up her body and claim those damn lips that have been tempting me. Her nails dig deep in my skin and her legs wrap around my waist. My dick is beneath her ass and I can feel her wetness on it. All I can do now is just slide in and give us what we both want. But not right now. This has to be about her and her pleasure. Her lips are soft, her mouth is warm, her tongue collides with mine and I dominate. I take over the kiss and let her follow me. She makes sweet moaning sounds that are like music to my ears. It makes me wonder what sounds she would make when my dick is inside of her. Her soft body and breasts pressed on my chest. Fuck I want to flip her and let her sit on my lap but I want her to come again. I move my hand between us and rub her clit with my thumb then plunge two fingers in her and she moans in my mouth.

She tries to move her mouth from me but I use hand to hold her head and continue to kiss her. Her hips move and mimicking my fingers inside her. I move them around inside her pussy while rubbing her clit and her body shakes. She's going to come any minute now. I move my fingers from her warmth and quickly pick her up, turn us around and sit her on my lap. I grab her waist and watch her mouth forming a big O when her pussy touches my dick. I move her hips up and down and let her rub herself on me until her body shakes again. I grab her neck and pull her to my lips and swallow her cries as she climaxes and moans my name. My balls have been screaming for me to release before I get blue balls. She wraps her hands around my neck and her hand brushes the back of my head. Fuck!

I pull her close to me and try to call myself my down so I won't cum but the way she's brushing my head is making the blood flow to a hundred degrees to my dick. I finally lose the battle and cum hard. My seed shoots out and up between us and she moans. I groan holding her tight and she says

" Fuck me Kabelo please Fuck me! "

CHAPTER 16

[PREVIOUS](#) PAGE 19 [NEXT](#)

#NotEdited

" Please fuck me Kabelo!... Please! " she begs me again filling her lungs with air. Her hands travel down to my arms and she grips my shoulder. She wants to push me on my back. Does she want to get on top of me and fuck me?. I chuckle. I change positions and she's now laying on her back. Her lip is swollen from the kisses. I bring my head down and lick it. I look down between us and see my seed on her stomach.

" Rub it around your body " her breath hitches. I plant my hands on her sides caging her in and also giving her space to move. " around your stomach and those beautiful twins " she grins.

" You love them? " she asks me smiling

" I do. Rub little one "

She moves her hands and runs my sticky seed on her body. She watches me then she opens her mouth and licks the cum that was in her fingers. She moans as she licks her fingers clean and smacks her lips. There is a freak beneath this sweet exterior. I can't wait to peel off all her layers. By the time I'm done with her. She won't know what hit her.

" How does it taste? "

" Good. I thought it might be bitter and tasteless but it's not. I love how you taste sir."

" You'll love it more when I finally fuck that stubborn mouth " she bits her lip."
" don't keep me waiting then " I smirk.

I move her to the middle of the bed and position her exactly the way I want. I lift her legs up and place my hands on her knees and push them further apart. I want to see how tight her bones are and how flexible she is.

“aw your hurting me....” She whimpers. They are not where exactly I want them to be but it’s not a problem. She will be flexible.

She is absolutely beautiful. Her body is perfect and soft. She’s all woman. Ass, curves and breasts. I move my hands from her feet to her boobs and up to her face.

“When is your next shot?”

“Next month.”

“you’re still protected but do you want us to use we a condom?” her breath hitches.

“I won’t get pregnant but I.....I want us to use a condom” I nod. I lift myself up and open my side drawer and take a condom. I roll it on my dick with her watching me between her thighs. She’s looks nervous and a little afraid but she doesn’t take her eyes away from me.

“I’m going to ask you again amahle and be honest cause I don’t want to hurt you. Did you lie to me about you not being a virgin?” she huffs and rolls her eyes. Her hands move to my shoulders and she grabs them. She has done this before.

“I didn’t lie. I told you that that I did it once and it hurt too much so I asked him to stop.”

“it’s going to hurt cause you did it only once and never did it again. I need you to relax your body and don’t think too much. Focus on me here and nothing else.” She takes a deep breath and nods. “don’t scream too much okay?” she blushes.

Laying my whole naked body on top of here feels like home. The warmth and softness of her body is making me imagine all kinds of things I want to do to her and hear her scream, moan and call my name. Fuck!. She moans and roams her hands all over my body. She moves her body beneath me and she’s rubbing herself on my dick. My hand goes between us and I plunge my fingers in her pussy she digs her fingers in my skin hard. I pull it out and bring it to her mouth.

“Open” she does and I push my fingers in her mouth so she can taste herself. She licks my fingers moaning.

I mover her a little down so she won’t run away from me when I plunge in her sweet pussy.

“are you ready?” she nods.

“uhm don’t you need to tie me up or something?” I almost chuckle but I just stare at her and let this moment sink in. She blushes and hides her face on my shoulder. She’s nervous and still so beautiful.

“no baby. In my bedroom you get the Dom Kabelo and not Master K. Kiss me.” She pulls my head down and smashes her lips against mine Her breathing gets even and she begins to relax again and moves her legs further apart telling me

she's ready. I love this about her. She let's her body guide her. It's time we get to properly know each other. I thrust my hips on her and her eyes go wide open.

" grab my dick and take it to where it wants to go baby "

Her mouth opens like she wants to refuse but that stubborn light in her eyes lights up and she snakes her hand down and touches it. Her small warm hand grabs my dick and I groan. Her other hand snakes down too and both hands wrap around my dick. She holds it tight and points it to her entrance. She tries to move her hands but I trap them in there. She looks at me and thrust in her a little and she holds her breath. I move her hands off there and she wraps them around my neck.

My dick is screaming at me. My hands go under her body and I grab her shoulders to hold her down and another hand holds her head so she won't move. My mouth finds hers again and I caress her mouth and thrust in her again but not deeply. She tries to move her head and mouth from me but I hold her and not let her move from me. My eyes are on her and hers are shut tight. I thrust deeply and harder in her and she screams and hits my back with her hands. If I move my mouth from her she's going cry out loud and I can't h that. I should have gagged her but I wanted to hear these sweet sounds she's making.

I hold myself there and let her adjust to my size. Her pussy is warm and tight and for a moment I wish I didn't wear a condom. I can feel her tears on my face. I pull out and lift my body.

" do you want to us to still continue? " she nods.

" I do " she sniffs

" Are you sure? "

" I am Kabelo "

" The pain will disappear after a while and you'll feel pleasure. Relax your body and don't move okay? "

" ok "

She wraps them and before she can even take a breath I thrust in again and she closes her eyes. I pull out then thrust in deeper than I was and she screams. Oh fuck. I suppress my groan. She feels so fucken good. I want her to enjoy it not think about my dick. I move in and out of her watching her face. I thrust slow and deeper. She moans. Every time I thrust. I love how I feel inside of her. Her pussy is warm, wet and tight.

My dick slips in and out of her.... Fuck!. Her body begins to relax, her breathing changes. Her hands move to my ass and she pushes me deeper. I continue to fuck her that way then move my hand to her clit and rub it. She opens her legs wider making me go deeper into her as I rub her clit and thrusting into her. Her hips move mimicking my thrust. She bites her lips and digs her hands in me and moves her hips. I rub faster and she does the same then she throws her head back. She's abut to come. I stop rubbing her clit and begin to fuck her.

“ Ooohhh.....Fuck I’m coming!.....Oh God I’m coming and Ooooooohhh! ” fuck yes

Amahle wanted my dick and begged me to fuck her so her wish is my command. I lift her legs over my shoulders and fuck the shit out of her thrust after thrust without letting her breathe. She calls my name and says allot of shit I don’t understand. I fuck amahle through her orgasm that leaves her body shaking but I don’t stop and chase my own orgasm.

Holding back won’t work cause it takes allot to calm me down from this high. I fuck her hard but not the way I want to. Her pussy muscles contract around my dick and I curse. She wants me to come.

“ Kabelo?.....” she whispers my name and that goes straight to my dick fuck! “ Kabelo?..... Ahhhh..... ..oh yes..... . Kab.... ” fuck amahle shouldn’t talk. “ kab... . Ah....Chama.... Ngichamele tu! ”

Ah fucken shit! Her please go straight to my dick and I can feel it coming. All of my blood flows straight to my dick and my balls get heavy. I can hear amahle screaming my name then she does that shit again and brushes the back of my neck. I clench my teeth and try not to cum but damn her pussy and that hand. I don’t know what it is but every time she touches me there it does something to me. I thrust faster and hit her g-spot so we can come together. I hold on as tight as I can then when her pussy milks my dick climaxing, I finally let myself cum. I hold on to her and keep thrusting until I’m sure I have filled the condom with my seed. I fall heavy on top of her and she holds me.

My face is buried on her neck covered with both our sweats. I lick her neck and she’s giggles. She turns her face looking at me and pecks my lips. She’s smiling and not angry at me. I thought she would since I fucked her hard.

“ Thank you ”

“ for what? ” she asks

“ For not fucking anyone else after that time and for letting me to be the only one who’s going to be tearing this pussy apart.” She laughs “ you’re beautiful. Even your laugh is beautiful. It reaches your eyes.”

“ are you okay? ”

“ I’m still feeling high from this... ” in say thrusting. We both moan.

“ Well thank you as well for being gentle with me. I thought you were going to do wicked things to me ”

“ Things like what?, whipping you and chaining you? ”

“ Uhm yes.. ” I chuckle.

“ Oh baby, you still have a lot to learn. Not everyone gets off from whips and chains. I can whip someone and not get hard. It’s not the whipping that only turns me on but whom I’m whipping

where and why?. I can whip you for pain or pleasure.”

“ that time you took you’re belt and whipped me. Did you get hard? ”

“ that time I thought I was whipping a thief. When I saw your skin I wondered what the belt marks would look on it. I wanted to see and I did. You wore them well. When I landed the first strike you’re skin turned pinkish then red. I

wanted to see it go from red to green or blue. That got me hard because it was your skin. ” she keeps quiet.

“ are you going to do that again? ”.

“ Like I said. I would never do anything you don’t want me to do to you.”

“ Has someone ever done that to you? Whipped you? ”

“ that and more ”

“ What?.. Who? Why? ”

“ That’s enough for now little one.. I’m still not done with you ” she smiles.

I pull out looking at her and her mouth forms an O again. I go to the bathroom, wrap the condom with tissue then blush it in the toilet. Amahle walks in then seats down and pees. I watch her take a tissue wiping herself then flushing the toilet and washes her hands on the aint in front of me.

She’s bending and her ass is brushing my dick that is now rock hard. I grab her waist, push her back down so her ass can come up. She looks at me through the wall mirror. I smile and pick her up and she squeals. I walk us back to the bedroom and throw her on the bed. She giggles.

“ get on your hands and knees.” She does.

Her pick vulva smiles at me. I hold her ass cheeks and push them away and her tight dark ring greets me. I can imagine my dick in there squeezing the life out of my dick but still warm as fuck.

“ will you let me fuck your ass? ”

“ What?... Now? ”

Her skin pebbles. Her toes curl and her hands grab the sheets tight. She likes the idea.

“ not now little one but someday ”

“ Ok ”

“ Ok what? ”

“ You’ll fuck me there? ” I chuckle.

I brush her cheeks then lightly slap them. She jumps.

“ you won’t jump next time I slap you. You’ll actually push your ass back and beg me to slap you harder while I’m fucking your ass ” she moans “ does that make you wet? ”

“ yes ” she whispers

“ the thought of my dick in your ass or slapping these beautiful globes? ” she swallows

“ both ”

“ Do you want my dick now? ”

“ yes... ”

I rub my fingers in her pussy and she’s wet. She doesn’t take long to be ready. That good but that doesn’t mean there won’t be foreplay when we fuck. Right now though I don’t have time for that. I open the drawer again and take a condom and roll it down my dick.

She shifts her body anticipating for what it’s about to come. I get on my knees and eat her from behind. She jumps but I hold her waist. My tongue plays with

clit, goes in and out of her pussy and up to her tight ring and down again. I do this this again and a gun until amahle body begins to go tight. I quickly stand up, move her legs further apart then grab her waist and thrust in.

“ Oh fuck yes! ” she screams.

My mouth salivates and I swallow. I pull out then in again and fuck her. Every thrust I make hits her g-spot. I fuck her hard without mercy then her body goes stiff and she moans telling me she’s cuming and squirts all over me. I don’t stop fucking her. Her body is shaking, her knees fail her and she falls flat on the bed taking me with her. My hands move her legs to be close together making my dick go deeper and her vagina more tight around me. Fuck this feels so good. I fucken love it.

I thrust in once she whimpers and hides her face on the bed. I thrust in again and she curses. The third time she almost move off the bed but I lay my body on her and fuck her. She doesn’t he anywhere to go. All she does is take each and every stroke I thrust into her pussy that is driving me fucking insane. I lose myself again and fuck amahle. My hand goes to her pussy and rub her clit. Her bud is pointing hard and the moment my hand touches her clit her pussy milks my dick!

Her pussy contracts and expands around me. I grab her head and claim her sweet warm mouth forcing my tongue down her throat. Every damn thing about her is fucking addictive. My pace changes and I’m now chasing my orgasm. Her body goes but her pussy milks my dick and she moans loudly in my mouth as she orgasm. I lift my body up and fuck her hard. My skin against her skin, wet with see at and slapping against each other. I grab her ass and see her dark ring smiling at me and fuck! That throws me over the edge and I cum hard groaning. That orgasm knocks me down cause I fall heavy on her back still thrusting until I stop.

“ baby?.... ” she’s silent “ baby? Amahle? ” she mumbles something I don’t understand. “ are you sleeping? ” she nods. I chuckle. I pull out slowly and regret it cause I still want to go back inside. I stand up, pull off the condom and go to the bathroom again. When I come back I wipe amahle them pick her up and move her in the middle of the bed. I also get in and pull her to chest then cover us. I don’t have time to change the sheet where she squirted. I kiss her cheek

“ no Kabelo I’m sore ” she mumbles and I chuckle.

“ you’re perfect baby. In every way. I’m a lucky man ” in close my eyes.

CHAPTER 17

[PREVIOUS](#) PAGE 20 [NEXT](#)

She looks so beautiful sleeping. Her mouth is slightly opened and she’s snoring lightly. I peck her lips and see if she will wake up but she doesn’t. I really want to fuck her again but I should let her body rest. For now at least but I know

before the end of this day I'll be balls deep in her and fucking her hard. I get off the bed before I wake her up with my dick. I look at then time and it's 9 am. Damn I've never slept until this late. I go to the bathroom brush my teeth and shower quickly. I walk out of the bathroom and she's now laying on her stomach and the comforter is caught between her feet. Her whole beautiful back is exposed.

My dick gets hard quickly. I go to her and shower her ass with kisses. She still doesn't wake up. Amahle is a deep sleeper. I cover her body and she sighs. I chuckle. After dressing up I leave the bedroom and go downstairs and they are having breakfast. Even mandisa is sitting in the table and she looks so much better.

" good morning " they greet back.

" It really is a good morning " karabo emphasizes. I give him the shut the fuck up look.

" where is Papa? "

" On the phone with Koko " Kane answers.

" When did you get here? "

" early in the morning " I nod and sit down.

" where is amahle? " Kane asks.

" She's sleeping. I'm sure she's very tired. " karabo mumbles.

" and you're jealous. You need to get laid brother " they laugh.

" Leave your brother alone. At least we now know that they are really together. Gag her next time so she won't scream so much " my brothers burst into fits of giggles. I knew they would hear and quiet frankly I didn't care.

My grandfather walks in smiling and all. I hope one day I'll be the same age as him and look at amahle the same way papa does when he looks at my grandmother. Yeah I know what I'm saying is crazy but I know for sure that no other man is ever. I mean ever going to touch her the way I do. She's mine alone and that is going to stay that way no matter what and forever. I hope she's ready for me.

" Kabelo?... Kabelo? " my grandfather snaps his fingers in front of my face.

" Huh? " I look at him.

" where did you go to just now? " they laugh.

" Uhm Papa when did you know Koko was the one? " he grins.

" Well it looks like we might be great grandparents sooner than we thought and after what I heard last night.... Boy you better have scored "

" papa mandisa is here " she pretends like she didn't hear.

" Oh don't worry about her. She's worked for us for years. We can trust her. Right Mandy? " Mandisa nods and looks away. What is up with her.

" papa when amahle comes down please don't make her feel awkward. Please pretend like you didn't know hear her " I look at Kane and he shrugs his shoulders.

" we won't." karabo notes.

“ well Kabelo I knew your Koko was the one when we were at her hometown for a church conference and she was one of the women they has asked to cook for us. After a long day of meetings, arguing and agreeing to some of the things we had discussed. It was time to have dinner but I was caught up with paperwork by the time I was done. Everyone had left for bed. When I walked in the kitchen I saw this short girl. She was cleaning the kitchen and humming. I stood there and watched her and she wasn't aware the whole time that someone was there. She turned around, saw me , screamed and almost broke her leg from falling but I was there to catch her. I apologized for scaring her and she just laughed it off. I asked for food and she told me she thought everyone had eaten cause the food was finished. I said it was okay I'll just have some tea but she wouldn't hear none of that so she cooked for me and it was the best plate of food I have ever had. I walked her home cause it was late and when I was outside her parents house I found myself not wanting to let her go. A part of me was scared that maybe I wasn't going to see her again but she assured me she would. When the conference was over and we had to leave it was so hard. I didn't want to leave her behind but I did and it felt like I was leaving my heart behind and it was hard. I never wanted to feel that again so the next month I talked to my father about seeing this beautiful Sotho girl I wanted to marry and then you're all here now ” He smiles.

“ so it was love at first sight? ” Kane asks

“ it was son. I never looked back ever since. I hope you're asking me this Kabelo cause you see a future with amahle. You are all grown now and you need to start thinking about having your own families. We are not getting younger and I would like to play with my great grandchildren while your grandmother and I still have a chance. That includes you karabo.”

“ not everyone is destined to be a parent papa.” My dad looks at karabo hurt.

“ Was I that bad of a parent to you for you to not want to have children of your own? ”

“ It's not you dad. It's a personal choice I made and for the last time I hope we will never talk about this.” He snaps.

“ The sooner you realize that not every woman is like your mother the better you will start to forgive yourself karabo. I forgave myself and so will you. All of you!” Karabo stands up and walks out. My dad follows him.

“ are they ever going to get along? ”Kane asks worriedly.

“ They too need to forgive each other. Don't worry about them. They'll be fine.” papa states.

Amahle walks in looking beautiful. We stand up and she almost stops walking then continues to walk greeting us. I want to see where she's going to sit. She walks to my side and I pull a chair for her. She sits down and I kiss her cheek. She looks down blushing.

“ Did you sleep well ntombi? ”

“ I did mkhulu. ” she whispers then clears her throat.

“ you look beautiful amahle ” Kane says grinning. Amahle smiles.

She begins to fill her plate with food and does the same with mine plating the same thing and she digs in. Mandisa has been quiet and playing with her food. I don't know if she's still worried about skhumbuzo or it's something else.

"Mandisa?"

"Sir?" she looks up

"How are you feeling today?"

"I'm better sir thank you"

"What's bothering you?" she takes a deep breath before she tells me what's bothering her but Jane walks in and she looks nervous.

"uhm excuse me sir but there's someone here to see miss Mandisa" I look at Mandisa and she looks away. What the fuck is going on here.

"whom did you invite here without talking to me first?"

"kabelo!...tell the person to come in Jane" my grandfather orders her.

My brother and dad come in and they sit down after greeting amahle who greeted them first. Both of them look less tense. I hope they managed to talk.

Jane walks in and her eyes are at me like she's warning me or something. I frown and look behind her and my mood instantly changes. I look at Mandisa and her face is apologetic.

She walks in behind Jane with a concerned look on her face. She looks at me smiles then quickly runs to Mandisa and pulls her to chest. I look at karabo and he's as pissed as me. Amahle places her hand on my lap and I look at her. I know she can sense that my mood has changed.

"are you okay?" she whispers.

"I'll explain to you later" I kiss her cheek.

"Mandisa what is going on here?" Candice's eyes are on me.

"she didn't know I would show up here. When I went to her...."

"Who the fuck said you can talk? You walk in my house and you don't greet us?. Did you fucken lose your manners where you come from?" she looks down.

"I'm sorry I..."

"Did I give you permission to talk?" I ask her. She looks down.

"sir I'm sorry....I ...I didn't know she was going to come here and I told her not to come" Mandisa stutters.

Amahle tries to remove her hand from my lap but I hold it down.

"get up

walk out then come back again with your manners" she gasps "Now Candise!" she quickly stands up and walks out.

"Who is that?" Papa asks

"A mistake." I reply looking at amahle. Her eyes go wide understanding what I'm saying.

"good morning everyone I came... .."

"Did I not tell you to never come back here ever again?" she looks down "answer me!"

"You did sir."

“ but yet you still came. After I warned you! ” I stand up and walk towards her and she takes a step back. “ I will tell you again for the last time and I hope this time you listen to me. If you fucken come here again or be seen anywhere around me or my family I will kill you Candise and no one will ever find your body. Trust me. Now get the fuck out of my house! ” she doesn’t even blink as she takes her back and runs out.

“ kabelo! ” my dad reprimands me

“ And wena! If you ever invite that bitch in my house? You’ll know me! Nxa! ” I warn Mandisa.

“ kabelo! ” karabo yells my name.

“ Fuck off Mpendulo! ” I walk out of the living and go to my bedroom. I throw myself on bed and close my eyes.

How the fuck does Mandisa know Candise my former sub?. Something doesn’t make sense here. Something is fucken wrong I know it. I look for my phone then call Jacob.

“ KB? ”

“ I need you to find out everything you can about Mandisa since she began to work for me. I need everything Jacob. ”

“ What’s going on? ”

“ I don’t know but something isn’t sitting well with me. Candise was here to see Mandisa and as far as I know Candise has never been to my office. She has never met Mandisa cause every time she was here I was with her and never alone so how did those two meet and what did Mandisa tell her about us. I think there’s more to her assault than we think ”

“ are you serious? ”

“ I’m serious Jacob and you know I’m never wrong about this so I need you to dig deep ”

“ I’ll also look up Candise ”

“Do that. ”

“ I’ll let you know as soon as I’m done ” I hang up.

The door opens. I look up and it’s amahle. I lay my head back down. The bed dips as she sits. She takes a deep breath before she talks.

“ who is she? ”

“ one of my biggest mistakes.”

“ Your ex? ”

“ no. She was my sub ” she keeps quiet. I know her mind is probably is thinking all kinds of things.

“ she’s beautiful ”

“ she’s nothing compared to you. She wouldn’t be anything more than what you are ”

“ She’s a woman and I’m just.... ” I sit up and make her look at me.

“ stop. You’re woman enough for me. Don’t compare yourself to someone you barely even know. She might look beautiful on the outside but inside she’s a rotten piece of shit. Trust me ”

“ you hate her. What did she do? ”

“ She was fucking another Dom while she was my sub. The day I caught her with him she almost stabbed me with a knife when he knocked me with something from behind and I fell. ”

“ what? Did you get hurt? ”

“ I didn't. I kicked the knife from her hand and punched her. The guy ran away. I wanted to kill her that day ”

“ why didn't you kill her then? ”

“ Why doesn't that scare you? ”

“ After how you beat me up the first time you saw me? I knew you were capable of doing that and more”

“ I'm sorry I did that. I wish I could turn back time and undo it. I hope one day you'll forgive me.” she nods.

“ tell me why you didn't kill her? ”

“ she was a mother and I didn't want to be the reason why her child would grow up without a mother. If she wasn't? She would have been dead ”

“ what about the guy? ”

“ don't ask me questions you don't want answers to cause I won't lie to you amahle. ”

“ he's dead isn't he? ”

“ Yeah I shot him.”

“ Kabelo...” she murmurs

“ you slept with a killer. Does that scare you now? ”

“ you scared me even before I knew you have killed. Will you kill me too? ” I palm her cheek.

“ Are you planning on betraying me or my family baby? ” she shakes her head.

“No. I would never ”

“ are you going to cheat on me? ”

“ Never. Will you? ”

“ You are now my obsession. Your pussy is the only one I'm ever going to fuck and make love to. I don't want anyone else except you baby ”

“ don't hurt me Kabelo ”

“ Never intentionally ”

“ Promise me. ” she begs.

“ Amahle Gumbi. I Kabelo Ntanzi promise you that I will never intentionally or purposefully hurt you. ” I kiss her lips.

“ my feelings for you scare me.” She confesses.

“ Tell me how you feel? ”

“ I feel safe, protected and at home with you. I know it should be the opposite but it isn't. Maybe it's because I've never felt that way about someone excluding my brother. I'm at ease when you're around I don't feel scared or worried cause a part of me knows that you won't let anything bad happen to me.” She speaks softly.

“ I’ll never let anyone hurt you or let something bad happen to you. Not on my watch. You mean so much more to me than you know baby and I will show you. It’s going to overwhelm you but you’ll know that it’s coming from deep within me.”

“ I hope you are not just saying that? ” her eyes look for my next answer on my face.

“ I never say something I don’t mean. My word is my bond. Trust me amahle ”

“ I trust you. That’s why I agreed to be your submissive. I want to experience all of it with you ”

“ thank you baby. Thank you for also sharing your body with me. I’ll take good care of it. I’ll make sure you’re thoroughly and well fucked.” She giggles.

“ I was well fucked thank you sir although I woke up and you weren’t in bed ”

“ did you miss me or my dick? ” she chuckles.

“ I missed you both ” I pick her up and sit her on my lap. She moans. “ You see what you do to me? ” our crotches touch. She wraps her hands around my neck.

“ What do I do to you sir? ”

“ everything you do drives me crazy. Your smart mouth, your stubbornness. Your kindness, your smile and the sounds you make when I fuck you drive me crazy ” I claim her lips. She moans.

“ Are you still sore? ”

“ we are not having sex now Kabelo. Your parents are there and they will hear us ”

“ they will hear you baby not me ” I flip us up and she shrieks “ shhhhh ”

“ Kabelo.... ”

“ yes baby ” I steal kisses from her soft lips and warm mouth. Damn she gives best kisses.

“ They... . Mmmm... they will hear us ”

“ I’ll gag you baby... . They won’t hear you ” I deepen the kiss

“ mmmmm ” she moans

“ we won’t use a condom this time ” I tell her between kisses

“ why.... ” she asks panting and wraps her legs around my waist. Fuck!

“ I want to feel you bare. I want your muscles to milk my dick dry. I want to feel every nerve I will hit. I want to feel your pussy welcoming me in as I thrust in you and lose myself. Don’t you want to feel me filling you in? ” she moans and drags her nails down my back.

Fuck she feels good beneath me.

“ baby?....”

“ mmmmmm ” she moves her hips

“ Tell me. ”

“ I want to feel you too ”

“ Uzongi vumela ngikuchamele? (you let me nut in you?) ” my dick presses the zip of my chinos. Fuck! It wants to be let out and inside her pussy.

“ yessssssss nut in me ” fuck yes!

I move off her and take off my T-shirt and throw it somewhere. She takes off her dress as well and I'm unbuckling my pants when someone knocks. Amahle and I look at each other. I put my finger to my lips and tell her to be quiet. The person knocks again then they stop. I take a deep breath out... my dick screams nooooo!

" I know you two are in there. Papa is calling you Kabelo! " he shouts. I keep quiet. " I can hear you two breathing in there! "

" Go away Mpendulo! " I grumble.

" I know you two want to fuck like rabbits and I don't blame you but you need to come out now before I come in there and I know you don't want me to see amahle naked! "

" I'll be down in 15 minutes. Go away! " he's seriously killing my erection

" Phakiso is here Kabelo." He says exhausted.

My erection goes from rock hard and throbbing to flaccid in a matter of seconds

" fine. I'll be down "

" you better be down. No one to see your stick up " he chuckles.

" I'm sorry " I look for my T-shirt and wear it. She sighs disappointed.

" It's okay, don't keep your grandfather waiting " she fastens my pants.

" I'll make it up to you okay? "

" you better " she smiles.

I give her a long deep kiss that leaves her breathless then walk out. Time for a mother fucker to pay.

" baby your phone! " I smile and take it from her. I have just graduated from Kabelo to baby.

" hello? "

" It's bad boss." Jacob says. Fuck Mandisa!. What did you get yourself into!

CHAPTER 18

[PREVIOUS](#) PAGE 21 [NEXT](#)

I give her a long deep kiss that leaves her breathless then walk out.

Time for a mother fucker to pay.

" baby your phone! " I smile and take it from her. I have just graduated from Kabelo to baby.

" hello? "

" It's bad boss." Jacob says. Fuck Mandisa!. What did you get yourself into!.

" Where are you Jacob? "

" I'm on my way there right now."

" When you get here go straight to my office."

“ Sure boss ” he hangs up.

Somebody fucked up with me. Tired of these people who think they can do as they please. Mandisa will fucken pay of she messed with me and my family and as for cousin phakiso? Well he just has to go. I don't give the fuck what dad says. If it comes back to me one day then so be it. I'll deal with it.

I walk in the lounge and the mother fucker has his feet on my coffee table. Papa and everyone else is just watching him. What the fuck are they looking at him for and why are his shoes on my table!. This fucker thinks he's walking on water since his grandfather is here but he forgets. This is my house. Not his grandfather's house.

“ get your fucken feet off my table! ” I kick his feet and he shrieks

“ what the fuck is wrong with you kabelo! ” he yells

“ you think you can do as you please cause papa is here? This is my house not his or yours! ”

“ I told Koko, my mom and dad that should anything happen to me. It will be you kabelo but I know it won't happen cause Papa is here! ”

he says grinning like he thinks he's untouchable.

I take out my phone and call Calvin.

“ good day sir ”

“ Hey Calvin are you home? ”

“ yes sir I am. Do you need me to come over? ”

“ No. Amahle is going to come there. I need you to help her look for a house in Durban. Anything she seems interested in note it down and book appointments to view them ”

“ oh certainly sir that would be my pleasure. On suburbs only right? ”

“ yes Calvin ” I hang up.

“ Belinda! Jane! ” I ignore the looks on my brothers faces.

“ sir? ” Belinda responds coming in followed by Jane. They look alarmed.

“ I.... ”

Amahle walks in and she freezes when she sees phakiso. I walk to her and pull her to my arms. She looks at me.

“ I need you to go to Calvin's place. You'll leave with Belinda and Jane. Someone will drive you there and don't worry you'll be safe there. ” she reads my face then looks at phakiso then at me.

“ Are you okay? ” she asks concerned.

“ I need to deal with something and when I’m done. I’ll come and get you okay? ”

“ okay ” she nods. I give her a kiss. Phakiso laughs like this is some sort of a joke. He’s really testing me.

“ Jane tell one of the guys outside to drive you three to Calvin’s and stay there until I come.”

“ yes sir ” the three of them go upstairs then come back with mandisa.

“ where are you going? ” I ask mandisa. She looks at me then looks at Bishop.

“ kabela? ” Bishop calls my name.

“ oh no, they are leaving and you’re staying here.”

“ she’s not needed here kabela ” Bishop says and we look at each other.

“ Mandisa you’re not better yet. You’ll stay here. You can go ”

Mandisa sits down looking nervous.

Amahle looks at me worriedly then walks to me and gives me a kiss before walking out with Jane and Belinda.

“ isn’t that so sweet. You two are already in love ” phakiso laughs out loud. “ you’re already like this for someone you’ve just know for like five minutes damn kb. Who knew a you need was some fresh young blood to melt that ice cold heart of yours.” He laughs again. “ Papa I told you this girl was not good for him. Look at him now ”

“ Stand up phakiso ” papa says and that shuts him up. It’s not the tone my grandfather used. It’s how chilled looking that made phakiso shut up. He stands up.

“ bring a chair kane for him to sit down on ” he does. Phakiso reluctantly sits down.

“ what’s going on Papa? ”

“ you are what’s going on. Why are you trying to ruin your brothers lives? ”

“ I’m not! ”

“ did you not bug this house?, did you hack their business files and got sensitive information that you could use against them and the others who are on that file you hacked? ” he looks at me shocked.

“ why are you ruining your brothers lives phakiso? ”

“ I’m not papa! ”

“ Are you calling me a liar?..... Talk damn it! ”

“ it wasn’t me who bugged the house papa I swear ”

“ yewena mfana! Do you think this is a joke? ” my dad asks him.

“ I don’t know what your talking about. I told you Papa that they will tell you lies about me. Even uncle Martin is in on it too. I won’t let them pin the murder of that girls brother on me. I know nothing about the diamonds, the bugs or damn list ”

I walk to him and punch him straight on his nose and I hear the bone cracking. Blood shoots out and he screams covering his nose with his shirt

“ why did you kill mduduzi! ”

“ I didn’t! ” he denies it.

“ why did you kidnap amahle? ”

“ I didn’t ”

“ Phakiso why did you bug my house? ”

“ I didn’t fucken do it. I didn’t know who bugged your damn house man! Nxa! ”

We are not going to go anywhere with this fool. He’s denying it because he knows we’ve got no proof that he’s the one behind everything else.

“ you have an affair with Pamela, you fucked her in my house until you got her pregnant then you too had the audacity to pin the pregnancy on me. You steal from us, you lie to my face then you have the nerve to fucken hack the clubs system and steal confidential information of our clients and former clients and you’re denying all of that is that right? ”

“ Pamela was a bitch! I told you she would betray you but still you wouldn’t listen and look what happened! She did!. Yes fucked her cause she was a hoe then she got pregnant. Yes the child was mine but you also wanted that child to be yours so was I to stand in the way of you wanting to be a father huh? I was going to let you raise my son or daughter as yours. I told you Pamela was a hoe and I’m still telling you that, that bitch knows where the diamonds are! She knows where they are! ”

“ Because you killed her brother when he wouldn’t tell you where he stashed them right? I mean you were the only one watching him so how does one just vanishes without a trace in front of your eyes huh? ”

” I ask him and he’s eyes move away from me then looks at me.

“ well he did and it’s not my problem that you refuse to believe that, that girl knows more than she’s letting on ”

“ why did you bug my house phakiso. What were you looking for exactly! ”

“ man I’m not going to sit down here and let you accuse me of stuff I didn’t do. You said we are going to talk Papa but all I’m hearing is you accusing me of things I know nothing about! ” he says standing up and throwing the chair away and it breaks my vase.

“ You will pick that chair up, sit your ass down and tell us the truth ”

Kane says pointing his gun on phakiso.

“ Papa! ”

“ I would do as he says phakiso ” papa tells him. He picks up the chair and sits.

“ Who are you working with cousin? ”

“ No one! ”

“ The files you hacked phakiso has names of very dangerous people and one of them already knows it’s you who’s behind it. He’s not happy and he is going to kill you unless you tell us whom you’re working with and what do they want. We know you didn’t do this alone so a peak before a bullet hits you between your face ”

“ Like I said. I don’t know shit! ”

I walk to Kane, take the gun from him and shoot him on his leg and he screams. My grandfather looks at me shocked.

“ that’s for calling amahle names. Now talk before I empty these bullets in you! ” he keeps screaming in agony

“ Why did you shoot him! ” papa asks

“ if you weren’t here phakiso would have long talked. He’s denying everything cause he knows you’re going to protect him.”

The door opens and Jacob walks in with Jessica. His eyes find mine then they go to phakiso. He greets them then goes walks to my office serif">“ Jacob wait ” he turns and looks at me. “ did anything you found involve phakiso? ”

“ it did. ” he answers

“ come and tell us.”

“ are you sure boss? ” fuck it must be bad.

“ I am ” I look at mandisa and she looks away.

“ You asked me to find anything that connects mandisa and Candice.... ” mandisa's head shoots up.

“ I can explain sir...” she cuts off Jacob and gets on her knees looking at me.

“ explain ” I say.

“ I met Candise at some other private sex party. We were involved in a sex orgy and when it was over we sort of like talked. She started talking about how she regretted cheating on her former Dom and I consoled her. As time went by we would meet for lunch and to go to sex clubs then one day I sort of like told her where I worked and she told me you were her former Dom and started asking me if I have seen you with anyone and I would tell her no. Then one day phakiso saw us having lunch and he joined us and we sort of like got close well he got close with her more than me. Sometimes we would all have threesomes and sleep together then one day candise told phakiso.... . ”

“ shut you bitch! I have never slept with you! You lying hoe! ” I punch him on the face knocking him out.

“ Talk! ” I point my gun at mandisa

“ she told phakiso that about your sex club and phakiso was shocked cause he didn't know and didn't believe her so phakiso said he will bug your whole house so he could know if she's really telling the truth. They then convinced me to also bug your office and all your electronics at work. He would listen to your conversations and know what you are planning to do.....” she stops and takes a deep breath. Her body is shaking uncontrollable from fear. She has every right to be fucken terrified.

“ Talk bunny. You can trust us ” Bishop says walking up to her and sitting next to her. Kane curses. We both know what's going to come.

“ one day he called me to his flat and introduced me to this man who's name is sakhile and then all started going out and doing things together. Sakhile and I got closer and he became my Dom. It was great until he started asking about you sir and your brothers cause he

was in the same club as you were but he needed more information since they couldn't get it through the bugs I had implanted at your office and I told him I can't help him with that so I don't know how he and phakiso got hold of the list but what I know for sure is it was phakiso who found the person who could hack your clubs system sir.

”

“ And you kept quiet and never said anything to warn me! You betrayed me Mandisa! ”

“ Sir I'm sorry. I knew I fucked up when.... .. ”

“ shut the fuck up!. You knew you fucked up but you still didn't come to me and tell me. I could have protected you from phakiso and that mother fucker sakhile! Where is he? ”

“ I don't know sir. I ran away from my flat and came here ”

“ Why did he hit you? ” Bishop asks her

“ He...wanted me to sleep with sir and record everything so he could use it against him for shares at the club. When I refused the first time he beat me up then the second time he came and asked me again but I still refused then he showed me videos of us having sex with each other and other people and told me he will post this on social media for my whole family to see. When I refuse again he beat me up but I managed to run away. ” she sniffs.

“ nah she's lying. Bitch talk. Why did you come here! ” I asks her and she looks at me with crocodile tears falling. I walk to her and grab her face hard and force the gun on her mouth and pull the trigger but nothing happens I don't know how. Mandisa pees on herself. “ I'm not going to ask you again so talk before I shoot you for real this time. Why did you come to my house! ”

“ He... he... Sakhile wanted me to call the cops when I got here and tell them it was you who beat me up so you can get locked up then he will come pretending to be your lawyer to bail you out in return will ask that you make him a partner and I agreed sir. He was blackmailing me ”

“ you mother fucker! You had many chances to come to me but you didn't! Then you come here in my house to try and set me up?! You sent us on a wild goose chase knowing very well what was really going on and you thought you could get away with it? Bitch you

clearly don't know who the fuck I am! ” I pull through gun out of her mouth and cock it and she screams.

“ Kabelo don't kill her. Once you pull that trigger there's no going back! ” My grandfather says.

“ it wouldn't be my first rodeo Papa ”

“ Sir please don't kill me. I'm sorry. I know I made a mistake that's why I didn't do as he told me. I'm sorry sir please! ”

“ what are they planning to do with that list and information? ”

phakiso groans waking up

“ When... when sakhile saw that he's cousin is also part of the club, he said he has found a way to not let him be the king and he also needs to blackmail his cousin's best friend but didn't say his name and I don't know how they are going to blackmail him. Phakiso came with the idea that he will post a video of Bishop doing things online so his reputation could be ruined and the whole family shamed especially your grandfather cause he loves the three of you more than anything. ”

I'm not livid, I'm not mad but I'm fucken furious and I want to go on a killing spree. I want to kill phakiso right now!

“ Where is sakhile Mandisa? ”

“ I didn't known sir! ”

“ Where is the king that your sakhile kidnapped? ”

“ I swear to God I don't know anything about that! ”

“ Jacob, is what she's saying the truth? ”

“ she's telling the truth but she left the part where she was supposed to poison all you. Candise told us when we paid her a visit and she began singing like a canary ”

“ Where is that bitch? ”

“ dead ” Jessica says.

“ good ”

“ What were you going to gain mandisa with our death? ”

“ Phakiso was going to be the one to run the club with sakhile and I was going to be sakhile's right hand woman.”

“ Too bad that won't hapoen. Let this be a lesson to you mandisa. If you ever come back in the next life. Stay away from men who's

names begins with K” I pull the trigger and shoot her straight between her eyes and she drops dead on the floor. Phakiso screams.

Her blood splashes my face and I take a deep breath out. I missed the feeling of feeling blood on my skin. I turn and look at my cousin who has vomited on himself. Jessica leaves and comes back with the guys to take care of the dead body.

“ this is your grandson you wanted to protect so much? The one who wants to ruin all our lives and for what? ” I ask papa

“ who are you Kabelo? ”

“ your grandson that you clearly don’t know.”

“ why are you talking like that? ” he asks me.

“ what do you mean Papa? ” I feel the blood on my face with my hand. It’s thick and wet. It smells fucken good.

“ Fuck! ” karabo curses.

“ what are you not telling me? ” Papa asks

“ it’s happening again. Kabelo not now please! ” Kane pleads. I look at him and I’m reminded of how terrified he would be when I would get like this. Karabo takes out a lighter and lights it in front of me. I focus on it until I feel calm. I close my eyes then open them again.

“ What happened to him? ” my dad asks

“ He’ll be fine ”

“ Mpendulo! ”

“ Not now dad please!. Why do you hate us so much phakiso? ”

“ fuck you Bishop wokunuka! ”

“ You hate us for what phakiso? Had we not included you in everything that we do? Is this about the club? ” phakiso looks down. “ so it is about it. We didn’t include you cause you have a big mouth and can’t be trusted that’s why!. How are we going to trust someone who wants to live our lives huh? We looked out for you like how brothers do for each other but you still betrayed us. After everything we have done for you. You choose other people over your family? ”

“ I’m not your family! ”

“ Phakiso don’t talk nonsense! ” papa reprimands him.

“ I’m not one of you and never will be! ”

“ phakiso! ” my dad calls his to order.

“ He’s right though. Candice told me that phakiso found out that he’s dad is not your uncle. When he confronted his mother she confessed and told him the truth that his dad was man she had an affair with who later died mysterious after he was born. ” I look at my grandfather.

“ You knew Papa. You knew and never told us ”

“ When he was born, we knew he wasn’t one of us. I thought maybe this birth mark the one we all have didn’t come out but when I did DNA tests they confirmed he wasn’t my grandson. I got someone to follow his mother and she met with a man who looked like him.”

“ You killed my father?! How could you! ”

“ I was supposed to kill your mother but y son loves her and I didn’t want to hurt him and let you grow up without a mother so I killed the man who wanted to break my sons marriage.”

“ I hate you! I hate you! ”

“ It’s okay phakiso. I thought we raised you right and you knew you had brothers who love you and would protect you but when you found out you weren’t one of us you changed against your family and made your brothers enemies. It wasn’t blood that made you family but love and loyalty. Not once did I ever! Ever! Make you feel that you aren’t my grandson. I loved you more cause I knew the day you found out the truth. It was going to hurt you and I didn’t want that for you. I wanted you to know that blood or not. You belong with us.”

“ I’ll never forgive you for killing my father ever! ”

“ Hey focus. Who helped you with hacking our system? ” I say slapping him on the face.

“ You’re still going to kill me anyway. Why does that matter? ”

“ We won’t kill you phakiso. Our uncle loves you ” Kane says.

“ but you said the dangerous people... ”

“ We’ll talk to mbuso and make a deal. Tell us who helped you and sakhile back the system in our club ”

“ Promise me you won’t kill me! ”

“ I promise cousin. We won’t kill you ”

“ Ok. One day she heard me talking on the phone and wanted in and..... ”

My phone rings and it’s Calvin. This feeling of dread feels.

“ Calvin? ” he mumbles something

“ Belinda.... She... . ” I hear a gun shut and a scream then the line goes dead.

“ Calvin? Calvin?! ”

I grab phakiso with stand him up.

“ Was it Belinda who was working with you!..... ” he keeps quiet! “ answer me damnit!”

“ yes it was! ” oh my God!

I drop phakiso down and run out. Kane and Jess follow me then I hear five gun shuts as I get in my car and drive to Calvin’s. God please don’t let her be dead! Please God!

CHAPTER 19

[PREVIOUS](#) PAGE 22 [NEXT](#)

#NotEdited

If I could fly and be at Calvin’s flat right now but I can’t. I’m driving as fast as I can cause I have no idea what happened in there and who got shot. I swear to God I’m going to kill Belinda with my own damn hands if she even touched her anywhere with her finger or anything. I always thought I was a good judge of character but damn have I been wrong. I am surrounded by traitors and thieves. It’s time I took the trash out.

I get out the car and run to the elevator. Kane and Jess get in with me and it takes us to the 5th floor. As soon as the door opens I’m running out and I see a bunch if people outside the door. I push them out of the way and walk in. There are paramedics with someone on the floor. I walk closer and see they are putting Jane on the gurney and there’s blood on her.

“ Amahle! Baby?!..... What happened to Jane? ”

“ Kabelo! ” She walks out of the room and runs to my arms and cries “ are you okay?... Are you hurt? Where’s Calvin? ” amahle is shaking uncontrollably and crying.

“ I’m here sir ” he walks out with another paramedic on a gurney too.

“ What happened? ” amahle is still crying holding me tight.

“ Belinda shot me then tried to shoot amahle but then Jane ran in front of her and got shot instead. Amahle took a knife and she stabbed her on her arm when she shot me. She ran away sir and we don't know where she left she... ”

“ I'm sorry but we have to go to the hospital ” the paramedic says and they wheel Jane out.

“ Which hospital? ”

“ Medi-clinic ”

“ Ok well follow you ” they also wheel Calvin out. “ Jess. I want Belinda found as in now. ”

“ where is she? ” karabo shouts running in.

“ She's gone. She's fucken gone! ” Jacob takes his phone walks out.

“ we are going to the hospital. Amahle is in shock. Belinda tried to shoot her but Jane ran in front of her and took the bullet. Let's go! ”

“ Here drink this.” Some girls says.

“ Who the fuck are you? ”

“ it's ok baby, she's Calvin's neighbour and friend ”

“ What is this? ”

“ Starched water.” I take it and drink it first and wait. When nothing happens I help amahle drink it.

“ Let's go ”

“ can I come with please? Calvin is a Friend ” Fuck no!

“ I'll come with her ” Kane says we all leave and go to the hospital. When we get there they direct us to where Jane was taken. A nurse tells us she's in surgery and that all she says before she disappears through the theatre doors.

I pull amahle to me and hug her tight. I could have lost her. She could have been the one in there right now. Belinda is dead. I keep soothing her back and she's still crying.

“ I'm sorry I asked you to go with her. I didn't know she was working with them baby. I'm sorry ” she shakes her head “ she wanted to kill you and take you away from me! It could have been you in there had Jane not run to you! ” she looks at my face and frowns

“ there's blood on your face? ” fuck I forgot about that. I take my shirt my T-shirt and wipe my face. “ are you hurt? ”

“ No I'm not. Come sit down ” we walk to the benches and sit down.

“ What happened amahle? ” karabo asks her

“ When we got in the car she was really nervous. She kept asking me what’s really going on and I told her that I know nothing. She said she was worried about phakiso and mandisa. I didn’t understand why and Jane asked her what did she do but Belinda ignored her question then we arrived at Calvin’s. She stayed behind and said she wants to talk to the driver. I didn’t ask her what it was cause Calvin’m was already waiting for us. When she came in she was typing allot on her phone. I.... ”

“ take a deep breath baby. ” she does.

“ I went to the bathroom and when I came back they were arguing about something with Calvin then she asked me when are we moving to Durban and I told her I don’t know what she’s talking about.

Messages on her phone kept coming in and she was looking nervous. I asked her why she was freaking out and she started blaming me for ruining everything. She said the plan was coming along but I came and ruin it. Calvin then accused her of always having a thing for you and she lost it. They began exchanging words then she started grabbing me telling me we must go. I knew then something was not right so I quickly ran away from her and went to go take my bag so I can call you then the next thing I heard was a gun shot. I screamed then she walked to me and pointed a gun and Jane asked her not to do it but she said for her to be safe I have to come with her. I told her I’d rather she shoots me before I leave with her then she pointed a gun at me and I screamed. After she shot Jane she came to me but I saw a knife on the kitchen counter, I took it and stabbed her on her arm. I thought I was dead. I thought she killed me but Jane oh God kabelo. What if she doesn’t make it! ” she sobs.

I comfort her as she sobs on my chest. She really is scared. I want Belinda to feel the same kind of fear or worse when she pointed a gun on her face. I want her to plead and ask me to kill her quickly. I want blood. I can smell it and it’s calling me. I can feel it. I need to calm down but I can’t. My blood is boiling. It’s calling me and I can’t stop.

“ Kabelo! Kabelo! ” I feel a light slap on my face. “ you’re suffocating her ” I look down and amahle's eyes are fearful. I let go of her and stand up.

“ take her home. I need to go somewhere ”

“ I’m coming with you ” karabo tells me.

“ No! I need you here in case anything happens. I’ll be fine. Take her home ”

“ what’s going on kabelo? Why do you sound weird? ” she tries to touch me but I step away from here.

“ Make sure she’s safe at home.” I want to touch her but I can’t. I’m afraid of what I’ll do. I take two steps from them then leave.

I pass my dad and grandfather and they call my name but I can’t stop.

I get I my car and take a deep breath and close my eyes.

“ move over. I’ll drive ” Kane tells me.

“ I’ll be fine Kane. Go ”

“ No. I’m coming with you! Where do you want to go? ”

“ take me to Cigar's club. ”

“ No! ”

“ I’m not asking you Kane. It’s either you do or you close that damn door and let me leave! ”

“ Fine! ”

I step out of the car and go to the passenger seat and sit down. He drives us out. I know he wants to talk and ask a bunch of questions but he doesn’t. He’s going to keep quiet as always. Even if he were to ask me I wouldn’t know how to explain it.

Kane parks the car at the underground parking lot. We walk to the elevator and it opens. The guy is surprised to see me.

“ Afternoon Master K, Sir K. ” Kane greets him back “ Cigar is in his office sir ” he presses a button and the elevator goes down underground.

When the door opens the smell of sweat and blood hits you on the face. I close my eyes and let the smell of blood fill my lungs. We walk to his office and I opened the door without knocking.

“ who the fuck..... ” he stops talking when he sees it’s us.

He looked like he was having some sort of a meeting with people I don’t know and don’t give a fuck about.

“ Get lost. All of you. ” I tell them

“ who the fuck are you mother fucker. We are in a meeting! ” one fool says looking me up and down.

“ I won’t repeat myself. ”

“ guys go please now!. Well continue this meeting ”

“ fuck no! You want us to stop our meeting for this mother fucker?!

Niegah who the fuck are you?! ” he says pointing his gun on me.

“ your worst nightmare if you don’t move that gun off his face. ”

Kane warns him calmly.

“ man fuck you! ”

“ Cigar? ” I cock my head and look at him.

“ Niegah be fucken fine now and wait your turn. We are not cutting our meeting because of this mother fucker! ”

“ tell your friends to leave while they still can Cigar. Now! ” I order him.

“ Master K I wasn’t expecting you. Benjy get that damn thing away before you get us all killed.” Cigar snaps at the guy who was pointing a gun at me and his eyes have gone big. The guys he’s with take a step back away from us. I almost chuckle.

“ Master K? I’m... I’m sorry sir I didn’t know it was actually you ” he apologizes with his eyes bouncing between me and my brother.

“ Did you organize what I asked Cigar? ”

“ Master K no wants to go in a ring with you ” I look at the guy who had the guts to point a gun on me.

“ What about you? You seem to have guts. How about we go to the ring and let sine steam off? ”

“ Really sir? It would be my honour Master K ”

serif">“ Benjy I don’t think.... ” some guy tries to warn him

“ Do you want to take his place? ” he shakes his head furiously

“ No sir. ”

“ Let’s make this interesting Benjy. If you hit me hard and leave me bloody I’ll give you 30K but you have to give it your best. ” the fool grins.

“ And if I lose? ”

“ I’ll give you 20k for losing and begging me to stop. What do you say cause you look like you can take me on? ” he laughs loud

“ I’ve never tapped out on anything and I won’t start now. Let’s go to the ring now and let me show you what these hands can do ”

“ Good. ”

Cigar looks terrified. I can see he’s trying to earn Benjy but the fool is not looking at him. He’s busy flexing his muscles to his friends. I almost feel sorry for him.

“ don’t kill him ” Kane says worried

“ if he begs me ”

We walk out of the office and I go to the changing room to my locker. I put in my code and unlock it then change to my boxing shorts.

“ I can’t believe you have a locker here ” Kane says shaking his head.

“ I told you not to come here. ”

“ I worry about you when you’re here. You know that ”

“ Kane....”

“ they waiting. Let’s go ” I lock my locker and we go to the rings where a fight is happening.

Cigar is already there with Benjy waiting for us. People part and whispers breakout as they see me walking in the ring. Benjy is busy flexing his muscles and entertaining the crowd that is cheering for him.

“ ladies and gentlemen. We have a special surprise for you this afternoon. If I were you I would start taking my money and bet but before that let me introduce you on the right corner we have Big Benjy... ” the crowd cheers for him. Can cigar just hurry up!

“ and on the left corner we have the one and only Master K. Killer! ” the crowd goes crazy. Yeah you still remember me. “ the betting will start at 5k. May the best man win! ”

What I love about this fighting club is there is one rule. Kill. Be killed or tap out. I wonder if Benjy knows that. I chuckle. Cigar leaves the ring and it’s now just the two of us. He has this smug look on his face and I just want to wipe it off. He comes to me busy jumping from side to side hitting air with his fists.

I stand firm, shift my left leg to the right then raise my arms up and firm fists with my hands and wait for him to come to me. He keeps ducking down like he’s ducking bullets or my fists. Maybe I’ll teach him how to fight if he makes it. He comes to me and I let him land the

first punch. It doesn't even move me from where I'm standing. I'm disappointed.

“ stop throwing a punch like a bitch in heat asking to be fucked! ” his face changes. Ok I get under his skin and make him go mad. That's what I want.

He tries to throw another punch on my face but I move my face away a little and hit him hard on his jaw. Blood splits out of his mouth and he looks at me shocked and enraged. I wait for him to come at me and he does. I kick him hard on his back ribs and he falls down screaming. His face changes when he realises that I'm not playing. I'm really going to beat the shit out of him. He should have left the moment I told them to leave. He gets up and runs to me throwing punches and we fight. I kick every part of his body my legs and feet land on and throw hard jaw crackling punches on his face. Every punch I throw I feel his bones cracking and blood coming out.

We have no gloves. It's just us with our hands and bodies. My hands are bloody. Every time his blood lands anywhere on my body the more powerful I get.

“ you should just tap out cause there's no way your winning this foo! ”

“ You're dead you son of a bitch! ” he lands a lunch on my eye and it stings. That feels good.

“ my mom is a hutch but my girlfriend hits way better than you. She's knock you out like a bitch with her first punch! Now hit me mother fucker!”

He runs to me trying to jab me but I duck kick his face with my knee and he screams falling down. His mouth is bloody and some of his teeth have come out. The crowd is screaming uncontrollably. The mother fucker gets up still asking for more. I jab him, punch him on his stomach hard and he throws up and staggers. His hands are still up. He's not giving up I like that.

We meet halfway on the ring. He throws punches on my ribs and lands hard fists on my face. Fuck that one hurt. He kicks my keg and I fall down. When he sees that I'm down he gets on top of me. I use my hands and knees to kick him but the mother fucker sits on my chest and begins to choke me. Hell no!

I lift my lower body up and that makes my upper body to get off the ground then I push him off of me and he falls on his front. I get up and throw myself in him and begin to choke him pressing his body down. He manages to get away from me. He goes to the ring corner and falls down. He gets up again and comes to me. It's time I end this fight so I can go and nurse my baby.

Benjy tries his best to hit me but I kick him hard on his chest and that sends down on the floor. The mother fucker fails to get up. I walk to him and crouch down next to me. He's growling in pain.

“ Never ever point a gun on my face unless you intend to use it. Do we understand each other? ” he blinks his eyes agreeing. “ when I tell you to do something you do it, no question asked. Do you understand me! ” he mumbles a yes. “ You did good Benjy. Cigar will give you your 30K.”

He mumbles a thank you. I walk out of the ring and people scream my name. Killer K. Master K. Kane followed me to the changing rooms and he's silent.

“ you broke almost every bone on his body. You didn't have to beat him up like that. ”

“ that's why I gave him 30K it s enough for him to see a doctor ”

I change into my clothes and we go to cigar's office. He stands up when he sees us. I take my phone and transfer 50K into his account.

“ 30K is for Benjy make sure he gets it and the 20k is to never ever make the mistake of keeping me waiting. When I say organise a fight for me you do it Cigar immediately. Do I make myself clear? ”

“ Yes Master K ”

“ if my brother ever comes here and you let him in? I'll kill you myself!”

“ I won't let him in Master K. Thank you for the money.”

I go through my phone and find Belinda's picture.

“ you see this girl?... I want her found alive. Be careful cause she's smart. If you find her first I'll give you 100k cause you're not the only one looking for her. Are we clear? ” yes sir.

We walk out of the office and I see Benjy's friends carrying him to the changing rooms. He'll be fine.

“ Why didn’t you shower. You are going to scare amahle looking like that ”

“ I’ll shower at home Kane.” We get in the car.

“ What happens to you when he takes over? ” he has never asked me that.

“ drive Kane ” He does.

“ I want to know KB cause it has always been you then him. For as long as I can remember. When you get mad he takes over and you’re this terrifying person. ”

“ I won’t hurt you Kane. You’re my brother and I love you.”

“ I know you won’t but what about him? ”

“ He’s a part of me and he won’t. Now stop talking. ”

“ why does pain and blood excite you so much. The look you get when blood lands on your skin is... ”

“ You asked me what do I feel when he takes over. Well I feel powerful and invincible. Nothing can touch me. I have been trying for years to put him in a cage and the more I do that it’s the more he tries to take control of me and I’m tired brother of fighting him. Had I not tried to pretend that he doesn’t exist I would have known of all the dangers surrounding us. We are surrounded by people we can’t trust and it’s time all of that changed.”

“ We sleep and eat with enemies. If we’re not careful they will kill all of us.”

“ Not anymore brother. It’s time I embraced who I really am ”

“ Are you in pain? ” I chuckle.

“ Pain is my Religion and Blood is my Sacrament brother. I need it. I crave it.”

He parks outside the house.

“ Did the house get cleaned? ”

“ squeaky clean ”

“ Let me go see my woman and comfort her ”

“ I’m going to the hospital ” Kane informs me

“ wait...where is phakiso? ”

“ Papa shot him. He’s dead ”

“ Too bad. I had other plans for him. Keep me posted ”

“ I will ”

I step out of the car and walk in the house. The lounge is clear like nothing happened. I go straight to my bedroom and take off my clothes in the bathroom and put them in the bin. I get in the shower and open the faucet to cold water. My hands are on the wall and I'm looking at the blood going down my body until the water is clear. I squirt the shower gel to my hand then rub it and wash my head and face.

I can hear her footsteps coming in then she opens the door and comes in. When the gel clears I look at her and her face is red. I switch the faucet to warm water and the shower begins to steam. I pick her up and she wraps her legs around me.

“ I won't be gentle ” I warn her

“ I don't want gentle....Ahhhhh” I shut her up with a kiss and thrust into her. No barriers between us. Just skin to skin.

CHAPTER 20

[PREVIOUS](#) PAGE 23 [NEXT](#)

I can hear her footsteps coming in then she opens the door and comes in. When the gel clears I look at her and her face is red. I switch the faucet to warm water and the shower begins to steam. I pick her up and she wraps her legs around me.

“ I won't be gentle ” I warn her

“ I don't want gentle....Ahhhhh” I shut her up with a kiss and thrust into her. No barriers between us. Just skin to skin.

“ Hold on tight to me and don't let go ” she wraps her hands around my neck. Her body is so soft. I love it.

“ Okay ooohhhh ”

I wrap my hands around her body, pull almost out then thrust hard and she bites my neck and screams feeling my hard thrusts. Her greedy pussy welcomes my thrusts and grips my dick with every stroke. I lose myself in her and fuck her hard and rough. Her screams fill the bathroom and ears. Her pussy contracts around me then her muscles contracts around me and she comes. Fuck that was quick.

I close the faucet, open the door and step out of it with her still in my arms. The floor was getting slippery and I don't want her hurt. Her

pussy is busy expanding and contracting around my dick. She still wants me. She wants more and I am going to give it to her. I get on the bed with her still in me and lay her on her back. I thought of fucking her on the floor but that would be too much for her.

“ Lay still and don't move okay baby? ” she moans and moves her waist beneath me making me go deeper.

“ what's wrong with your voice? ”

“ lay still baby or I will gag and cuff you ” she bites her top lip.

I lift my upper body and look at her. She's so beautiful. I move her so her head can be on the headboard. That would prevent her from moving away from me. I thrust deep and long. She screams. I don't give her time to take another breath as I hit her with long deep strokes. One after another.

Her pussy gets wetter and I realise my baby likes it rough. The more and harder I fuck her the more I feel him and I be coming one. This has never happened before. I knew he was always lurking in the background before but this now is new. Amahle drags her nails in my chest deep and I groan. Fuck I love this. She does it again and my sack gets heavy. I can feel all the blood going straight to my dick and I feel it expanding in her.

“ Oh God Fuck Yes!!!!!! ”

She moves her hips and meets me stroke for stroke and I groan loud. I wrap my fingers around her throat and her eyes go wide open then she closes them again. I tighten my hold on her and she does the same with her pussy around my dick. My strokes get more fast and deeper. My balls are heavy and ready for release. Her lips are swollen and pink like I was fucking them. Fuck! I lift her left leg up and continue to fuck her hard and my dick is ready to shoot the load and fill her womb. I close my eyes and imagine her belly growing and her nursing my child fuck! My stroke get rougher and my hand gets tight around her. She screams and tells me she's coming and milks my milks my dick.

I thrust two more times then fill her womb with my seed and groan loud, keep thrusting until my cum fills her. I let go of her leg and fall flat on her chest. I hear her snoring softly. She blacked out. I give her 10 minutes before I wake her up again fucking her while she's laying

on her side. Three rounds she begs me to stop cause she has had enough. I peck her lips then pull out and groan. Damn this pussy is fucken good and it's my new obsession. I call her name but she doesn't respond. She's sleeping. I get off the bed and go to the bathroom. I take the towel and dab it with cold water then walk back to the bedroom. I separate her thighs and gently wipe her. The cold water makes her gasp but she doesn't wake up. She just lightly slap my hand. I cover her with the duvet then go take a shower. After I'm done I walk to the backyard and burn the clothes that had blood on them. When everything has burned I clean the mess and put it on the dustbin and walk back to the house. I'm really worried about Kane and I don't know how I'm going to thank her for saving amahle's life. I owe her allot. I look for my phone and make a call.

“ Khawula? ”

“ Phakathwayo ” I greet him back. He keeps quiet. “ are you there? ”

“ Yeah... I am. How are you? ”

“ I'm fine. Listen. Phakiso is dead ”

“ really? Did you find out who else he's working with? ”

“ He was working with my secretary, sakhile obviously and former housekeeper who shot my girl and my other assistant. obviously ”

“ What? How did you not see that? ” he asked shocked

“ I made a mistake t hat almost cost my family everything but that won't happen again. I don't make the same mistake twice.”

“ How is amahle? ”

“ she's shaken up but she'll be fine. Belinda however ran away but there's already a price on her head. I want her alive cause she still has to tell us how she really knows sakhile. ”

“ man what happened? How did so many people close to you betray you like this? ”

“ Had I listen to my... my other self I would have known that I was dining with betrayers. I could have prevented all of that.” I tell him what mandisa told us and phakiso.

“ Tell me the bitch is dead.”

“ she is. Belinda then sakhile is next.”

“ You need me to help you find her? ”

“ I would appreciate it cause it seems as if there are many people who are involved that we still don't low about. I think you also need to check out sbu's family too to see if there isn't anyone else involved other than sakhile. Who is really going to gain if sbu dies? ”

“ His brother ” we both say.

“ I'll do that. Sakhile is still nowhere to be found and that girl Belinda might disappear too if we don't find her fast. My guys are already on it. When we find her you're the first to know.”

“ thanks Maestro.”

“ I hope your other housekeeper survives and man don't okay with your family's security ”I chuckle

“ Imagine this whole time we thought Bishop is the one that needs security and not me. I'm angry with myself for trying to hide who I really am cause I'm afraid for my family and what they would think. ”

“ the more you try to hide who you really are the more problems you will have and you'll end up hurting people who really love you. They will accept you as you are man. Don't hide yourself ”

“ Yeah. Thanks man ”

“ KB? ”

“ G ”

“ You don't sound like a man I saw the last time. You sound very different ” I chuckle

“ Good different or bad different? ”

“ I'm not sure but I like this new you. Embrace yourself KB. All parts of yourself. The good, the bad, the ugly and the very scary one's. They are all you ”

“ I have. Appreciate the advice G.”

“ anytime. I'll be down there in a couple of days... . ” his wife calls his name and she's doesn't sound happy. “... what did I do now?. We'll talk later man ”

“ I suggest you talk to your wife and tell her about the blackmailing sakhile is planning on you before they do something stupid.”

“ When you left I told her what's going on and she wasn't happy ”

“ Are you forgiven now? ”

“ Yeah, you know how we ask for forgiveness ” he chuckles

“ Fuck her till she submits ” we both laugh.

“ I’ll call you once I hear something ”

“ Ta G ” we hang up.

Someone is coming. I listen attentively and I can tell from their footsteps that it’s my brothers and two other people. They walk in and sit down. They look bad. Fuck!. I already know.

“ She’s dead isn’t she? ” they nod.

“ Fuck! Fuck! Fuck! ” I scream loud “ fuckkkkkkkk! ” I throw the glass that was on the table to the wall and it shatters into pieces.

‘ kabela! ’ I take my phone and dial. He picks up on the first ring

“ boss my guys are out and I promise you as soon as we find her I’ll vall you ”

“ 200k for the person who brings me her tomorrow Cigar ” I hang up.

“ I can’t believe you went there again! ” Bishop shouts

“ Were her injuries that bad? ”

serif">“ Two shots on her chest and one on her stomach. She died during surgery ” Bishop explains

“ and I wasn’t there! I wasn’t there for her after she saved amahle’s life.”

“ There was nothing you could have done kabela. Had she not....”

“ don’t even say it Kane. Just the thought of thinking it could have been her....scares the shit out of me. Belinda will pay. I want her to see me peeling her skin off. I want her to look at me as I plunge a knife in her chest and open her up!.”

“ she will damn pay. She’ll regret the day she decided to cross us ” kane promises.

“ Where is Papa? ”

“ He went home. He wants to be there when phakiso's news break. Dad went to see someone. He said he’ll be back.” Kane explains

“ How are you feeling Calvin? ”

“ I’ll be fine sir. Although these crutches will not make working for me easy since we have to prepare for the funeral ”

“ Who’s funeral? ” amahle asks walking in. Fuck!.

I walk to her and pull her to my arms. She looks at me worriedly. I don’t how she’s going to feel about Jane’s death. I kiss her forehead and she looks at me.

“ are you talking about phakiso’s death cause I know he’s dead. Kane explained to me what happened.” What the fuck! I look at Kane. He shakes his head.

“ Calvin can you show your friend around the house ”

“ yes sir. Zaza come ” he walks out limping with his crutches.

“ baby, mandisa is dead so as phakiso.”

“ mandisa? Why? What happens to her? ”

“ I shot her ” she gasps and moves away from me. I expected that form her but it still stings.

“ What did she do kabela? ”

“ Betrayed me, us and almost got you killed ” she folds her hands to herself

“ but you could have given her another chance? ”

“ Jane died baby during surgery ”

“ What? No! ” she looks at me shocked “ you’re wrong! Jane is alive and she’s going to come back kabela! ” I hold her but she hits my chest.

“ I’m sorry baby. She has passed on ”

“ It’s my fault she’s dead! She stood in front of me and she..... ” she wails “ It’s al my fault! My fault!”

“ it’s not your fault baby. It could have been you there now and.... ”

“ Not don’t say that! ”

“ I am saying it baby. I’d rather her dead than you cause I would take it. It would have killed me baby! ”

“ she didn’t deserve it. I wish.... ”

“ don’t you dare say that! ”

“ Don’t worry about Jane hlehle. She’s with the love of her love ”

Kane says.

“ we have to tell her family and prepare for her funeral... ”

“ Jane lost both her parents when she was 20. I took her in after her Dom who was her boyfriend died. He was a good friend of mine and I promised him I’ll take care of her but I failed. I failed both of them and her death is on me but I promise you baby. Belinda will pay. ” she wipes her tears ”

“ we still have to prepare for her funeral ” she looks at me with her red puffy eyes

“ she wanted to be cremated. Well do that tomorrow before we leave to my grandparents house.” She nods.

“ we’ll have a small ceremony for her before we go to the funeral parlour for her cremation.” Bishop tells her

“ I’ll go to her room and pack her things ”

“ we’ll help ” Calvin says coming in

“ take it easy on your leg. Don’t put too much pressure on it ”

‘ I will sir ’

“ I’m glad you’re okay Calvin ” I mean it.

“ I am too sir.” He smiles.

“ let’s go guys ” she says walking.

“ amahle? ” she turns and looks at me. I walk to her.

“ you could have died today and I could have lost you. Hearing those gun shots and the thought of you getting shot almost killed me. You could have died before I had the chance to tell you that I love you. I love you and I don’t want to lose you baby ” I really mean it. We do mean it.

She covers her face and cries. Fuck! Did I say it wrong?

“ you love me? ”

“ Yes I do. We love you ” she frowns.

“ what do you mean we? ”

“ He means him and us. We all love you ” Bishop quickly clarifies.

“ Me, myself and I live you. We love you.”

“ why do you love me? ”

“ cause you’re perfect. You drive me crazy. You’re stubbornness and damn smart mouth. I love you. I love all of you and I promise I’ll do anything and everything to make you happy and protect you. ” she throws herself in my arms.

“ I love you kabela. I love all of you ” she kisses me deeply.

“ ok, you guys can stop now ” she giggles and they leave with Calvin and his friend

“ I’m glad this experience made you realise that you fell hard for her ” Kane says hugging me.

“ I knew she was going to be the one. I told you, you loved her. I’m happy for you brother ” we hug tight

“ I could have been planning her funeral now but then. I’ll miss Jane ”

“ They are reunited now. She’s with him. ” Bishop says.

“ we will find Belinda and she will be sorry ”

“ I’m not going to kill her. I’m going put her somewhere where she will be tortured everyday. I want her to beg me to kill her. Death for Belinda is easy. I want her to suffer.” I promise them.

“ And she will. ” Bishop adds. Someone is coming and he’s with dad.

My body feels different like I’m being aware of what my surroundings are exactly. Dad walks in followed by a traditional healer. He starts making sounds then walks straight to me and says.

“ Chosen One. ”

CHAPTER 21

[PREVIOUS](#) PAGE 24 [NEXT](#)

Advertisement

HIS TO HAVE.

CHAPTER 21

I didn't know when dad left the house that he'll be coming back with a traditional healer. I don't understand why he's calling me the " chosen one ". What does that even mean? I'm chosen for what and by whom?. I look at my dad and he's confused too. The healer is looking at me like he's studying me then he shakes his head and body.

" It's not a mistake that he chose you. Your blood and his match. It's like you are one.

You're the perfect host for him. Hmmm.... " he looks at dad then at me. Dad goes to the kitchen and comes back with a bucket with half filled water. " He talks to you but you don't listen. Let your eyes see and your ears hear. This house needs to be cleansed and all of you boys need to be cleansed too...."

The healer takes the bucket and begins to pour something inside and mixes it.

" Pray and ask for their souls to be accepted." He tells bishop.

Bishop tells us to close our eyes and begins to pray. When he's done the healer begins to sprinkle his concoction around the room and the house. My brothers and I haven't said anything to our dad since he came back with the healer. I understand he went to look for the healer cause he wanted my house to be cleansed and get rid of the dead spirits that we killed in the house earlier. Amahle, Calvin and his friend come back. The healer walks in too and Amahle takes my hand looking nervous.

" My job is done for now. Talk to your mother, she needs to explain some things to you. She's the one who can give you answers to the questions you have. If she fails to do so, come to me. You will find me." What? " Young lady, your brother's spirit is happy where

he is with your parents. They are happy you have a new family that will love you...." then he looks at me " Burn all the clothes of the girl that was working here that died." The healer says then walks out of the house followed by dad.

" what does mom have anything to do with the questions you have? " Kane asks.

" Cause she's the root of all evil in our lives " Bishop answers him.

Is it possible that my mom knows why I have this person in me and she's never said anything about it?. Did she do this to me?. Why would the healer say that she has the answers if she doesn't know about this person in me?. Why am I asking myself this cause I know what she is capable of. Will she tell me the truth when I ask her or lie to me to protect herself as always?.

" Are you done packing? " I ask amahle. She nods. " What's wrong? "

" Uhm the healer said something to me that didn't make sense " she looks around us nervous.

" Uhm Calvin can you make us something to eat in the kitchen? " Bishop asks him cause he can see that whatever the healer freaked amahle out.

" Yes sir. Come zaza " They all walk out.

" What did he say? " I ask her.

" He was talking about you, like there are two of you or something "

" What did he exactly say baby? "

" He said I'm the only one who can calm you down when he takes over and loses control. I shouldn't be scared of him cause he'll never hurt me. The two of you won't ever hurt me intentionally." Why do I feel like there's more he said to her than what she's telling me?.

" He said this in front of Calvin and his friend? "

" No he called me to the side "

" what else did he say? " she hesitates before she continues.

" One cannot live without the other. You are the chosen one. I must embrace you both." I sigh. " What does that mean? "

" I don't know baby. I have to talk to my mother tomorrow. She's the one who might explain some things to me like the healer said. I know she's going to show up tomorrow."

" Are you okay? " she palms my cheek.

" I'm not. Jane died, Belinda almost killed you, she's missing and God knows where the fuck she is. I'm going to kill her." I promise her.

" She will pay for what she did to Jane. I can't believe I thought she was a good person."

" She fooled us all baby." I pull her to my arms and breath her in.

She always smells nice. He says. I ignore him.

" Are we still going to live in Durban? "

" Yes we are. Did you find a house you loved? "

" Not yet. I want us to find it together "

" Amahle just find a house you love. When you do, we'll both go and check it out then before we make a decision."

" I would like that." she smiles.

" I need you to pack our clothes, for the week. We have to go to my grandparents house cause that's where I think Phakiso will be buried too unless my grandfather says otherwise."

" Yeah Kane told me everything "

" He's always had a big mouth " she giggles then keeps quiet.

" Did you mean it or it was a moment of weakness?."

She wants to know if we love her.

" I love you amahle." She smiles and looks at me.

" Do you think your family will approve of us

Advertisement

me? "

" why wouldn't they baby? "

" Because you're you. You're educated, rich, handsome and have everything together and me.... I have nothing."

" If I had everything I wouldn't be here with you telling you that you are my everything. Amahle I didn't know that there was something missing in my life before I met you. I love you as you are and that nothing you think you have we are going to change it into something"

" What you mean? "

" You have to register at a University or do online classes. That's all up to you but you my love are going back to the books "

" Are you serious? "

" I am baby. Please cook "

" anything specific? "

" Anything baby. I'm hungry " I kiss her cheek and we go to the kitchen.

THE NEXT DAY.

We have just had a service for Jane. It was short, emotional and sweet. All of us said words of goodbye to her then we watched her body get cremated and got her ashes. We are going to scatter her ashes on the sea cause that's what she wanted. Her money that she saved was going to be donated to a woman's organisation that works with abused women. I am glad though that she's with the man she loved and in peace.

We are home now about to leave for Welkom since my grandfather called us late last night to tell us about phakiso's " sudden death ". I still don't know how they came up with a plan. Dad didn't tell us cause he wanted us to be shocked when the whole family is there explaining how they found out. Amahle is nervous cause she's going to be meeting all of them at once. I hope she won't feel overwhelmed. Calvin is coming with us as always cause I want amahle to have someone she knows so she won't feel alone while we're busy.

" Are we ready to go? " Kane asks

" We have no choice...." Bishop answers him." you're too quiet " he turns and faces me. I have this weird feeling like something is going to happen and it's bad. My family is not safe here for now, until I deal with whatever that is coming my way.

" I want you guys to leave. I will come later tonight " amahle frowns.

" what's going on? " Bishop asks concerned.

" I'm not sure but I know I must be here and all of you should be gone." They all look at me worried.

" I'm staying with you " amahle tells me.

" I wasn't asking you. You will leave with them and I'll catch up. "

" But...."

" Amahle." She looks down and pouts.

They have to leave now and be home before it gets dark. An attack is coming and we need to prepare but we can't do that if they are not at home before dark. Tell them they shouldn't leave the yard until you tell them so.

" Son? "

" Dad you need to go now and make sure you're home before dark. When you get there no one should leave the yard until I call you and tell you it's safe."

" Do you need us? " Bishop asks.

" No brother. Just make sure everyone is safe. Jess please keep an eye on her and Calvin."

" I will sir."

" Dad? "

" Don't worry. I'll talk to Papa now and tell them to buy whatever they will need." I know he's going to have questions for my dad but I know he will handle it.

" Thank you Pa."

I take amahle's hand and wait for my family to leave before I talk to her alone.

" Baby? "

" Why are you staying behind? " she's sad.

" There's something I need to do alone. I promise you as soon as I'm done. I will be there "

" But I don't know anyone there and what if..."

" My family knows you. Calvin, my brothers and Jess will be there too so don't worry. No one will give you a hard time okay my love? "

" But I want to stay here with you "

" That's not possible. You have to go."

" I'm scared Kabelo "

" Don't be my love." I kiss her forehead and walk her to the car where everyone is waiting. " I love you." I tell her.

" I love you more " she says with her voice breaking. I kiss her deeply then usher her in the car and watch them drive out.

I lock the front door then walk straight to my spare bedroom and take off my clothes.

My whole body is on fire especially my chest. I look at myself through the mirror and my eyes have gone dark but I can see clearly. I close and open them again and they still look the same.

" what are you doing to me? "

" Preparing your body. " he answers

" by burning me up? "

" Yes I want to come out so you can see me."

" what? See you how and how the hell are you going to come out of my body?"

" same way I got in when you were 12 "

" WHAT! "

" Yes. The time has come for us to meet. I have been patient with you and silent cause you were not ready but now is the time "

" Come out and leave me the hell alone. Don't ever get inside of me again! "

" I can't do that. We are one. They know you exist and they are going to come after you. It's either they are going to welcome and claim you or kill you."

" Who? "

" My family "

" What! "

" Focus Kabelo! " this fucker yells at me.

I feel like something is separating it's self from me. Like it's going to come out of my skin. I scream and fall down on my knees as whatever that is inside of me moves. The pain is so unbearable as it comes out. I am on fire like I am burning up. I scream until the pain stops and I fall on the floor. I have never felt pain like this. I thought I could tolerate being in pain but not this.

When I look up I expect to find a person standing but no. I cannot believe what I'm seeing. It's a shape of a man. A fucken huge ass man. I can see his facial features but not his eyes. He looks like a ghost and something else I can't explain. He walks to me and helps me stand up and the moment he touches me I feel strong and no longer in pain.

" Who are you and what do you want from me? " What the fuck is this thing living in me!.

" I am you Kabelo. We are one " The shadow walks around me. " I have watched you grow up and protected you. You were at the right place but at the wrong time. You weren't suppose to see what you saw. I had to protect you cause I knew what would happen had I not and also I was told to do so by those above me. " I sit on the bed and and process what this thing ugly is telling me.

" What happened to me, what did I see? "

" You have to ask your mother about that. You will know when she lies and if she fails to tell you the truth. My people will tell you " What the fuck is going on! Am I dreaming? This has to be one stupid joke that is being played on me. There's no way all of this is real.

" Are they the one's who are coming to cause trouble for me? "

" No. Those are the one's who were working with your cousin. They are on the way but don't worry. We can handle them on our own "

" You still haven't told me who you are "

" like I said. Talk to your mother then we will talk "

" So if I choose right now to not let you back in my body what would happen? "

" You will die and so would I or I could choose to have another host but I will not. We are one and nothing is going to separate us unless they do that ritual that killed me."

" So my mother was involved in your death "

" She was and it's not like she didn't know what she was doing. She knew very well the consequences but she still went ahead and unfortunately you were in the cross road and saw everything. You saw my death and I could feel how scared you were and angry. I entered my soul in your body the moment it left me and before they could capture it." what the hell!

" What are you? "

" I was a man and something more than a human. I walk between two worlds. You enjoy the smell of blood. It makes us stronger and powerful. We command and demand respect. We are dominant by nature that's why you chose to go to that world so it could satisfy that hunger you have and always crave. You became aware of me when you tasted that blood that specific day " Fuck me!. I remember that day and everything that happened changed my life even though I tried to hide it.

" Will it hurt every time you come out of me? "

" There won't be another time kabela. I had to show you what you are. What I am and what you are. You have to know the person living inside of you. I am always going to live inside of you, be with and do everything with you. There's no one without the other"

" This is so fucked up! I feel like I can hear what you're saying but then I don't."

" I will tell you when the time is right. Right now though we need to talk about you protecting yourself and those you love "

" How?"

" You have to allow me to be fully in you in every way so you can sense and see danger before it even happens. You can see when your eyes are closed anywhere you want to see. You can hear people's thoughts of those living and dead. You can block them so you won't hear them. Your speed, strength and everything about you is more than that of a human and when in immediate danger you will transform to protect yourself."

" What? Transform how? Into you like this? An animal? An alien? "

" No. More than that. Our true self."

" This has my head so fucked up. I.. "

" I know you're confused but like I said. My people will come to you and claim you. They will teach you all of that you have to know. We will both know when they come and when the others come."

" If my brother's were there that day you died would you have chosen one of them?"

" No. You're the Chosen one."

" They know something is living in me and they would want to know when the time goes. I will have to tell amahle too what I am even though I don't understand it myself and when I do what if she's not able to handle it? "

" She will have to. She is strong and if she's not able to handle it then we will have to let her go "

" Fuck no! That's not going to happen. She's going nowhere! "

" I want you to know that even though I am living in you and we are one. I have never and will never make decisions on your behalf unless I have to save your life. I will stand back as always but trust in us cause we are together by blood, soul and bound by the God's."

" Will I still be able to do all of those things you said I could do even when you're outside my body? "

" Yes you will. My blood is your blood. My powers are yours too but together in one body. We are stronger and more dangerous than we could ever be."

I close my eyes and see if what my ghost saying is true. I focus on Amahle and see where she is. I can see the car moving and amahle looking outside the window and she's not okay. Her heart is with me and she's worried about meeting the rest of the family without me and she thinks I'm going to be with another woman. I open my eyes and sigh. He walks into me and morphs back into my body and it's not painful like when he came out.

" They are here and are surrounding the house. They are going to try to burn it with us but we won't let them" he tells me.

" I can feel them and they are many. I won't be able to put the fire alone. I'll need help."

" Fire doesn't hurt us. We are fire and we walk through fire."

CHAPTER 22

#NotEdited

“ They are here and are surrounding the house. They are going to try to burn it with us inside but we won’t let them” he tells me.

“ I can feel them and they are many. I won’t be able to put the fire alone. I’ll need help.”

“ Fire doesn’t hurt us. We are fire and we walk through fire.”

“ What do you mean? ” I ask my shadow.

“ Fire doesn’t do anything to us. We will not get burned and we won’t let them burn the house. This is our home. Let’s go and show them who we are. I need you to allow me to take over your body, lead you and show you what needs to be done.”

“ Do it.”

I feel myself getting stronger and powerful. All my senses and sight getting stronger. I walk out of the guest bedroom and go to mine and wear my T-shirt and track pants and sneakers taking my time then walk to the living room and open the door and step out of the house walking to the middle of the lawn and stand there.

“ I know you’re all there surrounding my house. Come out of the shadows and face me. I’m here alone and not armed. There’s no one in the house so there’s no need to burn it and if you do that well, that’s going to piss me off.” I speak loud enough. There’s no need to shout cause I know they can all hear me.

Men with guns come out pointing then at me. They are 30 of them surrounding me. I chuckle. I put my palms up and the outside light bulbs shatters and fire comes out instead lighting the whole yard and my house. I feel them get to go scared and cocking their guns at me.

“ Before you all die and never see your families again. Who’s I’m charge here cause the fool that sent you is not here ”

A guy comes forward pointing an Ak-47 at me. I guess I should be scared but one thing I know about myself is I’ve never been afraid of death... well that changed when I almost lost my life.

“ don’t point that gun at me unless you plan to do what your boss told you ”

“ Ey shut up wena! I’m here to do my Job and that is to take you and your whole family out! ”

“ Call Sakhele. I want to talk to him now before you all die. I want him to hear you scream as you go to hell. Call him. ”

“ listen to this fool. He thinks we take orders from him ” he laughs with his goons.

“ Call that fool you call a boss. I want to trade your life for that bitch he has. If he values you and his life he’ll take it. But if he doesn’t, well you all die and he will join you there too.”

They laugh again and this time. I join them cause this shit is funny and they are wasting my time. We all laugh until they stop and I feel their feet shifting from one position to another. I can sense their fear.

“ Why did you all stop laughing I mean this whole shit is funny ” I laugh again.

“ What the fuck is wrong with you man. Why do you laugh like that. What’s wrong with your voice ”

“ Oh that voice, well it comes out when people are going to die. My shadow is a psycho and he hates repeating himself. For the last time though. Call your Sakhile ”

“ Man do what he says. There’s something wrong with this guy! ” one guy shouts.

“ Shut wena. The boss sent us to do a job and that’s what we’re going to do! ”

“ I’ll give you one last chance. Leave my home and I won’t kill you ”

The fool laughs and his goons too. I’m over this shit. With a speed he or they couldn’t see coming I go straight to the one Sakhile put in charge and take his gun pointing it at him.

“ Give me your phone ” he takes it out. “ call that fool and put him on speaker.” He does and the phone rings.

“ is the job done ”

“ You son of a bitch. Why didn’t you come and face me yourself ”

“ who the fuck is this! ”

“ you’re worst nightmare you son of a bitch! ”

“ Kabelo! oh you’re still alive? That’s a damn shame. It seems as if you’re hard to kill. I mean after all the poison Belinda fed you and

never died but that is about to change. You're dying today mother fucker! ”

“ I can feel her there sitting in that brown old ass couch shaking. Tell her I'm coming after her then you after I'm done killing these fools. You don't know whom you're messing with ”

“ I've been messing with you this whole time and you were stupid to see and now you think you can find me. Find my woman?.... ” he laughs

“ We'll see who has the last laugh Sakhile. I'm coming after you and that little secret family you have. The one you think no one knows about?. I'm going to kill them all.”

“ I don't know what you're talking about! I don't have another family. Stay the fuck away from my family ”

“ You came after me, my family, my business and my friends. You will pay njadini! ”

“ You'll never find them. We'll see who's family will mourn who first ”

“ There's nowhere you would hide in this world where I won't find you. I'm coming for you. Say goodbye to you're goons ”

I drop the gun down, open my hands and fire balls form. They get bigger and bigger and form a huge flame that surrounds me then I hear gun shots all around me. They are shooting at me and nothing is happening. I stand there and watch them. It's a good thing that my yard is big and private cause of it wasn't. My neighbours would be scared right now.

“ what witchcraft is this man! ” one guy shouts scared shitless. All of them are.

“ he's a magician this one. Shoot him! ”

More bullets come and they disappear through the fire. I step out of the fireball. Raise my hands up and they all get stuck together like nails or coins in a magnet. They scream and beg me to let them go but I don't. I move them to the fireball and they scream begging me to let them go and I but not the way they expected. I throw them in the view and it swallows them screaming and burning. I move the guns too to the fire then clap my hands once and the fire disappears.

They poured petrol around my house thinking they are going to burn me inside it but they had another thing coming. I look for the fools phone on the ground and take it. Oh he's still online.

" I wouldn't sleep if I were you cause I might just come and kill you while you're sleeping "

" Fuck you! " he hangs up. I walk to the ground where they poured the petrol and put my hand on the ground.

" *Disappear into the depths of the earth and never come out unless I tell you to* " I watch as the oil disappears through the concrete.

I walk to the house switch off the lights then put the security code in and drive out to Kroonstad. I smell like burned humans. I'll shower when I arrive home. I take my phone and call Mbuso.

" Master K "

" Maestro G. I found him. "

" Sakhile? "

" Yeah. He sent his men here to kill me. "

" What? Are you okay? "

" I'm fine. His men are dead and he's in Limpopo with Belinda "

" Damn you're quick. What's the plan? "

" he knows his men are dead and we might be closer to finding him. He's panicking now and is thinking of a way to leave Limpopo without Belinda "

" Why would he leave her? "

" Cause I told him I'm going to kill his other secret family "

" wait... he's got another family? "

" Yeah. He's married to another woman and has two kids with her. I don't know her name but you can try and find out and get someone to watch them cause he's going to show up "

" Yeah I'll do that. Did he say where Sbu is at? "

" I didn't get that but I'll find out. "

" what you mean you didn't get it? "

" listen, are you going to come to the funeral? "

" Of course man "

" come with Sbu's brother. Tell him we might have a lead on his brother "

" Man what's going on? Talk to me? "

“ it’s... Complicated but we’ll talk when you get here.”

“ ok. I’ll do some digging about sakhile's other wife.”

“ thanks bro. How’s the wife and kids? ”

“ They are fine ” I can see feel him smiling but he’s worried about something.

“ What’s bothering you? ”

“ I’m just worried about my brother. He hasn’t been distant lately ”

“ talk to him and find out what’s wrong ”

“ he won’t talk ”

“ then do what you do best and track him. See where he goes and with whom ”

“ I don’t know man ”

“ Look it’s either he’s in trouble or up to something. Look into it. ”

“ Yeah I’ll do that ”

“ Keep me posted then ”

“ Will do so. Later ”

“ sure ” we hang up.

I look at the time and it’s 11 am. I’m are they are sleeping but I did say I will call them once it’s clear. I wonder what did say to convince them. I make another call.

“ I take it everything is okay? ” Bishop asks me when he answers.

“ Yeah it’s all good. How’s everyone? ”

“ they are fine but just edgy. ”

“ Is mom there ”

“ not yet. Maybe she’ll be down here tomorrow ” she better come.

“ how is amahle? Was everyone welcoming? ”

“ Yeah they were even though things are tense.”

“ where is she? ”

“ she’s sleeping I think ”

“ I’ll see you when I get there ”

“ Nah man I’m going to sleep. We’ll talk in the morning ” I hang up and sigh.

Three hours later I’m entering Kroonstad. It’s late and people are sleeping. I pass the Town and drive straight to the location. I haven’t been here in a while and it’s good to be back when though the reason we are here is not good. When I enter our street I can see

many cars are parked outside the yard and in it too. I park my car too then step out of the car and walk to the yard. I walk around it and almost everyone in the yard is sleeping but my love is not here. I close my eyes and try to find her and she's with my cousins where they are and some are drinking. Including her.

Everything in me tells me to go and get her but then I decided to let her be and aww when she's going to come back. I walk in through the kitchen and find my grandmother drinking her tea. I walk to her and hug her from behind and kiss her cheek.

“ I'm sorry ” she sighs and pats my hand.

“ it's okay baby. It was his time ” I hug her tight then sit down.

“ why are you sitting here alone? ”

“ just wanted some tea baby. I'm going to bed ”

“ Koko... ”

“ we'll talk tomorrow kabela. Go to sleep ” I kiss her cheek.

I watch her walk out of the kitchen then get up too and go to my room outside the house. I push the door open and close it behind me. The with our clothes is still on the bed and some clothes. It looks like she changed before leaving. I walk straight to the bathroom and take a shower, remove her clothes and put them in the wardrobe with her bag then get in bed and sleep even though I'm hungry and lazy to make food for myself.

I'm awoken by someone knocking on the door loudly. I groan and Pat the bed and the other side is empty. The knocking on the door continues fuck. I get up wear my track pants and roughly open the door. I see a girl I have never seen before and she takes a step back looking scared.

“ Who the fuck are you and why are knocking on my door like this? ”

“ Uhm... I.... I... ” I close the door on her face and go back to bed but the door opens. I look up and she walks in carrying a tray of food and puts it on the coffee table. I cock my head at her.

“ I was sent here by your aunt to give you some food since you didn't eat last night ”

Who the fuck told her that I didn't eat and which aunt is that?.

“ Take that fucken tray and never ever come in my room ” she gasps when she hears the annoyance and threat in my voice.

“ but she..... ”

I get up, roughly grab her arm tight and she winces. I open the door and see amahle heading to my room and she stops when she sees me throwing the girl out of my room. Oh fuck!. I can see the hurt and shock in her face. She turns and goes back to the house fuck!

“ Amahle?... Amahle! ” I run after her as she runs to the kitchen and people are surprised cause amahle is running away from me and I’m chasing her calling her name.

My brother stops me just before I grab her and she pulls away and runs to the bathroom and locks herself in there.

“ Kabelo you’re scarring her... leave her ”

“ amahle open this door! ” I bang on the door

“ She’s scared brother leave her. You’re scarring her some more ” I hear her sobbing and it’s fucking pissing me off.

“ If you know what’s good for you, you’ll come out of there.... ”

“ bathong kabelo are her father? ” says phakiso's mother “ leave the poor girl alone ”

“ why did you send that girl to my room? ”

“ Kabelo! ” I don’t realise I’m walking slowly towards her until my brother gets between us. “ outside. Now! ” Bishop orders me.

He pushes me outside and we walk to my room. I take off my sweatpants and walk to the bathroom. Open the faucet and cold water hits my face and body. I don’t understand why she would just ran away without listening tow explain why that girl was in our room. I’m the one who should be upset that she didn’t sleep home. She left with people she barely knows. She leaves Calvin and Kane behind.

What if she got hurt and something bad happens to her?. What if they drugged her or raped her. Fuck!

“ I’m sure she’ll understand once you explain what happened ” I knew he followed me here.

“ why did you let her leave with them. She was around people we some know ”

“ they must have left after we talked. I should have made sure she was here. I didn’t think she would leave with them but she was with our cousins. They wouldn’t have let anything bad happen to her “

“ she was also around other people she doesn’t know. She just met our cousins and she decides to leave with them when she barely knows and trusts them? Come on bro ”

“ brother she’s still young and she’s going to make mistakes. Be patient with her.”

“ but she is smart enough to know that she shouldn’t have left with people she barely knows. I was supposed to find her here I’m our room sleeping and not getting drunk. Is this what she’s going to do when we’re married and here?.” I close the faucet and step out. He gives me a towel and I wrap myself with it.

“ be understanding with her. Maybe they forced her to go with them. You know how they can be ”

“ then she should have told you or Kane. I’m going to remind her who calls the shots here. Who’s rules she must follow. She has forgotten that she’s my submissive. It’s time she behaves like one ”

“ Remember you love her. Don’t be too harsh. ”

The door opens and she walks in. She looks at us then kneels down and sits on her heels with her head down like a perfect submissive.

Bishop nods at me and walks out. She looks up when the door closes..

“ I’m....”

“ are you tired? ”

“ no... no sir ”

“ Are you hungry? ”

“ No sir. ”

“ Get up and come here ”

She slowly gets up, walks and stands I’m front of me. Her body is trembling. I know she wants me to touch her so she can know I’m not mad at her. But I am mad and mad me is not a nice person. I could read her thoughts to know what she’s thinking but I don’t want to do that. I don’t want to invade her thoughts like that.

“ who’s clothes are these? ”

“ uhm it’s your cousin’s friend ”

“ take them off ”

She quickly takes them off and she’s not wearing any underwear and bra. I shake my head.

“ you left this room without wearing any underwear and bra? ”

Amahle sure knows how to press my buttons.

“ I thought we were going to come back early but then ” she stands before me naked like I’ve seen her that way.

“ Kneel down the same way you did when you walked in here. There ” I point next to the wardrobe.

She walks there and kneels down and sits on her heels with her head facing me. I get up drop my towel then walk to the wardrobe and take out our bag. I can feel her eyes on me and she does notice my hard cock standing up. She takes a deep breath and her heart is beating fast. I could fuck her until my anger goes away but that can’t happen cause we’re mourning. I wear my clothes then when I’m done I look at her.

“ I’m going to the house to get something to eat. Lift your arms and thread your fingers behind your neck.” She does and her boobs raise more up. “ You will stay like this and not move. If you do. I will give you a punishment you will never forget. Do you understand me? ”

“ I understand sir. ” one last look at her then I walk out taking the key with me and locking the door.

The yard is full of people I know and some don’t. I walk to the house kitchen and it’s full. I greet them. Calvin walks in and comes straight to me.

“ morning sir. Can I make you something to eat? ”

“ morning Calvin. Have you has something to eat? ”

“ I did sir just now in the dining room ”

“ Everyone else’s is there? ”

“ Yes sir. I would like to apologize.... ”

“ it wasn’t your fault Calvin. Amahle is sleeping some let anyone disturb her ”

“ I will sir ” I walk in the living and everyone is there. I greet them then take a seat and dish for myself.

“ do you have anything to say? ”

“ to whom? ”

“ Kabelo you have some nerve disrespecting my wife like that. You get in her face and threaten her?! ” my uncle bangs the table

“ Kgotso we are mourning and don’t bang m table ” papa reprimands him.

“ I didn’t threaten her. I simply asked her why she sent that girl to my room ”

“ She did what? Who is that girl lulama ” my stepmother asks her.

“ mama told me that kabelo came late and was probably hungry this morning so I asked my niece to make him breakfast and take it to his room. What was wrong with that? ”

“ What happened kabelo? ” Koko asks me and I tell her the whole truth.

“ You know very well my boys don’t eat anyone’s food but you still send that girl and caused trouble between him and his girlfriend cause you knew amahle was not in his room. Why? ”

“ It’s not my fault that girl did not sleep here. What kind of girlfriend comes to her boyfriend’s funeral and doesn’t sleep here on her first night and goes out to get drunk and comes in the morning? ”

“ Amahle left with our cousins and not strangers. They obviously formed a bond from when they came to her brother’s funeral. She felt safe with them that’s why she left. I gave her permission to leave cause I knew I might arrive here in the morning but then I didn’t. I knew where she was and I could have went to fetch her but I didn’t. I’m sorry if her behaviour makes her look like she’s not a good girl because I promise you she’s not. It’s all my fault and I’m sorry.”

“ apologize to your aunt too ” my stepmother orders me

“ I’m sorry for my behaviour aunty. I didn’t mean to disrespect you during this time ”

“ I know your hurt too kabelo cause you were the most closest to him. We shouldn’t be fighting with each other ” I nod.

“ Now tell us why we had to sit our asses and not go anywhere until you tell us to ” phakiso’s dad asks me.

“ I thought the people who killed phakiso might also target all of you here uncle. That’s why I said no one should leave the yard until I knew for sure they are not here ” my aunt sniffs.

“ Why would they kill my son! My sweet innocent boy ” she cries

“ we will find them and they will pay. You mess with our family and you pay. ” karabo assures her.

“ No one messes with my family and get away with it. You will pay no matter what. ” Papa says then stands up and walks out.

“ Yolanda take your sister to the bedroom. People are on their way to offer their condolences ” Koko tells my stepmother. “ I’m going to check on dad ” Koko leaves too.

“ do you know who killed my son? ”

“ we’re still investigating. When we know we’ll let you know ” I tell him. He nods and walks out too.

Now it’s only our father, us and uncle Langa the first born.

“ Papa told me what happened to phakiso. I’ve always known he’s not of our blood so don’t worry. We just have to make sure that no one else knows especially your uncle cause that would really hurt him.

Have you found the other guy and Belinda? ”

“ Sakhile is going to go Cape Town cause I told him coming after his wife. When he gets there, there'll be people watching him. ”

“ good. Whatever you need tell me.”

“ I will uncle ”

“ We have to go and buy a cow. Eat up ” uncle Langa tells us.

“ when are we going to buy the cow? ”

“ in an hour. ” I nod and plate more food on the plate then walk to my room.

I unlock the door and close it behind me. I look at the time and realise she’s been in this position for 30 minutes. Her arms are tired and tears are streaming down her face. She’s fucken tired. I put the food down on the coffee table walk to her and pick her up. She wraps her legs around me crying and apologizing. I sit down with her.

“ Ssshhhh.....eat up so you can sleep.”

I sit her on my lap, wipe her tears and feed her. She eats watching me until I’m done. I sit her on the bed then walk to the bathroom and run her a bath. I pick her up again and put her inside the bathtub and bath her. No one is talking. After I’m done I dry her, moisturize her body then put her in bed. I kiss her cheek, go to the bathroom and clean the bathtub. When I come out after I’m done. She is sleeping. I look at her again and I know for sure I love this girl. I close the room behind me. I know no one will disturb her.

CHAPTER 23

When I come out after I'm done she is sleeping. I look at her again and I know for sure I love this girl. I close the room behind me and leave. I know no one will disturb her. My family is waiting in the car and we leave to go look for the cows. They decided to buy two cows cause they know many people will be coming and everyone must leave after they have had some food.

My uncle Phakiso's dad chose the cows he wanted for his son and they will be delivered Friday morning. I wonder if my grandfather is ever going to let his son know that Phakiso was not his son biologically but I guess that does not count cause he loves him regardless and if the truth should ever come out it must come from his wife and not us. I'm still very upset about Amahle's behaviour and we are going to address it. She cannot do this and expect there won't be consequences for her behaviour so she can know to never do it again. Her first time visiting my family and she behaved that way? No. I had to lie to my family to protect her cause I didn't want them to think she's a certain type of a young woman. I know they know I lied to protect her but what can I do. I love her and I have to protect her always.

We just got back, I go to my room and Amahle is not there. She must have woken up and went to the house. I walk in the house and look all over for her but she's not. I could invade anyone's thoughts right now and find out where she is but that would be very selfish of me. I sit on the kitchen chair and Kane joins me. The girl that came to my room walks in the kitchen.

" Good afternoon " she greets and Kane greets her back. I ignore her. " Amahle is not here. They went to the mall to buy some of the things."

" Thanks " Kane acknowledges. She leaves.

" It seems like someone likes you "

" and Lulama sent her "

" what? "

" She wants her niece to score herself a rich man "

" Damn that woman "

" She will be sorry if she continues to do stupid shit like this "

" Our Aunt and mother have always been trouble makers "

" Our mother will come. I have so many questions for her "

" Just wait until after the funeral. Koko will be upset if there are any fights "

" Don't worry little brother. When our mother and I talk. It won't be here " He keeps quiet and looks at me.

My phone rings and it's Cigar. About damn time.

" I'm listening " I walk out of the kitchen and walk to my car.

" We found Belinda but she ran away boss. I left her with some fools to go get food in the garage and when I came back they were all knocked out " I pinch the bridge of my nose and close my eyes.

" You mother fucker! How stupid can you be?! "

" Boss I'm sorry I..."

" You fucken messed up! You shouldn't have left her alone with them! "

" Boss we are looking for..."

" If I find her first Cigar you're dead. You and all those fools are dead! "

" Boss I'm sorry we will find her "

" Where was Sakhile? "

" She was alone in the house we found her " Mother fucker left her like I knew he would. I have to go to Durban and take his family. That will force him to come out.

" I'm giving 24 hours to find Belinda or you're dead Cigar! " I hang up.

How can Cigar and his goons be that stupid. Belinda managed to knock out three or more guys alone?. I never knew that girl cause it seems as if she's more resourceful than I thought and that is very dangerous. A desperate woman is a dangerous one and right now she will do anything to be safe and possibly out of the country. She thinks she's smart but she's not smarter than me and she will fucken pay!. I find myself punching the windscreen and it shatters into pieces. Damn! I thought I punch it lightly and wouldn't break. Obviously I'm more pissed than how I thought.

" Hey what happened? " Bishop walks up to me looking worried

" Cigar found Belinda then they lost her. That mother fucker! "

" Damn how did that happen? "

" She knocked them out "

" We have to find her or else she's going to come after one of our family members. She's getting desperate "

" I'm going to Richard's Bay to take her aunt and cousin. I know she knows I don't play with family but now she's leaving me no choice. After taking them I'm going after Sakhile's wife and kids since he's on his way to his other family in Cape Town. "

" Leave the kids and take the wife "

" No. He might not care what happens to his wife cause he already has another one but his kids. That will fuck with him "

" When are we leaving? "

" Now."

" I'll tell Jacob and his men to get ready " I nod " Where's Amahle? "

" They said they were sent to the mall. I don't know cause she's getting me frustrated. She knows very well she's suppose to call me and tell me where she's going and with whom " I shake my head.

" Didn't you talk and discipline her? "

" I disciplined her and I was still going to talk to her but she fell asleep. I thought that maybe that would work but it didn't. Amahle responds to pain and it's pain that's going to teach her a lesson "

" I know I said be soft but forget that shit. Show her who you are. Amahle lacks discipline and she needs to get inline "

" Hell yes."

" Clean this mess up before Papasees it and asks a hundred questions "

" Too late. Here he comes "

" Let me know when he's done with you so we can leave "

" Kane is staying behind. He needs to keep an eye on amahle and Calvin " He nods and leaves.

My grandfather walks up to me walking slowly and his face is hard. Why is he upset now? I don't need to be lectured right now cause that will just set me off the roof.

" Kabelo? "

" Papa? "

" Is this a good example you're setting? "

" I don't know what you're talking about " I look down.

" So breaking a windscreen with your fists with everyone watching is acceptable? "

" I didn't realise I punched it that hard. I'm sorry "

" You see me to have forgotten who we are. We don't do this shit in front of everyone so they can talk about us. What do we do when we want to let our anger out? "

" Go to the gym....the club and let it all go out " he nods. Well I would go to the club and fuck the shit out of someone until my anger disappears. But right now I want to fuck Amahle rough. I can't though cause we are in mourning.

" Papa can I ask you something? "

" I think I know what it is but ask away? "

" I know we are mourning but are we allowed to have sex? "

" You know very well you're not allowed but since we're all supposed to be cleansed after the funeral then you can. When you first slept with Amahle, did you clean yourself kabela? "

" I didn't papa "

" Kabela! That's not how we do things. You have to cleanse yourself after every woman you have slept with."

" I know and I kinda forgot "

" I don't know what is happening with all of you. It's like I don't know you at all " I sigh. I wish I can tell him what's going on but I can't. Not when I still don't have answers. When I'm still processing it.

" I will do better "

" When you're back in Pretoria you will go to that healer your father came with to your house and get something for Amahle too so she can be cleansed. Do you understand?"

" I do Papa "

" Clean this mess up "

" Uhm Papa?" He raises her eyebrow " We are going to Richards's bay then Durban. I'm going to take Belinda's family so she can come out of hiding then go to Durban and take Sakhile's wife and kids"

" You mean kidnap them?" I nod. " Take all of them but make sure the kids are safe. They don't see or hear any of the shit you will be up to but don't hurt his wife. We want Sakhile and his girlfriend"

" They won't be harmed I promise."

Amahle, Calvin and two of my cousins get out of the car and they are laughing to something. She sees me and her whole body and face changes and she gets scared. I don't like that at all.

" Go talk to her. I'll get someone to clean it and call the guys from P&G to look at it"

" Thanks Papa "

I follow them and they are in the kitchen taking stuff out.

" Abuti we would like to apologize for what happened yesterday. Us taking Amahle and staying the night and..." My cousin Itumeleng apologizes.

" It's fine." The whole kitchen gets quiet. I take Amahle's hand and we walk to our room outside. When we walk in I close the door and lock it and look at her.

" I'm sorry for yesterday. I know I messed up and I know better Kabela. I know I disrespected you and your whole family with my actions but I swear it wasn't my intention. I tried saying no to your cousins but they were just persuasive...." I cock my eyebrow at her.

" Who said you can talk? " she keeps quiet. " Persuasive you say?....Talk. "

" I mean.... "

" Let's see who's more persuasive between me and them. Take off your clothes. I need to shower before I leave "

" Kabelo..."

" Did I stutter? " she shakes her head no and takes off her clothes and I watch her as I take off mine. Her eyes go to my dick and they get huge and she gulps.

" Why is it every time you're angry your dick gets hard? It's always hard "

" Oh so you've noticed?. Is that why you do things that you know very well are going to get me angry? " She opens her mouth to talk but nothing comes out. " When I'm angry I get hard. very hard. It takes allot to get me upset cause I know once I get to that moment nothing will calm me down other than fucking someone hard until my anger dispenses. But with you Amahle it's different. You just have to open that smart mouth of yours and be stubborn and I'll be as hard as a horse like right now. I slept with a hard on, woke up with it and walked with it the whole day and now I need to calm down."

" but there's a funeral and we can't have sex "

" Oh yes we can."

" Are you going to be rough? "

" I don't want the whole yard hearing you screaming. I'm going to book us a hotel room when I come back ngizokubhebha unye so you can remember who calls the shots here. It's only me and no one else "

I lead her to the bathroom and her body is trembling and I know it's not because she's scared but because she's anticipating for what it's about to happen. I almost chuckle. I close the bathroom door, lock it and then open the shower faucet making sure water is the only thing someone will hear when they knock just incase.

" Hold your hands to the vanity " She does and our eyes lock in the mirror.

She's breathing hard and her hands are gripping the vanity tight. Her eyes have gone small and she keeps biting her lips. I roughly separate her legs apart and grab her ass cheeks and move my dick between her ass cheeks and pussy. She moans.

" You're wet. Uthanda ugwayi." She gasps and her face gets red.

My dick wants to be in right now and I don't have time. My brothers are waiting for me. My dick moves between her slit and she moans again. There won't be foreplay so I separate her cheeks some more, grab my dick and point it to her entrance. I dig my fingers deep into her waist and watch her through the mirror as I roughly thrust into her. She closes her eyes and bites her lip.

My dick is welcomed by warmth and tight muscles as I keep fucking her hard. Every thrust is hard

fast and rough. It knocks the air out of her lungs. Her boobs are bouncing, Her pussy is milking my dick getting more wet as I continue to fuck her.

" Open your eyes and look at me! " She gasps in shock. Yes they have turned black.

I thought she would be scared and tell me to stop but instead she looks at me with awe and wonder. Her thoughts are loud and she's wondering if this is what the healer was talking about. She's asking herself if they are always going to turn to black when I'm angry and fucking her cause she likes it. Damn. My shadow and I groan and expand in her when we learn she likes our eyes. My hands find their way to her hair and throw the damn wig away and sink my fingers on her own hair.

Her moans and groans fill the bathroom. Her pussy muscles keep spasming around me. Her body begins to shake and I know she wants to come. Too bad that's not happening.

That's her punishment. I give her three more thrusts then quickly pull out before she comes and she shrieks.

" I was almost there Kabelo please...." She turns and begs me with her look.

" Get on your knees and open that mouth wide " she wants to argue but my face gets hard and she gkneels down. " Open wide love. I want to fuck this mouth "

She lick her lips and I chuckle and shake my head. Amahle is a sweet, stubborn girl but when it comes to sex. I know she's a freak and I'm enjoying peeling all the layers off of her freakiness. She grabs my dick and it slips in her warm mouth and we groan. Fuck. She licks my mushroom head then swallows me whole. She jacks me off with her hand still on my dick, bopping her head up and down moaning and groaning.

The way her tongue moves around my dick licking it has my hands going to her again and taking control. I see her hand going down between her legs.

" Don't you dare touch yourself " she whimpers. " Put your hands to your lap, relax your jaw and breathe through your nose. Tell me when you want to gag " she nods moaning. My hips flex in and out of her making sure I don't go too deep so she gag. Her body relaxes opening her throat more and I take the opportunity and fuck that smart mouth. Her tongues continues to move around me making sure her teeth don't touch me and it's fucken her amazing. Her moans are around my dick send vibtating sounds straight to my balls.

I can literally feel all my blood rushing down to my balls and we groan. I know I'm going to come fucken hard. I push down her throat and her nose comes in contact with my pubic hair. I hold her head down so she won't move it for a while and feel my balls full, hard and ready to spill out. I can feel her breathing changing cause I gave her little air. She whimpers and when she does that her throat touches my dick and I feel my seed moving from my balls to my dick and it shoots out. I come hard and fill her throat. I can feel her packing struggling to breathe and my dick gets harder and more louds of cum fill her mouth and go down her throat.

I pull out a little and some of my cum slip past her lips going down her throat. Damn that looks good. My baby's fingers follow the trail and she takes cum and with her fingers back to her mouth and licks it clean. She then takes my dick again and licks me clean. I grab her by shoulders standing her up and her legs are wobbly and I hold her. My hand goes between her legs and she's fucken wet. God I want to fuck her so bad but she has to be punishen. She moans and thinks I'm going to fuck her cause her legs move further apart but instead I sink all three of them in then pull them out to my mouth and lick my fingers clean. She tastes so good and her scent is driving the both of us crazy. She looks at me like I'm crazy when we get in the shower and I clean her up. Her face changes and her eyes get filled with tears and she sniffs. I'm still hard and seeing her tears gets me hard again. I grab my dick and jack off with her watching me. She tries to touch me but I shake my head no. She tries to tiuch herself and I slap her hands away and make her watch me as she sniffs until I shoot my loud on her again.

" You will not touch yourself until I touch you myself and make you come. I am the only person who's allowed to watch you become undone and have you screaming. whether it's my name or begging me to fuck you more and hard. I will know if you touch yourself baby and if you think this is hard then you don't know what hard is. Do you understand me? " I dry her. Her nipples are fucken hard and she keeps sifting her feet from one foot to another.

" I do " she wipes her tears.

" I'm going to durban, I will be back. You better behave love or my hand is not the one that will be spanking this ass "

" I'm sorry Kabelo "

" This is your punishment Amahle. You agreed to be my submissive and I am still your Dom. You follow my rules that I set for you or you get punished when you dont. Just because I said I love you that doesn't mean you do as you please."

" I know and I understand. I'm sorry again sir."

" You will get your chance to apologize and we will talk about your safe word and hard limits."

" when are you coming back"

" Soon little one."

I help her dress up and dress myself then we both walk out of the room. I see bishop and he is irritated cause he knows what I was doing. I kiss her cheek then leave her watching me.

CHAPTER 24

[PREVIOUS](#) PAGE 27 [NEXT](#)

My brother is very annoyed. He hasn't said anything since I got in the car even though I know he has much to say but I know he will not say it in front of everyone. All this pent up anger he's holding in is going to surface and everyone will be on the firing line. He needs to get laid, get out all his frustrations and I did apologized for keeping them waiting.

We have two cars following behind us. I get why Jacob decided to bring some of his other man cause we don't know what we are going to face when we get to Sakhile's house where his main wife and kids live. I know he wouldn't leave them without any security around. So we have to prepared even though I don't sense any danger. After being on the road for almost 6 hours we are finally in Richard's Bay. I am exhausted and I want to get some sleep but we can't cause we still have to go to Durban and take Sakhile's family. Jacob keeps driving around the location until he stops outside some house. I guess this where Belinda's family lives. I look at the time and it's 10 pm. That's good cause they might be sleeping.

" That brown painted house is where Belinda's family lives" Jacob points to some house three houses away. The Apollo lights are shining the whole street bright.

" Let's go and get them " Bishop says.

" You need to get laid and stop being cranky "

" says a man who's being played by a 23 year old " he smirks and Jacob laughs.

" Oh I taught her a lesson she won't forget " I tell them.

" I doubt she did or will ever be in line. She's trouble." Jacob disagrees

" Why do you say that " I know she messed up by sleeping out but they shouldn't judge her because of that small mistake.

" You don't want to know "

" Jacob? " We stop walking and they both look at me with bishop

" If you're hiding something from me regarding Amahle, you better tell me " He looks at bishop and he nods. What the hell?.

" Look man, Jess told me that was talking to some guy where they were and it looked like they were flirting. You know we would never lie to you " What? I try to contain my cool.

" Why didn't she tell me? "

" She asked me if she should and I said no cause it could have been just harmless "

" But you told Bishop and not me. All of you decided to hide it from me. If it was harmful then Jess wouldn't have been concerned and you wouldn't have told my brother and hide it from me "

" Kabelo..." Bishop tries to explain.

" Fuck off "

I walk away from them and walk to the house. I know they wouldn't lie to me so for them to do that it means there was something between amahle and the boy she was flirting with. Bishop and Jacob know very well how I was going to react if they told me then and I think they were worried for her and they should cause I don't take lightly being taken for a fool by anyone.

" Do you want to know what I think? "

" I know what you think fool. Shut up " I tell my shadow and he chuckles.

Trust and respect is very important to me. I thought Amahle knew what kind of man I am by now but it seems as if she doesn't know me cause if she did she wouldn't have been entertaining some boy. I am not mad at my brothers. I am mad at myself for not being firm with her cause it seems like that is the only language amahle understands. I could have read her thoughts but I chose not to do that cause I didn't want to invade her privacy. I trusted her and that she wouldn't do anything stupid.

Jacob's men open the gate and we walk in. The lights are still on, they might be still watching tv. The guys surround the house and it's just us three on the front door. This right now feels like a deja vu when we were at Bethal and surrounding amahle's house. Jacob knocks on the door and someone turns the television volume down.

" Who is it? " asks a shaky voice of a woman. I feel myself wanting to growl and I don't know why but I begin to pace on the lawn. Jacob and Bishop look at me frowning.

" I'm lost and I need directions." Jacob answers her.

" Need directions from where? " She sounds scared.

" To lindiwe's house. Someone just said she lives here " Jacob lies to her.

" Lindiwe doesn't live here and I don't know anyone named lindiwe. Please leave "

" Ma'am can you open up please so I can show you her picture "

" Please go away I don't know any lindiwe. I don't want trouble okay "

" Please give me a few moments to make a to call the person who gave me this house number to make sure it's the right one "

" Okay "

We walk to the side of the house where she won't see or hear us.

" What do we do now " Jacob asks

" That woman in there sounds scared and if we try to break inside she's going to scream and wake up the whole neighborhood and that's the last thing we need." Bishop says.

" Something happened to her earlier. That's why she sounds terrified " I tell them. She was crying before we came here.

" You talk to her then, Assure her that we are not here to harm her " Bishop instructs me.

" Why me and not you? "

" Why were you pacing up and down? "

" I don't know man...." I'm lying and he knows it. Something in me happened when I heard her voice.

" Talk to her cause you already have an idea what might have happened to her earlier. She might open up "

" Fine "

We walk to the front door again and knock.

" Miss? "

" Who's that? "

" Open the door so we can explain who we are and why we are here?. We won't harm you I promise" She keeps quiet then I hear her footsteps. Curtains move and she peeks through the window.

" what do you want? " I can't see her face.

" People will think we are here to do something bad to you but we're not. Open the door so we can talk inside or you can step outside so you can scream if we try to do something."

She closes the curtain then the door lock clicks and it opens and she steps out. She's wearing baggy track pants and a hoodie that is covering her head and face. When her head lifts up and sees how many people are actually outside. She begins to freaks out.

" Don't freak out. we wont hurt you."

" what do you want from me cause I don't believe that silly story of yours " smart but yet stupid. she shouldn't have opened the door.

" What happened to you? Who hit you?" I find my hands trying to pull that hoodie off her face but she quickly snatches it back covering her head and face but not quick enough cause i saw bruises on her cheek. They hit her like hell. Whoever was hitting her made sure she would have bruises for days. She sniffs then breaks down and cries. I pull her to me, hold her while she she really cries and I begin to get worried that maybe they did more than hit her cause when I brushed her back she winced. I listen to her and the only thing I want to do is kill the person who did that to her. Why do I even feel that way.

I pull her inside the house and sit her down on the sofa. Jacob disappears somewhere in the house and comes back with a glass of water. I give it to her and she takes it with her shaky hands and drinks. I just wish she would look at me.

" What happened? " I ask her. Come on, raise your head and look at me.

" They came in here looking for my adoptive cousin Belinda and I told them it's been years since we've seen her but they didn't believe me and they hit me. If you're also looking for her then I swear I don't know where she is." she sniffs. Damn did Cigar come here looking for Belinda then hit this girl?.

" What do you mean adoptive cousin? " Bishop asks her.

" Belinda was living at the streets when my aunt found her and took her to come live with us. Apparently all her family died and she went to live in the streets cause she had no one. She lived with us until she ran away when she was 16 and we saw her after 3 years then would disappear again for 2 years and show up. I haven't seen or heard from

her in three years. I know she's always been trouble but I have no idea what she's involved in I swear "

" How many men were here? "

" Two women and three men."

" Did you take a look at them? Did they say what they wanted? "

" No they demanded to know where she was cause the last time they saw her was when she was running away from some apartment carrying a gun." We all look at each other shocked.

" There's no way it was Cigar." I tell them

" could it have been mbuso? " Bishops asks

" No he would have told me when we talked. He was shocked that Belinda shot Amahle "

" what? You're also looking for her? " The girls asks

" Then that means someone else was or is watching us. It means Belinda alone or with Sakhile pissed off some other people too " I'm sure of it.

" What the hell is going on here? " Bishop asks.

" We might have enemies that we don't know we have. I'm going to call Jess and tell her to double security " Jacob steps out

" They said they are going to come back and I am leaving. I thought they were going to kill me " The girl sniffs.

" Were you alone when they came here? " I ask her

" I'm the only one who lives here. My aunt lives in Joburg with her family. I also haven't see her in two years "

" They never come to visit or anything? " I ask her

" No. " she says.

" What's your name? "

" Thobeka Lukhele "

" She's of no use to us." Bishop declares.

" I know. We have to go to Durban and see if the same people didn't go after Sakhile's family or it was him who sent those people here. He could be trying to throw us off "

Jacob walks in.

" Jess is on it. What do we do with her? "

" Thobeka you have leave this place in case those people come back and hurt you " I tell her

" can I get a lift with you. I heard you're going to Durban and I was going to go there too in the morning "

" No " I tell her

" Why not? "

" Stay with a friend tonight then tomorrow catch a bus or taxi to Durban " I order her

" We can't leave her here alone. Lets just take her and we'll drop her off there " Bishop suggests.

" Ok fine. Lets go cause it's getting late "

" Thank you so much " she says and goes to her bedroom and comes back with two full suit cases.

Jacob helps her with them then we step out and wait for her as she switches the lights off and locks the door. We leave the yard

she closes her gate and we get in the car and leave.

No one is talking and I feel so anxious. I don't know why cause I don't feel like this and it's pissing me off.

" She's making us feel anxious and...."

" shut up shadow. I don't want to listen to you right now "

" We are one and we feel the same thing. You can't run away from it "

" Do you want me to lock you in a box somewhere in my mind?"

" You can but I know you wont cause we feel something for her. There's something pulling us to her "

" Not now shadow please! "

" Why did we feel like killing someone when we found out someone put their hands on her "

" Shut the fuck up okay! "

" Kabelo! " Bishop calls my name

" What! " I don't realise the car has stopped moving and they are looking at me shocked.

" Fuck " I step out of the car and Bishop follows me.

" Hey come down. Everything will be fine and we will find Belinda and Sakhile. Stop stressing. You're scaring her "

" Man you don't understand " I shake my head

" I do brother and you know I know you. You've been mumbling and I know you're talking to him just don't make any decisions right now with whatever you're thinking about. Take a few minutes then come and it's almost midnight and we still have to go back home "

" Why are not stressed about all of this. We don't know who else is looking for Belinda. What if that mother fucker has already released that list and they might think it's us and attack our family? "

" Mbuso would have told us and our clients know very well that we would never give anyone their information no matter what. They would have called us."

" What if..."

" No brother you're too much in your head. Let's find Sakhile's wife, go home and bury phakiso then we deal with Sakhile and whoever is messing with us. Listen to your big brother "

" I hate this cool side of you cause I know we are going to kill people " I tell him. Bishop watches, observes then attacks.

" I've been watching you since you came back brother. Something changed when we left you cause you came back a very different man. Everyone can see it "

" What are they saying? "

" You're much scarier than me. You're intense brother, there's this aura around you and it's powerful. I love it. "

" Is it them who say that or you? "

" Me brother. Whatever happened in there to bring out this side of you I like it and those eyes of yours that turn black..." he shakes his head " If you weren't my brother I would swear you've got a demon in you "

" Brother..."

" We still have time to talk but it's not now. Come "

He grips my shoulder then walk back to the car.

" You okay brother? " Jacob asks me as we get inside the car and it moves.

" I am fine man don't worry. " he nods

" Do you suffer from anxiety too and talk to yourself cause I do but I don't talk out loud. It's how I cope around stressful situations. I have this stress ball that's always in my hand and it also helps me allot too. Here you can have it. Take it " She stretches her hand.

" If I take it then how will you cope? "

" I have many of them in case I lose one cause I can be clumsy sometimes. It has helped me and it will help you too "

" Thank you " I take it from her and she gives me a quick glance then looks away. Why won't she look straight in my eyes?. I wish I can see her face and eyes during the day and see what they looks like.

" Did my cousin Belinda shoot your wife? "

" No she's not my wife yet."

" Oh.. Is your fiance okay though? " did I hear disappointment in her voice?

" She is." She nods cause her head moves. She has been facing the window the whole time talking to me and I don't like that.

We are finally in Durban, it's 2am and we are all exhausted.

" Where can we drop you off? " Jacob asks her.

" Uhm you can drop me off at any garage and I'll request an Uber "

" It's not safe. Where can we drop you off? " I ask he again.

" You have already done too much. I am here now and you can just drop me off please " She's hiding something. I look at Bishop and he nods.

" Take us to the hotel Jacob so we can get some sleep " Bishop instructs him.

" Can you drop me off first please? "

" You will sleep at the hotel then in the morning when it's safe you can leave and go where you want to. Tell the person they will see you in the morning " I order her,

" I will "

Jacob stops outside the Hilton hotel and we all step out. Bishop and I pretend to book rooms for ourselves but we don't cause we wont sleep. The guys disappear and leave me with her. Why are they leaving her with me?.

" where are your bags? "

" I think they are in the car "

" Look at me when I'm talking to you " She turns her head and faces me but her head is still covered. " Remove that thing off your head " She does and her hair hides her face. I walk closer to her and move the hair off her face and eyes pure as white stare at me then they look away. I feel my breath hitching and my blood bumps like it was not flowing. I remove my hand from her soft skin and she takes a step back. She also felt what I felt.

" They will bring your bags to your room come."

We get in the elevator and I punch the 4th floor and it moves. The doors open and she follows me behind as I step out. I walk until I see her room number then give her the key card.

" I booked you here for a week. You will stay her and sort out whatever you need to sort out. The bill will be taken care of until you leave at the end of your week from now. I know you don't know anyone here in Durban and I know you were going to find yourself a cheap hotel to sleep in. So for your safety stay here until you sort yourself out before you leave " Her bottom lip trembles.

" Thank you so much. No one has ever done something like for me "

" a word of advise? " She looks at me and nods. Those damn eyes again are going to haunt me. I've never seen eyes like hers. Just pure black and white.

" Don't ever in your life do what you did. Ask for a lift from strangers, men you barely know who had the intention of kidnapping you. Next time you come across a situation like this run as far away as you can cause they might kill you. Easily " Her eyes get filled with terror.

" Why didn't you kidnap me then? "

" Cause you don't know anything about Belinda and her whereabouts. We were going to use you to lure her out from wherever she's hiding."

" Thank God then she hasn't been around and I want nothing to do with that girl. She has always been trouble "

" Did you hear what I said "

" I did and I won't do it again but..."

" but what? " I ask her harshly and she flinches

" It felt like I could trust you that's why I asked for a lift. My instincts have never been wrong. I always trust them and listen to my gut " I take her key card and open the door.

" That's a good thing and sometimes bad cause they can get you killed. Get in." She walks in and about to close the door and I turn to walk away.

" Wait..." I stop and look at her.

" What? "

" Will I ever see you again? "

" No " Her eyes get sad.

" Thank you for everything and goodluck to you and your fiancee. She's one lucky woman " her thoughts are so loud. She thought I would maybe be lying about having a fiancee and technically I don't have one and I don't know where we are right now after I found out she was flirting with some boy.

" Goodbye Thobeka Lukhele. Good luck to you aswell "

I turn and walk towards the elevator. I don't why I turn and I'll probably regret it cause she's standing there watching me and telling herself how she has never felt a connection from someone like she did when she heard my voice and when I touched her. Damn!. I get in the elevator and before the doors close I see her wiping a tear and walking back in. I put my hands to my face and take a deep breath in then out. Why does it feel like I left something behind I shouldn't have?.

When I get to the reception they are all there waiting for me. The people who are awake are curious as to who these people are. if they looked closely they would have noticed Bishop but he has a hat over his head.

" Is she settled? "

" Yeah she is. Lets go "

" I had asked someone to keep an eye on Sakhile's wife and they said no one has came in and or left since she came back with her kids from the restuarant." Jacob tells us

"Lets go and get them then "

We walk out and drive straight to Sakhile's house. The house is big and it looks like there's security.

" Don't worry they will let us in " Jacob assures us and indeed the gates open and only 2 cars get in. The other one stays outside. We step out and the two guys come at us.

" The mrs is sleeping on the first door on your right up stairs and the kids rooms are facing each other on the ground floor and we turned off the security cameras and alarms " One security says.

" Here's the money we talked about " Jacob gives them a huge envelope of cash.

" Thanks man "

" If this is a trap just know you and your families are all dead " They nod. " Jacob take the kids and we'll take the wife. Make sure no one else is in the house "

" it's only them boss. We made sure there are no hidden cameras hidden somewhere "

" Sfiso says. I close my eyes and scan the house and indeed they are sleeping. The wife has a gun under her bed.

Jacob walks in first and I take the stairs when I see them. The door is exactly where they said it was. I take out my gun and cock it carefully so it wont make a sound, hold the handle and push the door open. We slowly get in and walk to the bed and she is sleeping.

" wake up " I press the gun to her face and her eyes fly open. I guess she's nota deep sleeper. " Don't make a sound or else I will shoot you here right now then shoot your kids too "

" Please take everything you want but just leave me and my kids alone."

" Get up and put some clothes on. If you try any bullshit you're dead "

She nods, gets off the bed. Bishop throws some clothes he took out of the closet and she wears them shakily.

" What do you want? "

" You and your kids."

" What did my husband do? "

" smart woman. We want him so to get to him we have to take you with us "

" Please don't hurt my kids "

" If you co-operate then we will not. But if you give us trouble then I will kill you. Out " Bishop walks in front so she won't see her and I walk behind her with a gun on her head just to scare her and make her realise how serious we are. When she sees her children they run to her screaming.

" Calm down and stop screaming. We are going to leave this house and you will not make any noise or cause trouble cause you will all die and we don't want that " I tell her again and the children. They all nod.

" You do realise we are from a royal family and they will come after you "

" let them come and besides they would be happy to know that your husband is behind the future king's disappearance. Our friend. "

" What? No they are brothers! "

" Out " I say.

We walk out of the house and the guards are knocked out cold. We get in the cars and drive back to Kroonstad. The more we leave Durban behind is the more my heart aches and begs me to go back cause deep down I know I left something in there. Someone.

CHAPTER 25

By the time we arrive in Kroonstad the sun is about to rise. I couldn't sleep the whole way cause I kept thinking about the girl I left behind and what my brothers actually told me about Amahle flirting with some boy. I will have to talk to her so I can know what really happened. I will know if she dare lies to my face. Jacob parks outside my parents old house where no one lives. We step out of the car and usher them to the house.

" What are you going to do to us? " Sakhile's wife asks.

" You can have some food, sleep and there's a bathroom in here. Sfiso will take you to where you will sleep. If you give them any trouble they will know what to do with you "

" We didn't bring any clothes here "

" You will get clothes. We don't want to hurt you. We just want your husband that's all."

" How will you get to him since we didn't take our cellphones? You should...."

" You should shut up and make your children food to eat." I look at sfiso and the other guys. " Make sure they don't try anything stupid."

" Yes boss " They say.

I walk out of the house and get in the car and we drive home. Bishop has been sleeping the whole way and I too want to sleep. The car parks outside and the whole yard is full of unidentified man but we know who they are. They are posed as ordinary people who are here for the funeral but they are actually here to make sure our family is safe.

Bishop and Jacob retire to their rooms and I go to mine. I open the door but it's unlocked. I knock but Amahle doesn't hear me. I take the phone and call her and it rings.

" Hello? "

" I'm outside. Open the door " I hang up and the door opens and I walk in. I walk to the bathroom, take off my clothes and then have a quick shower. After I'm done I walk out and amahle is back sleeping. I get in bed and join her. I pull her close to me, Kiss the back of her head and sleep.

Someone is shaking me roughly waking me up and my eyes fly open. It's Koko. I sit up and pull the duvet close to me.

" Kabelo? "

" Morning Koko "

" You've been sleeping the whole day. Are you okay? " she sits on the side of the bed and I make space for her.

" Whole day? What time is it? "

" 3pm. You never sleep until this late " she looks concerned. I kiss her cheek.

" I was tired. We came back from Durban at 5 am and that's when we slept."

" Hmmm " I take her hand.

" What's wrong? "

" You tell me "

" I'm fine ntombe' ndala. This thing of Phakiso has been stressing us out "

" You do know you can talk to me about anything right? "

" Of course I know that. Have you seen Amahle? "

" She's with your cousins in the house. I brought you some food. I thought you might be hungry "

" What do you think of her? "

" As long as she loves you, respects you and makes you happy that's all that matters. I want all of you to be happy. "

" Koko please...."

" When we went to her brother's funeral I saw a young, respectful beautiful girl. Then she came here and she was still the same."

" But..."

" But her not respecting your home and sleeping out Kabelo is not okay even though she's just your girlfriend. I know you lied yesterday about you telling her it's okay to go with your cousins cause you wanted to protect her so we won't look at her in a different way and that's what a man does for a woman he loves. He stands with her and protects her. We know how your cousins can be but she's a smart young woman. She shouldn't have let them convince her to go cause she can make her own decisions and I did scold your cousins about taking her with them."

" She promised that she wont do it again "

" Do you believe her? "

" Amahle is young and I feel like when she met with my cousin who are her peers. She got reminded that she's still young and maybe hasn't experienced life the way she should. I feel like she might feel like I'm holding her back."

" So you don't believe she's not going to do it again? "

" I know she's going to do something else and it's going to get me mad."

" If she said she's not going to do it again believe her kabelo. You love her akere? "

" I love her koko "

" Does she love you back? "

" She does "

" Does she love you the same way you love her or does she love the idea of being with you? "

" What does that mean? " She sighs. She raises her eyebrow at me then takes the tray of food and gives it to me. I wipe my hands with the dish cloth then eat.

" She lost her parents when she was young then her brother had to step in after their grandmother died and uncle kicked them out. Her brother has been more than just a brother to her. He was her provider, protector and like a father to her. So when he died that shattered her world apart. She knew she didn't have anyone and was alone but then there was you. You came in, fixed everything for her. You care for her provide and protect her like how her brother did. She might feel safe with you cause she knows she will always be protected no matter what. You closed that space her brother left behind. That's why I am asking you. Does she love you the same way you love her or she loves the idea of being with you. The security and comfort that comes from being with you. Is she woman enough for you my child? " She keeps quiet and studies me. Damn this woman for laying all this on me now.

" Love shouldn't feel safe. Safe is boring and it's for the people who are afraid of taking risks in life and in love and that's not you or any of your brothers. You are go getters. You go after what you want damn the consequences. You wouldn't be where you are if you had always played it safe. You're a smart man Kabelo and whatever decision you make about your life my child. I will always support you no matter what. I just want all my children to be loved and happy no matter who loves and makes them happy okay? "

" Thank you Koko." I put the tray on the side and hug her.

" Let me get off this bed before I catch people's DNA " she says standing up dusting her dress and I laugh.

" I love you too "

" Bring my plates when you're done." She kisses my cheek then leaves my room. I breathe out deeply like I was holding my breath.

The food tastes nice and I finish the whole plate. After taking a quick shower and looking nice, smelling fresh too. I take the plates to the house and leave them on the sink. I see the broom, take it with me to my room. I take the sheets and everything on the bed and take it to the bathroom and put it on the laundry basket. I clean the bathroom then the bedroom and when I'm done I put fresh bedding and dust the whole place.

The whole place smells and looks fresh. I haven't done this in a long time and my grandmother was surprised to seem me doing this but she's the one that taught us to clean after ourselves. I haven't seen Calvin and Amahle anywhere. I wonder where they are cause it's 5 pm now. I sit on the bed and call Amahle. Her phone rings outside the door and she walks in.

" Hey love. Where have you been? " I get up and pull her to my arms and hug her tight.

" I thought you might still be sleeping " I kiss her forehead.

" I was. Koko woke me up. Where have you been? "

" We were baking at your aunts house. We wanted to go to your parents old house but bhuti Mpendulo said we can't go there. What's going on? "

" Nothing you should worry your pretty self with." She frowns and looks at me. " How did you feel after I left? "

" Drank lots of water and a glass of wine too but I promise the elders didn't see me "

" Where did you get the wine? "

" From your cousins " we sit on the bed.

" You like hanging with them right? "

" I do. They are fun " she smiles

" But don't let them force you into doing anything you don't want to do cause you want to score points with them okay? "

" No never. They are cool." ok

" I want us to talk about something and I want you to be completely honest with me "

" Oh.. ok. You sound serious"

" Tell me what happened at my cousins friend's house. Who you were drinking with and what happened "

" Why? "

" Humor me love "

" ok. When we got there their friends were already there drinking. They said it's a farewell goodbye to phakiso then they shared stories about him. I wasn't drunk kabelo. I only drank a few ciders and nothing heavy that's all "

" Was it just you girls or? "

" Their guy friends were also there "

" Did they talk to you, try to flirt with you and ask for your numbers? " She looks at me then looks away and plays with her thumbs. " Amahle? "

" There was this guy he was talking to me that's all."

" And you didn't try to entertain him? "

" I answered his questions kabelo. I didn't want to be rude."

" But you weren't flirting back? "

" No. I wasn't " I sigh.

" Why are you lying to me amahle? "

" Kabelo..."

" I never said you can't talk to other guys. You are a beautiful woman Amahle of course boys are going to try to talk to you and ask for your numbers but what I will not accept is you lying to my face about it."

" I thought you were going to be upset if I told you I was sitting with a guy and we were just talking and laughing. He said things that made me laugh and blush." he made her feel something.

" And I don't make you feel that those things? "

" Kabelo you're always serious, you want things done a certain way. With you it's always rules, rules and more rules and it's too much for me " What?

" Too much how? "

" I feel suffocated like I'm being held down. I feel overwhelmed. It's like your my brother all over again telling me what I can do and what I can't do " Oh my God.

" I'm not your brother Amahle and I don't treat you like my little sister."

" You're worse than my brother kabelo and it's too much for me " I can't believe what I'm hearing right now.

" Why didn't you tell me all this time? "

" A lot happen so fast and I didn't realize this until I was around people my age. I realized that I am missing out on things I should be doing at this stage of my life. I want to experience things and have no regrets "

" I never said you can't do all of that. You can still do all things with me. We can experience them together "

" Kabelo you want me to be this person that I'm not and fit in your world that I never knew existed. You want to control every move I make and if I don't do what you want I get punished for doing what I want to do."

" How would I know what you want when you don't tell me? "

" With you it's either your way or the high way."

" That's not true amahle. Have I not done what you have asked from me? "

" You first wanted me to be your submissive and when I said no you told me it's either I become one or you kill my brother since he stole from you."

" But you didn't agree right then. You told me you will agree if we do this girlfriend and boyfriend thing and I did. "

" You agreed cause you knew that's the only way you will get what you want. I felt forced like I had no choice but to agree." I pinch the bridge of my nose and close my eyes.

" I forced you? "

" Yes. Even yesterday you left me high and dry cause you were teaching me a lesson. I don't want to feel like that ever again." her answers comes out quick.

" I'm sorry you feel that way. I didn't mean to force you to agree to anything. I'm sorry for hurting you in ways I didn't realize I was doing. This whole relationship thing is new to me. I told you that I have never done it. I have always lived the life I live because that's what I know."

" I don't want to live like that. Always following rules and doing what you say and want." What?

" But you also have a say in how this thing works and for it to work both of us have to be happy "

" I don't want to be your submissive. I don't want to be whipped and tortured like some meat. I'm not happy " she tells me. I look at her and realize she means it. Tortured she says. I take a deep breath in then out.

" What do I need to do to make you happy? "

" Give me space. I want space from us. " My heart feels like it has just shattered.

" Space from us? What does that mean? "

" It means I want to take a break from you. From this relationship we were trying to build." This cannot be happening.

" How long do you want me to give you space? "

" I don't know "

" You don't know so I must what? Fiddle my thumbs and wait for you? " She keeps quiet.

" Answer me "

" I don't know until when "

" Are you sure about this? "

" I am." She looks straight in my eyes.

" Do you love me Amahle? Deep down in you do you really love me or you like the idea of being with me? " She takes a huge gulp of air before talking.

" I still resent what you did to me when we first met. You hit me like I was nothing then you tried to drown me in the bathtub. I hate those things you did to me and sometimes those memories would come and I would get so mad at you "

" I thought you forgave me "

" I did but that doesn't mean I forgot." I nod.

" I asked you a question "

" I am learning to love you " she confesses and my heart breaks.

" ok " I nod.

" I know you didn't expect this and I'm sorry "

" Never apologize for how you feel. You spoke your truth and feelings and I respect that "

I get up and go to the bathroom. I splash water on my face then towel dry it. I walk back out and she has her hands under her armpits. Her face is emotionless while I feel like I am still sleeping and having a nightmare.

" So where will you live since you want space? "

" I can find a flat around Pretoria with the money my brother left me "

" I'll get you an apartment around a safe area that you will live in. We are still looking for Belinda so I don't want anything bad to happen to you "

" Thank for understanding " Yeah..... I do understand.

" I love you and I want you to be happy. Take this time and get to do the things you want to do without anyone telling you what to do. Just promise me one thing though "

" What? "

" You will not put your life in danger. You will not do reckless things or be involved in reckless behavior."

" I will not."

" So during this space you need, Do we see other people? " She looks at me shocked.

" uhm no " She shakes her head.

" So what do I do when I'm horny?. Do I come to you and fuck you and you come to me and fuck me too? "

" No we can't be sleeping together cause were taking a break "

" Correction. You're the one taking a break and wanting space away from me. So we fuck other people? "

" No. "

" So no fucking each other or anyone else? "

" Yes "

" That will make you happy? "

" Yes it would " She agrees.

" And if it ever happens that you get tempted? What do I do to you? "

" I won't get tempted. "

" Are you sure? "

" I am sure. I am not some loose girl Kabelo! "

" Calm down. I was just asking and I'll take your word for it. "

" What about you? Will you not get tempted? "

" I am Dom. Temptation is nothing to me. "

After few minutes of awkward silence between us and tension in the bedroom she finally speaks.

"so.....I don't know where we go from here " she says sighing.

When I said we must talk I never thought this conversation will end up like this. Her wanting a break. Space from me cause my love for her is too much. Me concerned about her, wanting her safe and yes wanting her to be my sub is too much for her to handle. Amahle doesn't love me the way I love her. She told me she is learning to love me. I have always heard that heartbreaks are the worst things to ever feel and right now. That is what I am feeling. I am shattered cause I never expected this from her. I am so hurt right now.

" I need you to pack your clothes while I go and get Calvin to do the same. You will go back to my house and he'll help you pack the rest of your clothes then by morning the security guys will take you to your new apartment. "

" You want me to leave? "

" Amahle you have just told me you want space and that's what I'm giving you. I can't have you around my family when you don't want to be around me. What you told me is very hard for me and I'm trying to process it the best way I can. I respected your decision and now I need you to respect mine. "

" I understand "

" I'll go get Calvin "

" Kabelo? " I grip the door hard then look at her

" I need you to stay away from me. Don't contact me or anything. I need total space from you and I don't want your security guys around me monitoring my every move and reporting to you "

" I'll stay away from you. " I close the door behind me and stand there for a while collecting my thoughts. She told me to stay away from her. I will but My guys will make sure she's always safe and she wont notice them. I take out my phone and call Calvin.

" Afternoon Sir "

" Hey Calvin. Where are you? "

" In the house sir "

" Come out please " I hang up. He comes out of the looking like he was in my office working.

" Sir? "

" I need you to accompany Amahle back to Pretoria and help her pack all her clothes. You will sleep in the house then in the morning I will send you her new apartment address where she's going to live. After she's done unpacking take her to our office so she can claim the remaining money she hasn't received. I'm sorry you won't be here for the funeral " Calvin looks at me sad. " Don't be sad Calvin. It's what she wants and I'm giving it to her. Go get your clothes."

I walk to where my brothers are. They are talking and laughing.

" Uhm Sfiso take other three guys with you and drive Amahle and Calvin back to Pretoria. The rest Calvin will tell you. Kane where's your car? "

" Take mine " Jacob gives me his keys.

" Kabelo? " Bishop calls my name and I avoid looking at him cause I know if I do I will be the same small boy who used to run to his big brother when he was in trouble or hurt crying my eyes out. I walk back to my room and she has just finished packing her clothes.

" What about your clothes? "

" I'll buy a bag or leave them behind I don't know." She nods. " Are you sure about this Amahle? "

" Kabelo I am sure and I'm not changing my mind "

Calvin walks in and it's very tense.

" The car is ready. They are waiting for you " I tell them

" You'll find me in the car." Calvin takes Amahle's bag and leaves.

" I guess I will see you then " I tell her. She nods.

I told myself I wasn't going to touch her but I find myself pulling her to my arms and hug her tight. I inhale her scent for one last time until I hold her again.

" Goodbye Kabelo " She pulls away from my arms and leaves. Closing the door behind her.

I stand there frozen. In shock. In disbelief. I walk out of the room and watch them getting in the car and they leave. I walk to Jacob's car and get in. I ignore Bishop calling calling my name and I drive to the opposite direction. I need to be alone.

CHAPTER 26

[PREVIOUS](#) PAGE 29 [NEXT](#)

Advertisement

#NotEdited.

My thoughts are all over the place. I don't know what to do or say. I feel like I am going to wake up tomorrow and realize that all of this is a dream but I know it's not. She's really gone and there was nothing I can do to stop her. I have to give her the space she needs. Hopefully she will use this time to right and work on herself and what she wants to do. She is smart so I do believe she will be responsible and take care of herself.

I park outside this pub in town and walk in. I sit down and order myself a glass of water. Yeah I know. Why am I ordering water and not alcohol. I am a fan of alcohol and I rarely drink even though I am not a health freak. The guy gives me my bottle and I drink and

think about the things I wanted to do for her. Show her the whole the way she has never seen it. Travel around the world going to her favourite places.

There's nothing I wouldn't have done for her but I can't force her to love me or look at me the way I look at her. I thought we loved each other but I was wrong. Our love was one sided. I was the only one who was in love.

" What happened? " Fuck. Karobo and Kane sit down next to me.

" You can't be here " I tell Bishop

" Then let's go somewhere so you can tell us what happened "

We get up and I leave money on the table and we walk out.

" Where are we going? " I ask them

" Lets go to the park so we can talk "

The park is a walking distance so we walk there and sit under the tree.

" Why did Amahle leave? "

" I don't want to talk about it " I tell kane.

" Too bad cause you know I'm not going to stop until you talk "

" Did she leave because of what we told you? " Bishop asks me.

" What did you tell him? "

" Jess told Jacob that she saw amahle flirting with some other guy that day she didn't sleep home "

" Why the hell would you tell him that mpendulo "

" He had to know if she really was doing or not "

" Man that...."

" Leave it Kane. It doesn't matter cause Amahle broke up with me."

" What? " ohk

" Why are you not shocked? " I ask them frowning

" I liked Hlehle honestly I thought she wil be what you need but deep seeing her with our cousins was lie seeing a different person. She was laughing, talking and not this timid girl we knew. I thought ok maybe she will be more like that around but every time you got near her she would withdraw. " Kane points out.

" what? I've never felt that "

" You love her brother. Some other things you are not going to notice or maybe you did but you took it for something else. Her being shy and all that. Why did you guys break up? " Bishop elaborates.

I tell them the whole story from us sitting on the bed and her walking out of my life. I drink the water from the bottle I brought.

" Wow I can't believe we didn't see that. She was learning to love you. Damn that must have hurt " Bishop states. I nod.

" I really thought you guys would make it and she will be our sister in-law even though she was way too young for you but since she feels that way about you then it is clear that she was with you out of fear and security too. She never loved you brother and I wish she could have told you allot sooner before you developed these feelings for her "

Kane questly says.

" I'm glad she told me. Just imagine one day we're married and have kids then we fight and she throws this bom on me that she resents me for what I did to her. That would have just killed me "

" I'm sorry you're experiencing your first heartbreak. Damn it suck! " Bishop grips my shoulder. " She is right about she hasn't lived her life and experienced it. When I asked

Jacob information about her and saw her pictures I did see she was young but I told myself that you can mould her to be the woman you want and a perfect submissive but I was wrong to think that. A part of me feels like I'm the one that led you to have thoughts about her when I suggested that why don't you ask her to be your submissive. If maybe I hadn't said that the maybe you wouldn't be feeling this way "

" I knew what I was getting myself into when I asked her. I knew I had to be patient and lenient with her cause she knows nothing about our world. She never showed me that she wasn't happy or angry with me. I wish she had shown and told me that earlier and maybe I could have fixed it. I wanted to show her the world. Treat her like my queen and my world. Worship the ground she walked on but...."

" It wasn't meant to be. She wasn't meant to be yours cause she doesn't love you kabela. If you ask someone if they love you and their answer is not quick. They hesitate first before they tell you?. That should have told you that she doesn't love you and the space she wants it's forever cause we all know she's not coming back." Kane states.

" We don't know that Kane. Maybe before the week ends she will come running and crawling back to him " Bishop snaps at him.

" Kane is right. She's not coming back to me. She's gone "

" Don't lose hope brother...."

" What does he say, your alter ego? " What?

" He's my alter ego? " I chuckle

" Yes he is. What does he say "

" We are one person Kane. Everything I feel he also feels. He tried to warn me but I shut him out. When Amahle walked out of the door I froze cause I didn't know what to do but then he took a deep breath out like he's been holding his breath."

" What?, What did that mean? "

" If we really wanted Amahle to stay and not go. We would have stopped her but we didn't. Instead we watched her go." They keep quiet.

" Well you needed and still need a woman who will handle you brother cause you can be too much " Kane says and laughs.

" You're making fun of me huh? " We laugh.

" That's more like it. You're smiling now. That sorry look on your face was depressing me but the honest truth bro. You need a woman. Not a young confused girl. You need someone who will handle all of you." Kane points out.

" Yeah not now. I need to mend my broken heart and just focus on the club. I thought I found the one but clearly she wasn't so I'm going to stay away from love for now. You two need to find women of your own."

" We'll I'm ready. I don't know about the Bishop here "

" Nope. Not happening "

" The day you fall karabo. You are going to fall quick and hard. I can't wait to see it "

" and that's my cue to leave. I have a sermon to prepare for. You too go and check on Sakhil'e wife. Let him know we have his wife."

" I will also call Cigar and find out where they are and what's the situation in Cape Town "

We get up and these fools hug me. Imagine seeing three big men like us in a group hug. I shake my head.

" Thank you guys for following me. I feel better now "

" Ncooooooh " Kane coos then runs away.

" You're a nut case you fool " I shout at him and he laughs running to the car.

" Are you sure you're okay? " we walk to the car.

" It's hard to accept but what else can I do. I'll be fine."

" I just hope when you finally find the one you're meant to be with. She won't try to come back and ask you to take her back cause that's not going to happen. I just hope she will shut her mouth and not talk about our business and what she saw in the house."

" Then she will be asking for trouble. She heard what happened to phakiso so she knows she has to keep her mouth shut or she will join him in hell." I'll even go and see her myself.

" I hope so. I hate liabilities KB."

" Don't worry about it. I have my eye on her. If she does something stupid I will know. Speaking of which I have to call Zanele to find me a place for amahle "

" You're still talking to her? "

" I've been ignoring her call since the last time I fucked her."

" Let me know how everything goes " We bro hug then he gets in Jacob's car and drives back home. We use the one they came with and drive to our old parents house. We park the car and walk inside. Jess is there and Sakhile's wife has a black eye on her face.

" What happened here? " I ask Jess

" She was trying to be smart and she got black eye."

" Don't piss her off. She's not nice when she's mad." I tell Sakhile's wife.

" Where are the children? "

" I put them to sleep "

" Jess? "

" Nothing harmful boss. Got it from our good doctor. It has no side effects or anything."

" Good "

I walk out of the house and call Zanele.

" I thought I would hear from you again " I keep quiet. " Good afternoon sir "

" Thought maybe you had lost your manners."

" I'm sorry sir. Do you need me? "

" I need you to find me three perfect apartments, fully furnished and around a safe neighborhood close to the mall. Then email me everything before 10 pm. Do you understand zanele? "

" I do sir. Our company has new apartments that were just build and are ready. I'll send you the email when I have chose the best three."

" Good. Thanks "

" Sir..."

" Yebo Zanele? "

" Do we still have an arrangement cause you haven't called me in months? "

" What were the rules Zanele? "

" You'll call me when you need me."

" Are you short on cash? "

" I am. My little sister is in University and it's costing me much."

" That job pays well zanele. What are you doing with your money? "

" I am building my family's house from scratch and it's too much. I...." Smart girl.

" I'll contact you. Send me the email before 10 pm." I hang up.

I decide to call mbuso and hear how everything is going.

" Mfo kaZulu "

" Qwabe mfowethu " He chuckles.

" That's my dad bro "

" and that's my grandfather " We both laugh. My phone pings a message.

" Good thing you've just called. My guys have just told me that Sakhile has landed in Cape Town."

" Finally. I knew he would go there which is why I was there last at midnight and took his wife and children "

" You're kidding. You were here and didn't tell me? "

" You're a family man bro and I don't want your wife to kill me cause I'm calling you at midnight."

" Yeah, where are they? "

" Here at my parent's old house. The children are sleeping, not harmed but the wife has a black eye from Jess. I'm going to call Sakhile right now " He chuckles.

" Dudu has always had a smart mouth but she's a good woman."

" I won't hurt or harm her I promise. We just want her husband "

" I know bro. Look I'll send my guys around the royal house to hear if they know dud and the kids are not home. I'll make sure they don't find out where they are until we get that son of a bitch "

" Thanks bro we appreciate that. Did you manage to get any information about his other wife and family? "

" Sorry bro I forgot to send them to you. I will send them now."

" Is everything okay? "

" Yeah

Advertisement

well not. My brother is dating my brother in-laws ex. Ayanda and everyone is fucked pissed at him especially the girl Ayanda."

" Damn. Did he know who she was? "

" No he didn't but the girl did cause she thought it was me but later learned it was my twin brother "

" What do you mean later? "

" My brother sort of like pretended he was me when he realised the girl knew me."

" That's fucked up. Why didn't he set her straight? "

" He said he wanted to know what's it like to be me."

" What? and what did you do? "

" bro I was pissed. I punched him and kicked him out of my house. I am so mad at him right now but then he told me he loves her and she loves him. I feel caught between him and my other brothers. I don't want Busani to feel like we are ganging up on him."

" Hmmmm. I get it."

" What does that mean? "

" Come with him on friday. I'm sure his girl is going to tag along. Don't forget Skhumbuzo."

" Skhumbuzo said he's coming too. so we will all drive together but Luh is not going to be in the same car as Ayanda. "

" Do you think it's wise to bring her with since we have enemies we don't know? "

" What enemies? "

" I'll explain to you when you get here."

" Ok. I'll talk to luh and hear what she has to say but she said she's coming to the funeral with me so we'll see."

" We'll figure out this thing between your brother and his girl don't stress "

" Bishop said the same thing when I called him about the whole situation and I'm glad I get to talk about it from people who are not involved in this situation."

" Anytime man "

" Did anyone see you when you got in and after you left Dudu's house? "

" No, we paid the guards and the camera's were shut down so we are good."

" Great then I'll see you on friday but let me know how things go with Sakhile. I'll send people there just to be sure that Sakhil'e won't try anything stupid."

" The more the merrier. Make sure your whole family is safe too."

" Later bro. I'll send you the other wife's info."

" Thanks bro "

We hang up and I read the message that came in and it's Cigar he wants me to call him. I do

" You better tell me you found Belinda "

" Boss you are not going to believe this "

" What? "

" We found Belinda hiding in your house " What the fuck! The nerve of this bitch!

" Is Amahle safe? "

" Amahle? "

" Oh thank God they are not yet there. Where is she now? "

" We took her and she's at my club locked in the cage. I'm looking at her right now. "

" Great job Cigar. I guess you get to live. Don't touch her or do anything to her. Don't give her food or water. She must be watched 24/7. No one talks to her. Is the cage small enough to not let her escape? "

" Oh it is small Master K. She can't move or do anything."

" Good. Did you make sure my house is clean?."

" Searched every inch boss. No one there or anything funny or spooky."

" I'll see you after the funeral."

" Boss? "

" Talk "

" She said something else too "

" I don't have all day Cigar talk "

" She said she has the diamonds. She found them " What?

" She found them? That bitch is lying "

" Boss she said they were in your house all along "

I am going to peel Belinda's skin. All of it while she's watching me.

" Did she show them to you? "

" No she didn't. She wanted us to take her somewhere in the house but I said no and knocked her out cause I knew it was one of her tricks to try and escape."

" Good. I'll see you after the funeral "

I sit down on the porch. Sakhile will be captured. Belinda is in a cage and now she's claiming the diamonds were in my house all along?. I hope she didn't plant them there so she can try and accuse amahle of having them all along. Belinda is one sneaky bitch and she will say and do anything to get out of the mess she put herself in. Amahle wouldn't lie about the diamonds. She would never lie to me like that.

I walk back to the house and go straight to the bedroom the children are sleeping. I take out my phone and record them for a few minutes then stop and walk back to the living room where Dudu is. I show her the video of the kids and she begins to cry.

" Ok Dudu I'm going to give you two options. You choose one and choose wisely or else. You will regret it.... "

" What must I choose? "

" Don't interrupt me when I'm talking." She looks down. " Look at me listen to me carefully. You have been married to Sakhile for years and you have beautiful children. I think it's fair to say you know him like the back of your hand right? "

" Yes I do "

" Good. Your husband was working with my cousin and they stole from us very sensitive information. They pissed off a lot of people. Rich and very dangerous people and those people killed my cousin and now they want your husband. For them to get to him they are going to come after you and your children and kill you. Them not us. We got to you first before they could come and kill you. Your husband is having an affair on you with a woman who was working for me. She ran away but we found her and she will answer for what she did. Not only did he cheat on you with her but he has another family living in Cape Town. His other wife and children two beautiful girls like your boys in there."

" What? No! Sakhile would never do this to me!. He would never. I don't believe you!"

" Oh but he did. How can he cheat on a beautiful woman like yourself? Man! " Kane says. He has been staring at her like she's candy

" Kane focus! Go get some air before I fork those eyes out of your socket " He looks at me then walks out.

"Thought you might say that " I go to my emails and open the mail from Mbuso download the attachment, view it then show her my phone.

Pictures of Sakhile getting married, Birth of his children and everything. Man Mbuso can dig up on someone. Dudu breaks down and cries. She cries until she stops. Jess gives her water, she thanks her and drinks.

" Your husband has a hand on Sbu's disappearance. He told me so himself. I told him to give me what I want but he refused and when I told him that I was going to come after his family in Cape Town he panicked and he's there now with them. I know he is from a royal family and they are polygamous and maybe you might not care about his other family I don't know but I think you didn't know he had this other life that he lives with his other family "

" I didn't know. Oh God I didn't. How could he do this to me. He swore and told me that he wasn't a polygamous man. I wouldn't have married him if I knew "

" and your kids are all almost the same age. The other woman could have been around the same time he met you or maybe after. We took you cause we want him. If he knows that we are holding you hostage and we're not he will come and try to find you. We could have left the kids but then we thought what if he doesn't care if you live or die so we thought it's best to take all of you."

" So what do you want me to do? "

" You also want answers right about why he lied to you? "

" I do."

" Good. Your cellphones are here but the location and everything else has been disabled. Tomorrow you will call him and tell him you ran away with the kids cause someone sent you a picture of him with another woman and children and their wedding

photo. When he asks you where you are don't tell him. Make him beg you until you decide to finally to tell him where you are. Tomorrow the children will be taken to your parents house and beg your parents to not tell Sakhile they have the kids okay? "

" Yes thank you."

" Then Jess and the others will drive you to bloem where you will let sakhile know once everything has been set up. Jacob here will guide you. If you tip sakhile or try anything stupid dududu they won't hesitate to kill you and your kids will grow up without a mother. I don't think you want that. Do you understand? "

" I do but how will I know my children will really be taken to my parents? "

" You will video call them and see them. I don't hurt children or women. Unless the person thinks they can play me and get away with it then you will die."

" I understand. "

" Good. Jess , Jacob lets talk." We go outside.

" Get a house in bloem, make sure security is tight but sakhile shouldn't suspect anything or see anyone. Jess tell the medication he gave you will erase the kids memories from yesterday and today? "

" Yes boss"

" Good. We need something strong too that will knock sakhile out until we fly back to joburg with him cause I want him in the same room with belinda "

" Cigar found her? "

" He did. She's in his club in a cage. Get someone to take the kids back to durban to dududu's parents so when they wake up tomorrow they are already there. Make sure they find the kids but they shouldn't see who left them there guys "

" Don't worry boss. We have everything under control "

" OK. let me know if you need anything. Mbuso is also going to send his men just for more security in case Sakhile tries something stupid."

" Thanks boss."

" Later then "

When I get in the car Kane is ignoring me.

" Stop lasting after another wife's man "

" She's hot "

" And you're annoying "

CHAPTER 27

[PREVIOUS](#) PAGE 30 [NEXT](#)

I've been in my room since we came back. I'm trying to figure out why would Belinda say that the diamonds have been in my house all long?. It is possible that Phakiso gave them to her and now she's trying to set Amahle up so I would think she had them all along. Amahle wouldn't have let me beat her up like that knowing very well she had the diamonds or did she cause if she did. She will really see who I am and she won't like it. She will be sorry. All of them will be sorry for thinking they could get away with it.

" I've been ignored for long now. Listen to me "

" I know what you want to say Shadow "

" But you don't want to believe it. You should cause it will save us alot of trouble "

" I don't sense any danger for now."

" You know we would know if there was danger heading this way. I want us to talk about how we're feeling "

" Are we women now since you want us to talk about our feelings? "

" She hurt and disappointed you. I knew this was going to happen and I expected it to happen allot sooner but I'm glad it happened now "

" What you mean? "

" You looked past some other things. Had you paid attention and listened to me. You would have seen them but you will find out soon."

" Why don't you just save me the trouble and just tell me or show me rather? "

" Now is not the time. We have to bury that cousin of yours then maybe we will go and see him but we can't for now cause we have to get permission to go to the dark world not that we need to cause we can still go but that would cause trouble for many people " why is he rambling?.

" Trouble for who? "

" Let's not talk about that right now. The girl " Here it goes. I knew it was coming.

" What girl? "

" The one that haunts your dreams. The one that we keep seeing her face over and over again. Those eyes "

" Shadow not now "

" She's our half. We both know that "

" Why did I have to meet her that way? "

" It wasn't the first time you met her. You have met before "

" I don't remember meeting her "

" I know you don't."

" Help me remember then cause right now you're frustrating me "

" You're not ready and we're still hurting. When the time is right we will find her and claim her."

" I told her she's never going to see me again and she believed me "

" Cause at that time that's what you thought and wanted to believe"

" and you would have let me forget about her? "

" When we left Durban we knew we left something very important and we haven't been the same since." That's true. Something in me shifted and she haunts me. Her eyes, her soft silky skin. Every time I close my eyes I see the look on her face when she wiped her tears before the elevator door closed. It haunts me.

" We did but I doubt by the time I'll be fine she won't be waiting for me and we don't know if she'll even accept me "

" Then we better not keep her waiting and she will. She will wait for us." Yeah right.

My shadow is right about one thing though. Had I listened to him I could have prevented many things from going wrong. Many situations wouldn't have happened and maybe I wouldn't have been in the situation I am in right now with Amahle and just everyone around me. I keep messing up and it's fucking with me. This is all my doing and it has to stop.

I check my emails on my laptop and see the three apartments Zanele sent me. I send Calvin the address for Amahle's new apartment and tell that they will meet Zanele there. It's a two bedroom apartment and it's in a safe area so she will love the place. I pay the apartment for the whole year. That way she can save some of her money and

not worry about the rent cause the money her brother left behind will sustain her until she gets a job as long as she won't blow it up and use it wisely but that is all up to her. Zanele asked for some help and I will help her cause she's a smart girl and is doing something for her family. It's not like she wants money to go to a vacation or something so I send her R30000. that should be enough and if she wants more she can always ask her boyfriend if she has one. She sends me a message and thanking me. She's really grateful and tells me the commission she will get from renting out the apartment will also help her. My phone rings and it's Calvin.

" Calvin? "

" We have arrived sir and everything in the house is okay "

" That's good. The guys will stay with you until you go to the apartment."

" Ok sir "

" Did she like the apartment? "

" She does sir."

" Did she say anything? "

" I'm sorry sir but she didn't " she could have at least thanked me.

" It's okay. Where is she? "

" She was on her phone the entire time. We hardly talked and she was anxious. I don't know what's wrong her cause after we looked at the apartment, her phone rang and she went to her bedroom "

" I don't know what's going on with her but be safe Calvin. If you feel like something is wrong leave the house."

" I will do that."

" Call me if anything happens or when you see something "

" I will sir. Can I still come back for the funeral? "

" No, you should start packing your clothes cause we have to move to Durban before the week ends."

" Should I find a moving company for you too sir? "

" No just find me two best penthouses and I'll choose one. I'll just take my clothes and leave my house the way it is for when I visit or have to be there."

" I'll do that. I'll start also packing your clothes."

" do that after you have me the penthouses and your apartment so you can find a moving company to move your furniture and stuff too "

" Ok sir. Have a good night "

" Good night Calvin " I hang up.

What is Amahle up to and why was she anxious?. What is really going on?. Had she had the diamonds all long and lied to my face? Cause if she did then she has a mean poker face. Have I let another devil in my house again? Wined and dined with it?. This will be the last time people fuck with me. They will know me by the time I deal with that traitor Belinda and Sakhile. I get in bed and sleep. I have no energy to go to the house and answer stupid questions about why Amahle left.

I struggled to sleep last. I kept tossing and turning and when I started to finally get some sleep it was 4:00 am and I had to wake up. The sun rose early in the morning and I went out for a run at 4:30 am. I'm running back to the yard and Karabo is waiting for me.

" You went to jog at 4:30 and you just got back now. Damn man "

" Sawubona nawe Mpendulo. Ukhala ngani ekuseni kangaka? "

" Sorry bro. Morning. Jacob called me and told me they are on their way to Bloemfontein. Sakhile's kids arrived safely at their grandparents house and Dudu talked to them. They found the house and all they have to do is prepare for when Sakhile gets there."

" We will fly him back to Joburg cause I need all of them in one room. We still don't know the people that were looking for Belinda and why. They all might be involved in wanting that list or it could be something else."

" That's worrisome cause we have no idea who those people are and why they wanted her "

" She could have promised them the list too. Maybe she was going to steal it from Sakhile and make money for herself " I think. Right now in my eyes Belinda is capable of anything.

" Yeah. It is possible "

" Cigar found Belinda hiding in my house. She then said to him the diamonds have been in the house all along "

" What? The nerve of that bitch. Where is she? " He is shocked.

" In the Cage at his club."

" So Phakiso could have given them to her and she hides them in the last place we could ever think to look at? "

" My thoughts too. He could have given them to her or Amahle could have had them all along. Or Belinda is trying to set her up " I tell him what I think

" Or maybe they were all working together and things do go according to plan cause her brother dies and she decides to hide them " he ponders. We walk in my bedroom.

" Why did our cousin insist though that Amahle knew about the diamonds and deny killing her brother? " I ask him.

" Do you remember Phakiso was about to tell us about 'her'. The person they were working with before the phone rang and it was Calvin before we ran out? "

" Yeah I remember "

" Phakiso never said it was Belinda. You asked him and he agreed then we ran out cause we thought she shot Amahle. What if it wasn't Belinda that heard Phakiso on the phone. What if Mduduzi and Phakiso were friends and they all decide to steal from us but one of them gets greedy. Why did our cousin keep denying that he killed mduduzi and insists that Amahle is lying and she knows about the diamonds? I mean how could her brother just vanish with our cousin watching him?. Amahle's best friend calls her a gold digger then later her so called best friend kidnaps her or rather leaves with her when she's shopping with Calvin just like that?. " Bishop's questions make sense.

" How the hell do we know that Belinda and Amahle are not working together?. When Amahle came downstairs she froze when she saw Phakiso. What if it wasn't because she was scared of him but scared of what he was going to tell us?. It was her, Belinda and Jane in the car excluding the driver when they went to Calvin's place. What if there was more going on in that car between them that we don't know about and the only person who could clarify all this is dead?. If they are all working together why did Belinda try to shoot Amahle? Did she feel betrayed by her?. How do I know that it's truth what she told me about the seer saying to her she's the only one who can calm me down when he takes over unless she stayed behind to listen to us cause she said the seer pulled her to

the side and told her about me? " I ask him too. How could she have known about HIM living in me?. Was she spying on us?

" Are we really that blind when it comes to women so much that we can't see what they really truly are? " He asks me

" We should be able to see it from the first go what they really are cause we've been birthed and nursed by a liar and a manipulator. I should be able to see them from afar but I fail dicimally. I bring them into our lives brother and look at what they did."

" I don't blame you though. You are the middle child and you always try to stay neutral and see the good in people. You believe that not every woman is like our mother. They are different..."

" But they are not different from her cause it seems that is the type that I go for. Liers and manipulators. It was Pamela and now it could be Amhle too "

" We don't know that for sure " he tries to down play it but I know what I know.

" I now get why you don't want to be in a relationship. I get why you don't want to be married and have a family. It's the fear of loving someone who will later turn to be exactly like our mother. Lie, scheme and cheat." and kill too.

" We'll get to the bottom of the truth from them. One way or another."

" Which is why all of them have to be in the same room. All the wolves that are hiding themselves in sheep's clothing will be shaved for all to see "

" What are you planning? "

" You will see "

" You want all of them to meet your other you? "

" Do you want to see him now? "

" Do I have to? "

" If you want or you can wait and see it with everyone else "

" I'm glad you have finally embraced him cause you now sound like a real Alpha

A Dominant male that you are. Your aura is very strong now. Dangerous and Lethal " He's not ready to see us then.

" When I finally reveal myself. Will you accept me for what I am? "

" All shades of you brother. I'll protect you from anyone or any harm." I chuckle.

" More like I will protect all of you."

" As your big brother. It's my job to protect you and Kane."

" And you have always done that. Now it's my turn to take care of you all then when we're old and gray, living together and wifeless it will be Kane's job." We laugh.

" Go shower then come so we can have breakfast before we go and get the cows."

" You've always been the best big brother. We're blessed to have you "

" Oh my God " He says shaking his head laughing. He leaves and closes the door behind him.

" He's worried about you " Shadow says.

" I'm also worried about him. He tries to hide it but he's lonely "

" He has met his soulmate and he knows but he's trying to fight it because he's worried if he follows his heart. what's going to happen to the legacy of the church "

" What?, We have cousins that will gladly take over from him. Our youngest cousin Dumisani is like Bishop. He also wants to lead the church when Bishop decides to retires ot he could let one of our Reverends run it. I doubt my grandfather would care "

" This church will only be led by your grandfather's bloodline and no one else. That is never going to change."

" Do we know what's going to happen in the future? "

" If we did we wouldn't be here but we can sense when things are going to happen." I nod.

We are in the dining table having breakfast and I can feel eyes on me. I know they know Amahle is gone and its only a matter...."

" Where's Amahle? " My aunt asks. Phakiso's mother. I knew she was going to ask me. Her thoughts were so loud.

" She left "

" why? " she asks.

" why what? " I ask her.

" Lulama just let it go. It's non of our business" My step mother tells her.

" I think we deserve an explanation since she was introduced to us as your girlfriend."

" Well if you must know. She broke up with me." She laughs at me.

" That is not funny Lulama. I don't understand why that would make you happy "

" It's ok Ma. I don't care "

" You should I mean, with all the money you have you couldn't even keep a simple girl like her? Damn life must suck for you. All of you boys it's like something is wrong with you well not Karabo " she laughs again

" Stop saying bad things about my children Lulama or we are seriously going to have a problem " My stepmother is getting upset.

" If there was something wrong with anybody it was that son of yours. That's why he got killed." Kane tells her and that shuts her up.

" How dare you talk about my son like that. He didn't deserve to die like that " she throws her napkin on the table.

" He got what he deserves cause he clearly had a big mouth like someone we know " Oh fuck!. Kane has a short fuse and he always tells it like it is. He don't sugarcoat shit.

" Kane! " We all reprimand him.

" What?! What?!. When she talks about us like that no one says anything but when I tell her truth you yell at me? Man Fuck this! " He says standing up.

" aunty there was no need for all of that." I tell her. " If our lives suck then that's on us and not you. You should be glad though that Amahle is gone cause you wanted your niece to find herself a rich man like me. isn't that why you sent her to my bedroom? "

" You sent your niece to seduce my son. How pathetic can you get! " My step mother and aunty have never gotten along. Everyone knows it.

" Why is it every time we are not here you are all fighting? " My grandfather says opening a chair for my grandmother who sits down. My grandfather and uncles also sits down. Where were they?.

" I'm tired of these kids disrespecting me! "

" There you go again with the lies. Don't you get tired of lying? "

" Kane. Please leave it " I push my plate away cause I have lost my appetite.

" What happened? " my grandfather asks.

" aunty says our lives suck cause we can't keep women even though we have so much money." Kane is mad. They look at me and I almost feel pity from them. I hate it.

" Lulama why are you always against these boys? " Uncle Langa asks her.

" Kane said my son deserved to die cause he had a big mouth like mine which got him killed! How dare he says that "

" But you do have a big mouth and you like causing trouble. We all know that. Kane don't disrespect your aunt like that. no matter what she says " Uncle Langa tells him.

" I can't promise that I won't. She also shouldn't be allowed to talk to us the way she pleases. We are not kids aunty. We are grown men. We respect you so please give us the same respect we give you "

" The only man here is Bishop. At least we know he won't fall into temptation cause we know he's going to die a celibate and all alone. What a shame.... "

" ENOUGH! " I shout and the whole house goes quiet.

All their eyes are on me. I can feel their blood moving in their bodies. I can feel their fears and their thoughts. I feel hot and I am breathing hard. I know my eyes have changed colour cause now I can see their blood moving, heart pumping and I can feel their consciousness.

Bishop stands up and walks towards me. I know he wants to touch me so he can calm me down but what I feel is how my aunts words hurt him about what she's saying to us. I get up and the only thing I feel in the room is fear. They are looking at me with fear excluding my brothers even though Kane looks freaked out. He takes a deep breath and walks up to me.

" Please calm down brother " Kane talks to me slowy like I can't hear him. Bishop lights a lighter and I focus on the light until I feel myself come down. I look at my aunt and she looks like she's going to pass out.

" Don't ever in your life talk to any of us like that. That was the last time you will ever disrespect our mother and us like that. Do you understand Lulama? " She nods.

" What the hell is wrong with your eyes and voice...."

" Oh he gets like that when he's really mad." Kane explains like it's nothing. " Which is why it takes alot to get him upset but you aunt, you do it effortlessly? " Kane shakes his head. I sit down and breath out loud.

" Something is wrong with him. He's got a demon living inside of him. An exorcism needs to be done for him! " I chuckle and shake my head. Oh finally. I was starting to believe she was not going to show up.

" My brother doesn't have a demon in him! " Bishop tell her. Although he doesn't believe it.

" Then why are his eyes and...."

" Hello family " Our birth mother walks in like she was attending a luncheon with her rich friends. " The tension in this house..." She says and continues to walk in going to her friend Lulama and hugs her then she turns and looks at us.

" Hello Nobuntu." I greet her smiling and her face gets pale when her eyes land on mine. Her hand bag falls down and her hand goes to her mouth shaking.

" No! No! No! It can't be! " She shrieks loud. Cries then she faints and falls down.

" She hasn't been here for even 5 minutes and she's already dramatic God! "

" Everyone..."

" No!. Not now. We have cows to go get so lets go." I cut off my grandfather off and walk out.

Nobuntu is finally here and she has some explaining to do after the funeral. It's time I got some answers. I hope she is ready.

CHAPTER 28

Advertisement

My brothers follow me as I walk out of the house. I am so fucken mad. I want to strangle my aunt. I hate that she looks down on us and one of these days I'm seriously going to lose it. She always has something negative to say and I've had enough of it. Her friend on the other hand fainted cause she couldn't believe what she was seeing. For her sake. I hope she will be truthful for once in her life.

" Kabelo! Kabelo! " My grandfather calls my name.

" Papa can we please just go and get the cows? "

" What's going on with you? "

" I don't know. You should ask Nobuntu why I am like this since she's the cause "

" What? What do you mean? " My dad asks as we get in the van.

" I can't talk about it now dad cause it's complicated. After the funeral she has to explain to me many things that also don't make sense to me "

" Kabelo stop bull shitting me. You and your brothers have obviously hidden this from us cause they were not surprised to see you like this. Why do your eyes turn black and voice sound like that! I want answers now damn it! "

" I have a soul of a man living inside of me since I was 12 years old dad. You want to know how I got? Well apparently I witnessed mom killing the man or whatever he is and he decided to attach his soul to me before mom and the people who wanted him dead could capture his soul. He is me and I am him. I have tried for years to ignore and lock up this part of myself but now I can't cause we are one. We have one soul and the other can't live without the other. When I get mad I get like this. Mom is the one who has to tell me who was that man and why did she kill him " Everyone in the car is shocked.

" Are you serious?! All of you decided not to tell us and you kept it from us? " My grandfather asks.

" They didn't know too until they saw how I would get when I was angry. I also didn't know that I witnessed a murder until he told me. He said mom gave me something to wipe my memory so I would forget. If she knew that I had his soul maybe she would have killed me too. Who knows " I tell him.

" No I don't believe that bullshit. Are you into satanism Kabelo? " My dad asks me?. Did he really just ask me that?

" Don't be stupid Martin " my grandfather shouts at him.

" Do I look like that person dad?. You wanted to know what's going on and I'm telling you and you don't believe me?. Instead you ask me if I'm into satanism?. Were you not there when the seer told me he I was the chosen one. He chose me for a reason? "

" No!. Your mother was involved in a lot of shit and I wouldn't be surprised if she was into satanism.... "

" Mom used to practise dark magic dad. I once told you this and you didn't believe me like how you're not believing Kabelo." Bishop reminds him. " Kabelo is not lying. Mom used to bring people over in the house and they would have these ceremonies that they would have. They would come in dressed in all black and walk to the basement. Mom would tell us to stay in our room and not come out."

" Karabo I don't remember you telling me this "

" Of course you wouldn't. You hardly have time for us cause you were also busy chasing skirts. Mom may have given him something to wipe his memory but Kabelo suddenly

changed and he would have nightmares and talk in his sleep about a man, mom and blood. I kept all of that to myself and when it was too much. I called koko and told her about the nightmares kabela was having. That's when she decided to take us and live with them. We prayed and fasted until kabela stopped having those nightmares."

" Why didn't you tell me though? I'm your father and something traumatic like this happens to my children I don't know about it? Karabo.."

" Dad don't. Had you been around more often and not chasing after women you would have seen that something is wrong with my brother. Only Papa realized it and he just thought maybe it's the fight between you and mom but you never asked if we were okay about everything that was going on and you wonder why we are much closer to your father than you " Karabo shakes his head then steps out of the car and goes to another one. My grandfather and brother follow him as he gets in the car with uncle Langa. They drive out and we follow them with me driving.

" I have apologized to all of you but your brother won't forgive me "

" That's what gets him upset with you dad. we tell you things and you don't believe us. You say you don't remember or don't know."

" But I..."

" It doesn't matter now. What's done is done " I tell him.

" How can we fix it. Get this thing's soul to leave your body "

" That's never going to happen dad "

" If it's dark magic then surely there's a way to get it out of you "

" Listen to me dad. That is never going to happen. I am not possessed, I'm not into satanism or any of that bullshit you think. The only thing I want is for Nobuntu to tell me who the hell was the person she killed "

" Why won't he tell you himself? "

" He wants mom to be the one who tells me."

" Kabela this is allot."

" I know and I understand why you're freaking out. It's scary and it will take some time to get used to my other side "

" So what does he do? Talk to you or he only shows up when you're angry "

" He's always here. What I feel he also feels. We are one " He takes a deep breath.

" What if he's a demon and he's living inside of you? "

" It is possible he might be but I don't think all demons are cruel and wicked."

" You don't know that "

" We have the power to do things. I can read your thoughts, feel your fears and subconsciousness. I have a speed unlike no other and I can do this too " I open my hand and a small fireball forms. My dad almost screams. I chuckle.

" Please don't do that "

" Sorry." We keep quiet. " Give karabo time dad. He looked up to you and you somehow disappointed him."

" I disappoinete all of you son and I'm sorry. I'll do better "

" You are trying dad and that's all we want."

" I'll help you with your mother. She must give you the answers you seek."

" Thanks dad "

2 HOURS LATER.

We have just arrived with the cows and they are taking them back to the Kraal. The cows are edgy and they want to run away. My grandfather went to the ancestry room and lit the sage and talked to them. I heard him calling our ancestors clan names and those of phakiso's real father then he came out and with sage and walked around the cows and they are now not on edge.

In two hours time they will go to fetch his body and we will begin to slaughter. I haven't been to the house since we came back but I know my mother is cooped inside the bedroom with phakiso's mother. My step mother though is in the kitchen with uncle langa's wife aunty veronica. Jacob called and told me that Sakhile brought the plan and he's flying up to Bloemfontein. I hope Dudu won't chicken out on last minutes. I also called Calvin and he told me they have just arrived at the flat and Amahle really loves it. He tells me she's better than how she was yesterday.

We are in the tent sitting and I can see mbuso's men are already here. He must be on his way then.

" How are you feeling? " Kane asks me.

" I'm okay but you're not " He sighs.

" I'm just worried about you and Bishop "

" Don't be. Bishop is meditating so he will be fine and well you know me. I'm sorry I lost my cool in there. I didn't mean to freak you out "

" You can't help yourself bro. I just wish he wouldn't scare me " I chuckle.

" You're the last person we want to hurt little brother. I'll kill anyone who tries to get you upset " I brush his head and he laughs. Cars pull over and I smile. I wasn't expecting them this early.

" Come " I tell Kane and he follows me. The door opens and he steps out.

" OPhakathwayo. Thanks for coming brother " We bro hug.

" Wanted to show our support bro." They hug with Kane.

He goes around to open the other door and his beautiful wife steps out. Looking like a real Makoti. Mbuso really found himself a gem here.

" MaNgcobo how are you " she smiles.

" I'm fine. I'm sorry for your loss "

" Thank you for coming. This is my younger brother Kane "

" I know him, I mean I've seen his pictures. Nice to meet you Kane " The fool grinning tries to hug mbuso's wife but I pull him away.

" Oh fuck I forgot. Nice to meet you Mrs Gumede."

" and this is my brother Busani and his girlfriend Ayanda "

" Nice to see you again " I say to Busani and we bro hug. " Nice to meet you Ayanda

" Kane greets them too. Bonga walks towards us and I laugh. Haven't seen him in years. We both laugh then bro hug tight.

" Damn it feels like decades since I last saw you " He says. " Man where have you been?"

" I've been living in Alaska man " We laugh.

" Then you should move back home "

" I am moving to durban so I'll be seeing all of you a lot more "

" Finally " Mbuso says and we laugh.

" Where are your manners Kabelo?. Let our guests come in " Koko says walking towards us.

" Guys. This is our beautiful, loving grandmother. We call her Koko " I introduce all of them to her then we walk in the house and introduce them to everyone excluding my birth mother and aunt.

My grandmother can't stop praising MaNgcobo on her beauty and her soul. I don't blame her cause she has this light, caring and loving thing about her. They make them food and they eat then we leave Ayanda and lungi with my grandmother who told us go outside.

" How are things going? " Mbuso asks as soon as we sit down.

" Sakhile is on his way to Bloem. When he gets there, they will knock him out then fly him back to Joburg and be taken where Belinda is." I tell them.

" I want to be there " He says.

" Where is Skhumbuzo? "

" He's going to arrive later " Bonga explains.

" where is your girlfriend? "

" She dumped him " Kane tells them.

" Shut up fool. She said she needs space from me. A break " They laugh.

" Oh she's not coming back " Bonga says

" Maybe this time away from you will make her realize she misses you and doesn't want you guys to be apart " mbuso says.

" If she loves you then she will be back " Busani says quietly

" When I asked her if she loves me she said she's learning to love me " They curse.

" She's definitely not coming back. I'm sorry bro " Bonga says.

" Even if she changed her minds and wants the two of you to continue where you left off. How the hell do you come back from and move on from ' I'm learning to love you? ' Cause that would absolutely kill me if Luh said that. "

" It killed me too yesterday. I didn't know what to do "

" Did you try to stop her and talk to her? "

" I asked her if she was sure and she said yes but I never stopped her when she left. I just watched her get in the car and drive off "

" Damn man. You're heart wasn't in it too " Mbuso says.

" Why do most people think that the first girl you introduce to your family or friends is the one? " Bonga asks.

" Because you saw something in her that made you realize she could be the one." I say. " The lady you came with Busani. Is she the one? " My question takes him by surprise cause he's surprised.

" I don't know. I'm not sure " He answers.

" What is it about her that's making you unsure? "

" Other than the fact that she didn't tell me she knew my family, My family doesn't like her and they think she has ulterior motives about being with me?. I can't help but see the envy she has towards my brothers wives. She hates them " He explains.

" and that doesn't sit well with you." He nods. " When you asked her why she didn't tell you she knew your family what did she say? " He looks at his brothers then at me.

" She thought that it was my brother and she was going to have an affair with him "

" What? She said that? " Mbuso asks him shocked.

" She did bro. I was so fucken pissed that she thought she can get between you and luh that's why I pretended to be you the first few times. I wanted to see where her head was and damn. That girl is crazy " He says shaking his head.

" But you still came here with her and kept her around. Why? " Mbuso asks him.

" I know I lied and I'm sorry but this girl clearly didn't learn her lesson last time and I am going to teach it to her. No one messes with our family and comes between us."

" You could have told us bro? " Bonga tells him.

" You were all mad at me. You didn't want to hear anything I wanted to say "

" And that made you feel alone. Like they were all ganging up on you. They make you feel like you have to constantly prove your loyalty to them even though you are brothers and will never betray them " I point out.

" My brother's can't even see that but you can " He shakes his head.

" Busani did like her when they met but when he told her he wasn't mbuso she changed. She knew that she has found a way to get back to luh's brother and father for making a fool out of her. She wants revenge and what better way to get it than pretend to love the man who looks like lungi's husband to piss all of them off " Her bipolar is something else.

" Wait KB. How do you know all of that? " Mbuso asks

" Lets say I can see somethings." They frown and I laugh. " I won't freak you out guys relax."

" I'm sorry you feel like you have to prove yourself to us and we didn't want to listen to you. You should never feel that way." Mbuso apologizes.

" I know I play a big part in that too and I'm sorry " Bonga apologizes too.

" No hard feelings and I understand why you all felt like you couldn't trust me." Busani tells them.

" So what are you going to do Ayanda? "

" I saw her putting something on her bag. I don't know what is it cause it was watery in a small bottle. I think it's poison or something " Busani says.

" I'll kill that bitch! " Mbuso whispers clenching his jaw.

" It is poison. She wants to poison you Busani so she can blame it on luh and say she was the one that gave you food that killed you " I tell them. They gasp in shock " where's the bottle? "

" Its in her handbag that insisted she leaves in the car. I was going to take it and pour it on her food or drink."

" You've never killed a person Busani. That shit will haunt you so we don't want to taint you like that. Bring the bottle here. I'll pour it myself " I tell them.

" You guys do realize that you're talking about killing someone like you're discussing the news on TV right? " Kane says.

" It's a norm for us. She wanted him to die so she should die instead. Her greediness and revenge is something else. She found a good man but she let envy and jealousy blind her to the love she was going to get." I uttered.

" She has always been trouble. She messed things for herself

Advertisement

by herself. I don't get why she would want people to pay for her own doings." Mbuso tells us.

Bishop walks in wearing his robes. He really looks a Bishop and he's holding a bible. He always demanded respect without saying a word. His aura is strong and you feel it.

" I guess you all aren't aware that the tent is full of women who have their eyes on you handsome men " we look around and indeed he is right. Many are from our church, our street and around.

The guys get up and they hug him exchanging greetings and then sit down laughing.

"What are we planning?" he asks and we laugh.

"How we are going to sing like nobody's business" loud laughter fills the tent.

"I don't want to be traumatized by your singing well except these two cause koko made sure we can sing" Bishop tells them and we laugh.

"Is it time to go?" I ask him

"Yeah, just waiting for the elders to come so we can leave" He says.

"We will go..." Mbuso doesn't finish talking cause his eyes go somewhere and we all look and realize that he's watching his wife walking towards us. His face changes and it goes soft like a man seeing his other half. His soulmate for the first time. His wife smiles then looks away blushing. So this is the look of love. Of a man head over heels in love. Like the sun rises and sets with her?. Damn. My heart aches as I see the two of them looking at each other like that.

We have stopped talking but you can hear whispers from other other women in the tent. Luh greets then and passes then walks towards us and automatically we all stand up like we rehearsed it.

"Uhm, Can I please steal my husband away for a few minutes"

"Of course love" Mbuso says and takes her hand and they walk out. All eyes on them. Ja neh!

"God why not me?" Kane says sighing and we burst out laughing. This fool.

The elders come out of the house. It's time to go fetch the body. We follow them and all get in the cars. The people from church also get in the their transport and leave.

An hour and a half later we are back and phakiso's body has been put outside the yard in a tent. It was me, uncle langa and my dad who washed his body. Bishop prayed for his soul to find peace and go where there is light. I almost felt bad that our cousin had to die by our hand but then he brought this on himself.

Uncle Langa slaughtere the cows and they did not cry or make any sound. I don't know what that means but I know it's not good. It's bad omen cause it can't that both cows don't make any sound being slaughtered. I'm kind of waiting for anything to happen cause I don't know what is going on. This has never happened and I can feel the nervousness from my grandfather. I walk up to him and grab his shoulder.

"Are you okay?"

"This is bad Kabelo. My ancestors are not happy with me."

"If they were'nt then the sage wouldn't have burned. Relax."

My uncle goes to the house and he is very furious. Bishop and I follow him cause we don't know what is going on in his mind. As soon as we step in the kitchen, we hear his voice shouting at his wife. We go to the room and our birth mother looks like she has aged in 10 years since we walked out of the house after she fainted. She has wiped all the make-up on her face and looks like a Makoti wearing our step mother's clothes.

What the hell?. Bishop and I look at each other. She looks at us then looks down sitting in a chair.

"Dan? Why are you shouting?. Keep your damn voice down" My grandfather asks him when he gets in.

"Luluma I asked you a question. Why didn't both cows make a sound when they were being slaughtered?"

"How the hell would I know? I wasn't there. Ask whoever slaughtered those cows and not me!" Her voice is trembling. She is scared.

"Ye wena! " He points at her. " This has never happened in our family. Ever!. It can only mean one thing only "

" and what is that? " She asks him. I wish she wouldn't have asked that question.

" Is phakiso my son? " My mom's head shoots up. Oh she also knew phakiso wasn't my uncles son?. No wonder they are best friends.

" Don't make me laugh wena. You come in here guns blazing questioning our whole entire marriage Dan!. How dare you even think that of me! " She wipes the non existing sweat on her forehead. My uncle walks up to her and wraps his fingers around her throat.

" You think I'm stupid Lulama?. You think all these years I haven't noticed how he never had the same birthmark we all have? "

" Get those hands off me Dan or I swear to God..."

" Swear to God that Phakiso is not his son? " My grandmother finishes for her when she slowly walks in.

" He's not my son?.....What? Mama? " My uncle asks in disbelief. Kane comes in running.

" Papa! Papa! The are people outside the gate who say they are here to fetch the body of their son. Phakiso." All eyes shift to Lulama.

My uncle looks at us then looks at her then he strangles her and she screams. We ran to him and pull him away from her.

" You bitch1 I'm going to kill you! I'm going to kill you! " We take him to the other room and uncle Langa comes in and asks us to leave. We go outside and see five men and three women. They have hearse with them cause it parked in the middle of the gate.

My grand father walks to them, stands and folds his hands.

" Who are you and what can we help you with? "

" We are the Mashaba Family. Our son had a son with your daughter in-law and we have come to claim his body and bury him with his rightful family " One man says.

" His rightful family. His mother married to this family, she got pregnant here and we raised this boy. He will be buried as a Ntanzi. Now go back to where you come from and leave us in peace "

" We paid the damages for this child. We did all that was asked and expected from us. All we ask is our grandson's body "

" You pain to whom? "

" Her family " The man says.

" This is her family and we never got any cow, goat and money for disrespecting my family. Lulama stepped of her marriage and got pregnant by another man while still married to my son. Not only did she humilliate my son but she also humiliated the whole family. This boy was born here and so he will be buried as one of us because traditionally he is our son no matter what the blood says. Until you come back and do what is proper to apologize for your sons sins. You are not welcomed here. Leave my premises."

The family seems to debate amongst themselves then they get in their cars and leave.

" Tomorrow I want that Lulama's family here. Everyone who was involved in that meeting I want them here. " My grandfather says walking in the house pissed.

I'm about to walk back in the house when I notice three people. And they are glowing. What the hell?. I walk to where they are standing but Bishop calls my name and my head turns. When I look back to where they were, they are gone. I run to where they were but they have disappeared.

" Shadow? "

CHAPTER 30

[PREVIOUS](#) PAGE 32 [NEXT](#)

Advertisement

#NotEdited

I've been awake the whole night. I couldn't sleep cause my mind was thinking about all of things. The decisions I've been making in my life that led me to be where I am today. Having Amhle in my life was a learning curve. She made me realize I'm too trusting when it comes to women and I won't make the same mistake again. I'm in the kitchen drinking tea and this house feels so empty without Jane, Belinda, Phakiso and Amahle too. I never realized how they made it feel like home. They all left their mark in this house but now it's time to move on. It's time I left the past where it is as soon as I'm done with Belinda and Sakhile. The door opens and my brother's walk in. We greet each other then they sit.

" I have never came in this house and found the kitchen island empty with no food." Kane says.

" I'm selling the house " I get up and take the cup to the sink.

" What the hell? " Kane says.

" What? " They look at each other.

" Did you like grow taller and pack more muscles over night? " Bishop asks me

" I was in the gym. I couldn't sleep "

" You were in the gym the whole night? " Kane asks

" I was. I needed to let some steam out " I tell them.

" Even if you were at the gym the whole night. No one can pack muscles like that over night and grow a little taller "

" Shadow and I are now one. Maybe I am taking some of his physical attributes "

" I like it. it suits you " Bishop says.

" Why are you selling the house? "

" A lot happened here and I want to be rid of everything that is going to remind of the people that lived here. All of them."

" You are going to buy another house here? "

" I don't see the need for now but maybe one day I'll think about it."

" I get you bro "

" So tell us. How did it go last night? "

" Amahle might be a problem for us in future."

" What do you mean? "

" She fucken hates me and she might talk in future if she gets desperate."

" Talk about what we do? " Kane asks

" Yeah."

" What did she say that made you think she might talk? " Bishop asks. I tell them everything that happened and they are speechless.

" I can't believe I liked her and thought she was a good girl. Damn! " Kane says.

" She's going to be a problem. She hid her true colours and pretended to be this person. She thought she could play along until she got something but then she couldn't do it anymore. It was getting hard for her to be someone else that's why she asked for a break cause she knew she wasn't going to come back to you." Bishop tells us.

" We have to keep an eye on her. If she says anything about us. She's dead." It's a promise.

" She could have just told you she hates your guts and will never be anything with you and we would have let her go back home cause there was nothing that was going to happen. She shouldn't have led you on and made you think there was more going on between you two " Kane says annoyed.

" I'm over it bro. She's nothing to me now. She's dead to me."

" Are you okay though? " Bishop asks.

" I am. Lets go and deal with Belinda and Sakhile. When are you moving? " I ask Kane.

" Next week. They are almost done with the club. You? "

" Tomorrow or the day after. The videos and pictures I've seen of the club are fucken amazing. I can't wait." I tell them

" We'll all fly to Durban and check the place before the grand opening." Bishop says excited.

" The only thing left is me finding my dream team. I want the best of the best. Professionals and I've been getting emails of CV's from our members in the club wanting to work in Durban."

" That's great cause they already know what happens and what is expected of them." Kane says.

" Yeah I forwarded them to Calvin and asked him to pick only the best who will come for interviews."

" Can I take him with me to Cape Town cause he's the best. " Kane asks.

" Hell no. You get your own Calvin." I tell him and we laugh.

" You do notice that he gets more and more like you? How he carries himself and his behavior. " We laugh.

" Cause I'm his role model. I hope one day if he's ever into BDSM or considers it. I know he'll make great a Dom but another part of me doesn't want him involved in this cause he's a good kid " They nod in agreement.

" What happened to mom? " Kane asks.

"She ran away and asked me not to find her cause she's protecting me and no one must know that me and my shadow are one. She will try to protect me the best way she knows how and asked me to be careful "

" What does that mean? " Kane asks

" She's fucking with him that's what it means. She knew what she did and didn't want to say anything cause she knows her lies and secrets are finally coming out. I hope you don't believe her." Kane says angrily.

" I don't and it doesn't help cause my shadow won't talk to me ever since I saw those people "

" What people? "

" I saw two men. The two of them were looking at me and they had this glow of light around them like they had this white light around them it was weird. I was about to go to them then Bishop called my name and I looked away for a second and when I turned my head to where they were standing. They were gone."

" Ok lets stop this cause you're freaking me out." Kane says. I chuckle.

" Maybe it's your shadows family or his people like tribe or something " Bishops wonders. I also wonder who they are and why were they there?.

" Lets go and hear what Sakhile and Belinda have to say "

We get in the car and drive straight to Hillbrow. Bishop hates this place with passion and he can't be seen here. We get in the elevator and down in goes underground. The police would be shocked if they ever had to find out that there's a place like this here and people do undespicable things but they would never cause some of them are on the payroll. Cigar meets us halfway and is shocked to see Bishop cause he has been here only once and they also don't get along because of me.

This place is huge cause we keep walking until he opens this door and we get in. Jacob, Jess and some of out guys seem relieved to see us. They must be tired. Belinda looks fucken dirty and Sakhil'e eyes get huge when he sees us. Good he's awake.

" Are you guys okay? " Bishop asks all of them.

" We are boss."

" Jess? You want to go home and get some rest? "

" Hell no. I want to be here." She tells us.

" If anyone doesn't want to see what is going to happen here I suggest you leave cause you might be scared. Not you Kane" He wanted to leave too.

" We will be outside the door sir " Three guys say and they leave closing the door.

" Cigar? "

" I want to see this bitch dying." He says. I nod.

" Take them out of the cage "

Four of Cigar's men go to the cages and unlock them. The roughly drag Belinda out and she falls screaming. I bet her body hurts like a bitch right now. Sakhile doesn't make a sound. He has this murderous look on his face and it makes me laugh.

" Who wants to talk first? " I ask then sitting down. I'm tired and I want this to be shit over and done with.

" Sir? There's a man who says he is Mbuso Gumede outside the building. He is with his brother." One of Cigar's man says.

" Let them in " Cigar says. He still remembers mbuso.

" Talk Kitten. We won't kill you " Bishop says walking towards her and she shifts until her back is against the wall. She is terrified.

" Don't you dare open that mouth of yours " Sakhile warns her

" Kahle ndoda. You are in no position to tell her what to say or not." Kane tells him.

" Phakiso and I we first started out as fuck buddies but then things got serious and I fell for him. He would ask me where I met you and I would always at a club but I never said what kind of a club. So....I...." She stutters.

" Talk Belinda we don't have all day."

" Kabelo sir I am innocent in all of this. I was just a pawn used by phakiso and Sakhile. Phakiso never told me he put listening devices in the house. I never saw him do it and I didn't know where they were until it was too late and when I confronted him about it he promised me money. What I know is Phakiso is the one that told Amahle's brother about the diamonds. He was supposed to bring them to him but mdu disappeared on him and did not bring them so he told me that he remembers one day Mdu forgot his phone and his sister called him asking where he was. He didn't know that he had a sister so his plan was to go to where they live and take the diamonds himself but then they

called you and told you the truck is missing and you sent Phakiso to find out what happened to it..."

The door opens and mbuso walks in with Bonga. Their eyes find Sakhile the moment they walk in and the he looks shocked. We greet each other then all eyes go on Belinda. " Then one day you walked in with a girl phakiso showed me a picture of which was mdu's little sister sir. I was shocked cause I didn't understand why phakiso would bring her here then you left sir. I asked him what he was doing and he told me that mdu was in the house but he doesn't know what happened to him cause he just vanished and he doesn't know if he took the diamonds with or left them. He went back to their house and searched again but he didn't find them when they were about to leave Amahle's friend came over and told them she was there earlier looking for Mdu. Then one day mdu calls him out of the blue and tells him he knows that you have his sister and he wants them to meet. When he got there apparently Mdu told him that he left the diamonds with Amahle. She knows where they are and he must ask her to give phakiso the diamonds in exchange for her life." What?

" Then what happened? " Bishop asks her.

" We didn't ask her instead we went through her clothes that they had brought and we found nothing. I kept asking Amahle when we were alone to tell me where she hid them but she said she knows nothing about them and I believed her and told phakiso. He told her brother that she's denying knowing anything about them and her brother was upset. He was suppose to come to your house with phakiso and Amahle's friend cause Amahle trusted her and they would take her away but then Sakhile called Mdu and asked for them to meet cause he had something important to discuss with him...." She continues.

" Bitch don't you dare! " Sakhile screams but mbuso goes to him and punches him hard and it's lights out.

" Phakiso called me and asked me where Amahle was and I called Jane who told me Amhle went to the mall with Calvin and they went there then Phakiso calls me panicking and tells me that Mdu is dead. Sakhile killed him after he hacked the system and found the list. Phakiso didn't care about the list cause all he wanted was the diamonds cause he told me he asked Amahle's friend if she knows anything about them and she said no but that day Amahle left with them to the mall when he was pouring petrol in the car. Amahle and and her friend were arguing but stopped when he got in the car. That is my honest truth." So phakiso was right.

He didn't kill Mdu and kidnap Amahle. Why were they arguing with her friend?. Is she the one that found the diamonds and kept them for her friend when her brother died?. Is that why she is back in her life again?.

" why did shoot her? "

" We were arguing in the car and I told her I was going to tell you that she has been having calls in the house with her friend and everything phakiso told me about her so called kidnap, her brother and her knowing where the diamonds are. Jane asked us to stop so when we got to Calvin's place. She went to the bathroom and was on her phone talking to that friend of hers saying I was into them and she's scared. She told her she's going to pin the whole thing on me that I was the one behind everything when I wasn't. I went downstairs and asked Calvin when were you moving to Durban and why I didn't know and Calvin accused me of having a thing for you I didn't sir. He was on his laptop looking at houses and wasn't aware what was really going on. I was worried about

Phakiso cause I liked him and I thought with the money they will give me I can have a fresh start somewhere but I knew I couldn't do that cause Amahle was going to tell all these lies about me. I panicked and took out my gun out so we can come to your house and I'll force a confession out of her but she ran to her hand bag and I thought she was going to shoot me too..." This is unbelievable.

" Calvin tried to run to me but I shot him on the leg. I knew I messed up when I did and I knew you we're going to take my word over Amahle's when I told you what's going on so I pointed the gun at her and tried to shoot her cause I knew what a snake she was and going to ruin your life and I didn't want that. She grabbed Jane and the shots went to her, She took a knife and wanted to stab me in the heart but I blocked it and it went into my arm. I couldn't believe I shot my best friend so I ran away and went to Sakhile's hotel room. Told him what happened and he freaked. We drove to Limpopo, stayed there until he left me "

" why did you lie and say the diamonds have been in my house all along? "

" I had to save myself. I know how you can be. All of you. You never forgive someone once they betray you and I knew I was going to die. Sir Amahle is not the person you think she is. She is sneaky and dangerous. "

" I know what she is and I also know that you're the one who told phakiso about the very rich and famous who frequent our club. It was you who gave phakiso the idea that if you can get the list from my computer and he finds someone who can buy that list for million of rands so you can blackmail people, you'll be very rich but my cousin wanted the list for himself too cause he was greedy. You are right about Amahle lying to me. She has been planning her revenge against me for beating her up and getting her brother killed. She doesn't know anything about the diamonds cause that friend of hers could have found them where she knew Amahle hides her private things. She is her best friend after all."

" Sir I'm so sorry. I didn't mean to betray all of you after what you have done to me. "

" What do you want us to do to her? " I ask Bishop and Kane.

" She has to die " Bishop says. I look at Kane.

" I want her dead. including those other two bitches " Kane says and pulls out his gun and points it on Belinda direction.

" Sir I'm sorry. I am so sorry. I promise I will never do it again "

" And that's your favourite song Belinda. You always apologize and we forgive you " Bishop tells her and she cries.

" Sir I know all of you have never been cruel to me. I know I messed up but please give me one more chance to show how sorry I am "

" We could never trust you after what you have done Belinda." I get up and take a step forward then stop. I put my hands on my chinos and look at her. I know I wanted her death to be slow and very painful but I am tired of all this bullshit. I want to watch her screaming while she burns and turns into ashes.

" Please don't kill me sir! Please don't."

" She has to die. Everyone who betrayed us must die " Shadow says.

" Oh how nice of you to come back from wherever you were and join me "

" I was here. I never left us "

" Then why were you ignoring me? "

" I had to let you experience the pain cause you have never felt it. You had to know what it's like and be able to handle it in future " Shadow says and I keep quiet.

" Kabelo! Kabelo! " Bishop shouts my name

" What?! " I turn around asking him and they all step away from me.

I frown then I realize I am on fire. My whole body is literally on fire but I'm not burning.

" Oh My God you're on fire! " Cigar screams

" Oh fuck man! Fuck! " Kane says terrified.

" Kane shut the fuck up." I tell him. I look at all of them and they are fucken shocked and scared like shit I can feel their fear. " I asked if all you wanted to leave but you said no. So let me tell all of this. What happens in here will stay here. No one here will ever tell anyone what happened or else. You will join Belinda where she's going." They nod.

" We will make them forget what we are going to do " Shadow says.

I turn and face Belinda.

" You could have told me what Phakiso was doing but you chose to side with him over me. Us. The people who saved you and put a roof over your head. All we ever asked from you was to be trustworthy and loyal to us and you didn't. It's time you died bitch " Belinda crawls to where Sakhile is screaming at the corner and he tries to get her away from him but she clings to him and both of them are crying and screaming. I fucken laugh cause it reminds me how I was crying last night. My heart broken by a fucken little girl. Damn I was played and I was so stupid. Never again though.

" Get up " My voice comes out hard

Advertisement

cold with no emotion. Both of them get lifted up from the floor and they flow in the air. Belinda screams so hard she actually pisses herself. Her fear is so strong. I can see and feel her heart beating so fast like it's going to burst at any moment.

I pull my hand out of my pocket. Lift it up then push my arm forward towards Sakhile and the force pushes him to the wall, he hits it hard and falls to the ground screaming. I take steps and walk to Belinda still suspended in the air. Her face is just inches above mine. Perfect. I want her to see what I am going to do to her.

" Fire out " I say. The fire goes out like it was never in me.

My hands touch her skin burning her. If I wasn't a fucken bastard the look of terror on her face would haunted me for life but it wont. Her screams fill the room as she burns. I sink my fingers into her chest forcing them deep into her body, past her ribcage. My hands feel the warm blood pumping inside then I feel her heart. Grab it then look into her eyes as I close my hand around it and fist it hard. She can't do anything but scream even her voice has left her body. I fist it tighter and watch the light in her eyes dim further and further then I rip it out of her body and blood splashes across my face and all over my body and somewhere around the room.

I hear lots of them vomiting and cursing. Belinda's body drops dead down then fire forms around her and it burns.

" May your soul go where it is suppose to go. Whether it's where the light leads you or where darkness calls you. Leave this place, never come back or haunt anyone that was here who witnessed your death. Circle of life, circle of fire take her body away." I say that then a circle of fire forms around her then it disappears with her body.

I turn around and look at them and It's like they are all seeing me for the first time. Well they are.

" Someone slap me hard so I can wake up from this nightmare I am having. This is not fucken real." Bonga slaps Kane and I laugh. " Damn that hurt. So I am...We are not dreaming " He shakes his head.

" What the hell just happened? KB..... What the Hell are you? " Mbuso asks me.

" I am me."

" I have done and seen many things in my life but this is a first and it's scary. " He says shaking his head.

I look at Sakhile and he is shaking like a child hiding in a corner.

" What do you have to say for yourself Sakhile or you want to Belinda and go where she went? " He shakes his head no.

" Tell your cousin's best friend what happened to him "

" Can you tell if he's lying? " Mbuso asks me.

" I will know."

" Tell us about the list first. Where is it and have you told anyone else about it? " Mbuso asks him.

" The...I have the list. It's in in my safe at home. I have no copies of it and I haven't sold it to anyone cause it's been hard getting in touch with those people." he says. He's telling the truth.

" What were you hoping to achieve when you stole the list. Blackmail everyone there including me and force your cousin to give up what is rightfully his? His birth right? "

" I don't want to be king anymore and yes I was going to blackmail all of you or I go public with it when that didn't work. I...I don't want to die. Please don't kill me." Mbuso looks at me and I nod.

What he saw shook him to his core. He will never talk and by the time the royal house is done with him. He will have no one and nowhere to go. He won't live long.

" What did you do sbu?. Who were the people that were involved in his disappearance? "

"

" It was all me. It was....It was me and my men. He told me that tomorrow he had a meeting at Newcastle with some orphanage that is supposed to close down cause you once found out that they were selling kids to someone and you found those kids somewhere in the Port Elizabeth but first he had to attend some business meeting. I told him I will go with him but I knew if I did something the trakor he has would find him so when he got in the car my guys have this thing off blocking any tracking chips implanted in a human body."

" That's why the signal disappeared the moment you got on the N3. What happened then? " Mbuso asks him.

" I attended the meeting with him and it ended very late at night. There was food and drinks there so we had a few drinks then when he was drunk we drove him somewhere in town and I shot him."

" You mother fucker! " Mbuso rushes to Sakhile and beats the hell out of him. Kane and Bonga rush to him and stop him before he kills the man.

" Is he dead? What did you do to his body?! Tell me you son of a bitch! "

" We left him there cause the doors started making noise but we came back after 30 minutes or more and when we got there he was gone. I went again the next days when there was nothing about his body found. I asked around and no one saw anything. I don't know what happened to him."

" You better pray that I find him alive or so help me God I am going to kill you myself the KB will do worse than what he did to that girl." Mbuso is really upset and he is thinking of many things.

I understand how he feels cause they really are brothers. Blood or not and they would die for each other.

" What do we do with him? " Bonga asks.

" We are taking him with us and we are going to lock him up until we find sbu. We are not going to kill you. I want sbu to kill you himself like you tried to kill him. You give us the names of all those who were part of this and the code to your safe. I know you know me Sakhile and I make good on my promise and I never hesitate to kill. Anyone who threatens all the people I love is an enemy to me and I kill my enemies. I don't want to live my life looking over my shoulder worried if someone is going to spill secretes about me. So I promise you this. If Sbu is dead, if we don't find that list and find out you told someone else about it. I will bring your wives and four children. I will fucken kill them in front of you before I kill you myself and ask KB to go find you in hell and kill you again. I won't blink and I won't feel any pain. Do you understand me? " I believe him. A man who killed the woman who thought was his mother is capable of anything.

" I'll give you everything you want but please don't hurt my family. They don't know anything about all of this."

" Cuff him then take him to the car. My guys are waiting for him. Cuff him Cigar."

" Yes sir."

" Wait " I say. They look at me.

" Memories come, memories fade. Let what happened here be a distant memory. You will all not remember how you saw me or the way Belinda died. You will only remember that I shot her then burned her body." I say all of this looking straight in their eyes. Then I close my eyes and open the.

" I said take cuff him and take him to the car! " Mbuso says.

They cuff Sakhile and walk out with them. It's only me, my brother's, Jess and Jacob then Mbuso and Bonga.

" I guess we are done here " I tell them.

" Put that girl on a leash or else she's going to be a problem for all of you guys " Mbuso says.

" I'm watching her." He nods.

" Let's go guys. I am hungry " We laugh and walk out.

" I feel weird you know. Like something happened but I can't remember what it is " Bishop says and they agree.

" I also feel the same way." I lie.

" It's a shame Belinda betrayed us." Kane says.

She got wanted she deserved and someone else will too.

CHAPTER 29

[PREVIOUS](#) PAGE 33 [NEXT](#)

Advertisement

The day finally arrived and we buried our cousin phakiso. It was emotional to those who didn't know what a snake he really was. His mother could stop crying and who else other than my mother to comfort her and be her shoulder to cry on. Lulama and my uncle haven't been talking. The murderous look my uncle was giving her could be seen by anyone. I still can't believe Phakiso's paternal family knew about him all along but they never said anything. What was the purpose of them coming here and disrespecting our family?. I was glad though that there was no more fights and he actually got a beautiful send off.

My shadow has been silent since we saw those people. I called him but it's like he's shutting me out. I don't know what is going cause I know he can hear me. Why doesn't he want to tell me who those people are?. I thought they might show up again but they didn't and I wonder when am I going to see them again. Right now people are eating but I can't eat cause I have to talk to my mother before she runs away. I have to drive to Joburg after today cause Sakhile came and they captured him.

Jacob sent me his picture in the same room as Belinda knocked out. Jacob said Belinda begged him to take her out of the cage cause she was in pain and needed to use the bathroom but they didn't let her out. She's been using a bucket the whole time. I could see how dirty she was. I can't wait to see how sakhile is going to react when he wakes up. His wife did good and she was flown back to Durban with Jess who told me Dudu said she won't say anything to her in-laws about Sakhile and what he's been up to. When they finally know the truth she will act surprised like everyone else.

The future kings brother is here. Skhumbuzo and he came with one of his wives. When Mbuso introduced us and I read his thoughts, I found out that he has no hand in his brother's disappearance and he's worried. He also doesn't want to be the king which is why he refused when his father told him. He wants to live his life the normal way with his family. He will only be his brother's advisor. I told the guys that he is innocent and Mbuso was relieved. I understand why cause he has a relationship with him too even though they are not that close.

I walk in the house looking for my mother cause she's outside. I think she might be in a meeting with Lulama's family. I lightly knock then open the door and they stop talking.

" I'm sorry to disturb you but has anyone seen Nobuntu? " My eyes are on Lulama. She looks down.

" Is she not outside? " My dad asks

" No she's not. I thought she might here "

" Lulama. Where is Nobuntu? "

" Why do you like calling your sister in-laws by name? " An old man asks. I guess he must be Lulama's uncle or something.

" Because they are not our sister in-laws " Uncle langa answers him. " Where is Nobuntu Lulama "

" She left. She didn't go to the cemetery with us. She got in another car and left hers behind so you won't realize she ran away " Lulama tells me.

" Where did she go to? " I ask her.

" I don't know. She didn't tell me. She just said she has to go and meet some people before things get out of hand " I sigh. I close the door and walk straight to my room. I sit on the bed and try to calm myself down but I am so fucken mad. I'm going to kill that bitch. I take out my phone and call her. Her phone rings and I'm about to hang up when she picks up and keeps quiet.

" You ran like a fucken coward instead of giving me answers "

" I...I didn't ran away kab..."

" then where the fuck are you at Nobuntu? If you didn't run away then come back here now! "

" I had to leave...you don't understand "

" I understand very well. I need answers and you're the only one who can give them to me "

" It was a mistake kabelo I swear I didn't mean to kill him..."

" But you did kill him mother and he's been living inside of me this whole entire time. Did you know that? "

" I didn't know his soul went into your body. You were never suppose to see all of that. I made sure you never remember..."

" Where are you? " I sense her nervousness and fear. Is it me or something else?.

" I...I can't tell you and please don't come looking for me. It's dangerous for you my son please believe me. No one must know you and The Guardian are one. I will try to protect you the best way I can but please be careful. I know both of you can find me but don't come looking for me kabelo. I know I have always disappointed all of you children but for once my son please believe me. I beg you. Be careful " She says and hangs up.

" Shadow? " He's quiet. He can hear me but I don't know why he won't talk. " You're seriously pissing me off right now. " I want answers and the both of you won't tell me. What the hell is going on?! "

My door opens. Mbuso and Bishop walk in.

" Were you just talking to yourself? " Mbuso asks me.

" I was talking to my mother on the phone. She's gone " I tell them.

" I'm not surprised " Bishop says.

" I can track her down if you want? " Mbuso suggests.

" Thanks brother but that won't be necessary. What's up cause I'm going back to Joburg " They sit on the couch.

" I'm going back to Durban with Luh then I'll fly back tomorrow morning "

" What changed? "

" She knows were up to something and she's not happy about it. I promised her I won't ever kill anyone else unless I have to but she thinks we are all going on a killing spree and I don't want her to be worried."

" I understand bro. We'll record the whole entire thing so you can see but Sakhile won't die until we find sbu so he can tell us what really happened to him."

" Then tomorrow it is. We have to know where he hid the list and who else knows about it. Did you give Ayanda the poison? "

" I did in the morning when she was busy talking non stop with my aunt Lulama. I poured it in her tea and watched her drink all of it. Tomorrow morning she will be dead so you guys have to leave now and make sure Busani is nowhere near her."

" I will bro."

We leave the room and walk him to their car. We hug with the guys and luh comes out with my grandmother who's making her laugh. They stand next to us and Ayanda passes us and gets in the car.

" Promise me you will come with all the children and visit us cause it's just me and Papa. This house could really use the shouting and laughter of kids " Koko says looking at us.

" I promise we will koko. Thank you for the advise, welcoming us into your lovely home and these amazing cakes. The boys are going to love them." She and koko hug.

" The pleasure was ours baby. Call me when you get home."

" I will koko." They hug again. " It was great meeting your family. I hope we will invite all of you soon to meet our family " She says to us and we politely nod. She walks to the car too.

" You are an amazing husband my child. Continue what you're doing and take care of her and your family " Koko says to Mbuso.

" I will koko " Mbuso kisses my grand mother's cheek and hugs her. " I'll see you guys."

" Thank you for coming bro " Bishop says and he nods.

He walks to the car, they hoot and drive off.

" I did ask MaNgcobo if she has sisters for you three but unfortunately she doesn't and the one's she has they are all married." She sighs.

" Koko you didn't! " I say.

" I know one day I'm going to meet my future granddaughters in-law and you are all going to be great fathers and amazing husbands. I just hope all of that doesn't happen when I'm dead." she says sadly.

" That won't happen. We promise you " Kane tells her.

" I'll be 73 in four months and I don't want to play with my great grandchildren when I'm 80 but no pressure." She says looking at us.

" I'm going to Joburg Koko. There's something I have to do " I change the subject. She sighs.

" You have to be cleansed before you leave."

" We love you and we will give you many great grandchildren at the same time, you won't know what hit you. You'll even complain " Kane says and we all laugh.

" I love you boys." She says then kisses our cheeks. We pull her into a group hug. We love this woman.

FOUR HOURS LATER.

I've been sitting in the car for almost thirty minutes now looking at Amahle's apartment complex. I don't know how she's going to feel when she sees it's me on the other side of her door. I had to bribe the security guys cause I am not in the list of people who are going to come in her apartment. I step out and take the paper bag I brought with me and walk inside. I get in the elevator and press the 3rd floor.

The doors open, I step out and walk to her door and buzz it. I wait for a while the buzz it three more times when the door finally opens. She looks shocked to see me but quickly masks it. She has a bottle of Savanna in her hand. Great she's drinking.

" What are you doing here? " She asks me with an annoyed tone. Why did I ever think this girl loves me again?.

" Amahle. how are you? "

" Good. What can I do for you? "

" You lost your manners I see. Are you not going to invite me in? " She looks nervous then steps aside and I walk in. I did choose a great place for her.

I walk in and realize that she has company in her house and they are having drinks. It's two guys and three girls and one of those people is that friend of hers that called her a gold digger. Ok.

" Good evening " I greet them. They greet back but some ignore me. I wonder what she told them about me but I don't give a fuck.

" Hi

Advertisement

you remember me right? " Her friend asks me.

" Lets go talk in private " I lead the way and she follows me to her bedroom. She closes the door behind her.

" I don't like your tone Kabelo. You can't come here and tell me what to do! "

" Who are you talking to like that? " I put the paper bag on the bed.

" You "

" Then why are you shouting?. Am I not standing here in front of you? " She keeps quiet.

" Who are those people? "

" My friends from back home. Why? "

" You're still friends with the girl that called you gold digger?"

" She apologized and I forgave her."

" Are you a gold digger Amahle? "

" If you don't tell me why you came here to my place unannounced I suggest you leave "

" A greatfull person would have thanked me for finding her place to stay and paying her rent for a year instead of sending her back home where I found her "

" she scoffs

" Where you kidnapped me you mean "

" Yeah I did and I apologized and you forgave me like you forgave your friend. I came to give you this "

" What is it? "

" We had unprotected sex two times and I know you're taking a shot but I have to be sure that you're not pregnant so I came with a pregnancy tests and I want you to take it." I pull them out of the bag and she laughs.

" I'm not pregnant "

" Then taking this won't be a problem then "

" I took a test yesterday before I drank and it came out negative."

" I want you to take this one I brought so I can be sure "

" Fine. I don't know why you would think I am pregnant when I don't want to have your child cause I want nothing to do with you or anything that would connect me to the people that took away the only family I had in this world!. I would have aborted that damn child anyway!." She snatches the pregnancy tests in my hands and walks to the bathroom. she doesn't close the door.

I sit on the bed and cover my face with my hands. Her words cut me soo deep. I take a deep breath. Never in my life have I ever felt this kind of pain. The toilet flushes then after a while she comes out and throws them on the bed next to me.

" If you are pregnant right now. Would you want to abort my child? "

" It's my body and my decision and yes I would but like I told you I am not " I watch her and it's like I'm seeing someone I have never met. It's like I was never been inside her and held her in my arms. " Check them. They are ready " I take the tests and indeed they are negative. Apart of me is disappointed and a huge part is relieved cause I would had a very bitter baby mama.

" Inside this bag there is a concoction of mixes herbs. You have to drink them everyday in the morning until you finish them."

" I'm not drinking that! "

" Amahle listen to me. We were intimate during the mourning period so this is to help you cleanse all of that dark cloud cause we were not suppose to do that. The other powdery one you will pour it in the bathtub when you bath the whole week. Do you understand? "

" Yeah I'll drink them. Is that all? "

" Belinda has been found and she says the diamonds have always been in my house. You've had them all along. Is she telling the truth? "

" You are going to believe that bitch that almost killed me over me?!. Why the hell would I let you beat me up and kidnap me when I had the diamonds all along? Are you crazy?! "

" So you don't have them? "

" I don't fucken have those bloody diamonds! Gosh! "

I get up from the bed and walk slowly towards her. She takes a step back until her back hits the door.

" If I ever found out that you have been lying all along and taken me for a fool?. I will not kill you. I will take you and lock you in my cage and treat you worse than an animal. I'll turn you into my fucken slave and let anyone have you and use you as they want. You would beg me to kill you everyday. You would try to kill yourself every time you imagine what's about to happen to you. For your sake little one. I hope she is trying to set you up cause you will be in for a rude awakening." She freezes and her eyes get filled with fear.

" I swear on my family's graves Kabelo. I don't have the diamonds. Belinda is trying to se me up." I look at her eyes and indeed she doesn't know where the diamonds are.

" If I found out you knew something and hid it from me. I will do the same thing. You will be sorry "

" I am already sorry for my brother to bring you into my life cause that was the beginning of my nightmare. I curse the day he worked for your company and brought you into my life " Wow and I wanted to marry this girl and give her the world?. I chuckle.

" But yet here you are living in a place I found for you and enjoying my money "

" I didn't ask you. I was happy to go back home but you found me a place to stay cause you want to keep your eye on me. Isn't that right? "

" Where has this cold bitch hiding all this time? " she smirks.

" I was here all along. You chose to be blind to it cause you lasted after me and my body. So I gave you the meek, sweet Amahle you wanted and you fell for it. The caring for you and loving you was all fake. I was pretending and enjoying every moment you fell for it. Pathetic." She chuckles.

" Careful little one. Choose your words carefully when you talk to me cause it would be a shame for me to just snap this neck in two while your friends are listening to us on the other side."

" They will know it was you who killed me. I'm not pregnant, I definitely don't have your diamonds and I want nothing to do with you so stay the hell away from me!."

" I'm happy you broke up with me sooner cause I would have been stuck with a person like you who was hiding and pretending. Thank you for making me see what kind of person you really are "

" Hiding? Pretending? Are you sure you're not talking about your brother who is a fake Bishop and hiding behind the bible and the word of...." I grab her neck and wrap my fingers around her throat tight.

" Never! Ever! Talk about my brother like that. If you open this mouth of yours and tell even a fly or these walls about me, my brother and my family. I promise you I'll be your worst nightmare. I'll haunt you when you're sleeping and when you're awake."

" You're hurting me Kabelo...You're..." My hands get hot like fire is about come out. I let go of her and step away. She looks at me scared like she wants to run away but she is scared to move. I take deep breaths until I come down. She gasps for air and coughs.

" Tell me something Amahle and you better not lie. When you said the seer told you that you were the only one...."

" I lied Okay. I lied. I was in the bathroom and he was busy cleansing the house with that smelly stuff and was talking to himself saying ' She is the only one who calm the both of you down when he takes over and loses control. You are the chosen one and what what. She will embrace you and wont be scared of you cause she knows you won't hurt her intentionally ' I didn't know what he meant so I thought maybe he's talking about me cause I was your girlfriend. I'm sorry I lied." Damn this bitch. That's why I felt like she was hiding something and they was she hesitated when I asked her what else he said.

" You know Amahle you're lucky that I still care for you cause I know you have no one and if it wasn't that. You would be on your way to my cage now or dead. But..."

" Kabelo I know I lied but I wanted to get back to you by hurting you. I knew that..."

" How did you know it was me he was talking about? "

" He said your name many times as he was cleansing and saying all of that " She gets up coughing.

" Damn you Amahle! "

" What's done is done. We're now even. You hurt me and I hurt you. So please leave me alone." I look at this bitch and shake my head.

" I hope to never see you again in my life. Ever Amahle. Unless of course I find out you have been involved in all this bullshit. I would be scared if I was you. For your sake I hope we wont meet again cause if we do. That would mean it's either you're going to my cage or I'm killing you. I hope what happened here now will stay here between us. Do you understand me? "

" I have done that but it is you who came here. Leave! "

I look at her one last time and chuckle. I feel sorry for her and maybe life will be kind to her but I never want to see this girl in my life ever. She has hurt me in ways I didn't know I was capable of feeling. I walk to the door, open it and walk out without looking back until I get in my car and drive straight to my house.

Walking to the stairs is blurry cause my eyes can't stop the tears that falling down my face. I take off my clothes and walk straight to the shower and it's like I'm letting the dam open cause I find myself crying hard. I slide down to the floor and cry my eyes out. All the hurtful things she said, the pretence, lies and most of all her telling me she was going to abort my child hurts me like hell. This is the worst pain I have ever felt and I never want to feel like this in my life again.

I now know that Love doesn't love me.

CHAPTER 31

[PREVIOUS](#) PAGE 34 [NEXT](#)

HIS TO HAVE.

CHAPTER 31.

I could say I have moved on from all the bull shit that happened in Joburg. Coming here was the best decision I have ever made and I have to thank my brother for that. I didn't see the need to come here anymore cause I didn't feel like running the club anymore but my brother made me realize why we got into this in the first place. It's not about the money or wanting to own someone but it's the peace it gives me. The drive I feel whenever I am in my element. It's in me and that is not going to change for anyone. I would be lying to myself if I ever thought I could walk away from it. There was that one time I thought I would give it up for her but no more. If someone can't accept me for who and what I am? Then I have nothing for them.

I look at the time and it's 11 PM. I have been in my office preparing not that I need to. I can feel the buzz in the whole building and I know it's about to be a goodnight for many people. Old clients and new clients that we have gained since we came here in Durban. Our clientele has grown more than I thought and we had to hire more workers. I finish going through this document when my brothers walk in wearing their tuxedos. Kane as always has a drink on his hand and my brother is drinking water.

" I thought we agreed that we are not drinking tonight? " I ask him standing up and we bro hug.

" Man you won't let me play so I can at least drink." I shake my head.

" People are excited. Everyone is waiting to hear the great master K opening the club officially " Bishop says.

" Why don't you do the honours and welcome them? "

" Nah. It's your club and your night. I'll be listening and watching like everyone else " Bishop explains.

" wear a mask hey. We don't want the new one's to recognize you " I tell him.

" everyone is wearing a mask bro. Don't worry " Kane says.

" what's wrong? " Bishop asks

" I'm just nervous that's all. I want everything to be perfect "

" Man that's what you have been doing this past year. Preparing for this moment so relax. Everything is ready." Bishop calms me down.

" Calvin is not anywhere around here right? " Kane asks

" He's at home. I told him I don't want him anywhere here tonight." They nod. A knock comes in then Jess walks in looking beautiful and wearing her mask.

" Sir. They are ready for you "

" Thanks Jess. Guys let's get this show ready."

We wear our masks then step out of my office. We get in the elevator and it takes us to the Hall where everyone is gathered. The elevator stops and we step out walking slowly. They make way for us as Bishop leads in the front, me

in the middle and Kane last. Like our ranks. The whole room gets quiet as we walk in and I can feel the atmosphere changing.

They are excited to see the Three K's tonight in one room cause that rarely happens. Others are excited to play and meet new Dom's and sub's. Other are wondering if tonight is the day where they will finally have the taste of the three K's and Dom's and sub for them. We get on the stage and Jess gives me the mic and bows. I take her hand and peck it with a kiss. She might be a dominatrix to others but to us she's a sub in the club.

" Bishop. Master's. Maestro's. Dominants and sub's. Ladies and gentlemen. Thank you for coming tonight as we officially open one of Three Kings Club. You have been asking for one here in Durban and finally it is here. It is an honour to have all of you tonight to fulfil your every fantasy and desires. This is a safe space for everyone. All of the members here read and signed a contract and you will all follow the rules. There is no special treatment for anyone. Everyone in this room know their ranks and know the rules. Every sub here is collared and those who are visiting us for the first time have also been given a bracelet to wear. Feel free to walk around and engage with others. Play rooms have been prepared and are ready for you to enjoy yourselves..... " they clap hands. Jess comes and gives us glasses on non alcoholic champagne.

" Every room outside has been stationed with security cause things can get out of hand when people have been drinking although I hope very much we will not come to that. Your cell phones and belongings are safe so please make sure you don't lose the key card you were given. No sex on the main floor. Rooms are empty and await for your arrival. I think I have said all that I need to say so ladies and gentlemen. Please raise your glasses up as we toast to a beautiful night and long relationship. Have a great evening. Cheers everyone" They raise their glasses and we toast.

We drink the glasses then give them back to Jess. We get off the stage and Jacob walks up to us.

" All the cameras are working and everything is fine. We have the best security detail. Mbuso did a great job"

" Thanks bro. He is the best of the best." We hug and he walks away.

We look around and people go to different directions. Others begin to take off their clothes and others watch naked girls giving them snacks and drinks. The bar is full too so everything looks good. Mbuso walks up to us with his gorgeous wife and she has a diamond collar around her neck. I wonder what did he say to convince her to come here.

" Maestro G. Mrs Gumede. Thank you for joining us " she nods and blushes. Her eyes go all around the room and she gets shocked that people do these kind of things in front of other people.

" It's my pleasure " she says after a while then hides her face on her husband chest. All the guys look at each other and we smile.

" I take it you are happy with security system and cameras? "

“ we are bro. Thanks again.” I say.

“ Will you be staying longer? ” Bishop asks them.

“ I came to show you support guys but now we’re heading home ” Mbuso says looking at his blushing wife and we nod.

“ Uhmmm ? ” she says to her husband

“ yes love? ”

“ Can we stay a little bit longer. I... I’m ”

“ Curious? ” he asks her and she nods.

“ Ok baby. We’ll leave when you’re ready ” she smiles.

“ We will leave you to enjoy your evening. Have a great evening Mrs Gumede ”

“ Thank you. May yours be great too ” we nod politely then walk away.

“ can I get my dick sucked? ” Kane asks us.

“ Kane. No playing at the club. You’ll play tomorrow or at the hotel. Not here bro ” Bishop tells him and he leaves shaking his head.

Bishop and I greet our members and have conversations with them. They ask us to join them with their sub’s but we decline. We all decided that we will no longer play in the club but at home only unless we are asked to discipline someone within reasonable reasons. We do not just do it cause we are asked. There has to be a very valid reason why discipline must take place whether it’s a Dom or sub who needs that discipline. Mbuso and his wife leave an hour later and we see them out. The rest of the night goes well and people are enjoying themselves.

The girls and guys working in the club are all clothed and that means they are off limits. They keep filling condoms to the baskets provided and take them to the show rooms or private rooms. Every room had different kind of toys and canes. Each room also has a camera for safety purposes and they all know it. Every member and their partner go to our doctors and get checked for any diseases. If you pass the test and background check. Have money to afford the club then you are accepted into the club. If not then you will not be allowed in our club.

After three hours of going around, having conversations with people. I walk back to my office and find Bishop drinking. I pour myself a glass too and join him on the couch.

“ Great night bro. You did amazing ” we click our glasses and drink.

“ What’s on your mind? ”

“ read it ” I look at him and we burst out laughing.

“ where’s Kane? ”

“ getting his dick wet somewhere around ” he shakes his head. “ Talk to me. ”

“ you let her go ”

“ I did ”

“ Why? ”

“ cause a part of me blames myself for how things turned out.” He nods.

“ She has the diamonds ” he says.

“ I know. ” he looks at me shocked.

“ And you didn’t tell us? ”

“ I found out last week when Cigar told me that there’s someone who’s selling diamonds. I gave him the tracking number of the diamonds and asked him to check if they are the same and he came back and told me they are. She’s selling them with her friend ” I fill my drink.

“ so what now. We just let her go? ”

“ We do. Word is already out that she’s selling the diamonds. How long do you think she’s going to have them? ” he smirks.

“ Not long. Someone is going to come and steal them or force her to give them up ”

“ then she’ll be left with nothing.” I tell him.

“ has she moved out of the apartment? ”

“ she hasn’t. She still lives there so I guess it’s either her friend is paying for it or she using her brother’s money to pay for it.”

“ What if... ”

“ Is that what you’re worried about? ” I ask him and he nods. “ if she ever fucks with my family she will die brother. If she opens her lying mouth about you and all of us. I’ll lock her up in that cage before I kill her. If she’s smart. She’ll close that mouth of hers.” I tell him.

“ okay bro. I have been doing some thinking?? ”

“ what? ” Kane walks in and he’s tired.

“ Let’s go home. I want to sleep ” he says.

“ go your hotel room Kane ”

“ nope. I’m sleeping at your penthouse ” I shake my head.

“ What have you been thinking about? ” I ask Bishop.

“ I’m thinking of stepping down at the church ”

“ what? ” both Kane and I look at him. “ why? ” I ask him.

“ I don’t feel it anymore. I feel like something is missing in my life ”

“ It’s definitely not Jesus but a woman. ” Kane tells him.

“ You can still do both ” I tell him.

“ or just focus on one. You are a pastor by day but at night. You’re a freak. So which one talks to you the most? ” Kane asks him.

“ I think I have lost the passion for preaching ”

“ Then you better dig deep and find it cause we all know Papa is not going to agree to that ” I tell him.

“ man I don’t know and what Papa thinks is the last thing on my mind ” he says.

“ Why don’t you go away from some time. Just you alone so you can meditate and read the word of God until you find yourself again. When you have done that then you can decide what you want to do.” I tell him.

“ Thanks bro. I’ll do that and come back before your opening in Cape Town Kane.” He nods.

“ Let’s go home guys. I’m beat ” I tell them. We get up and leave.

I have workers and staff who will take care of everything while I'm gone. Kane drives us to my penthouse and everyone retires to their room. I shower then get in bed and sleep.

I wake up and my body is damn tired. It feels like it can sleep for another three hours. I look at the time and it's 13:00 pm. Damn I can't remember the last time I slept this late. Why didn't these fools wake me up. I shower then wear my sweat pants and walk out of my room to downstairs. The fools are not there but I see a note on the fridge.

They tell me they went to the club to see check how things are after the grand opening and to sleep cause I am tired. They are right. I feel like I can sleep for hours. I order food from this favourite restaurant Calvin's orders for me while sipping water then sit on the couch while waiting for food but I end up falling asleep again. I'm awoken by someone shaking my shoulder and my hands automatically grab their throat.

"fuck off kabelo man!" Kane says and I let go opening my eyes.

"Don't ever wake me up like that again. What time is it?"

"4:30 pm." he says

"Shit my food."

"Relax. Nothing is burned. I mean I'm surprised you cooked and didn't burn any food cause you sleep like you are dead"

"What? Cooked? I didn't cook"

"Then who did?"

"I don't know maybe Calvin came and cooked." I tell him.

"Maybe. Come and let me plate for us. It smells lovely in here. My mouth just waters from the aroma"

He says taking out the plates and plates for us. How tell did Calvin cook and not wake me up cause he's the most noisiest person I know.

"Shadow who cooked?"

"Eat the damn food. It looks amazing and I want to taste" he says.

"Wait! What if it's poisoned?"

"It's not Kane. Eat."

We pray then Kane waits for me to take the first bite and I do. Damn that lamb chops tastes amazing. Calvin cooked lamb chops with mashed potatoes chakalaka and creamy spinach. This is not the food I ordered. They don't cook like this.

"This reminds me of Koko's food. Damn it's good. You have to give that boy a raise" I damn sure will.

"where's Karabo?"

"he left after we left the club. Didn't say where he was going but he will call us when gets there" I nod. "He feels lonely man. I can see it"

"we're all lonely bro. All of us"

"It sucks. Imagine having all this yummy body and money and you've got no one to spend it on? Man that's crazy"

"Where are your groupies?"

“ I want a real woman now. Tired of girls using me ” he says taking another lamb chop from the pot. I give him my plate too and he plates all the pieces. “ you tired of being used?... ” I chuckle “ what happened to Kane bachelor for life? ”

“ He’s gone and ready to meet someone who’ll change his life. ” I shake my head.

“ Good luck bro ” we finish eating then go to watch some soccer. Something I haven’t done in a while and it feels good to just hang around with my little brother and laugh until it’s late and we decide on call it a night.

It’s the next morning and I have left Kane at the airport. He has flown to Cape Town and I’m on my way to work. I park the car at my reserved spot then get in the elevator and press the button to my office.

“ Good morning Master K. ” Felicia the front receptionist greets.

“ Morning Felicia.” I walk past her and I can hear her sighing inside. I turn a corner and see Calvin typing furiously in the computer.

“ Good Morning Calvin ” he looks up and he looks tired. I frown.

“ Good morning sir ” Calvin is the only one who works in the club and not in the lifestyle. Everyone else from the cleaners to the guards are in the lifestyle.

“ My office ” He follows me with his iPad on the hand and my tea. He puts in my desks then sits down. “ Take a deep breath Calvin ” he looks at me then does.

“ Talk ”

“ Nothing is wrong sir.” He’s tired.

“ you need someone to help you ”

“ I do sir ” he says sighing. I knew he wouldn’t do all the work by himself.

“ Call H.R and tell them to place an advert for your assistance on our site. You will choose four people that the two of us will interview tomorrow.”

“ Really sir? Thank you ” he sounds relieved.

“ Yes Calvin. You can go home after you have updated me but I can see most of the work my brothers did for me yesterday. They saved me alot of paper work. ”

“ They really were helpful sir.”

“ Call a meeting and I’ll need you to take the minutes before you go home and get some rest. I’ll find you in the board room” he nods and walks out.

I go through the tapes of last night to see if anything strange happened but everything worked out fine. Everyone behaved. After thirty minutes I walk out of my office to the boardroom and they are all anxiously waiting for me.

“ Good morning everyone ”

“ Good morning Master K ” they say unison.

“ I would like to thank you for the hard work you have been doing for the past months to ensure that yesterday was a success and it was. So give yourselves a round of applause ” they do smiling.

“ You will get a thank you on top of your salary ” they clap again excited.

“ so I was going through financial records and I see since we announced the opening of the club we have made about 20 million rands. Does that include new members Sir Duma or just our existing members who renewed their memberships? ” They might think it’s a lot of money but it’s not cause it takes more than that to run this kind of club.

“ That includes new members cause we gained 750 new members Master K ” that’s actually good. Not bad at all.

“ That’s great everyone. Let’s make sure we keep doing our jobs the best way we know and even more cause the more you excel at your job is the more money we will get into the club and I can afford to pay all of you. Is there anything else that needs my attention that my brothers didn’t cover? ”

“ No Master ” they say.

“ Good then. You can go back to work ” they get up and leave.

“ are you sure I can leave cause I can stay sir ”

“ go home and rest. Or go to a space or something. Use the company card ” he grins and walks out before I change my mind.

Lunch comes later and I remember I forgot to ask Calvin if he’s the one that cooked for me. Probably it’s him cause he knows I forget to eat sometimes. It’s 7 pm and my head has been buried with paper work, emails and meetings. I have to go to warehouses to check new products they are selling. From dildos, vibrators and special beds and chairs. All our whips and canes are made from the most expensive leather. And our plastics like dildos are made from organic materials.

Our clientele know that we offer only the best service and experience there ever was. That is why they come to us to make sure all that they need and desire will be given to them. We make their fantasies come true. Some pay lots of money to just suckle on breasts from a woman who has given birth. They want the milk and they’ll pay for it.

I walk down to the club and it’s full. The buzz is still high from last night’s opening. Jess is doing a great job running this place when I’m up there working before coming here. She makes sure everything that needs to be done is done precisely. She takes no nonsense from anyone. I walk in my other office and she’s on the phone ordering something. I wait for her until she’s done.

“ I’m glad to see I’m not the only one who’s exhausted. How are you? ”

“ I’ve been better sir and you? ”

“ Same. Maybe things will come down in the next week or so ”

“ I doubt sir. I think it’s going to get more busy. People are excited ”

“ And that attracts enemies. Be careful when you leave ”

“ I will sir. There’s something though I want us to talk about although I know what you’re going to say ”

“ What is it? ” she sighs

“ There’s this woman. She’s a madam. She was here yesterday and she wants to work with us ”

“ Work with us how? ” I know where this conversation is going.

“ she wants to give us her girls and we train them to be sub’s. They work for her and us. We come into an agreement how we will split the money ”

“ She’s a pimp and she wants us to use our resources and time to train her girls then we split the money our clients pay us? ”

“ yeah”

“ Jess are we running a brothel here where people come to have sex but they must pay first? ”

“ no sir ”

“ This is not a brothel or an escort agency. We don’t pimp any man or woman. People who come here come because they enjoy doing things in front of other people or with other people. No exchange of money happens between them. There will be no one working for her here. You tell her I said that.”

“ I will sir.”

“ go home and get some rest. I’ll see you tomorrow ” she nods. I leave the office and get in the elevator that takes me to my car. I drive straight to my penthouse and the first I feel is the wonderful aroma inside. I drop my suitcase, wash my hands and see my plate in the oven and it’s warm. I put it on the kitchen island and open it. He cooked rise and stew. I take the first bite and eat. Damn this is good.

I take out my phone and call him

“ Sir? Is something wrong? ”

“ no Calvin. I just wanted to thank you ”

“ no sir. Thank you for being a great boss and big brother. I really appreciate you ” I smile.

“ Tell me Calvin. Did you happen to pass by the penthouse today? ”

“ No sir. I haven’t been there since last week. Is everything okay? ”

“ No don’t worry everything is fine. It must be the cleaning company that misplaced my remote control but I’ll find it. Good night ” I hang up. I finish eating the food and I’m full.

Who the hell is cooking for me and how do they get in cause the code is known by the company that cleans penthouse and they always change it?. Who is doing this for me and why?. I will find them though. I just need to find the perfect time. Or I will look at the security footage inside the elevator.

The security footage doesn’t reveal anything. It’s like this person doesn’t exist cause the camera can’t detect them. This thing goes in happens for the next 6 months. She continues to come clean and cook for me and my shadow doesn’t want to say anything. My brothers find it amusing and they enjoy teasing me. They are telling me that a ghost visits me.

She came in again and cooked a wonderful meal for me. It’s something different everyday and I’m beginning to enjoy it. I even started leaving her thank you notes and I find them gone when I come back with home made cooked food. But I am nice tired cause I want to see who she is. I want to know her. I left her a note in the morning and told her I want to meet her and there

isn't an answer on my fridge. Well I never get any response back from her but I was hopeful. I walk to my bedroom and my skin gets covered in goose bumps. I feel this wonderful scent. It's not floral but it's unique. I don't think I have ever smelled something like this. I close my eyes. My shadow grumbles. He's anxious and excited. He wants to know her too.

She came into my room after cooking and sat on my bed. She smelled the T-shirt I wore yesterday. She took it and put it on her face and inhaled me. I want to see her face but I can't. She has been doing this for a while and I wasn't aware cause I always came home tired and sometimes I'll sleep on the couch. Who are you and why are you hiding yourself from me?. After shower I get in bed and sleep. I had a nice meal. One of the best. I really want to meet her. This has happened for long and it must stop.

The sound of a vacuum machine doesn't stop making noise. It's noisy and it's pissing the hell out of me. I look at clock and 11 pm. Fuck I'm late but I'm tired. Where is my phone?. I look around and see it on the other side. I take it and call Calvin. I tell him I'm going to be late for work. I go to my closet and wear my sweet pants and T-shirt then walk downstairs. The machine is very loud in here and it just pisses me off.

I come in view and see this who's busy vacuum the carpet and she's not aware of me cause I'm far. I stand there and watch her then see that she's got earphones on. I walk closer then I feel something happening in my body. It suddenly gets really hot like I'm going to be on fire. She suddenly stops vacuuming and switches the machine off. My shadow paces up and down. Fuck me!. Is it her?

CHAPTER 32

[PREVIOUS](#) PAGE 35 [NEXT](#)

Advertisement

HIS TO HAVE.

CHAPTER 32.

#NotEdited

I know she can feel me behind her cause her body stands still. She's holding her breath and is afraid to breath out. I can feel it. I can also feel how her skin breaks out in goose bumps. My God! Could it be really her? After all this time?. I walk closer to her and just stand a few metres away from her. My hands itch to touch her and feel her skin. My body is so hot I know I'm going to be on fire at any moment. I lift my hand to touch her but her sweet and soft voice stops me.

" Please don't touch me " she says. Damn.

" Turn around "

" Why? "

" I want to see if it's really you "

" What do you mean really me? " her voice is soft and she speaks low like she's whispering.

“ yes Thobe. I know it's you ” She sucks in her breath then keeps quiet and her arms move. She's playing with her fingers. “ Turn around ”

“ why does it matter if it's me or not? ”

“ It's very rude to talk with someone while your back is against them..... Unless of course I'm on top of your back or we're in bed..... ”

“ Don't talk to me like that please ” Fuck I got carried away.

“ I'm sorry. That was wrong of me.” I'm already apologizing?

“ I have work to do. Please let me finish and I'll be gone ”

“ Thobeka look at me.” I use my dominant voice.

She slowly turns around but her head is facing down. I remove the head wrap she has around her hair and it falls. Her hair gets loose and it hides her face. I walk closer and she doesn't move. I thought she was going to take a step back but she doesn't. It is her.

“ Please don't touch me ” she begs me.

“ why? ” she doesn't answer me.

I lift my hand up to her face and gently use my index finger to lift her head up and she let's me. I move her hair off her face and see her beautiful face and those damn eyes that stare right at me like she can see my soul.

“ Finally. Our other half ” the shadow says.

“ My something important that I left behind.” Why did I leave her behind?!

“ What? ” she asks confused.

“ your eyes haunted me every night I slept. I can still see you looking at me walking away from you and you wiped your tears... ”

“ Please stop ” she takes a step away from me.

“ I hurt you. I know I did. I felt your heart breaking when you asked me if your ever going to see me again and I said no. ” She shakes her head

“ You don't owe me anything sir. I'm the one who owes you. You took me out of that place and you left me somewhere safe. The whole week I was there I was able to sort things out. Thank you. ” I walk to where she is and she takes steps back again.

“ Why didn't you let me know it was you who was doing everything here? ”

“ I was just doing my job that's all ”

“ Cooking is also part of your job? ”

“ No. That was me saying thank you that's all.”

“ Thobe look at me please ”

“ why? ” she asks shaking her head.

“ I don't like that you're hiding yourself from me ”

“ Please let me finish my job. I have to work somewhere when I'm done here ”
I don't like that at all.

“ I left you notes begging you to tell me who you are and not once did you think of telling me it's you? ”

“ I was just a person you helped along the way sir. Why would I tell myself that you might still remember me when you told me you have a fiancée. Who's

your wife now?. There was no need for me to tell you ” Damn she thinks I’m married.

“ But there was a need for you to cook me food? ”

“ you were ordering take outs everyday. I thought that I could cook for you since your wife is not here as my thank you. That’s all. ”

“ What do you think my wife is going to say when she finds out about this? ”

“ I swear to God my intension were honest. I hope I didn’t cause any problems. Please make her understand. I can even explain myself to her. That you once helped me and when I saw it was you who was living here I thought that I could at least thank you in some way” she looks at me fearful.

“ In some way? You could have written a letter or note and told me it was you but you didn’t. You thought let me cook for him cause you know the famous saying that says “the way to a man’s heart is through his stomach” right? ”

“ You’re a married man sir. I could never become between a man and his wife and their marriage. ” She answers very respectfully like my assumption offended her.

“ I’m not wearing a wedding ring Thobe. How do you know I did get married?. There are no wedding pictures here or my wife’s clothes? ”

“ Most married man now don’t wear wedding rings. I didn’t know you weren’t wearing it. The pictures well I never thought of it cause I told myself you’re only here because of work.” She explains. She sounds like a very respectful woman.

“ How did you know it was me who lives here? ”

“ I have been working for this company ever since you last saw me. I have always been the one who was placed to clean the penthouse here at this building. 7 Months ago I had just finished cleaning here and was going to another building when I saw you walking out of the building. I asked one of the security guards if you’re the one who lives in the apartment and they didn’t want to tell me at first but then they said yes. That’s how I knew.” I nod.

“ I love your cooking and the meals you prepare. Thank you”

“ You’re welcome.” She looks at me then looks away.

“ Thobe... ”

“ Did you get the people that wanted to hurt your wife? ”

“ I did. All of them.” Now would be the time to tell her that I’m not married, never got engaged and the girl she thinks is my wife is skating on thin ice. If she messes up. She’s dead. I don’t want her though to think that I want something with her cause I’m now single. She might take it wrong and think I want to make her a rebound.

“ That’s good to hear. I will stop with the cooking ”

“ Please don’t. I want you to work for me. Full time ” Damn I did not want to say that. I want her close to me so I can get to know her and know who she really is. Offering her a job will be a good start.

“ I have a job already ”

“ But I doubt they pay you the money I will pay you ”

“ Shouldn’t you be talking to your wife about this first? ” This wife thing is starting to get out of hand

“ No. How much are they paying you? ”

“ How much are you offering? ”

“ I want you to work for me only. Full time including the weekends. If you accept and resign right now at your job. I will offer you R20000. What do you say? ”

“ Are you serious? ”

“ I am serious.”

“ When you say full time you mean I work everyday. Monday to Sunday 8am until 5pm? ”

“ I mean you come and live here with me. My working hours are odd. Sometimes I have to work all day and night. Sometimes I work during the night only or day. It depends. Sometimes I host people and I would like them to get a taste of your food cause caterers sometimes mess up and bring shit food. When I travel you’ll have to come with me take it like your my home assistant while Calvin is my personal assistant.”

“ That sounds like it allot of work ”

“ It will be cause I like things to be done a certain way. I don’t eat food cooked by just anyone. My brothers and I are like that. You will learn what kind of food they eat when they visit so you can prepare.”

“ Wow that’s allot ” she shakes her head.

“ What do you say? We have a deal? ”

“ I’ll think about it. ” she says. What?

“ What’s there to think about? ” I walk closer to her and she moves back

“ please... ”

“ I won’t hurt you ” I assure her. She moves back until her back hits the wall. “ Thobe... ”

“ Sir please.” God! That plea from her mouth that she barely whispers hits deep in me. Even the shadow is restless.

“ Claim her! ” the shadow growls

“ Well scare her. She’s already scared ”

“ she can’t run away from us. We can’t let her go again”

“ I know Dammit! I’m trying my best here! ” He growls

Thobe sucks in her breath watching me. She can still move away from me if she wants cause I haven’t caged her in with my arms and body. That might scare her.

“ Can I touch you? ” My hands are itching to fell her skin. I still remember that feel when I once touched her.

“ No ”

“ What are you scared of? ”

“ You... ”

“ You don’t have to be scared of me. I won’t hurt you ”

“ No...”

“ No you don’t understand. I’m scared for you! ”

“ What? ” what does she mean?

“ I’m sorry but I can’t... ” She says through the tears that stream down her face.

“ Why are you crying?... Thobe talk to me... ”

“ I can’t... ” I try to wipe her tears but she moves away from me quickly and almost falls. “ I told you don’t touch me! ” she says screaming. She runs from me. Takes her machine and puts it on a trolley and quickly tries to leave. What the hell is going on? Why is she running away crying?! I can’t let her leave like this.

“ Thobe don’t leave please! Talk to me ”

“ Please stay away from me. Please! ”

“ I can’t do that. I can’t let you go again! ”

“ You have a wife Kabelo! ” she still remembers my name.

“ I’m not married okay? I was never engaged and get married. She was just my girlfriend and she broke up with me. She was just a girlfriend Thobe please don’t go! ” She breaks down and cries.

Who hurt her? Is it me unknowingly? Did leaving her behind that time hurt her like this? No. It cant be me. Something else is going here.

“ So that time you came looking for Belinda and you told me about her was a lie? ”

“ I thought she was the one but I was wrong. She turned out to be someone else. I will explain everything to you but please don’t go.”

“ it doesn’t matter cause.... I can’t... I can’t ”

“ I know it doesn’t matter but it’s been 18 months since I last saw her or talk to her. It is over and I am never going to get back with her. I swear Thobe just please. Give me a chance.”

“ I don’t care about her. It’s not about her. It’s about me.” The way she says it it’s like it hurts her.

“ Tell me what’s going on, who hurt you?. We can fix whatever you tell me.”

“ I have to go... ” she presses the button and the elevator opens . Fuck no!.

“ Thobe don’t leave! ” I stand outside the elevator. While she’s inside. I have my foot and hand blocking the doors from closing.

“ I can’t be fixed. You can’t fix me. I will hurt you I know I will and I don’t want that ” she says crying. She’s breaking my heart.

“ You won’t hurt me. Talk to me, tell me what’s wrong? ”

“ please move away from the door and let me go ” she wipes her tears and her face is red from crying.

“ I can’t do that. I can’t let you go. I won’t do it.” She shakes her head.

“ please I don’t want to hurt you ”

Why do I feel like if I let her go I might never see her again?. That thought and the pain it makes me feel is too much. I feel like someone is stabbing my heart.

“ Thobe. You can’t hurt me. Let me at least take you home then cause you’re not okay? ”

“ I have to go.”

She tries to press the parking lot button but I hold her hand to stop her but a force I don't know pushes me out of the elevator and almost knocks me off. I run to the elevator quickly before the doors close and her eyes get big like she's seeing a ghost but then she looks and stretches out her hand at me.

"Freeze" she shouts and my body locks instantly. I stand still and can not move. What the hell?! Who is she?. She mouths "I'm sorry" before the doors shut completely.

"Noooooo!" I scream inside. My whole body gets covered in flames and I unfreeze.

"She's scared. She has powers. She's afraid her powers will hurt us"

"I know. I know!"

"Now let's calm down before we burn this whole building. We'll find her"

"Damn right we will but not today. She's scared and I don't want her to disappear. Tomorrow morning"

I take a deep breath then think of her. Her beautiful face

Advertisement

eyes soft and her sweet melodic voice. The fire dies down and I'm naked. Great!. I walk back upstairs and get in the shower. The image of her crying keeps playing in mind and I just can't stop it. The pain I'm feeling right now is nothing like I have ever felt before. I can't wait for tomorrow. I have to go now. I can't let her go like this. Not while she's in pain.

I get out of the shower, brush my teeth then wear my clothes fast. I take my wallet then run downstairs. I search for my car keys and find them. I notice on the floor that her head wrap fell down. I pick it up and smell it. It smells like her. I get a flash image of her crying on her bed. I try to look around her room to get an idea of where she could be but I can't see anything.

I get in the elevator and press the button. It goes down straight to the parking lot. I run to my car and drive straight to the cleaning company. It takes new 30 minutes to get there because of the traffic. I park the car then run straight to the reception area.

"Get me your boss"

"good day to you too sir. Do you perhaps have an appointment with her?"

"I don't. Tell her Mr Ntazi wants to see her now!"

"Sir I'm going to ask you to come down or I'll call security for you!" This girl hasn't even bothered to look at me. She's not representing the company well. I bang the counter and she looks up immediately.

"Call your boss now and tell her I want to see her!"

"oh... yes... yes sir" she takes her phone then looks at me.

"please get security at the front desk. There's a crazy man right here demanding to see the boss..." Damn this bitch! "Sir.. Sir! You can't go up there"

I walk to the elevator and press the 4th floor. I don't even know if that where she is cause Calvin is the one that found them for me. The elevator opens and I see someone on the desk.

“ I want to see your boss. Where is she? ”

“ Uhm she’s currently in a meeting... ”

“ where’s her office? ”

“ Sir... ”

“ Damn man! She’s wasting our time! ”

“ Where’s her office! ” she points to her left and I follow the direction.

There’s only one door there so I open it and there are about people in there and they look like they are having a meeting.

“ Excuse me.... ” Says a woman standing up but she stops talking.

“ If this is not your office get out! ” I say. I really don’t have patience.

People come into the office and it’s that receptionist girl with security guards. I fold my hands and look at her.

“ Here he is....I’m sorry ma’am but I tried to stop... ”

“ Stop talking. Do you know who this is?! Go back to your desk with the security. I’ll deal with you later! ” the woman says to the rude girl.

“ Guys well continue the meeting later. Please excuse us ” they all walk out confused. I close the door behind them and look at her.

“ Mr Ntanzi. I wasn’t expecting to see you. Please sit down.”

“ I’m sorry just show up at your office but I need the address of one of your workers ”

“ Oh my. Did something happen Mr Ntanzi? ”

“ Nothing bad happen. I need to find her. She cleans my penthouse. Her name is Thobeka Lukhele ”

“ Oh yes. She’s one of our best cleaners. She keeps to herself and very shy but she does excellent work. I hope she didn’t offend you in some way ” she says typing on her computer. “ here it is ” she writes it down for me then looks at me when she’s done.

“ it’s against company policy to give out details of our workers but because it’s you sir. I know you mean well.”

“ How do you know I mean well? ”

“ You come from a very reputable and respected family. Your brother is a Bishop and you’re also a business man. The only thing I can think of is you want to hire her and that is good cause she’ll earn more money. ” she gives me her cell phone number and address. Umlazi? I’ve only been there twice.

Damn!.

“ Thank you for this. It means allot and you won’t regret it ”. “ good luck ” she says.

“ Thanks ” I walk out running get in the elevator and call one of the Dom’s who live here. The one I’ve been thinking about offering a position in the club. To be my other second in command cause Jess with her husband work for Bishop. He’s one of the reasons why we opened the club here and got so many members.

“ Thulani? ”

“ Master K. How can I help you?. Is everything okay? ”

“ No. I need to go to eMlazi section G. I have no idea where that is. ”

“ Are you at the office sir? ” I get out of the elevator and run out to the parking lot

“ I’m in CBD. I’m in my car ”

“ I’ll send you my location so you pick me up ” ok. I hang up and wait. The location says he’s 10 minutes away from me. I connect it to my car then drive out.

I drive fast and curse at anyone who tries to block me. The Taxi drivers curse at me and I show them the middle finger. They better not try me cause the way I’m feeling right now. I can taste someone’s blood. I find a space to park the car at some office space. I hear the car door opening and he gets in.

“ Come and drive ” we both get out and exchange seats.

“ You look like shit sir. Is everything okay? ” he drives out

“ How did you know it was me? ”

“ Cause cars like this don’t come on this side of town. You said section G ”

“ Yes. Drive fast ” I show him the address and he nods.

“ Yes Master K ”

“ Thulani we are not in the club. Stop calling me that.”

“ who are we looking for KB in umlazi? ”

“ Someone important ” I tell him he nods.

It takes us 30 minutes to get emlazi. He parks the car outside some dodgy house. What the hell is she doing here?. Thobe works and surely she could have afforded to rent something better in town. This house looks like it’s going to fall down at any minute.

“ Are you sure this is the address? ”

“ It is. That is the house ” I shake my head.

We step out of the car and people gather outside their houses watching us. A man gets out of the house and stands there looking at us with his hands folded.

“ Stay here. Whatever happens don’t get in this yard. Do you understand me Thulani? ”

“ Yeah... I’ll stay ”

I open the gate and walk towards him.

“ Uban wena? (who are you?) ”

“ Ngifuna uThobeka. Ukuphina? (I’m looking for Thobe. Where is she? ”

“ Akahlali Lana (she doesn’t live here) ” this fucker is lying. I can feel her here.

I take my phone and call her. Her phone rings inside.

“ If akahlali lana why I phone yakhe ikhala ngasendlini? (if she doesn’t live here then why is her phone ringing inside?) ”

“ Hamba la before ngikuthwalisa inhlabathi ngesfuba! (leave this place before I kill you!) ”

“ if I find that she’s hurt in anyway? Mfanam uzogubha ithuna lakho before ngithwalisa wena inhlabathi ngesfuba uhlangane nebakini. (boy you’ll dig

your own grave before I kill you and make you meet your ancestors) ” the mother fucker laughs.

I push him, he falls then I walk inside the house. The house looks okay inside even though the furniture is old. My heart aches. It’s a six bedroom house. I open the first door and there’s just a bed. Same thing on the two other bedrooms. I go to the late one and it is locked. I put my head on the door and I hear someone crying. It’s her.

If I call her name she might freak and freeze me again. If I kick the door open she might still do the same thing.

“ If you open that door I’ll blow your brains off! ” The fucker says.

“ I would like to see you try ” Thulani says hitting him with a gun and the fat fuck falls down.

“ watch him ” he nods.

I grab the handle then forcefully push it and it opens. She screams and tries to run.

“ Thobe it’s me. It’s just me ” she stops crying and looks at me shocked.

“ How... it’s not possible ” I close the door even though it doesn’t lock.

“ it’s possible. I came to get you. Let’s go home ”

“ This is my home. I can’t leave ”

“ I won’t let you stay here. I’m worried about you and I came to get you. Let’s go ”

“ How are you here cause I... ” I walk towards her.

“ I told you, you can’t hurt me. Take my hand and let’s go. We’ll figure this out together. I promise ”

“ I will hurt you Kabelo. That’s what I do. I hurt people and they die ”

“ I didn’t die baby. I’m here standing before you and not hurt. Come ” she shakes her head.

Okay she’s giving me no choice right now cause she’s scared shitless.

I walk towards her and grab her shoulders and pull her up. I notice she has cuff marks around her hands and she winced when I pulled her up.

“ Take what you will need cause you’re never coming back here again.” I let go of her and she goes to take her hand bag and another bag. “ Is that all? ” she nods. I wipe her tears then take her hand and we walk out of the room. The fat fuck is still out of it and Thulani is standing on the door.

“ let’s go Thulani ”

We all leave and get in the car. The neighbours are watching as we drive out. I’m sitting with her in the backseat and she is cold.

“ Turn the heat on ” Thulani frowns but does it. We drive away from uMlazi and straight to uMhlanga. We get in the underground parking lot and step out of the car. I take my wallet and give Thulani all the cash inside.

“ Thanks for your help man. Get an Uber”

“ You didn’t have to pay boss but I’ll take my girl out. Thanks.” He gives me the keys then walks away.

The elevator opens, I take her hand and we go to the penthouse. The doors open and I lock it with a code. Only my brothers can come in cause I'm the only one who uses it. She puts her bags down and goes to the kitchen. She washes her hands and begins to take things out to cook. She's seriously going to cook now while we have to talk? I shake my head and look at her.

"Can you read my thoughts?" she asks me

"No. Can you?"

"No." she answers.

"Are you going to claim me then leave me?" What?

"Your my other half. I could never leave you even if I wanted to"

"You did before. What will stop you now?"

"I'm sorry I did that. I hurt you. Will you forgive me?" She stops chopping and looks at me

CHAPTER 33

[PREVIOUS](#) PAGE 36 [NEXT](#)

#NotEdited

"I'm sorry I did that. I hurt you. Will you forgive me?" She stops chopping and looks at me. The knife is pointed downward but somehow in afraid she might stab me cause the look on her face is hard. I lean backward so I can escape if she decides to murder me. I chuckle cause I can't believe I'm afraid she might kill me.

"What's funny?" she asks. Even though she's annoyed it doesn't come out the she expected. It comes out soft and sweet.

"I'm thinking you might actually stab me with that knife" she cocks her head.

"And you find that amusing cause I might try and not succeed?"

"Yeah"

"Hmmm. You want to bet?"

"Nope. You're angry at me Angel so I don't want to take chances and die." She opens her mouth to say something but she bites her lip to stop saying whatever that was going to escape between those lips.

“ I would like to finish cooking ”

“ I want us to talk Angel ”

“ don't call me that ” she continues to chop.

“ Why? ”

“ I'm not an Angel ”

“ even if you're not. I love it cause it suits you ” she shakes her head then turns her back on me.

I watch her as she continues to cook and she looks so comfortable in my kitchen cause she's been doing this for a while now. What am I saying. This is her kitchen cause she's the only one that has been cooking here. I really want us to talk but I doubt she's going to tell me what I need to know. She might not from the looks of it and I might have to force her to talk.

She moves around opening and closing draws and I wonder what she would do if she was alone. Hum a song? Play some music and dance?. Is she a good dancer and what is she hiding beneath those baggy clothes. The only parts of her skin I can see is her neck and hands. Is the rest of her skin creamy like her face. She looks at me then looks away. She wasn't expecting to find my eyes on her.

“ someone else would be maybe freaking out that I'm etching them and not saying anything ”

“ I don't mind. I... . I find it comforting that you're here ” what? I definitely was not expecting that.

“ I love having you here. I was worried about you ”

“ I'm fine now ”

“ Angel... . ”

“ I’m going to shower now. Please watch the pots for me. The heat is low so the good won’t get burned but just watch them ”

“ Ok Angel. ” she stands and looks at me. She looks nervous now.

“ Which room am I going to use since I will be living here ”

“ don’t sound so excited Angel ” she’s not. She sounds annoyed.

“ Just tell me which one ”

“ I’ll show you ” I go to lounge where she left her bags and take them. “ I cock my head at her to follow me and her brows meet, her face gets hard then she folds her hands. I chuckle cause I was messing with her. “ Come on I was kidding. Please follow me ” she takes her time then she walks and leads the way up the stairs. I follow her and my eyes are on her body. I want these clothes gone. She’s hiding herself with these clothes and I won’t have that.

She stops in the bedroom Kane sleeps on when he’s here but I move past that room and get in mine. I go to the closet and put her bags in there. I come out and she’s looking around.

“ I know you’ve been here. I smelled your scent in here but I didn’t actually know it was you.” She blushes then looks down. “ You walked in here and smell my T-shirt sitting on the bed. I saw an image of you but I couldn’t see your face.... ” I walk towards her and she doesn’t move an inch until I stand next to her.

“ I desperately wanted to see it. Meet the person who’s taking care of me. Then earlier today I find out it’s you and I couldn’t believe it. Here is the person who’s been haunting my dreams with those beautiful eyes. Here you are right now standing next to me and I can’t wait to know you Angel ” I cup her face with my hands and she tries to move it away but I gently grab it.

“ Stop. Don’t stop me from touching you.”

“ I... . ”

“ I know you’re a special cold blooded being. You’re obviously more than just a human being. You have a heartbeat so you’re not a vampire. When you feel comfortable you’ll tell me about you. I’m not going to force you okay Angel? ”

“ Ok but I can’t share the bed with you ”

“ Why? ”

“ cause... . I... I just can’t ”

“ Angel you have to trust me. We can’t behind this relationship with no trust between each other.. I can’t protect you if you can’t trust me and tell me what scares you. Talk to me ”

“ I can’t because I’m afraid because you’ll freeze and wake up dead next to me.” What?

“ Why would you think that? ” Her eyes get teary then she runs to the bathroom and the lock clicks.

Did she share a bed with a man and she woke up with him dead?. The thought of her sharing a bed with another man just irks me. It makes me want to punch something. I decide to give her some space and go back to the kitchen. I check the pots and it smells great. I have to hit the gym hard cause they way she cooks. I might gain weight.

Should I set the table it she might decode to set it herself?. I decide to just sit and wait for her. Angel. The name just slipped out of my mouth and it sounded great in my eyes. Even shadow agrees. I sit on the lounge and check on my phone. It had been on silent and I see many missed calls from Calvin, Jess even Bishop. I call Bishop.

“ Ngwana papa ”

“ Abuti Karabo” he chuckles.

“ You haven’t called me that in years ”

“ Yeah I’m tall like you now so... ” we both laugh. “ How’s everything? ”

“ Everything is good man. Going away did me good. It made me realize I love being in both worlds as sick as that sounds.”

“ I’m glad to hear that. Is everything okay though? ” Angel walks in, past and she smells nice. My eyes follow her as she checks the food and she’s wearing long loose baggy clothes. Damn.

“ yeah it is. I’m flying to Cape Town tomorrow. Want to check how Kane is doing since the opening. We haven’t talked.”

“ Yeah cause we didn’t want to make him feel overwhelmed.”

“ ok bro and don’t forget the annual meeting we are going to have in a few weeks ”

“ Yeah Calvin will remind me ” I turn and watch her as she takes the cutlery.

“ and how are you? ”

“ I’m good bro.”

“ just good? What’s going on? ” he knows me.

“ there’s nothing to worry about. I’ll tell you about it ”

“ ok ngwana papa. Later then ”

“ Night brother ” I hang up.

“ The food is ready is ready. You can come.” I smirk. I’m told to come and eat at my table. That’s a first.

I go and wash my hands then take a seat. She dishes for me first then dishes hers and looks at me.

“ let’s pray.” She threads her hands. “ No Angel. Thread your hands with mine...” she does after hesitating “ Thank you God for the food we have today. For having my other half sitting right next to me and being in my life. Thank you for her and I promise I won’t hurt her again. Amen ”

“ Amen ” she says and removes her hands. “ what kind of prayer is that? ”

“ What do you mean? ”

“ You’re supposed to thank God for food only. This was not the time to pray about your problems ”

“ Angel you’re not a problem for me ” Indigenous in and yummy. It’s nice. “ I love your cooking”

“ I love cooking here. The kitchenware is amazing. It makes me want to cook everyday ” I watch her as she opens her mouth and close it. The spoon comes back empty and she chews slowly then licks her lips. Fuck no. I haven’t gotten laid in a long time and now everything she’s doing is fucking sexy. I need to get my head out of the gutter. “ You’re starring kabelo ”

“ Cause you fascinated me ” she takes a deep breath.

We eat silently and for the first time in years I feel calm. Like this is what I have been waiting for and more. Any other woman would be feeling some type of way. Scared and not eat with me in on the same table. But she’s not just any other woman. She’s special. Our soulmate. She plated me the right amount of food cause I ate all of it and I’m full. In a right way.

She gets up and takes the plates. I help her clean the table as she rinses the dishes then puts them in the dishwasher. She cleans the counter over and over again and I realize what she’s doing. She avoiding talking about what happened in that house.

serif">“ When you’re ready to talk. You’ll find me in the lounge.”

“ I... . ”

“ No Angel. We’re going to talk now ” she huffs.

I walk to the lounge and seat on the couch. I turn the tv volume down and wait for her. After 10 minutes she sits next to me. I don’t like the space she’s creating between us. She’s sitting far for my liking.

“ When we talked you told me that you got your things in order the week you stayed at the hotel right? ”

“ I did ”

“ How much did they pay you where you worked? ”

“ R3500 ” she plays with her fingers.

“ Always look at me where were talking with each other angel. Do you understand? ”

“ It’s not easy to just look at you. You’re scary ” she confesses.

“ That’s how I am. You’ll get used to it but you don’t behave like in scare you ”

“ I try to not show it ” Intake her hands.

“ I’ll never hurt you Angel. Ever. I’m the last person you should be scared of. I’m the only person you’re always going to run to, to seek comfort and protection. Okay baby? ”

“ ok ”

“ Now tell me about how you ended living there when you could have gotten a decent place to rent I think. With a friend or the people you work with ”

“ I don’t have friends and the people I work with I’m not close to them. I like it that way cause I don’t have to explain things about

myself to them ” hmmm. I wait for her to continue. “ So there was this girl I was friends with. She used to work with me and she seemed like a good person cause she was nice to me and didn’t find me weird.... . ” she gets emotional when she says that and it makes me not ok

“ Do you trust me? ” she looks at me. “ I just want to hold you. I need you to trust me with your body and let me hold you. Will you Angel? ”

“ I don’t want you to get cold ”

“ I won’t Angel. I promise ”

“ Will you tell me if you begin to feel that way? ”

“ I promise ”

“ Ok ” I pull her to me then lay her on top of me. I sooth her back.

“ I’m sorry I disturbed you. Please continue ” she takes a deep breath in and out. She fists my T-shirt. I don’t think she’s aware she’s doing it.

“ She didn’t ask me why I wore baggy clothes or kept to myself. I liked that about her. That time I was living at a flat I rented. The rent was R2000. I didn’t care cause it was a good place. So a month before I saw you here she asked me to accompany her home cause they had a funeral and I agreed. She was now my friend. We went to uMlazi and I think it was an aunt that had last away. The funeral went fine then after the funeral her uncle asked her if she would move back home cause the house was going to be unoccupied and she agreed. When we went back to Durban she asked me if I would like to move in with her. I could pay less rent and save alot of money. I liked that idea cause I thought I could save enough until I can afford to pay in advance a more better place in town.” She stops talking and looks at me.

I could kiss those pretty lips right now and lose myself. Her body is soft on top of mine. I can imagine allot of things I could do to her in this position. Damn! Shadow growls cause he likes the idea too. Fuck don't get hard!. Don't get fucken hard! Down boy!.

" I agreed and we moved in. The first two weeks it was just her and I. Even though the house looked that way I was thankful that she wanted me to stay with her. The third week her uncle showed up unannounced and said he's moving back in cause he lost his job in Joburg. The three of us lived together and I would notice how he would behave around me when Cebi was not around and I began feeling uncomfortable. I never told Cebi cause I had moved out of my place so I kept it to myself thinking he would stop or change but he got worse. Cebi had a boyfriend so one day she was gone to spend the night at his place. I was not scared to be left with him cause I knew I could protect myself but that night..... " she sniffs. God please don't let it be what I think it is cause I'm going to murder someone tonight!.

" It's okay Angel. You don't have to say it "

" I want to tell you. "

" ok Angel " I sooth her back. My T-shirt gets wet. I hate how hurt she is right now.

" Her uncle was drinking with his friends outside then when it got dark they started leaving one by one. One of them stayed with her uncle and it was getting late. I locked myself in our bedroom and slept but then I felt someone forcing his way inside the room and they got in. The two of them. I asked them what did they want and cebi's said to me that his friend has paid allot of money to sleep with me and I will do exactly that or they will both hold me down and rape me then he took out his gun to show me he means business. I agreed to sleep with him cause I was scared for my life. I thought

that if I don't then they will rape me and then shoot me so I won't tell Cebi or the police." Oh my fucken God. That mother fucker is going to meet his maker before the sun rises.

" He demanded that I take off my clothes before he leaves so he will know that one I'm going to do it and I did. I have never been naked in front of anyone before that night and I was scared.... " Fuck No! She quickly gets off me and looks at me scared. Her eyes look like they are going to jump out of their sockets.

" Kab.... Your eyes....You're.... You're on fire Kabelo! " she's freaking out and I'm livid. I slowly get off the couch and she runs to the kitchen and comes back with a fire extinguisher. She opens it and kills the fire on the couch.

My whole body is on fire and the anger inside of me fuels the fire. I want to walk out if here and hunt those two animals and watch them burn alive screaming.

" Kabelo please calm down!. You're going to blow this whole building down and kill all the people. Please come down! "

I can hear her talking but the only thing I can hear is her telling me that, that man made her take her clothes off and no one has ever seen her naked before that day. Those are the only words on hear and the hurt she's feeling. I move away from her and move towards the elevator.

" Kabelo please calm down. You're scaring me! " I look at her and she's in tears.

Tears caused by those man. Had he not done that she wouldn't be crying like this. I wouldn't be scaring her right now. I life my hands and more fire comes out and shoots up. The fire alarms rings around the pent house

" Kabelo stop! You're going to blow this building down! "

“ Don’t cry Angel. I’ll fix it. They will pay ”

The carpet is burning now and the fire sprinkler spring out water but the fire doesn’t doesn’t.

“ Kabelo stop please! ” the apartment phone rings.

“ I won’t hurt you Angel ”

“ you are going to hurt all those innocent people! ”

“ you were innocent and they hurt you too! ”

“ Kabelo.... ”

“ No! ” I turn my head away from her and hear people knocking on the emergency exit door.

“ Kabelo... ” she calls my name. I look at her.

“ Nooo Angel! ” she runs so quickly and throws her whole body at me. My burning body that is on fire.

“ Angel....” She clings her whole body on me as I catch her and watch her clothes get burned. I try to push her away cause I don’t want to hurt her but she doesn’t let me go.

She clings to me so tight crying then I feel something as I’m holding her. My body is cooling down. The fire is going down and there’s steam around us. I look at her and she’s not on fire. She’s calming me down with her body. Her ice cold body. My God!.

“ Angel? ” she sniffs and looks at me with her teary eyes. I cub her face and kiss her teary eyes. “ I’m sorry I scared you. I’m sorry ” I hold her tight.

“ The phone hasn’t stopped ringing. They will call the police if they think something is wrong. Answer it. She’s right.

I let go of her then answer the phone.

“ Hello? ”

“ Mr Ntanzi. We got a fire alarm warning in your penthouse and... ”

“ My wife was cooking food in the oven and we forgot to switch it off cause we got busy and forgot about food. I’m sorry for the trouble ”

“ We will send the cleaning company to come and... . ”

“ don’t worry about it. We’ll take care of it ”

“ Oh ok sir. Thank you ” I hang up. The knocking on the emergency exit door has stopped and the fire sprinkler stopped too. I look at Angel and she’s still standing where I left her. She’s in shock. I am too.

I take her hand and walk to the kitchen. I sit her down then make her water mixed with sugar and give it to her. She drinks it but her hands are shaking. Both of us are naked.

“ let’s go shower then bed. You’re in shock ”

She stands but her body is shaking. I pick her up then run to the shower with her. I open the faucet and cold water hits us. I wrap my hands around her and hold her as the water hits us. She wraps them tight and places her ear right where my heart beats. She sighs.

“ I was never going to hurt you ”

“ They didn’t hurt me that night. When he tried to touch me he felt how cold I was. He called me a living corpse. When he tried to force himself on me I froze him. He couldn’t move or do anything. Cebi's uncle ran to me and hit me with a gun. I blacked out and woke up with later with him trying to set his friend free. When he did finish chopping off the ice. He was dead.”

“ Good. He should have died the moment he touched you. Come.”

I dry her then dry myself. I walk out with her and go to the closet and wear my pyjama pants and come with my t-shirts for her. I help her wear it then go to bed and remove all the pillows. We get in bed and she rolls to my side and Kay's her head on me again.

" Ever since I was born. I have never felt what it's like to be warm but tonight I did. When I threw myself in you and you held me. Like right now. I felt warmth seeping into my bones and blood. I felt your warm hands and body." She rubs her nose on my chest and sighs.

" You were the one he was talking about. The one who'll calm me down when he takes over."

" Who? "

" My other side. My shadow "

CHAPTER 34

[PREVIOUS](#) PAGE 37 [NEXT](#)

#NotEdited.

" My other side. My shadow." She holds me tight close to her and breathes out.

" What makes him take takeover? "

" When we sense danger. When people I love are hurt or in danger. Whoever hurts you will deal with me. Tell me Angel. What happened to the guy and what did your friend say when you told her? " She takes a deep breath.

" Cebi's uncle was scared. He told me he'll take care of it cause he can't have the police come here. Apparently he is a known offender and he was out of jail for a year. He said if police find something like this will send him back to jail again. I was so scared I agreed. He put him in a dustbin and left with him. I don't know what he did to the body he didn't tell me and I didn't ask. From that day I began living with fear cause I thought the police will show up and arrest me. He

stayed away from me until one day Cebi and him asked me to accompany them somewhere. I refused cause I knew it was going to be something bad but he took out his gin and forced me and so we left..... ”

She stops and her heartbeat accelerates. What the fuck did they make her do now .

“ We walked for like two hours then we got inside this house. There were people playing cards. They were gambling. I guess her uncle told Cebi what happened with his friend cause they wanted me to do it to those guys there so they can rob them. I refused and ran out. I was going to get my bags and ran away but they caught me am where we live. I told them I didn't know how it happened but they didn't believe me. Her uncle told her to force me to talk and she agreed. She kept telling me about how much money we could make if I show her what I did to that guy. I ignored her and slept. I don't know how but I slept soundly and when I woke up Cebi was not in the room. I thought she was awake but when I asked her uncle was he said she went to the shops but the police came after an hour and said they found her body. They raped then killed her. I was so scared. The police asked a bunch of questions about when was the last time I saw her and I told them she was here when I slept. The uncle said he saw her when she went to bed and I knew he was lying cause he said to me she went to the shops. When I wanted to leave after the funeral he threatened me by saying hell tell the police I killed his friend. He said I owe him and I have to pay him and I did with the money I saved but he refused to let me go. He would beat me up and cuff me when I refuse to let him touch me cause he was afraid of raping me. He knew he might do like his friend so he would demand to touch me. He would bring me to work and wait for me. I couldn't escape and I have tried many times. I was afraid of what will happen if he freezes too. People will think I'm a witch and kill me. Then you came and saved me.”

That man is dead. I am going to kill him.

“ He won't blackmail or threaten you ever again. I will always protect you and I promise I will always put you first. Always.”

“ You mean that? ”

“ I do Angel. You have me now and you’ll never ever have to worry about anything ”

“ I’ll always worry about you. You are my other soulmate.”

“ but know that I can take care of myself. I’ll never do anything that will make you worry or hurt you okay? ”

“ Ok ”

“ Sleep now. You had a long day ” I kiss her forehead and listen to her heart and breathing as it gets even and she falls into a slumber. I slowly lay her on the pillow then get out of bed. I cover her body with the comforter and watch her. She is beautiful. She looks like a doll. Beautiful round face and big expressive eyes. I kiss her cold cheek and she sighs.. I walk to the closet and wear my clothes. I close the bedroom door as I walk downstairs and see the mess I made. Fuck! I still can’t believe what happened. I take my car keys and phone then leave then get in the elevator as it takes me to the parking lot. I lock my private elevator as I step out. I hope this fucker knows I’m on my way.

The drive to Umlazi takes me 15 minutes now that I know where I’m going. I park the car a few houses up the house then walk straight to that house. I am going to burn it down too when I’m done with him. It’s dark inside. The fool is sleeping. I can hear him snoring. I open the gate then close it and walk to the door. I push it hard but he doesn’t hear me cause he’s sleeping. I walk in and get to the bedroom where he’s sleeping.

“ Only him and I can see. No one else will. They will see nothing or hear nothing that will happen here ” I recite those words mentally and I can feel everything going dead quiet.

This ugly mother fucker is laying facing up and scratching his stomach. He’s going to have one rude awakening. I switch the lights on and walk to him and put my finger on his forehead. He begins to feel the heat cause he mumbles and begins to shake his head but I don’t let my finger off of him. He hisses then screams so loud, his skin begins to burn and he opens his eyes. I move my finger off of him and he jumps out of bed.

“ You!.... What the hell are you doing here! How did you get in! ”

“ I came to kill you ”

“ What! Never!. The neighbours will hear me and I won’t let you! ”

“ I don’t care cause I’m going to kill you now ”

“ What do you want from me! You took that bitch so why are you here! ”

“ Never ever call my mate a bitch! I didn’t come here to argue with you but to kill you! ”

“ Not if I kill you first! ” he bends and takes something out under the bed and I know it’s gun. I set fire on it and the bed burns. He hisses and moves away from the bed.

“ You hurt my mate. You made her kill someone then you had the audacity to put your hands on her. Make her do things she didn’t want to do and worst of all keep her like she’s your prisoner. Your slave! Who the fuck do you think you are?! ”

The little fuck takes an old pot plant and throws it on me. I duck and it falls to the floor.

“ You said you’ll kill me so here I am boy. Come and kill me.”

“ Your eyes. Your just like her. Evil! ”

I lift my hands and huge flames come out of them. He screams. I set the whole room on fire and he continues to scream. The flames engulf the whole room and the mother fucker runs to me.

“ Please don’t kill me! I swear I’ll stay away from her I swear ”

“ Don’t fucken touch me! ” I wrap my hand around his neck and throat. I lift him up then choke him.

He screams, tries to move my hand off of him but I tighten my hold on him. I choke him and I’m this close from snapping his neck into two but then I stop and he falls down. I want to hear him scream as he burns into ashes. The fire surrounds us and his skin begins to feel the heat and blisters begin to form. The blisters get big then explodes. All of his skin get burned and I watch him scream in agony on the floor. He screams until he loses his voice and can’t scream no more. I smile as I watch him burn to death.

I leave his room and the whole house is on fire now. Everything is burning down. I should have brought extra clothes damn!. But no one will see me. I walk out of the house, walk to my car and get in then drive away.

*“ May they wake up from the sleep and see the world as they know it.
No one will see me now until I let myself to be seen ”*

I recite those words as I drive back to the penthouse. I park the car then let unlock the private elevator with my code and get it. I sigh as the doors open and close behind me. I lock it again. I look around and a part of me expected to see Angel waiting for me but she's not. I'm about to walk up the stairs but something stops me. Someone is here! “ Show yourself before I kill you now! ” Flames cover me. I stand firm waiting for the person to show themselves. They are different. I don't know if they are human.

“ Shadow? ”

“ Shhhhhh. Listen ” he says.

I do as the shadow says and listen. I feel a very powerful entity in the house. The power is big and it's something I have never experienced in my life. Their power gets more and more close to me but I don't see them. T

“ No need for that . I'm not here to fight you Elson ” it's a male voice. The lights switch on and he reveals himself. This man is fucken huge. He's taller than me and bigger than me. What rope is he wearing?

“ I can't talk to you looking like that ” Clothes cover me. Pants and a T-shirt. What the fuck!

“ I'm not Elson! I'm Kabelo ”

“ Your other you, the shadow as you like to call him ”

“ He's Elson? That's his name? ”

“ Your name. Kabelo. We have to do a spell for you to finally be one. So you can stop hearing his voice in your mind. Your voice will be one.”

“ Who are you? ”

“ He's silent and not telling you anything? ” he chuckles. “ That's him. His soul that is.”

“ Why are you here? ”

“ You. You almost killed innocent people ad we can't have that. Had your mate not been here people would have died and that would have caused problems for us. ”

“ Who are you? ”

“ Your ancestor. Elson ancestor but now yours.”

“ What? ”

“ yes ”

“ What... What am I? Why did he choose to attach his soul to mine? ”

“ You were pure and innocent. Your souls called up to each other and when they got attached. We knew you were the right person.”

“ The right person for what? What am I? ” Fuck my legs feel heavy. I go sit down.

“ Your human name is Kabelo Ntanzi. Your mother is a woman who practices dark magic. She killed Elson and he attached his soul to you and gave you his powers. You can recite spells when you’ve never been taught but Elson was. They come natural to you

you don’t have to think them. You are fire. You are earth. You can bury things or people and you wake them up from the dead.... ”

“ Wait! Wait! What? ”

“ You walk between two worlds kabelo. Worlds your still yet to discover. The dark world and the light world. You are the Guardian between those two worlds cause you hold the eternal light. You are not just the guardian but you Kabelo. Are the God of eternal night.”

“ I’m a God of Eternal light? What is that? ”

“ The eternal light of life and death. It never dies down. It’s always lit. No one or anything can take or steal it from you unless they kill you which is impossible now. You love the smell of blood and the feel of it on your body and hands. You know why?..... Cause darkness calls to you. You can open gates of hell. You can summon any entity you want and they can use you to open the gates of hell and unleash evil to the world. Which is why we must do the spell to finally bind his soul to yours and your body. So he can no longer control you when your angry cause what happened here is still going to happen.”

“ This... What you’re telling me is too much. I can’t believe I’m hearing all of this ”

“ Believe it but I have to warn you and possibly ask you to stop opening the portal.”

“ The portal? ”

“ Yes. When you sent those humans to hell you opened the portal but you were quickly to close it. You must avoid doing that at all unless you’re left with no other choice then you will open it. ”

“ why mustn’t I open it? ”

“ Because your creating space for demons and many other creatures from the dead world to enter the living world and that can cause so much damage than you can ever imagine.”

“ Ok I hear you. Where do you live? ”

“ In the spiritual world but you can call to me only when you need me. Need me only Elson.”

“ Ok. ”

“ I know your mind is going in different directions so we will talk when you have woken up but Elson. You can't stay here. You need a house where it won't be easy for anyone to see you when you get upset and decide to burn something down. You need a huge and private yard surrounded by tress.”

“ Yeah I know. I realized that when I almost burned this whole place down.”

“ I will send people to watch over you and your mate. Our worlds now know your alive and they might come after you so we need you protected at all times.”

“ I can take care of myself and my mate. I don't need any protection.”

“ I wasn't asking you. You will be given protecting from the Gods. When everything is ready for the ritual to bind you, I will send someone. Kabelo Elson? ”

“ yes my ancestor? ”

“ Don't ever upset your mate. She's a very special woman. If you ever do upset her... ” he shakes his head and chuckles. God she's going to freeze my balls.

“ Freezing your balls is the last thing she will do when she's done with you. We are very happy that you two found each other again. Although you had plenty of time to find her. She is your mate and your hers. We can't wait to watch your love and powers blossom. Love her, protect her and guide her. She's a goddess and you don't want to mess with her people. Get a house ”

“ Wait. What do I call you? ”

“ I am Kelson. Elson's 4th great grandfather. We have lived for thousands and thousands of years. You will too and so will your children and grand children and others that follow.” He says then disappears.

What the fuck just happened? No. I will wake up and I'll realize that it was just a dream. I came back from killing that animal then went to bed. I look at the time fuck! It's 3:30 am. I walk upstairs and open the door. She's still sleeping and she looks beautiful. I go to the next room and shows quietly and quickly. I don't want her to know. I leave then walk back to our bedroom and get in bed. I pull her body close mine and spoon her.

“ Where are you? ” fuck!

“ I couldn't sleep ”

“ you weren't in the house. Where did you go to? ”

“ Yes it does cause you showers first before you got in bed.” Fuck! I don't want her to think I'm cheating on her.

“ Ok Angel. I went to see that fucker ” she turns and faces me.

“ Kabelo! What did you do? ”

“ He's dead.”

“ what if someone saw you? ”

“ No one did Angel. Don't worry ” I steal a quick kiss on her lips. “ your eyes are glowing. Do you see in the dark? ”

“ perfectly like it's during the day.”

“ What else can you do besides freezing us and seeing in the dark? ”

“ I can lock anything down. Whether it's doors or a person. I can make them immobile ”

“ you're scaring me ” she giggles.

“ I want to kiss you ” she keeps quiet. “ Please Angel. Let me kiss you”

“ I.... I.... ” her heartbeat beats fast. She probably thinks I want to sleep with her and I don't. I have other plans for her. Only if she'll allow me.

“ it's ok Angel. Let's sleep. ”

“ Thank you ” she turns her and I spoon her again.

She can feel that I'm totally aroused and I'm not going to hide that. She has to know that she does this to me and not ashamed. I give her a kiss on her neck and hold her close to me as she sleeps. I soon follow her and sleep.

Fuck my dick is so fucken hard it hurts. It doesn't help that Angel is sleeping on top of me and I don't know how she ended on top of me. I

know she can feel it too and it doesn't bother her or it does. I don't know but I'm about to combust on both of us. I try to move Angel off of me but she clings to me tight and mumbles something. I love that she loves being on top of me.

" Angel... Angel " I kiss her forehead and run my hands on her back to her ass. Fuck I shouldn't have done that cause she's not wearing any underwear and her. Her ass is big and those globes are round and perfect. I can just imagine fucking her from behind and how she will look. Damn!. Her boobs are squished tight on my chest.

" Angel baby wake up.. " She moves her body and I can feel my pre-cun leaking. " Angel! Wake up " she sighs and shakes her head. Fuck this shit.

I hold her then flip us and she lays on her back. Her eyes flick open and she gasps. I get between her thighs and her T-shirt rises. My eyes team her legs and I see smooth cappuccino skin on her thick thighs and stomach. I want to see more. I look at her and she has her eyes totally shut. I smirk.

" Angel. I'm going to take off this T-shirt. Is that okay with you? " she lift her hands over head and I can see her nipples pointing up. " Tell me Angel "

" You can take it off " I smile

M hands go to her waist and I put them there not moving then. She holds her breath. I move them up slowly under her T-shirt and I stop just below her breasts. She swallows hard and her breathing changes. I can feel her blood moving all over her body. Damn.

" Look at me Angel " our eyes lock like she out a spell on me cause they are drawing me in. " Don't look away " she nods.

My hands move up more and I cub her breasts and her bottom lip disappears in her mouth. They are full and feel so damn good. I kneed them then use my index finger and thumb and massage them. Her thighs instantly open more and I kneel still cause if I move a little more. I will be right there where I'm dying to get in right now and lose myself. I move my body downward so my dick can be in the mattress and not on her them move forward with my chest and suckle her nipples through her T-shirt and her back arches. Her skin might feel cold on my hands but there's nothing cold about her. She reacts

to my every touch. The T-shirt gets wet as I suckle on her nipples and the sweet sounds she makes fill my ears. I lift my body up then quickly remove that T-shirt over her head.

She's breathing hard. Her beautiful boobs and that dark areola begs me to just lick it. My dick hates me right now cause I'm denying it what it needs. To feel her and become one with her. Her hands go to my arms and she holds them. She's preparing herself for whatever I might do. She's giving me her body even though she hasn't said so with words. I cup her face and she kisses my palm. Her scent is driving me crazy cause I can smell how wet she is.

" You're so beautiful. I have seen many beautiful women but you. You're one of a kind. They've got nothing on you Angel " she smiles. I move my hand from her face to her neck. To her boobs and touch that small stomach that has what looks like a small cute belly. I love it. Her breath hitches and gets released with every part of her body I touch with my hands. I look down as I move my hands down to her most sensitive part of her body and touch it. Her fingers dig deep in my skin and my head shoots up to her face. Her eyes are shut and she keeps biting her lip and her neck is exposed. I wonder what her blood might taste like. It will be my drug.

My balls are now heavy and my dick wants to fucken release right now. I separate her vulva with my fingers and she's wet. then my thumb goes to her clit and I play with it watching her face. She moans, makes sweet sounds. Her head moves from left to right then her hips naturally move as she mimics my moves. My left arm goes to her shoulders and my fingers go to her hair and gently grab it. My thumb on her clit moves fast now and her moans get loud. She's close to reaching her orgasm. I claim her lips and she welcomes in her warm mouth and I don't hold back. I kiss her deeply stealing every breath she takes. Her hands go to my head and she holds it like she doesn't want to let go. She moans in my mouth and her hips move fast. Next time I want her still.

We are both sweating like we're actually making love. I push in one finger in her and press my thumb on her clit and she moans loudly and tries to move her head from me but I hold it down and continue to kiss her. Her body shakes with spasms and she climaxes. I finger fuck

her gently until she calms down. She's looking at me with sleepy eyes. Beautiful. I move my finger out of her and my thumb off. I move my arms up and my hand to my face. I lick my finger and thumb. She gasps. I lick them clean looking at her.

I kiss her hard and deeply and move my hand to my dick. I lift my body off of her and kneel between her legs. Fuck I want to bury my face on her sweet nectar and eat it until she begs me to stop. I grab my dick and her eyes follow me and she gasps and her mouth forms an O. I Jack my dick up and down watching her face and her eyes are on my dick and she can't take her eyes off of it. My eyes go between her pussy and face and I jack faster but Angel sits up then grabs my dick with both hands. I remove mine and feel her hands hacking me off. I listen to the feel of her hands in my dick watching the her face and the way she breathes. Her pink tongue that keeps licking her lips. One of her hands go to my balls and she plays with them. Oh Fuck! Her grip tightens on my dick and I'm close. I cover her hand with my mine and Jack myself harder then all the blood flows to my dick and I try not to cum but her thumb massages my pink mushroom head and I let go. My cum shoots straight to her chest and neck. Some lands on her face. I groan loud as out hands Jack me off until I stop coming. She has a smile on her face like she can't believe it. She touches my cum and feels it in her fingers then smells it. I chuckle. She puts one finger in her mouth to taste it then looks at me. Oh fuck no she's going to make me get hard again.

"I like the taste." I smile.

"I love how you taste." She smiles. Beautiful. I pull her up to me and mash my lips with hers. She clings to me tight wrapping her arms around my neck and I grab her ass and her legs go around my waist. I manoeuvre us from the bed then put my feet in the carpet. I walk us to the bathroom with our lips locked to each other until we get into the shower.

"When are you going to claim me?" She asks removing her lips from me. Her lips are swollen from my kisses.

"Patience Angel." I'm going to do things the right way with her. She's mine to have.

CHAPTER 35

#NotEdited.

After taking a long bath and washing each other's bodies. We are now going down stairs with our hands threaded. It feels like we made love and we haven't. I'm just imagining what it's going to feel like after we have done it since I now feel like I'm on top of the world. I want her to be on top of the world too. I have to discuss something with her though and I don't know how she's going to react to it.

We stop walking and stand still. I'm surprised cause the apartment looks exactly the same before I lost my cool and almost burned the whole place. We look at each other surprised. Who did this and when cause I never heard anyone and it should have taken them long to clean this mess up and get the exact same furniture. Was it my ancestor Kelson?

“ you cleaned the whole place last night? ”

“ no Angel it wasn't me ”

“ if it wasn't you then who did? ”

“ It might have been my.... ”

The elevator doors open and three people walk in carrying what looks like it's food. Angel stands closer to me and holds my hand tighter. She feels scared and nervous. Who the fuck are these cause I made sure I locked the private elevator.

“ Good morning God.... ”

“ Who are you and how did you get in? ”

“ we are your guards sir. We were sent here by the Goddess to protect you and the goddess. Whatever you need us to do.” Says one guy. “ It wasn't Kelson who sent them here?. Then who did. “ my name is Zayon, he is Faye and she is Mira.”

“ The Kelson family? ”

“ Yes sir ”

“ Nice to meet you all. I'm Kabelo and this is my woman Angel... I mean Thobeka. I'm the only one who calls her angel. Did you clean here? ”

“ we did sir and we brought you breakfast ” Zayon says. They put the brown paper bags down.

“ Thank you for cleaning. I guess I won’t be cooking then ” angel says smiling.

“ It depends what’s in there. I’m not eating junk food ” and miss out on her cooking? Hell no.

They take the food out and it is junk food. Burgers, chips, doughnuts and all that greasy food.

“ You eat that for breakfast? ” I ask them.

“ Yes sir ” They say looking at each other.

“ Ok you eat that and I’ll wait for real breakfast. Angel? ”

“ Yes I’ll make you breakfast ” she says walking to the kitchen and I follow her. They go to the dining table after taking their food and eat. I sit on the chair and watch my angel cook. She keeps looking at me and smiling. I wink at her and she giggles. She’s so beautiful.

“ you’re starrng ”

“ I can’t help myself. I’m blinded by your beauty ” she blushes. “ Angel? ” she mixes a batter. She’s making pancakes cakes. Yum. She looks at me. “ I want us to talk about something ”

“ That’s sounds serious ”

“ I want you to look for a place to stay... . ” fuck no her face falls. “ No baby. I want you to look for a house where the two of us are going to stay. That’s what I wanted to say ”

“ What’s wrong with this place? ”

“ Angel you saw what happened. I almost burned this whole building and we can’t afford to have that happen again ”

“ You’re right. We can’t afford to have you living here sir. You’re a danger to the society ”

“ oh really now? ” she laughs “ you want me to show you how dangerous I can be? ”

“ You had your chance and you chickened out mister ” she says laughing.

“ I will remind you of that when I’m ramming you from behind.... ”

“ oh my God. We have people in the house ”

“ I don’t care. ” I really don’t.

“ How am I going to start looking for a house? ”

“ You can ask Mira to help you in the meantime while I ask Calvin my assistant to come here.”

“ Shouldn’t we be looking for a house together? ”

“ you want that? ”

“ I would love that ”

“ Ok angel. I’m going to go to the office, You will use my laptop and look for a house preferably where there are no neighbours and.... ”

“ I know what you need Khawula. I’ll make sure I find house that will have everything we need. I’ve got this ” I get up and walk around the kitchen island. I stand behind her as she’s busy making pancakes.

I run my nose on her nape and kiss her soft skin. She arches her back and that makes her ass to brush my crotch. She raises her head up and looks at me.

“ You’re always hard ” she whispers.

“ around you only ” I flex my hips against her ass. Her breath hitches and her mouth opens wide. I can’t help myself so I cover her mouth with mine.

My hand goes to her neck and I wrap my hand around it and kiss her deeply. I get lost in her kisses. The way her body melts on me and how she feels. Damn if this continues to happen I’m not sure I’m going to keep the promise I made to myself.

“ kabela... ”

“ Yes angel ” I answer her between kisses

“ Were not alone ”

“ Don’t worry about them.”

“ But... . ” I pull from the kiss and cub her face.

“ What are you doing to me? ”

“ Nothing ” she looks at me with those damn eyes.

“ has anyone ever told you that your eyes are hypnotic? ”

“ That’s why I avoid looking at people in their eyes. My grandmother used to say that my eyes would even haunt the God of darkness himself. ” she shakes her head and flips the pancake. “ please move so I can plate for you ” I steal one kiss from her then step back after fixing my hard dick. I sit down.

“ Does anyone want pancakes? ”

“ Yes ma’am ” they all say walking in and sitting down.

“ uhm sir what do we calm you? ”

“ Sir is just fine ”

“ but... ”

“ Mira ” she keeps quiet and looks down. Angel looks at Mira and frowns.

“ Angel? ” she looks at me “ what’s wrong? ”

“ Mira? ” Mira’s head goes up. “ Are we going to have a problem? ”

“ No Miss ” she shakes her head.

“ Everything is fine baby ” angel tells me. She fills our plates with pancakes then brings chocolate syrup and berries. She cuts different fruits then put them inside a bowl and brings yoghurt “ Enjoy ” she says sweetly and sits down next to me. She plates for me then herself. I eat her pancakes and she shakes her head. We eat like that until we finish her pancakes.. She fills a bowl with mixed fruits then pours yoghurt.

“ we’re eating on the same bowl ” she gives me a spoon and we both dig in. I love eating like with her. From now on we’ll eat on the same plate. Anything we eat well eat it from the same plate or bowl.

“ So what are you guys? ” Angel asks.

“ We are just guardians Goddess. We guard supernatural beings with powers. Those who know they have it and those who don’t know. We keep them safe from any harm.” Zayon says.

“ What powers do you have? ” I ask all of them.

“ I have the power to temporary blind people ” Zayon says

“ I have the power to heal ” Faye answers

“ And I have the power to confuse people ” Angel laughs and shakes her head.

“ If you try that shit on me. I’ll kill you ” Angel says so softly. You would deny that those words have just come out of her sweet soft mouth.

“ Not if she wants to go to hell. That goes for all you. You know why you’re here. So please don’t give us any problems or reasons to send you where you don’t belong ”

“ So it is true. You are the eternal light. You can summon the dead and open the gates of hell. You can give life to those who need it or give them a peaceful journey to heaven. I used to think that you were just a story they used to tell us.” Mira says eating her pancakes.

“ How do you know it’s not just a story? ”

“ cause you just said you will send me to death if I try some shit.”

“ I will send you there. Without thinking twice. Do your job and don't talk to us like your familiar with us. Know your place Mira.”

“ I'm sorry sir. I didn't mean to overstep ”

My phone rings somewhere in the lounge. I get up and walk there. I look around until I spot it on the side book table. I sit down and pick it up. I don't know these numbers.

“ Hello? ”

“ Hi. Is this Mr Ntanzi? ”

“ It is.”

“ Oh Hi. I wasn't sure if I got the right numbers.... ”

“ Who are you and what do you want ”

“ I am Lisa. I have a company that I run and I thought we could go for coffee and talk about a business proposal I have for you? ”

“ Make an appointment with my assistant since you managed to get hold of my private number.” I hang up. I bet it's that woman who wants us to train her girls.

Angel walks upstairs and I follow her. She really has a beautiful body and those clothes have to go. All of them. I get in and close the door.

“ Angel? ” she looks at me.

“ Shouldn't you be getting ready for work? ”

“ You're upset. What's wrong? ” she sighs and lays facing up on the bed.

“ I don't like the way Mira looks at me. Or my clothes for that matter ”

“ did she say something? ”

“ No I could tell by the way she was eyeing me up and down ”

“ do you care about what she thinks about your clothes? Cause they don't define you baby ”

“ I know they don't define me but I also don't want to embarrass you ”

I walk to the bed and kneel between her legs.

“ Get up and look at me ” she sits up.

“ You could wear a coal sack and you would still be beautiful. I don't want you to worry about what people think of you okay? ”

“ Ok but... ”

“ No buts. I know you wear long and baggy clothes with sleeves cause you don’t want people to touch your skin right? ” she nods. “ Do you like how you look when your wearing your clothes? ”

“ No I don’t ” she says shaking her head.

“ Do you want to do something about it? ”

“ I do ” I kiss her cheek then get up and go to the closet. I take out one of my credit cards and walk back.

“ Take this and buy whatever you need. Faye and Mira will go with you to the mall.”

“ I don’t want to go with Mira ”

“ I could ask Calvin to help you if you want. You can have lunch while looking for a house too ”

“ does he have taste? ”

“ he does Angel.”

“ ok I would like him to accompany me ”

“ promise me you won’t think that I’m trying to do the same thing with you that I did with her ”

“ What is it? ”

“ The girl I thought I was going to marry once went with Calvin for shopping. I had asked Calvin to take her so she can buy whatever she needs. I know Calvin might say something so I don’t want it to upset you ”

“She was your girlfriend vat the time so it’s not a big deal ” she shrugs her shoulders.

“ and I thought she was going to live with me here in Durban so.... ”

“ so you also asked her to look for a house? ” I nod.

“ I know it... . ”

“ baby it’s okay. You thought you had a future with her and you wanted her to be comfortable and happy. Why would you think that would get me mad ? ”

“ Cause it’s the same thing now. What I did with her, I’m doing it with you and... ”

“ And nothing. She’s your past and I’m your future. It might look the same but your reasons now are completely different from then. Stop worrying ok. I know you have a past and I can’t judge you for it. You’re here with me now and that’s all that matters.” I smile

“ Thank you angel ” I pull her up and his her tight.

“ we’re they close? ”

“ I’m not sure but Calvin is loyal to me okay angel. He’s like my little brother and he loves who I love. ” uh what? Did I just say that?

We look at each other silently.

“ uhm let me to get ready for work ”

“ yeah I’ll go start looking while waiting for Calvin ” she says. Fuck why does it feel awkward now.

“ yeah I’ll call him while I’m changing ”

“ Ok ”

“ Ok ” we look at each other again then she leaves. I sigh. What the hell?!

I can’t believe that slipped out of my mouth and somehow it doesn’t feel wrong that I said it but my reaction to it after I said it suggests that I regret it and she might take it the wrong way. That I regret it. Fuck!

I finish dressing up and walk out of our bedroom. I send Calvin a message to come to the penthouse. Angel and Mira are on the laptop browsing through houses. I stand there and watch her. She turns her head and looks at me. Her lips curl up and she smiles. She stands and walks up to me.

“ My! My! My! You look dashing.” She runs her hands on my waist coat.

“ Thank you angel. I aim to please ”

“ I am very pleased. Do you look like this everyday? ”

“ Sometimes. It depends.”

“ Hmmm I think I like the naked you much better than the clothes you but damn you look handsome. I feel jealous ”

“ Don’t be angel. My eyes are on you only. I belong to you and no one else. You’re my mate.”

“ And you’re mine too. I won’t let you go for anyone like I did last time.” Instead a kiss from her.

“ you’re going to be late ”

“ I am late angel. I was supposed to be at work hours ago but someone wouldn’t get off of me ”

“ I was sleeping comfortably. You warm me up.”

“ When I finally claim you. You won’t ever feel cold inside.”

“ I can’t wait ” she smiles. “ I saw something on your computer ”

“ What? ”

“ Uhm...You forgot to close the window. It was the website about different types of toys and furniture for the club? ” Fuck! I close my eyes.

“ Angel I... . ”

“ Are you into sex clubs? ”

“ I own one with my brothers ”

“ You own one? That’s where you work? ”

“ Yes.”

“ So... you also participate? ”

“ No ”

“ Are you a Dom? ”

“ What do you know about it? ”

“ many things. I read allot so I have read books about Dom and subs relationships ” what?

“ I didn’t think you would... ”

“ Would what? Know about sex clubs? ”

“ Yes.”

“ I know a lot. You are a Dom aren’t you? ”

“ Not just a Dom. Well talk about this later ” my phone rings.

“ Calvin? ”

“ Please let me up sir ”

“ ok ” I walk to the elevator and punch the code.

“ How did you all get in here? ”

“ through the elevator. They gave us the code ” Zayon says.

The doors open and Calvin walks in carrying papers.

“ Good morning sir... . Morning everyone ” his eyes goes to Faye, Zayon. Mira and then Angel who’s in my arms. He puts the papers on the dining table.

“ Calvin. Meet... . ” I introduce the other three as my body guards. “ and this is my woman. Thobeka. Angel. This is Calvin I w as telling you about ”

“ Hi Calvin. Nice to meet you ” Nagel says.

“ Nice to meet you all and you Angel... ” I give him a look “ I mean Thobe ” he says smiling and pulling out his hand so they can shake.

“ She’s afraid of germs ” I tell Calvin

“ Oh we’ll get something for her. Sir I need you to sign these papers since you went bat work yesterday ” his eyes goes to angel like it was you who kept my boss.

I sit on the chair and sign all those damn papers after reading them.

He tells me about all the meeting I have that are waiting for me since he scheduled them and I’m already behind.

“ I have to go since I’m already late. Angel please let Calvin know what you need to be done. Mira and Faye will drive you, take one of the cars. Calvin will show you. Zayon you’re coming with me. I’ll see you later ” I stand up and give her a kiss. Calvin sorts the papers and puts them in briefcase and gives it to Zayon. We get in the elevator and leave for work.

I drive so he can be familiar with the road.

“ Zayon. Where do you all live? ”

“ Since we are assigned to you, we’re going to be living here in Durban. I was guarding someone in Cape Town before I was assigned to you.” He answers.

“ Tell me about Faye and Mira ”

“ Faye will guard your mate with his life like How I would. Mira too but sometimes she likes trouble. She let’s her mouth get in the way and that always gets her on trouble.”

“ I don’t want my mate to feel unsafe around her. If she does anything stupid she will pay cause my mate is my everything to me. Make sure she understands that ”

“ I will sir but she know your mate is a goddess.. She would be asking for trouble if she tried anything stupid ”

“ Have you ever guarded a God? ”

“ No sir. This is an honour ”

“ You said a Goddess sent you here. Who is it? ”

“ Goddess Athena sir. She’s the one who sent us here on behalf if your ancestors. ” hmm.

“ Goddess Athena? What is she going to gain from all of this? ” shadow says.

“ oh you want to talk now. After keeping quiet when your ancestor showed up ”

“ you had to talk to him so you can know him. After the ritual is done. You will no longer hear my voice. Everything I was and knew will be transferred to you. We will be one person. All the things I have experienced and people I knew you will know all of them.”

“ I don't want to know gross details about you ” he chuckles.

“ don't worry. I have never loved a woman before. Everything I did was about my job and protecting people. That's all.”

“ that's good cause I wouldn't want to find myself loving someone I don't know ”

“ Thobe is our mate. Only her and no one else.”

“ she's ours.” I tell the shadow.

“ then why don't you want to claim her? What are you waiting for?”

“ I want to do things right with her ”

“ what you mean? ”

“ She's pure. She doesn't know a man. This morning was the first time she was touched like that. And I her mind she might she thought she was ready but I'm not sure.”

“ she is ready. She asked you when are we claiming her? ”

“ cause she's afraid that if I don't claim her I might leave her again and I won't. I hurt her and I want to do things right with her.”

“ you keep saying do things right with her. What the hell does that mean? ”

“ it means I want to marry her first before I claim her and make her mine.”

“ what? Are you serious? ”

“ You know I am. That's why you're excited ”

“ are you kidding me? I'm more than excited.” I chuckle shaking my head. Zayon looks at me frowning.

I park the car then step out of it and walk the elevator. We get in and up it goes.

“ You can leave and do what you need to do. If I need you I'll call you.”

“ Sir I'm not supposed to leave your side ”

“ You do know that I can take care of myself right? I don't need a baby sitter. Go and make sure my mate is safe wherever they a real or you can just sit at the reception and wait for me until I'm done.”

“ I’ll do that sir. Sit and wait for you ” I shake my head and take my briefcase from him.

“ Good morning Master K. Good morning sir ” they greet us.

“ good morning. Please show Zayon around the office. Here. ” They nod.

“ Sir Zayon. Please follow me ” one receptionist at the front desks says.

I go to my office and sit down. I have so much work to do and I have to call Thulani. Later during the day as my head is busy buried in a paper work after the conference call I just had with many of our suppliers Jess walks in.

“ Don’t you know how to knock? ”

“ I’m sorry sir... . ”

“ That how you come in? In your master’s office? ” I look at her. She looks down. “ get out and knock ”

“ Yes. Master K. I’m sorry Master K ” she closes the door behind her and knocks.

I keep quiet until I feel she’s about to give up. She’s exhausted.

“ Come in Jess ”

“ Good afternoon Master K ”

“ You may sit Jess.” She does. “ What’s wrong? ”

“ That woman sir. Yesterday she showed up at the club with three girls. She was pretending to be someone who’s looking for a Dom. Her and those girls. When some of our clients took them to private rooms they asked for money even though they did nothing.”

“ They did what? ”

“ I’m serious sir. Our clients were so shocked I had to call them in the office and explain to them that we had no idea what they were doing.”

“ Damn Jess why didn’t you call me? ”

“ I wanted to handle it on my own sir but I can see this woman is going to be trouble for us and I m close to killing her ” I chuckle.

“ you’re exhausted Jess. When was the last time you saw your husband? ” she sighs and sits heavily on the chair.

“ This distance between us is causing problems kabela. I don’t know what’s going on cause he’s distant.” She’s afraid Jacob is cheating. Damn that fool.

“ Take a few weeks and go see your husband. I’ll call Bishop and ask him to send Shamiso here so she can hold a fort for you. Talk to Jacob and sort things out. I don’t want you to lose your marriage cause you were busy focusing on the club. I would never forgive myself cause you guys are our family. Do you want me to talk to him? ”

“ If I fail then I’ll tell you. Thank you for listening.”

“ Anytime Jess. You know that. ”

“ So how do we deal with this woman? ”

“ She called me earlier this morning asking for a meeting. I don’t know where she got my numbers. I told her to make an appointment. Everything that happened was recorded right? ”

“ Yes sir ”

“ Ok I’ll log in to the system and watch it. For know please call Thulani one of our clients. Tell him I want to see him now and call the clients that were with those women and tell them I want to see them tomorrow at 10 am.”

“ I will do so sir.” I get up and hug her. She’s surprised.

“ you’re like my little sister. If Jacob is messing with you. He will deal with me.” She smiles.

“ what’s wrong with you? ” she frowns.

“ what you mean? ”

“ you have just hugged me. In all the years I have known you have never ever done that. Even a handshake kabela is something you never do ”

“ people change ”

“ who is she?... Please God don’t tell me it’s Amahle ”

“ Hell no. It’s someone else ” she smiles

“ Thank God. I can’t wait to meet her.”

“ she’s going to like you ”

“ I like her already cause she has made an impact on you. She’s must be special ”

“ she’s more than that ”

“ My God you love her... ”

“ ah Jess well talk. Get me Thulani ”

“ You are in love.... ” she sings walking out and I chuckle.

I'm in love? Am I in love with her already?. I smile and shake my head.

CHAPTER 36

[PREVIOUS](#) PAGE 39 [NEXT](#)

NotEdited.

Jess sends me the footage and I see what is going on. I have no idea who this woman is and she has the audacity to come into my club and do all that shit. If word spreads out that this is what happened in our club it might damage our reputation. She has no idea whom she's messing with and she will be sorry cause she's messing with our money. I have to find out everything I can about her before I pay her a visit. She's going to learn a lesson she will never forget. My landline phone rings once and I pick up.

" Master K. Sir Thulani is here to see you "

" Send him through " I hang up.

Thulani walks in and he's wearing construction protective gear. He's got his own construction company so he must have been at the site working. I stand up and we shake hands.

" Master K. I hope I'm not in trouble " he says sitting down.

" No you're not. And again Thulani no master K. We're not in the club."

" I forget " he says. " what's up KB " I smirk.

" I need something from you that might take you away from your work "

" Ok. You want me to do something for you out of the city? "

" No. Jess is taking a few weeks from the club. I'm going to ask Shamiso from the club to come here and help out. She's been with us for years so she knows the ins and outs of the club. She knows every and she can handle it but I need someone to help her. Someone I trust and someone I think could be my right hand man here. Be my eyes and ears. " he looks at me surprised.

" You think that person is me? "

" Man you've been one of our first clients from Durban ever since we opened the club in Sandton. I think this would be a great opportunity for you to see what it takes to really run a club like this. You could learn allot and who knows what might happen "

" Wow I never thought you see me as just more than a member in the club. This is... wow "

" You've been loyal to us from day one. I have seen that and you've never given us any problems. Of course you will be paid cause you'll be working but if you accept this offer you will not participate in anything at the club like you won't participate in any of the plays that are taking place. If you want to play, you'll do it in private. The next coming year you'll have a free membership. So what do you say? "

“ I have a business that I run with my brother as you know so taking this job would mean I get to put money in our business and we really need that now. How much are we talking about? ”

“ Thulani you depend on contracts and tenders that you get to work and you know you can stay not working for months sometimes cause there’s no work. I know you’re used to being your own boss but working here doesn’t mean I’ll be treating you like an employee. You’ll be my right hand man as I’ve said. Yes you will report to me but I expect you to fix issues by yourself unless I’m really needed. Look how about I offer you R50k a month after deductions of course. Deal? ”

“ hmmm R80k and I’ll the job ”

“ R55k ” I offer him.

“ R75k ”

“ Nope R60k ” he laughs.

“ Man I pay more than that for my membership ” we laugh.

“ Ok look. I know you also got us new members to join our club so if you increase the number of people to join our club that would be great. I’ll offer you 10% commission for ever need member you sign in our club.”

“ How much are you offering me then? ”

“ I’ll pay you a hundred grand a month. That’s R1.2 million a year. That’s my final offer

“ I’ll take it. When do I start? ”

“ Tomorrow. Be here early so Jess can show you everything. Shamiso will also work with you so you can know how everything goes. You will get a contract tomorrow that you will sign and bring back.”

“ You’re really serious aren’t you? ”

“ Man come on. You think I would joke about this? ”

“ Obviously not. Man thank you. You don’t know how this means to me.”

“ You know now that since you’ll be my right man it doesn’t just end here at work. It means everywhere. You’re part of our family now and my brothers and I will protect you and your family. All of you are under our protection. Be trustworthy and loyal to us and we’ll have a great relationship. Fuck with our money, business and family. I will take away everything you hold dear to your heart. I will kill each and everyone one of them. Do we understand each other? ”

“ wouldn’t expect anything less from you. You can trust me with your life as I trust you with mine. I promise you my loyalty.” He takes out a knife and slices his palm. I open my drawer and take out a knife pocket. I slice my palm but I don’t really don’t cause I can’t give him the blood of God’s. I make him think that I did as we both shake hands with our “ bloody ” hands.

“ By blood I bind you to your words to be loyal and truthful to me. And It is but blood that I will kill you should you betray me.” He looks at me shocked then nods. I remove my hand from him and he looks at his palm as I give him a

tissue to wipe the blood. He looks at mine and notices that the wound is healing itself.

“ What?... ”

“ I want you to find out everything you can about a woman called Lisa. She runs an escort agency somewhere around the city. She came yesterday and did something she shouldn't have done. Pay anyone to make sure you get everything about her before we pay her a visit.”

“ KB what just happened? ”

“ Stick with me and I'll take you places my friend.”

“ Ok. I'm going now. Have to let my brother know.”

“ Welcome to the family ”

“ I promise I won't let you down ” I nod and he walks out.

I phone HR and tell them to prepare a contract for Thulani. I have a great feeling about him and I know he's going to do great. I continue to work until I realize that I haven't had anything to eat for lunch and it's almost 4pm and my stomach grumbles. Why haven't I heard from Angel and Calvin?. How far are they with shopping or they forgot about me cause I saw emails from my credit card about how much money they are spending. I am angel is spending my money with the help of Calvin of course. I decide to call her but her phone rings outside my office. I hang up and the door opens.

She walks in looking absolutely beautiful. My mouth hangs open cause I don't know who this woman is. She stands there blushing and looks down like she's shy. I slowly stand up and walk towards her. She's wearing a long dress that hugs her curves beautiful and shows her cleavage. It's a black dress and the contrast against her skin is absolutely beautiful. Wait.... What?

“ Angel?....Did you cut your hair? ”

“ I did. Do you like it? ” her hair is now short and I'm not happy at all. I loved her hair.

“ But you didn't have to cut it. I loved it ”

“ Well I needed a change.” She says giggling.

“ You're beautiful Angel ” I pull her close to me and run my hands on her body. She wraps her arms around my neck and looks up at me. She has the perfect height.

“ Thank you for letting me down your money ”

“ You're my woman. My mate and you deserve only the best. This is nothing Angel ”

“ This means allot to me. Thank you. I feel beautiful... . . . ”

“ You have always been beautiful. Clothes just add to your beauty ”

“ I.... ”

I shut her up with a kiss and run my hands on her body. She moans and kisses me deep with so much passion. I lose myself in her kisses cause she feels so damn good. I run my hands to her head and grab her hair but it moves.... Wait it comes off. She laughs.

“ It's a wig. I know you love my hair so I wouldn't dare cut it off ”

“ I never told you I love it ” I run kisses on her neck

“ You don’t have to. I just know it ”

“ I’m hungry ” I tell her

“ For.... ”

“ Don’t give me any ideas angel cause I might just eat you ”

“ Why don’t you eat me ”

The door opens and Mira comes in carrying brown paper bags. Fuck this girl!

“ Get the fuck out and knock! ” It comes so harsh I don’t feel sorry. She stands there shocked then quickly leaves.

“ You’re scary when your hungry ” Angel says cubing my face.

“ I could have been buried deep in you when she walked in. Do3snt she know she has to knock? ”

“ She has a crush on you. She’s attracted to you ”

Angel says walking away and stands next to the window and looks outside. I follow her and stand behind her. The girl knocks and I ignore her. I hug angel from the back and she lays her head in my chest.

“ I’m not attracted to any woman other than you. That silly crush I hers will go away. I want you. Only you angel. You’re the one I need in my life okay? ”

“ What if her crush doesn’t go away cause she’s going to be around us for a long time ”

“ is she saying some things to get a reaction from you? ” I look at her through the window. She shakes her head.

“ No she hasn’t but I saw how her eyes dilated when she saw you. Even now ”

“ Look at me angel ” she turns.

“ You don’t have to feel threatened by other women. I don’t see them the way I see you or look at you. I don’t want to do things to them the way I want to with you. You’re mine. You’re it for me okay? ”

“ I know but I get scared that I won’t measure up to the status you out me on. What if I don’t satisfy you the way you need? ”

“ And what if I don’t angel?. What if I fail to love you the right way and make you happy. I’m also scared of that but I know together we can figure it out okay? ”

“ Ok. What are you waiting for? ” she asks me.

“ I don’t understand ”

“ why haven’t you claimed me yet? ”

“ Angel... ”

“ I swear I’m still pure. ” Damn. I remember the time I used to tell bishop I don’t do virgins and I meant it that time but now. I want to break her hymen so bad.

“ I know you’re pure angel. I want to do things right with you ”

“ You keep saying that but what do you mean? ” Fuck this!.

“ I don’t want us to rush things. Just give me some time and I swear I’ll claim you and make you mine ” she sighs disappointed.

“ Maybe we shouldn’t be sleeping in the same bed together cause it’s going to be hard.”

“ Hell no ”

“ but... .. ”

“ There are things we can do that won’t involve penetration. We can still pleasure ourselves. Just be patient love okay? ” her eyes get big and she smiles.

“ You called me love ”

“ I know I did ”

“ why? ”

“ Why not? ”

“ that would mean that you feel something for me ”

“ you think?... What are we doing here if I didn’t feel something for you? ”

“ I am your mate but you might not feel the way I feel ”

“ I don’t know how you feel cause you haven’t told me ” she looks down. “ This chemistry between us angel what do you think it is if I don’t feel something for you? The way we call on to each other. What do you call it? ”

“ physical attraction and emotional attraction ”

“ It is but it’s also unexplainable. I crave it. I need it. I need you and I don’t want to live my life without you or experience anything else without you next to me. I want to be where you want to be. Do things with you that you love. I want to be your everything. I don’t want you to live without me cause I won’t let that happen....”

“ I..... ”

“ Shhhhh Angel. I know you also feel like we have known each other for years. Everything just happens naturally with us. We don’t force things. We connect in a level no one can understand. We complete each other up in every way. Tell me if I’m wrong ”

“ You’re not ”

“ Why did you save yourself. You could have given anyone your virginity but you chose to keep it. Why? ”

“ It was decision I made for myself. To keep my virtue for my mate but after you told me that you’re going to get married to someone I was devastated. I didn’t want to keep it anymore and I was going to lose it to some guy we worked with but then I couldn’t go ahead with it. I was so afraid so I told myself I will wait for the right time and here you are. This is the right time with the right person who’s meant to be the only man I will ever share my body with.”

“ Thank you for the gift you are going to give me. I promise I will cherish it and do many nasty things with it too ” she laughs. “ but seriously angel. I l.....”

The door opens and I turn around. A woman I don’t know walks in followed by Calvin. What the fuck is this.

“ Sir I’m so sorry I tried to stop her but she wouldn’t listen and she just.... ” I raise my hand up and Calvin keeps quiet. I am fuming mad cause some how

today woman I don't fuck know just walk in my office without knocking. I take a deep breath then I feel her hand soothing my back calming me down.

"I know you're about to lose it but please calm down." She plates a kiss on my back and I breath out. I turn and look at her.

"I'm hungry. Let's go and eat "

"Why don't you hear what she has to say then you'll come home and I'll feed you. I'm going to go and cook a storm for you. What would you like to eat? "

"you " she giggles.

"Besides me. "

"Anything angel. As long as it is made by you "

"Ok baby " she kisses my cheek but I hold her face and give her a breath-taking kiss. She cubs my face then walks out. She's damn beautiful. I'm so lucky.

"Sir I can call security.... "

"It's okay Calvin. Make me a cup of tea "

"Yes sir. " He closes the door behind him.

I walk to my desk and sit down. I look at this woman who has the balls to just walk in my office and disturb me and my mate. She walks in and pulls a chair. I raise my eyebrow at her

she stops and clutches her bag. I go through my papers and what I need to do. 15 minted passes then Calvin walks in. He places a tray with my hot tea and muffins in front of me.

"The Mrs made sure I buy these so you can have something to eat in the meantime before you go home "

"She's the best isn't she? "

"She's really is an angel " he says and walks out laughing. I shake my head smiling.

I drink my tea and take a bite of the muffin. It's not bad. I lift my eyes and look at this woman who's still standing here and she opens her mouth to talk but I cock my head and she keeps quiet. She stands there until I finish my tea and muffins. I'm still fucken irritated with her. Calvin comes and collects the tray. He looks at the woman, shakes his head.

"Calvin. Please tell this woman to leave my office and make an appointment. I run a legal business here. "

"You heard the boss. Come and make an appointment "

"But... " I point my finger at the door. She sighs and walks out.

This wan has no idea whom she's fucking with. I'll teach her a lesson she will never forget.

"Zayon? " I say and he walks in before I even finish.

"Sir "

"Do you guys on your payroll? "

"Uh no sir "

"You do now. I want you to follow the woman that has just left here now. Get some guys to follow her everywhere she goes until I tell you to stop tailing

her. They will be paid obviously but for now follow her until you organize just two guys. Ones you trust.”

“ I’m on it sir. ”

“ I’ll drive myself home, you can take the car.” He leaves.

My mind is no longer here at work. I decided to go to the club and see how things are going. I wear my jacket then take my briefcase and walk out. Calvin is in the phone and he mouths for me to wait. Sometimes I let Calvin get away with all of things. He hangs up.

“ Sir... ”

“ Cal where’s the company card? ” he looks down guilty.

“ I was going to leave it at your desk ”

“ Is the money I’m paying you not enough? ”

“ What? Of course sir you do ”

“ Then why are you still keeping it? ”

“ because it’s fun spending other people’s money ” he’s not ashamed to say it. I shake my head.

“ Buy what you need then I want it on my desk tomorrow morning ”

“ Have I ever told you are the best big brother slash boss ever? ”

“ Only when you spend my money ” he laughs. “ Have you found someone who’s going to help you? ”

“ Almost sir but I have to confirm tomorrow if they be available ”

“ Ok. Let me know. I’ll see you tomorrow ”

“ Sir before you leave Mr Gumede has requested a meeting with you ”

“ Mbuso? Why did he make an appointment cause he can just.... Oh it’s his brother? ”

“ Yes sir. Tomorrow at 11 am he’ll be here ”

“ Thanks Cal ”

“ Thank you sir ” I frown “ For not saying my full name since I began working for you ”

“ Don’t get used to it ” I smirk then leave him laughing. I get in the elevator and it takes me down to the club.

I walk in and it looks busy. I see familiar faces and new ones. The club is really growing. I walk around just to see what’s really going and if I can see that woman and her workers but I don’t spot anything that looks out of the ordinary. I walk to the office and Jess in on the desk buried in papers. She looks up.

“ You’re still here? ”

“ Yeah I was having a meeting with Thulani and showed him around. He left a few minutes ago.”

“ I’m sorry I sprung that on you on last minutes ”

“ It’s okay. I just wanted things to be smooth for Thulani and Shamiso. When is she going to come? ”

“ I was going to call Bishop ”

“ That Lisa woman was here again. Security didn’t let her through ”

“ I guess that was when she showed up at my office ”

“ Did she say what she wanted? ”

“ I told her to leave and make an appointment. Someone close to us gave her my numbers. I don't know who it is and what they are planning but I will find out.”

“ Yeah the whole thing is off. Why she keep insisting even when I told her we are not interested? ”

“ It could be other club owners. They might have sent her here to spy on us ”

“ Yeah that's true.”

“ It looks busy tonight.”

“ Very. I think I'll leave when Shamiso gets here ”

“ Jess... ”

“ Sir please. My work is the only thing that makes sense right now ” she sighs deeply.

“ Go home. I'll take it from here ”

“ Sir.... ”

“ Jess go home. That's an order. You come back tomorrow, work a half day the fly to Joburg and see your husband. Do you understand ”

“ Yes Master K ” she takes her things.

“ Get one of the guys to drive you home. Call me if you need anything ”

“ I will Master K. Thank you ” I nod and she leaves.

I look at what she was working on. It's background checks on people who want to be members of our club. All the applications start here before they reach me to deny and accept. Jess only has the right to reject and not accept. Each and every person who's a member of this club was accepted by me and my brothers. Jess has been involved but the final say was mine since it is me who runs the club. I go through all the background checks of those she rejected and she did good but three deserved to be accepted. I put them on the side to be interviewed. I also go through those to be reviewed by me. I go through everything and by the time I look up it's fucken late. Damn!. It's 2:30 am. Angel is going to kill me. She's mad. I know it.

Someone knocks. Damn. What the fuck do they want.

“ Come in ”

“ Boss. Everyone has left. We thought we should let you know. Well wait until you you're ready to lock up.”

“ Let's lock up guys. My mate is going to kill me.”

We lock up and some of the security guys stay behind cause they work. They refuse to let me drive myself and drop me off at the penthouse. I get in the elevator and it takes me up. The doors open and I immediately know that Angel is not alone in the house. I walk in and I see the last person I want to see.

“ What are you still doing here? ”

“ I couldn't live her alone. ”

“ She's a grown ass woman who can take care of herself. Be gone ”

“ Sir... ”

“ I won't repeat myself Mira. Never ever make yourself at home in my house unless I invite you. Do you understand me? ”

“ I understand sir. I'm sorry sir ”

“ Leave ” she disappears.

I turn and walk towards the stairs but stop cause Angel is walking down the stairs.

“ Don't be hard on her. She's still young ”

“ She needs to know her place. What are you doing still up? ”

“ waiting for you ”

“ I'm sorry I'm home late ” she takes steps that lead her to me. She takes my briefcase and puts it on the floor. She takes off my jacket and places it nicely in the couch then takes my hand and leads me to the kitchen. I sit down and watch her take my food from the oven. She washes her hands then places the plate in front of me. She takes a seat and looks at me. She Dios her hands in pap and stew.

“ Open ” she's what?

“ You're feeding me? ”

“ Yebo Khawula. Ulambile angisho? (yes. You are hungry right?) ”

“ Yebo mama ” I open my mouth and let her feed me.

CHAPTER 37

[PREVIOUS](#)

PAGE 40

[NEXT](#)

#NotEdited

I understand now why they would say everything in life has timing cause this right here is the perfect time. Thobe came back in my life at the right time and I'm truly grateful for her. I wouldn't trade this moment we have right now for anything. I will cherish this memory cause it means everything to me. I can't believe I left her before. My heart new that I would regret leaving her and I did but I'm never ever going to do it again. I will fight everyone for her cause she's mine. She was made for me.

She's keeps yawning as she feeds me. She's been waiting for me and she's tired. I hold her hand, wipe it clean with my mouth. I take the dish cloth and wipe her hands. I get up at take the plate and put it in the dishwasher then walk back to her.

“ Are you sure you're full? ”

“ I am angel. Let's go to bed ”

I pick her up and she wraps her legs and arms around me. Her warm breath hits my neck sending goose bumps on my body. I walk with her and switch the lights off then walk up stairs until we get in our bedroom. I place her on the bed and she crawls up and gets under the covers. I take my clothes off then get

in bed with her. I pull her close to me and sigh. She turns and pecks my lips. Her eyes sparkle like stars. I love them.

“ I love you ” I tell her kissing her lips. “ I wanted to tell you that I love you before we got disturbed by that woman. “ I love you ”

“ You mean it? ”

“ I wouldn't say it if I didn't mean love.”

“ With me it was love at first sight. When I saw you I knew I was in love and I also knew you were my mate. I love you ”

She cubs my face and we share a passionate kiss. I try not to touch any part of her body cause if I do. I know I won't stop.

“ Let's sleep angel ” she sighs disappointed. It's cute.

“ good night Khawula ”

“ good night my angel ” We sleep.

I pat the bed and it's empty. She has already woken up?. I look at the time and it's 9 am. Damn I'm waking up late these days. My dick is fucken hard it wants to come. I'm denying myself her body cause it's not about me. It's about her. I want her first time to be perfect and memorable. I get up and go to the bathroom and get in the shower. The water slides down my back and I sigh. I grab my dick, close my eyes and think of angel as I jack off and it doesn't take me long to shoot my seed at the tiles. Fuck!

I showed quickly then dress up and go downstairs. She's sitting on the lounge and looking outside. I wonder what she's thinking about cause her mind seems far away. I walk towards her then stand in front of her. Her beautiful legs are exposed. She's wearing short pyjamas with a gown on top. She looks up and smiles.

“ Good morning Khawula ” I love how she calls me. I pick her up and sit her know my lap. I kiss her deeply and leave her breathless.

“ Good morning angel. Are you okay? ” she lays her head on my chest.

“ I am ok. I was just thinking ”

“ Thinking about what? ”

“ us.”

“ What about us? ”

“ Our future you know since we'll be living together. How will your family feel about it? ”

“ They probably won't be happy that I'm cohabiting with you. They'll tell me they didn't raise me like that.”

“ so what are we going to do? ”

“ Live together my love ”

“ but you've just said... ”

“ Angel you're very important to me. That means you're going to be important to them too and they are going to love you. Which is why I have to take you Kroonstad and introduce you to my whole family.”

“ What? ”

“ I'm serious angel. They have to meet their soon to be daughter in law ”

“ What if they think it’s too early for you to introduce me? ”

“ No love. They will ask me why I didn’t bring you earlier. Stop worrying okay? ”

“ Ok.”

“ How is the search for the house going? ”

“ Oh I made an appointment with the estate agent for today at 2pm to view three house. The houses have everything we need. A very big yard, house surrounded by trees and privacy. The neighbours are not close too so they are perfect. ”

“ Same area or different locations? ”

“ Different Locations and they houses don’t come cheap.”

“ I don’t care love. I want you to have a house that we will make a home for us and our children.” she looks at me and smiles.

“ I love that ”

“ I’ll come with you to view the houses. Is that okay? ”

“ I would love it. Let’s feed you and get you to work ”

She gets up and I slap her ass. She giggles. I follow her and she plates for me. It’s been a while since I went to the gym. I have to go back before the food she feeds me make me have a potbelly. I’m about to find I my food when the three of them walk out the elevator. Zayon, Faye and Mira. They greet us and we greet them back. I kiss angel then take my briefcase a mind give it to Zayon and we leave after I tell angel to remind me about the appointment. We get in the car and Zayon drives.

“ Sir? ”

“ Talk to me ”

“ I followed the woman yesterday ”

“ I’m listening ”

“ After she left the building she went to some restaurant and met with two other man and a woman. It looked like they were having some sort of meeting so I got closer and I heard her saying it’s not as easy as she thought it would be to get in the club that you run. The other woman said she should try harder cause they have to get the information they want. They can’t do anything without that information and they need it.” Hmm this woman obviously doesn’t know who she’s fucking with.

“ That was all? ”

“ No sir. The other woman said when they get that information they will have the upper hand to get what they want and you will have no choice but to give them what they want ”.These people really have a death wish.

“ Did you manage to take pictures of them? ”

“ No sir but I will get them.”

“ Good ”

He parks the car and I go straight to my office. Calvin is already there before me as always busy typing fast on his computer.

“ Morning Cal ”

“ Good morning sir. How are this morning? ”

“ Good Cal ”

He follows me to the office with my tea. I take off my jacket and hang it on the coat hanger and sit down.

“ Today sir you have back to meetings since I scheduled them for yesterday and today. I got a conformation that the products will be delivered today. I hope Jess remembers about that and don't forget your meeting with Mr Gumede whom I managed to squeeze at 11 am.”

“ Thanks Cal.” I open my laptop and go through the emails.

“ Do you need anything else sir? ”

“ oh yes remind me to leave at 2pm. Angel and I have to go and view houses ”

“ Will do so sir ”

“ Go to HR and remind them about the contract I want them to prepare for Thulani. All the details are in the email I sent them last night. After they are done with it. Take it to the club and give it to him to read and bring it once he's done.”

“ He's ginger to be working with us? ”

“ yes at the club though. He's going to be my right hand man and someone else is going to join him to help him get used to his new role ”

“ What about Jess sir? ”

“ Jess is dealing with some things now. She needs to be with her husband ”

“ I understand sir. I'll g to HR now ”

“ Thanks Calvin ” he leaves.

I lean backward on the chair and sigh. I drink my team while it's how and think about who could this woman be working with and what the fuck do they want. I know we upset allot of owners when we opened the club and they might be coming after us. That Lisa woman could be working with them but what are they up to exactly?. What is it that they want to do to force me to give them what they want?. Obviously this woman thinks I'm some week ling who's going to let her play me. I will teach all of them a lesson. They will be sorry. I hope Thulani managed to get information about her. I hate working in blind. I could have asked Jacob but he's all the way in Joburg. If Thulani fails to get me what I want then I'll do it myself.

I take my cell phone and call my big brother. We haven't talked in a while and I know we have to meet up for the annual meeting in a few weeks.

“ Ngwana papa (My father's son) ”

“ Brother. How are you? ”

“ Was good but now I'm worried. What's wrong? ”

“ Nothing you have to worry about. I'm still getting information but I will let you know what's going on as soon as one get what I need ”

“ This is serious cause you wouldn't be this worried. What's going on bro? ”

“ Bring allot has happened since we last saw each other. There's this woman. Her name is Lisa and she runs a brothel.... ” I tell him everything form the

moment Jess mentioned her until yesterday and what Zayon told me a while ago.

“ This is big cause we really don’t know what they are planning. Make sure she’s doesn’t come anywhere close to the company building and club. Security has to be extra tight now. She could be working with people who want to take us down ”

“ It’s ether other club owners or maybe people we pissed off but we don’t now about. ”

“ Yeah that’s true. Look be careful bro cause they might be following you to see what they can see ”

“ I thought about that too but I’m safe bro. Nothing will happen. I’ll make sure Calvin is safe too ”

“ ok bro.”

“ I hired Thulani to help run the club but I need Shamiso too here to help him cause the club has grown and I any run it and run the business side of it. You have enough help there and Jess is feeling overwhelmed that’s why I told her to go home ”

“ She’ll fly down tonight. Ask Calvin to get her a place to stay and transport to pick her up. ”

“ Will do. What’s going on between Jess and Jacob though? ”

“ Eish man.... . ”

“ He’s fucking cheating on her?! ”

“ Let’s not get involved bro ”

“ Bishop you can’t say that ”

“ I know okay? I’m mad as hell at him. Worse the girl is pregnant ”

“ Oh my God. Jess is going to be devastated ”

“ I don’t know why Jacob cheated on her and get the girl pregnant.”

“ Knowing very well she can’t have kids. Does Jess know yet? ”

“ He told me she’s flying here tonight. He has to tell her and he’s fucken terrified ”

“ He should be cause he didn’t just cheat. He got her pregnant. Did you know about this? ”

“ Come on man you know I would never allow him to do that ”

“ Did you ask him why he did it? ”

“ I did and he said it was a mistake. He didn’t know she would fall pregnant cause he thought she was in the pill ”

“ Who is she? ”

“ Some girl who frequents the club. She’s a sub too ”

“ Jacob broke his vows and the rules as a Dom. He got into another relationship that his wife who’s also his sub doesn’t know about and gets the girl pregnant. Does the girl she impregnated have a Dom? ”

“ No she doesn’t.”

“ That’s fucked up. Jess doesn’t deserve this. After what his family put her through and he does this? Fuck him man ”

“ I’m mad too but this is between them bro. If Jess or Jacob ask us for help then we’ll intervene. For now let’s be there for them and not take sides cause Jess might be cool with the whole situation ”

“ You and I know very well that she’s not going to be cool with it ”

“ Damn Jacob man ”

“ Ok bro I’ll let you know how things go ”

“Sure bro ” we hang up.

I continue to work and have meetings. Calvin keeps coming and going out of my office making me sign documents and some meetings take longer than I thought they would. Calvin walks in and tells me about the meeting I had with the members who were ambushed by those girls. He tells me that Thulani handled it cause he told him I was busy. That’s what Thulani might have done for and I’m glad he didn’t wait for me to tell me to handle it. He’s a business man so he knows how things must be handled. I guess he hasn’t gotten any information about that Lisa woman. I just have to give him time.

Busani doesn’t show up for the meeting. I realize that when Calvin walks in with my lunch.

“ Where did you buy it? ”

“ Oh no sir. Angel sent it for us ”

“ Calvin... ” he chuckles.

“ I’m kidding sir but she sent me my own food and of course her man’s too. Faye is the one that delivered it. It’s warm and it smells good ”

“ Thank you Calvin. Did Busani reschedule? ”

“ No sir but I can call him and find out if he... ”

We stop talking cause someone knocks. Calvin walks to the door and opens it. He thanks someone then opens the door wide. Busani walks in and his eyes are on Calvin. Calvin looks down.

“ Gumedede ” I stand up and he walks in.

“ Khawula ” we shake hands.

“ Uhm I’ll leave you sir ” Calvin says.

“ Busani. This is Calvin my personal assistant and little brother. Calvin this is Busani Gumedede. Mbuso's twin brother ”

“ Uhm nice to meet you Mr Gumedede ” what?

“ the pleasure is mine. Call me Busani ” Busani says. Hell no!. Calvin walks out.

“ Sit man. What brings you here? ”

“ It smells good in here. What’s inside? ”

“ Lunch my woman made for me ”

“ Well I’m now hungry. Can I have some? ”

“ Of course man. ” I open the containers and the aroma just fills the office. My angel even packed wet wipes for my hands. She’s very thoughtful. Busani wipes his hands and digs in using my spoon. I look at him and we both laugh.

“ What? You said I can eat ” Calvin walks in and gives me another spoon napkins and two bottles of water. I thank him and quickly leaves.

“ Fool ” he chuckles.

It's chicken ala king and rice. My God I'm going to marry this woman.

"Damn this is fucken good "

"Tell me about it."

"I'm not sorry now that I was late cause I came at the right time " we chuckle

"I wasn't going to finish this whole food by myself "

"I thought no one can beat luh's cooking but damn your woman can cook.

Does she cook everyday? "

"Hell no. I'm not inviting you "

"But you know what they say. The more the merrier man. You have got to invite me for dinner some day "

"I'll think about it " he laughs.

"I'm sorry I was late. Got caught up somewhere "

"What's up? "

"You know that Amanda girl died. The police investigated but there was nothing linking me to her death cause apparently she went to a club after I dropped her off at her place."

"That's good man. "

"The reason I wanted to see you is I have just bought a house and I am throwing a party. The whole family is going to be there so I want you to come with your woman. "

"Congratulations man that's great. When is the party? " we finish eating and I am full.

"Saturday so please cancel any plans you have "

"cancelled already. Angel is going to love it "

"Beautiful name " I chuckle.

"Her name is Thobeka but I call her angel. She's my angel "

"I'll see you and angel on Saturday. Damn I'm so full "

"How are things with your brothers? "

"Things are great man. We are closer now and I couldn't ask for more. They are my everything "

"I'm happy to hear that man "

"Yeah I was in London last week. Went to my mom's grave and my sister's. Her name was Angel too "

"I'm sure you miss them hey? "

"I do miss her allot and when it gets too much. I fly home to London and I would feel her around me."

"It will better bro "

"It is man it just hits me sometimes that's all "

"How's your dad? "

"He's good. Loves his grandkids and is on my neck about when am I going to get married and have a family of my own "

"When are you going to do that? "

"I don't know. When I meet the right person I guess. It will depend if it's a man it woman "

“ As long as your happy bro but Calvin is my little brother ” he laughs.

“ I don’t know what you’re talking about ”

“ I saw how you looked at him and him looking at you. I don’t want him to be hurt ”

“ Man you’re seeing things. I wouldn’t cross that line with you ”

“ Good ”

“ Thank angel for the food and tell her I’ll be expecting her to show up with something she cooked for me especially ” I laugh

“ Man get your own woman or man. Or both so they can cook for you ”

“ Now you’re talking ”

We continue to chat and he leaves an hour later. His relationship with his brothers has improved. He knows he doesn’t have to ever prove his loyal to them cause they all trust each other. He’s more at home now than the last time I saw him and that makes me happy. I do some work then someone knocks lightly then the door opens. I’m about to bite their head off but stop when I see my angel walking in looking breath taking.

I stand up and walks towards her.

“ Sawubona Khawula.” I grin.

“ My angel. How are you baby? ” I pull her to my arms and hold her tight. I breathe her in and her scent fill my nostrils and lungs. We share a deep kiss and I want more.

“ I’m good. How’s your day going ”

“ Thank you for the lovely lunch. It was mouth watering and I’m sill full ”

“ Glad you enjoyed it. Did you finish all of it? ”

“ My friend came in and the right time and we ate it. He loved it and told me to ask you when we go to his house warming he will be expecting you to bring him something you cooked for him ”

“ and you agreed? ”

“ Hell no. We’ll just get him a gift ”

“ but we can prepare something for him baby. It’s not a big deal but only if you agree ”

“ It’s okay angel. You can prepare it ”

“ When is the party? ”

“ Saturday ”

“ Ok. Are you ready to go? ”

“ Yeah let’s go before naughty thoughts fill my head ” she giggles.

I take my jacket and phone. Hold her hand then we walk out. She’s wearing jeans and a T-shirt with sneakers and a light jacket. She’s holding her handbag in the other hand and the other one is threaded in mine. She has her hair tied in a ponytail tail. Good God I’ll kill any man who looks at her. We walk out and Calvin nods his head like he agrees. Fool. I shake my head and get in the elevator and it takes us to the parking lot. I open the door for her and thanks me. Zayon asks where to and she tells him Hillcrest, Sea Park and

Queensburgh. So the only place that's a little out of CBD is Sea park. My angel chose wisely.

We check the first house in Sea Park. It's good but it only has four bedrooms and we need at least 6 cause my family is big and I want my grandparents, parents, brothers to have their own bedrooms and a spare one. We check the second one Queensburg but we both just don't like it. It has all the bedrooms we need but they are small. The last house in Hillcrest is absolutely beautiful. Angel's eyes lit up the moment she saw it and I knew this is the house. The neighbours are far, the walls are high, the trees are enough and the privacy is exactly what we need. There's an outdoor area that you can use to host parties. It has an outdoor kitchen and braai area. The pool is big and in the middle of it there's a longer area with a shade that has white curtains tied to the pole. There's also a cottage for when we get help around the house. Angel and I look at each other and we know. The angel leaves us alone and we go around the house. It even has a basement and I already know what I'm going to do with it. Angel is most excited about the kitchen. The master suit almost takes the whole of upstairs and I fucken love it. All the rooms have their own bathrooms and they are big. I hope she's ready to furnish the whole house.

"What do you think angel?"

"I love it" the smile on her face is everything to me. "it's better than the pictures I saw. What do you think about it?"

"I love it too. We're buying it?"

"We? No sir you" she says missing my cheek.

"I'm going to marry you angel so this is going to be our home. Where we'll make our kids and raise them here unless if the house gets small."

"Are you serious?"

"I am angel. I'm yours now and forevermore. I am going to spend the rest of my life with you only."

"I would love that" she hugs me tight. I hold her and we stand like that for a while.

"Sorry to disturb but what do you think about the house?. The old house was demolished and a new one was built. It was put on the market 2 weeks ago." I got that sense when we walked in the property that an old house was demolished. I didn't sense any negative spirits or people that does and buried somewhere. The whole property is good and that's what we need.

"We will take it."

"Great. So I will call the office and we'll send the paperwork before the end of business day."

"Do so and have them send it to this email address so the payment can be made." I give her Calvin's card.

"You will get keys once the bank clears the payment. Thank you Miss Lukhele and you sir." She says checking my ring finger. Angel chuckles.

"Thank you miss. We want the keys before the day ends."

“ Definitely today sir ” I take Angel’s hand and we walk out. Zayon gets in the cat with us and the others follow behind as we leave.

“ I can’t believe this is happening ”

“ Believe it angel cause it’s nothing ”

“ A house that’s costs 7.5 million isn’t nothing. God I can’t believe it ”

“ Like I said. It’s nothing angel ”

“ You’re scarring me. Spending money like this? Without thinking twice? ”

“ It’s an investment angel. 5 years from now that property is going to be worth more than it is now. That’s how you spend money. On something that is going to add more value and besides. I work hard for that money. Like yesterday when I couldn’t have dinner with you. I’m sorry ”

“ It’s okay baby. It’s not like you were out cheating on me ” She reminds me what Jess is going through right now.

“ I won’t ever hurt you like that angel. I’ll be hurting myself and I don’t want you to freeze me to death ”

“ Oh baby that’s the last thing I will do to you ”

“ What will you do? ”

“ I’ll just disappear and you’ll never find me. No God or goddess will find me where I will go. ” I look at her and she’s serious. My heart skips a beat and a sharp pain hits me like a lighting bolt. “ We’ll have to live with that pain forever cause of what you did. Leaving the man I love cause he hurt me. We’ll both be miserable and I’ll never love again. ”

“ That won’t happen angel. I promise you ” she lays her head in my chest and sighs.

“ I believe you baby ” I kiss her forehead and sooth her arm. Damn she’s scaring me.

“ but one thing we know for sure is we’ll find her anywhere. Even if it means we’ll have to go and make a deal with Akani. That’s what we’ll do cause we know where he’s hiding. ” Elson says.

“ Who the fuck is Akani? ”

“ The one and only King of the night. The first ever vampire who has lived for thousands and thousands of years. ”

“ The what?! How the fuck do you know him? ”

“ I thought I was just a guardian but I was wrong. As the God of eternal fire it means no one can hide from me. Even the most feared king of the night. The one we thought was just a story they used to tell us to scare us. He’s alive and he knows I am now too. ”

“ Should we be scared of him? ”

“ Not unless we mean him harm. ” I feel like there’s more shadow wants to say but he stops. Vampires? God why did shadow attach his soul to mine. I could have been just Kabelo.

CHAPTER 38

#NotEdited.

Angel comes back with me to work cause I want her to be the one to go and collect the keys when I have received the paper work for the house so I can transfer the money. She sits on the couch and reads a magazine while I continue to work. I thought she might be distraction but she's so silent. The only think I can hear is her breathing and her heart beat. I look up and she's so comforting. I love this. Having her hear.

An hour later the estate agent comes in with the paper work. I read thoroughly at it then sign the papers and ask angel to sign too. She refuses and tells me she doesn't have any right to sign the papers to my house. I correct her and tell her it's out house. Our home and she has every right to have her name on the title deed of the house. She finally agrees after some time and sign. I transfer the money and we wait for the office to call the agent and they do call that they have received the money. She gives the keys and leaves. As soon as the door closes angel throws her hands around me and thanks me. She looks so happy right now and it makes me happy that I made her feel this way. I want her to look like this every time cause it's worth it and she deserves every bit of happiness. We share a passionate kiss that leaves me wanting more. God if things continue to go this way. I might not keep the promise I made to myself. I really want to marry her first before I make her mine. I know it's what I must to but damn it's hard.

Calvin voice fills the office as he tells me that Thulani is here to see me. I tell him to let him in.

" I'm going to be outside while you have your meeting " Thulani walks in.

" Good afternoon. I hope I didn't disturb you boss? "

" No you didn't. Angel you remember Thulani? "

" Yeah I do. Nice to meet you "

" Nice to meet you too ma'am "

" I'll go to Calvin and ask him to get us a moving company? "

" Take our clothes and leave the furniture. Kane or Karabo will use the penthouse when visiting then buy us a bed cause that's what we need right now and order food. I don't want you cooking tonight " she blushes and looks down.

" ok I will. You'll come straight home? "

" Yes love. At our new home " I kiss her.

" Don't work until midnight okay? "

" I promise angel " she pecks my cheek then takes her hand bag and leaves. Thulani takes a deep breath out as he watches angel walking out.

" Don't make me kill you cause I like you Thu " he raises his hands up.

" Guilty as charged. She's fucken beautiful. Im sorry I couldn't stop looking at her "

“ Fool sit down. Don’t stare at my woman again ” I mean it.

“ I won’t do it again. I swear ”

“ Did you look at the contract and sign it? ”

“ Yes sir. Dropped it off at HR. Thanks man. This means allot to me.”

“ Shamiso is flying down tonight. I think before you knock off at 5am. She’ll be at the club”

“ Yeah Calvin told me. I thought I’ll pick her up and get to know her since well be working together ”

“ That’s a great idea. Let me give you her numbers so you call her ” I take my own and write down her numbers.

“ Thanks man. Something else brought me here ”

“ What is it? ”

“ The woman you asked me to find out information about her. Lisa ”

“ What did you find out? ”

“ I found where she lives. She runs a brothel down town CBD and it’s a mess. It’s not the kind of place we would associate ourselves with. It’s not a high end Escort agency but a crappy one. She has girls working in the streets for her but she also has those that she uses for rich people.”

“ I’m listen ”

“ I saw another guy coming out of her house and it was that guy who ones The Flesh club ”

“ What? Gavin was at her house? But he’s one of our members? ” Gavin own a stripper club.

“ I know and it puzzled me. I thought maybe she was his girl but then I found out that the girls Lisa uses for the rich are the girls who work at Gavin’s club. They have some sort of a deal going on ”

“ What deal could that be? Is Gavin behind everything. Lisa coming here and showing up with those girls? ”

“ He could be. The guy who’s in the reception area reading a book. What’s his name? ”

“ Zayon ”

“ I saw that he was also following her. Did you put him on it? ”

“ Yeah I did. He said he saw her with two other guys and a woman. I guess the other man is Gavin He said they were talking about getting some information and when they get it. I’ll be forced to work with them. ”

“ It must be. What do you want to do? ” I look at my wrist watch and it’s 6 pm now.

“ Zayon ” I calm his name and not a second later he walks in.

“ Damn man were you just outside the door? ” Thu asks him.

“ I was going to get some coffee. ” he answers him.

“ Thu this is Zayon. Zayon this is Thu. Sit. ” They shake hands. “ Are your guys still on Lisa? ”

“ Following her every move sir ”

“ Where is she now? ” Zayon takes his cello phone and types.

“ She’s on her way to her house sir. Do you want me to take her? ”

“ No. Tell your guys to make sure she doesn’t leave. Her house. Let’s go ” I hope I won’t be late coming in.

“ I’m coming with? ”

“ You have to get shamiso from the airport. We’ll go to Gavin together ”

“ Ok boss ”

I take my things and leave. Calvin left with angel cause he’s not at his death too. We leave the building and drive straight to Lisa's house. She lives in Athlone Park. Good. The neighbourhood looks quiet. Zayon parks the car behind the one his man are in. One of the guys step out and walks to us.

“ Good evening Uhm Sir....Go... ”

“ Sir is fine. Where is she? ”

“ She’s inside sir. Cooking. It’s that house ” good. Maybe I’ll use that oil to burn her skin. He points to a fifth house.

I open the door and step out. Zayon follows me and those two guys. I don’t low why they are following but it’s good so they’ll see no one fucks with me. I press the buzzer on the gate. There’s a camera so she can see me.

“ Who is it? ” Her voice is shaky

“ Open the gate Lisa.” I can feel her hesitation then after 10 minutes she opens the gate. I don’t think the person she called will save her. We walk in and she meets us outside.

“ Mr Ntanzi. How did you know where I live? ”

“ I know allot of things. Are you going to invite us in? ” she looks at me then at the other guys.

“ They won’t hurt you. Guys stay here. Zayon come. May we? ” She nods and we follow her. She leaves us to the sitting room and I sit while Zayon stands.

“ uhm can I get you anything to drink? ”.

“ This is not a social call Lisa. Sit down ”

“ I’ll stand thank you ”

“ You won’t like it if I stand too. Sit down ” She does. I can feel her fear. She’s fucken scared. “ I thought I should just show up at your house like you did at my club and office but the difference between me and you is I knocked or buzzed the hater rather ”

“ The club is free to those who are invited ”

“ Who invited you to my club cause it’s a private club. Only a member is allowed to bring a guest. Who invited you Lisa? ”

“ You can’t come into my home and ask me questions. I was invited so what? ” her voice gets loud.

“ Mind your tone when speaking with me. You see Lisa I’m nice to you and I don’t do nice. I’m only nice to people I love and like. So if I’m being nice to you it must mean something now answer my question. Who invited you to my club? ” she shifts on the sofa.

“ Why does it matter? ”

“ It matters cause you wanted my club to work with you and your girls. When my assistant told you we don’t do that, you took it upon yourself to just show up with those woman and they demanded money from my members. Those were your orders right? ” she looks down. “ Who gave you their access card to the club? ” Gavin is the one that gave her his access card to the club. The part I don’t understand is how did the other girls get in.

Lisa doesn’t answer me. Instead she has this smug look on her face like you don’t know anything mother fucken and I won’t say anything. I could at my new house with my wan instead I’m her with this bitch who thinks she has the upper hand on me. I lock eyes with her then get inside her mind. Her hand goes straight to her head and holds it.

“ Aw... Aw you’re hurting me. What are you doing to me? Stop! Aw! ” she calls down on the floor and both her hands now are in her head.

I read her thoughts and it is Gavin. He’s the one who approached her cause he was also approached by someone else

“ Please stop! I’ll tell you everything you want to know “ she begs me. “ Please sir my head is going to explode ” she says looking at me begging. Her eyes are bloodshot red and streaks of blood stream down her face. Her nose bleeds too. She screams in agony. Just when I know she’s going to lose it I stop.

“ I can see you’re ready to talk. Talk ” she tries to get up but I stop her. “ you’re fine like that. Talk woman ” she’s on her knees.

“ Ok... Ok... ” she sniffs. “ Gavin came to my club and told me he has a business proposal for me. He said he’s a member of something secret club and only members are allowed to come with a guest. He said hell take me with him so I can see what’s going in but next time he wants me to join and be a member in the club. I asked him why he wants he wants me and his answer was because he wants me to be spy for a for a couple of months because he can’t do it himself cause he’ll get caught if he starts asking questions about The Three K brothers.... ” What?

“ Why does he want to know about the K brothers? ”

“ I don’t know. He didn’t tell all the information. He offered me money and told me he’ll provide me with some girls to help with my establishment. In return I have to get in the club, put listening devices and cameras then get Dom’s to sub my girls so they can be at the club and be his eyes and ears. Whatever information I get will be useful but then I thought it would be better if we worked together but your assistant said no.”

“ When that didn’t work, you thought of ambushing me at my office? ”

“ He was putting pressure on me ”

“ You’re lying to me. How did you know where my office is and who I am cause you know the fuck who I am?! ”

“ I recognized you when....”

“ Bitch stop lying cause you’re seriously pissing me off! What is Gavin to you? ”

“ Just someone I know ”

“ You want to be smart? Let’s see if making your eyes bleed much more will. Make you talk ”

“ Stop please! Stop!. Ok. Gavin was my pimp okay. He’s the one that gave me money to start that business. He came and told me that someone reached out to him with your information. Of course he knew you cause he’s in your club so it wasn’t going to be that hard but he couldn’t ask more questions about the one they call Bishop

like when does he come and what does he like to do when he’s at the club. The person told then it’s your older brother and what they wanted was to get recordings of him in the act or at the club so they can blackmail you to get shares in all the clubs you own. ”

Not many people know about Bishop. Only the board and some people know it’s my brother. The people who are in our lifestyle would never talk cause we have each and every dirty things on them including Gavin. No one just comes and get in the club without us having something on them should they ever try to double cross us. The people outside our lifestyle who knew about Bishop are all dead. They died in my house excluding one person. Amahle!. She couldn’t just keep her mouth shut!. Damn that girl! After I let her have the diamonds she still goes and does this? Damn her!.

“ The other man and woman you met at the restaurant. Who are they excluding Gavin? ”

“ I don’t know who they are but the woman hates you. Apparently you killed her fiancée Mduzuzi and ruined her sister in-laws life ” Mduzuzi wasn’t engaged to anyone. What is this bitch talking about?

“ What’s her name? The woman? ” She’s moves away from me.

“ Her name is.... Uhm.. ”

“ I will know if you’re lying and I will kill you ”

“ Please don’t kill me. Her name is Phelisa ”

“ Phelisa? ” wait? Where do I know that name from? “ Phelisa? What’s her sister in-laws name? ”

“ Please sir I never had a hand in this. I did nothing wrong cause I couldn’t get in the club ”

“ What’s her fucken name! ”

“ Her name... . Save said her name is Amahle ” I fucken knew it. I stand up and look at this lying ass bitch.

“ Your cousins with Phelisa Lisa. Phelisa is Amahle’s best friend. She’s wasn’t Mduzuzi’s fiancé. It was you, Gavin, Phelisa and who’s the other man? ” She cries as I walk slowly towards her. She gets up and wipes her bloody face.

“ I swear I don’t know who’s the other man. He came with Phelisa ”

“ What was the plan exactly Lisa since you contacted Gavin cause he’s your man. You fuck him right? So what is the plan Lisa. If you want to live you’ll tell me the truth.”

“ I swear I don’t know. I just introduced her them to Gavin the last time she came with Amahle. Then when Phelisa came back she was with that other man.” Amahle was here in Durban?

“ When was she here? ”

“ Like two weeks ago.”

“ The first meeting was about what? ”

“ They wanted someone who had connections to a private sex club. I knew Gavin belonged to one even though he has never taken me there.”

“ What did they talk about? ”

“ I don’t know. I left because there was an emergency with one of my girls.” I read her thoughts and this time I don’t spare her from the excruciating pain she’s feeling. This time she’s telling the truth. Not the lies she was spinning at me.

Amahle came here with her friend Phelisa. Lisa connects her with Gavin but what does Gavin get in return from doing all of this cause he knew if he takes their offer he’ll be bridging our contract and he’ll die. So what did he get?. Diamonds. She offered him my fucken diamonds!. Did Calvin know Amahle was here and he didn’t tell me?. He better not!.

“ Come here Lisa. ”

“ Please don’t kill me ”

“ Come here! ” she stands next to me literally shaking.

“ Amahle gave you my numbers to call me right? ”

“ Yes... Yes she did ”

“ What did they promise you? ”

“ She gave me R20000 for just hooking her up with Gavin.”

“ Did your instincts not warn you at all that agreeing to help them was a bad idea? ”

“ Sir please. They promised me I wouldn’t be hurt. Amahle said you love her and you would never do anything to hurt the people she cares about. I was just trying to help her ”

“ Help her get information about my brother so the whole world can find out? Help her to destroy my family? Do you hear yourself bitch? ”

“ Sir I’m sorry. I was trying to help my sister that’s all ”

I wrap my hand around her throat and lift her up. She chokes and hits my hand with her hands. She kicks and slaps me but those little punches don’t do anything. Her mouth is wide open gasping for air since she’s suffocating so I give her the air she desperately needs. I blow air into her mouth and I feel it move straight to her lungs. I let go of her and she falls down.

She begins to cough and doesn’t stop. She coughs and coughs and begins to cough out blood. She holds her chest and looks at me.

“ My chest... My chest.... I’m burning.... My chest! Water! I want water! Please give me water!... I’m burning... I’m.... ”

Zayon and I watch her as she coughs out and black smoke come out of her mouth with blood. She begs me to save her but we just look at her until she

stops coughing and lies down dead and black cloud of smoke coming out of her mouth. I walk around the house not touching anything and see her phone on the counter. I take it and it's locked. I take a knife then walk back to the living room. I take her hand, use her thumb and her phone unlocks. I use the knife and cut off her thumb.

" Give me your handkerchief " Zayon gives it to me. I clean the knife then wrap her thumb in it.

" Let's go "

" Do you want is to clean up sir? "

" No. I want Gavin to find her like this "

We close the door and leave her house. We get in the car and on our way I see a car going down the same street we were at. I bet it's him. I check her phone to see who did she call and indeed it Gavin. She told him I am at her house. The mother fucker will know it's me who killed Lisa and he better be scared. I want him to tell Amahle that I know what they are planning and I'm coming after them. All of them. She will pay.

CHAPTER 39

[PREVIOUS](#) PAGE 42 [NEXT](#)

#NotEdited

I am going to be very mad if Calvin knew that amahle was here and he hid it from me. I can bet my last dollar that she contacted him and told him she's in the city. Why didn't Calvin let me know though. I would have known that she is up something. I warned this girl. I warned her but she didn't listen. She stole my diamonds and I forgave her but then I realize I shouldn't have done that. I should have killed her. Amahle clearly didn't take my warning seriously cause she opened her stinking mouth and talking about my brother. She will learn a painful lesson. You don't cross me twice and get away with it.

Zayon takes me to my new house where my woman is waiting for me. I am so fucken mad and I know she's going to sense that I'm not fine. I should be happy right now cause it's gong to be a first time spending a night at our new home but I'm not happy cause that bitch wants to fuck with me. I'm scared that I might hurt angel cause I want blood. I should have taken my frustrations out somewhere before coming home. God please don't let me hurt the woman I love because of someone else. I take out the stress ball that she gave me when we first met. It's stays in my pocket with me and I squeeze it.

The gate opens and Zayon drives through and stops outside the garage I step out and walk to the front door of the house and press the bell. Her sweet voice fills the house as she shouts that she's coming. I can feel her hurrying down the stairs. I hope she won't fall. She opens the door and she's surprised to see me.

“ Khawula? ” her face frowns and she walks closer to me. Her scent hits me and fills my nostrils and straight down to my lungs. I breath in and out deeply. She cubs my face then takes my hand and pulls me in the house. She cooked and it smells amazing. “ What happened? ” she cubs both my cheeks with her hands. “ It’s going to be okay. Whatever it is well figure it out okay? ” I pull her to my chest and hold her tight.

We stand like that for a while then she looks at me. I can see worry all over her face. She takes off my jacket, takes my hand and leads me to the kitchen where she was plating for us. She takes me to sink and washes my hands and dries them. I sit down and watch her plate for us in one plate. She comes and sits next me and feeds me. I feel like I’m child cause I’m not talking but just watching her feeding me. I chew slowly and she’s patient with me. The food is nice but it’s just not going in.

She’s see it too cause she sighs, puts the plate down and wipes her hands. She offers me a glass of water to drink and I take it drink it all down. I know I should say something to her but for now I won’t tell her cause I don’t want her to worry. I know I probably ruined the plans she had for us tonight’s in our new home. I don’t want her to always remember this moment in our first home.

“ Let’s go to bed ”

“ Ok. I’ll follow you just let me clean up here ”

“ No leave it. Come ”

I pick her up and she wraps her hands and legs around my waist. She’s perfect and my dick agrees cause I’m fucken hard. I shouldn’t be holding her like this. It’s dangerous for her when I’m like this. I use my speed and move faster on the stairs and straight to our bedroom. I open the door and out once empty master bedroom is now fully furnished and it looks fucken amazing. She really worked hard.

“ Thank you angel. I love our bedroom ”

“ I’m happy you love it. I wasn’t sure if you’ll love it. ”

“ I love it angel ” I tell her looking around.

I gently lay her down on the bed with me between her thighs. She looks at me with those eyes that draw me in. She cubs my face and I kiss her palms.

“ Your silence scares me ”

“ I’ll never hurt you ”

“ You’re angry. I can feel it. What’s wrong? ”

“ I’ll tell you when I know exactly what’s going on ”

“ is there anything I can do to help? ”

“ No angel but when I need your help or advise. I’ll ask you okay? ” she nods.

“ Can I make you feel better now? ” she asks taking off her t-shirt and her boobs just stare at me. Those dark areolas and hard nipples. Her creamy skin that is begging me to lick it and mark it.

“ I don’t want to hurt you ”

“ You’ll never hurt me. I trust you Khawula. Do what you have to do ”

“ Angel don't say that ”

“ I mean it. I know you won't hurt me. Let me help you release that anger ”

“Do you know what a safe word is? ”

“ I do ”

“ There are three colours mostly used in BDSM. Yellow, orange and Red. Yellow means that the pain is mild. Orange means the pain is strong but bearable and red means the pain is excruciating and you want to stop. Sometimes you might say Red but don't want me to stop that is where the Safe word comes in. When you say your safe word I will stop whatever I'm doing immediately. Do you understand angel? ”

“ I understand ”

“ The safe word is not something that you just say cause I made you angry or you want to have your way. You're only going to use your safe word cause you feel like your life is in danger from me and I have hurt you past the point of no return and you have to protect yourself. I want you to know that I will never make you feel like you have no choice but to use your safe word from me. Your trust is very important to me and I take it seriously angel. I will do things that will push you past your breaking point but not to the point where you'll feel like you have to use it. You will not use it against me cause you want a reaction from me whether I made you angry or came home late at night. Do you understand angel? ”

“ I understand Khawula ”

“ What's your safe word angel? ”

“ What's the one thing you would hate to hear coming out of my mouth? ”

“ Angel a safe word has to come from you. There are many words that I would never want to hear them coming out from your mouth like you would just disappear on me and I'll never find you. I don't want you to say that.”

“ my safe word is Evanesce ” fuck no

“ Angel? ”

“ it is Khawula. Evanesce.”

“ Disappear angel? Why that word? ”

“ cause that's what will happen if you hurt me.”

“ Ok. ” I hate that. I really do but it's her safe word so I have to respect it.

I move off of her and stand. She cocks her head looking at me.

“ get up and take off your clothes. Fold them nicely then come back and lay on the bed facing up with your hands above your head.”

Her skin gets covered in goose bumps and her breathing changes. She gets up and takes off her clothes. She folds them then walks back to the bed and lays facing up with her hands above her head. I love that she doesn't hide her beautiful body from me. I've seen many and I mean many naked women but none of them come close to angel. Her body is a work of art.

Her eyes are on me and I know her thoughts are all over the place wondering what I'm going to do to her. I take off my waistcoat, tie and shirt. I fold them nicely then take off my shoes

socks , belt and pants. I fold them too then leave the belt on the bed. I take our clothes to the closet and all of our clothes are folded nicely to the T. I open a draw and see all my belts. I take the thick leathery one. It's very strong and it has a bite to it. Just what I need. I walk out and her eyes are in my body. They move down until so they land in my crotch and she bites her cheek. She licks her lips then takes a deep breath.

" I'm going to tie you up with this belt. Tell me if it's too tight "

" okay "

I take the one I wore and bind her wrists. I make sure she can't get out of it or have too much movement but also not bruise her skin. I place her hands over her head.

" Is it too much? "

" no "

" I'm going to use this belt on you angel. I'm going to give you 20 lashes on your body. You'll count from 20 to 1. Each lash will begin soft but they will get harder and harder until we get to 1. If you stop counting I will start from scratch okay? "

" Ok. I understand "

" You can use your safe word or any of the colours to tell me how you're feeling. Do you understand angel "

" I do understand "

" How are you feeling? "

" Excited, nervous and scared "

" That's good angel. You must always tell me how you feel so I can know okay? "

" You can do the same too. Tell me how you're feeling cause you're not fine. I know something is wrong or something happened. I just want you to be open to me too "

" and I will tell you. Right now I'm just blowing some steam off "

" Ok. I'm ready " she thinks she is but she's not. I lean down and give her a kiss. She welcomes me in her warm mouth and our lips and tongues dance. I lead and she follows me.

My hands play with her nipples, they go down to her stomach and continue to go down to my haven. I gently separate her thighs and find her clit. She's wet. Beautiful. I play with her clit and her moans fill our bedroom. Her hips move mimicking my thumb on her clit. I push my finger in her hot, wet pussy and she throws her head back. My lips go to her neck and I shower her with kisses. My lips move and I find her nipple and suckle on it. She doesn't stop moaning and her hips now move quick. She's going to come. I stop sucking her nipple and move my finger from her pussy and she cries. I chuckle cleaning my fingers coated with her juices and she tastes good. She licks her lips like she wants to taste herself.

" Lay on your stomach "

" I want to come "

“ Not yet angel. Lay on your stomach ” she does. Her beautiful ass stares at me and I can't help myself. I bite those globes and leave open mouth kisses. Angel moans and she presses her hips down on the bed. She's using the comforter to run her clit and she's going to come if she continues doing this.

“ Don't do that angel. Or I will punish you ” she stops and she's breathing hard. I get up and take that leather belt. She hears the click sound and her body goes still. “ Relax Angel. I need you to relax your body and not move. You move or forget to count. I start from the beginning. Do you understand ”

“ I do. I understand ” she quickly answers.

“ You will count after each lash. From now ”

“ Ok.....”

I lift my hand and gently whip her beautiful left ass.

“ One ”

I add another lash to her right ass

“ Two. ”

Third lash lands on both her ass cheeks.

“ Three ”

Lash after lash she counts until we get to ten.

Lash after lash she counts until we get to ten. I have been gently lashing her. She hasn't felt that much pain cause she has been counting and not skipping numbers. I was making her get used to it but now it's different. The lashes are going to get hard. If it was another sub. I wouldn't have held back.

I lift my hand bring it down. The leather kisses her skin she winces.

“ 11 ”

I land another and she coughs.

“ 12 ”

Three more and she curses when she reaches 15. Her ass is red and her back is covers in lashes. Beautiful.

“ Five more to angel. Are you ready ”

“ Yes... . Yes sir I'm ready ” Fuck I didn't expect she will say that. My dick is painfully hard and I still feel like I'm not where I need to be. “ These last five one's are going to hard angel. Are you ready.” She nods.

“ words angel ”

“ I'm ready... ” I land a hard one. “ 16 ” she sniffs. I don't give her time to recover as I land another hard one. “ 17 ” her hands are gripping the pillow and she's moving allot. I'm sure she's going to have bruises on her hands. On the 18th one I use more strength and she cries out this time.

“ Oh God 18 ” My dominant side comes out and I can't stop now. I lift my hand high and land another just beneath her ass cheeks and she screams crying.

“ 19! ” She's crying now and I know I'm sick cause I love the sound I'm hearing.

“ Last one love then were done. Take one last one okay my love ” she takes time to answer cause she's crying. “ angel? ”

“ Yes I'm ready ”

I look at her beautiful back covered in lashes. Her ass red from the belt kissing her skin. There's no blood. I made sure not to whip her in the same place cause that will tear her skin off and I don't want that. I lift my arm up and use all my strength and she screams bloody murder when the last one lands. She doesn't even count.

"Count angel! Count!" She doesn't. I land the same last one and she screams again.

"20! 20!" she says crying hard.

I throw the belt down then rub to the bathroom and look for my aloe vera gel and find it. I run back to bedroom and untie her hands. She doesn't move just continues to cry. Her head buried on the pillow.

"This is going to hurt angel but please don't move your body" she nods. I sigh then scoop a handful of gel in my hand and rub it in her back. She screams crying and I fucken feel bad. She continues to cry and I keep apologizing while rubbing her hack and ass with the cream until I'm done. I lay on the bed and pull her on top me. She let's me and she cries on my chest.

"I know I said it was going to be hard but I forgot to go easy on you cause you've never done this. No one has ever done this to you and I'm sorry. I should have known better that I will hurt you. I'm sorry angel" I can't even touch her back cause she's in pain.

"I'm sorry angel. I'll be more careful next time" she just cries and sniffs.

Angel is a soft woman. She's not used to these hard things. She's practically a virgin in all these things. I know I should have controlled myself but once I began. I couldn't stop. Her back has marks and that belt left marks on her wrists. This wasn't a sensual beating. It was a hard beating cause I was taking out my anger on her body and although it did help in a way but it also hurt her process.

"I'm really sorry my love. I'm really sorry"

"It's okay. I knew what was going to happen but I didn't think it will hurt this much"

"I know. I should have been gentle with you but I couldn't stop myself once I began. I'm sorry"

"Don't be. I'm not mad at you"

"Angel..."

"Khawula if I can help you in anyway to take off the anger you had I will do it all over again. I just don't want you to hurt anyone else cause I'm afraid I'll lose you and I don't want to lose you. You're all I have." She says sniffing. God what did I do to deserve this woman?.

"I'll never do anything that will take me away from you. I promise you. Thank you for giving me your trust. For giving me your body"

"You're my mate Khawula. I'll give you anything you need and want."

"I love you angel"

"I love you Khawula"

I kiss her forehead and wipe her face.

“ Can you help me get up. I need to pee ” I gently move us then she stands on her feet. She goes to the bathroom and she looks at herself on the mirror. Tears stream down her face. God why did I do this?!

“ I’m sorry ”

“ Stop apologizing. Please leave ”

“ Angel.... ”

“ Just give me space to pee please ” I look at her and she’s upset. She has every right to be.

“ Will you manage sitting down? ”

“ I will ” she says looking away from me. I hate this but Let me give her some time alone. I kiss her forehead then close the door behind her.

I stand on the door and I hear her wincing and she tries to sit. She pees but I can also hear her soft cries. The toilet flushes the tap opens. It opens for a while and I think of going inside but she closes it. She takes maybe 10 more minutes before she opens the door. I take her hand and lead her to our bed. I open the comforter and she gets in.

“ Don’t cover me ” she says.

“ Ok ”

I sit on the bed and watch her. She moves her hands and we thread our hands together. Her eyes closes and I just watch her. Her eyes red, her face too with big puffy eyes. God. I don’t want too see her like this. I don’t regret doing this but I also don’t like how it’s making me feel. I feel like I hurt her. In more ways than physically. She might say she’s ok but she might also not be. I sigh damn. Damn you amahle! Her breathing gets even as she falls to sleep. I unlace our hands and walk to the closet. I hear my t-shirt and sweatpants. My hard on is not going anywhere anytime soon until all of this anger is gone. I have that type of condition. When I get really mad I get hard and it’s not going to go away until all the anger is gone that is why it takes allot to get me mad. I walk out of the closer and I look at her again. She’s sleeping. I walk out of our bedroom with my bare feet and walk outside.

As soon as I’m out of the house I let the anger consume me and flames cover my whole body. I walk around the yard trying to come myself down but I just can’t cause I want blood. I can smell it too but that would have to wait. I won’t leave angel alone. She needs me and if she wakes up and finds me gone. I might be in trouble with her and I don’t want that. Thinking about angel actually calls me down. I need to be her right now not here away from her. An hour later I walk back to the house naked. I switch off all lights then walk back to our bedroom.

She’s standing on the window looking outside. She was watching me.

“ I thought you left but then I saw you ”

“ I was outside. I didn’t want to wake you. Come back to bed ”

“ The gel you used on my body is helping. It doesn’t hurt as much now ”

“ I’m happy to hear that. Come ”

“ you’re not coming in bed with those feet ” I smile then quickly go to the bathroom and shower fast and come back. “ That was quick ” she says. I help her get in bed and pull her on top of me.

“ I won’t be able to sleep with your hard on poking me ”

“ Get used to it ”

“ So you’re those types that get hard when they get extremely mad ”

“ I am. What do you know about that? ”

“ Just they can last for days unless...”

“ It takes lots and lots of sex for it to be flaccid Angel. I’ll hurt you ”

“ When are you going to claim me? ”

“ Soon. Sleep angel ” she sighs and closes her eyes.

Soon is proving to be difficult.

CHAPTER 40

[PREVIOUS](#) PAGE 43 [NEXT](#)

Advertisement

#NotEdited.

The bed feels empty. I know she’s not in bed with me. I open my eyes and look around the bedroom but she’s not here. I get up and go to the bathroom and her scent is everywhere. She showered. I brush my teeth then shower. After I’m done with everything I walk out of our bedroom and make my way downstairs to the kitchen. This house is big and it feels empty cause it has no furniture. Funny enough I thought the house would have an echo but it doesn’t. I hope Calvin told her where she can order furniture. From my company.

Every step I take that leads me to the kitchen feels like it’s taking forever cause I don’t know how angel is feeling this morning after everything. I come in view and she’s on the stove stirring something. I take a deep breath out. I didn’t realize I was holding my breath. I walk towards her and stand behind her caging her in. I kiss the back of her head and she lays her head on my chest.

“ Good morning angel ”

“ Sawubona Khawula ” she continues to stir. I peek and she’s making soft porridge. My God I can’t remember the last time I ate one.

“ That brings back so many memories ”

“ I thought you might love it ”

“ I do love. Thank you.”

“ You’re welcome ”

“ How are you feeling ”

“ I’m good ”

“ Can I see? ”

“ I’m cooking ”

“ It will just take a minute. I want to see ”

“ Let me turn down the heat.”

She does then turns and looks at me. I take her hand and lead her away from the stove. She’s wearing track pants and a sweater. I turn her around then kneel. I pull down those tight sweatpants with her underwear. I then lift up her sweater and look at her back. You can see the lashes of the belt. Bruising colours are forming but they are not that deep. I thought they were going to be deeper than this but they aren’t. Her ass has a beautiful deep red and blue colour forming. It looks so beautiful there. I plant kisses on her ass and back then help her wear her clothes again.

“ I have to put the gel again so the bruises can go away ”

“ I did put some of it on me. ”

“ Why didn’t you wake me to help you? ”

“ You looked tired. I didn’t want to wake you up ”

“ Angel this is my job. I have to give you after care when I have done something like this ” she walks back to the stove.

“ I’m better Khawula ”

“ Then why won’t you look at me? ” she stops stirring and sighs.

“ I’m not mad at you if that’s what your thinking ” she says facing me.

“ Then what is it? ”

“ You’re hiding things from me Khawula. You ask me to tell you how I feel but you won’t do the same. I know whatever that got you upset is not something small cause you wouldn’t be acting this way. I just want you to practice what you preach. We are in this relationship together. I don’t know if what your keeping from me is something that has to do with me or you. Am I I’m danger or not? ”

“ You’re not in danger angel. I would never let anything or anyone hurt you I promise ”

“ but you are hurting me by keeping things from me. I can take care of myself you know that ”

“ I know that love. I just don’t want you to worry okay. I will deal with it. I promise ”

“ Is this how it’s going to be between us? You deal with things in your own and decide for me what I should or should not know?. So you’re the one who’s always going to make decisions and I have to go with it? ”

“ No. I don’t want things to be like that. I want you to trust me and let me deal with it and know that I will let you know. Can you do that for me angel? ”

“ Well I don’t have choice do I? ”

“ Angel... ”

“ It’s okay. Whatever you say goes.” Fuck I hate this.

She takes bowls and pours the soft porridge. She adds butter, honey, milk and a little bit of peanut butter. She gives it to me.

“ Thank you ”

“ You’re welcome.” She sits down and I move my bowl and go sit next to her. I don’t like this distant I’m feeling between us now.

“ I love you angel. I love you and no one else. ”

“ I love you more ”

“ I might come home late tonight. There are things I need to deal with. ”

“ You mean people you need to deal with? ”

“ Yes ”

“ Ok ” I take her hand and kiss it. We lock eyes and I can see hurt all over her face. I sigh.

“ Come here ” she gets off the chair and stands. I stand too and pull her to my arms and hold her gently.

I breathe her in and let her scent fill my nostrils and lungs. I kiss the top of her head and we just stand like that. This is home. I belong to this arms. With her. She’s my world and my everything. She’s the last person I would ever want to hurt in any kind of way but my actions are doing exactly that. Hurting her and shutting her out.

How the hell do I tell her that the girl is back and wants to ruin my life because she still wants revenge on me cause of how I treated her when we were together?. Why couldn’t that bitch just keep her mouth shut and stay the fuck away from me and my family?. What if she tries to ruin my relationship with angel by telling her lies? God I can’t have that.

“ Angel? ”

“ Hmmm ”

“ Let’s go to our bedroom ” she nods. I pick her up and walk with her to our bedroom.

I help her take off her clothes then lay her on the bed facing down. This reminds me of yesterday when I was lashing her. I go to the bathroom and come back with the gel. I sit next to her and rub her. She sighs deeply. Did she think I was going whip her again? God no.

“ I know you’re not used to this and I was supposed to ease you into it but I went hard. I wasn’t supposed to use something like that belt for your first time. It had to be something else like my hand and the lashes out gave you were too much. I broke so many rules with you and I’m sorry ”

“ I could have told you that they are too much but I didn’t. I just wanted you to have control back again cause I felt like maybe you felt like you weren’t in control with things ” How the hell does she know that is what I felt and want I wanted?. She knows I want control and crave it. I always want to have control and it things don’t go the way I want. I lose it and people die. “ I’m your mate Khawula. I will know and feel things even though you won’t say anything to me.” I guess I spoke that out loud.

“ I once trusted someone with my secrets and at the end it looks like it might bite me ”

“ What do you mean? ” she asks turning and facing me.

“ I’m going to tell you about my life and how I met amahle ”

“ Ok ” she says curiously.

I tell her about how we grew up, my brothers, our parents and grandparents. The whole Ntanzi family and out church. I tell her about the people who work for us and with us that we consider friends. The company I ran before I came here and I also tell her about the club. She’s listening and I don’t feel or see any judgement in her eyes. I tell her about Jane and Belinda. My cousin and Mandisa. I tell her how I met amahle and everything that happened between us from the moment we met until she broke up with me and why. The plans I had for her, I don’t leave anything out well except that it was my grandfather who killed him and the sex of course but everything else up until yesterday. When I’m done she has worn her clothes and is looking at me quietly.

“ Please say something? ”

She keeps quiet and shakes her head a little. I don’t know what she’s thinking but I’m sure she now understands why I came home the way I was last night. She turns her head and looks at me.

“ So I took a beating for her last night? ”

“ Angel please don’t put it that way ”

“ I know I said I will do anything to help you but I thought it was because of your business but not because of that stupid little girl!. I can’t believe you couldn’t talk to me because of her Khawula! ” Oh she knows how to raise her voice?. Does she think she’s shouting at me in her mind cause the way it comes out it sounds so sexy and it makes me want to get her mad more but in a good way and not like this.

“ It was because of her actions love. Not her ”

“ It’s the same thing Khawula. She’s the reason!. I just....”

“ I’m sorry love. I should have talked to you the moment you opened the door but it was out first night at our home and I didn’t want to ruin the moment although I did I’m a way and I’m sorry ”

“ Stop apologizing ”

“ I’m sorry. You sound so sexy when your mad ”

“ Don’t make me want to smile when I’m annoyed with you! ” she says smiling

“ I’m.....I won’t do that again because of her or anyone else for that matter. When we do it again it will be because I want to experience it with you. Are you open to that love? ”

“ Yeah we’ll try. I don’t promise you that I will like it or not. Well just see how it goes ”

“ That’s all I’m asking from you angel ” She nods.

“ So everything you have just told me happened during that short time

“ Yes. Less than a year but a while lot happened ”

“ and now she’s back causing problems? ”

“ Yes ”

“ I don’t get why she was mad at first while she knew that she had the diamonds all along. It doesn’t make sense ”

“ Maybe it’s because I beat her the first time I saw cause I wanted to know where her brother was ”

“ Yeah but why lead you on and make you believe that she loved you

Advertisement

forgave you and that you two had a future together? ”

“ She wanted revenge on me and she got it ”

“ if she got it she wouldn’t be back trying to destroy your life and brothers life. To me it sounds like she still wants all of you to pay.”

“ She lied and kept the diamonds she swore she knew nothing about. I found out that she has them and I let it go cause I knew they wont last. But then she comes back after I wanted her to stay away from my family. I told her I will kill her if she even speaks about bishop. ”

“ You know I’m not a church going person but everyone knows who Bishop Ntanzi is. I don’t know why I never made the connection cause you look like him. My god and he’s a Dom too? That could ruined all your family’s legacy should the media find out. What will she gain by doing this? ”

“ She wants to see me suffer. I don’t know why cause I loved her the way I knew how at that time.”

“ You love easy Khawula. You couldn’t see what she really was cause you loved her at that time and maybe she regrets it how things ended it and all the things she said. Maybe she still wants you back.”

“ I don’t want her and the way I loved her is nothing compared to how I love you. I love you and no one else angel. You’re my mate. The one and only ”

“ I know that. Maybe she needs to hear you tell her that ”

“ We’re past that point of talking. She’s going to pay ”

“ I can’t believe she has people working with her to find proof against your brother. I don’t understand how did she think it will turn out when you find out ”

“ She told that girl that I love her and I won’t hurt anyone she cares about ”

“ How do you feel about her? ”

“ I don’t love that bitch angel. I regret the day I brought her to my house ”

“ You were going to come here with her.”

“ Thank God that never happened. I hope to God Calvin knows nothing about what she had been doing ”

“ They are close? ”

“ I don’t know about now angel but at one point they were ”

“ Hmm. I’m meeting him today to help me order furniture from your company. I could ask him ”

“ No I’ll ask him. I’ll know if he’s lying.”

“ I am so glad you can’t read my thoughts ”

“ I hate that ” she chuckles.

“ What will you do to her? ”

“ You really want to know? ”

“ Yes ”

“ I’m going to kill her ”

“ Are you really going to kill someone you once loved? ”

“ Yes I am. No one betrays me twice and lives to tell. I am going to kill her ”

“ Will you ever kill me? ”

“ If you cheat on me or betray me. I’ll kill you then kill myself cause I won’t live in this world without you. I’ll follow you even to the next life ”

“ You scare me ”

“ Don’t be scared angel. I want things to be done a certain way. I want you to do as I say and follow my rules cause if you don’t. I’ll punish you ” She nods.

“ So last night I met Dominant Kabelo? ”

“ No love. Last night you were introduced to Thee Master K. You haven’t met him officially ”

Her skins gets covered in goose bumps and she sucks in her breath.

“ He scares me.”

“ He’s not scary at all. All of us love you ”

“ How many of you am I going to be dealing with? ”

“ Just me, Master K and Elson ”

“ Elson the God in you ”

“ Yes my love ”

“ Who’s gentle between the three ”

“ All of us. We love you the same.”

My phone rings as she’s about to say something. I walk to the coffee table and pick it up. It’s Shamiso.

“ Shamiso?”

“ Good morning sir. I’m sorry to call you this early but I thought you were already at the office... ” she’s panicking.

“ Shamiso calm down and tell me what’s wrong? ”

“ Gavin is here at the club and he’s causing so much noise sir ”

“ where is he now? ”

“ Security has locked him in a room ”

“ Did he hurt you or anyone? ”

“ No sir we’re all fine ”

“ Where’s Thulani? ”

“ I phoned him too. He’s on his way ”

“ Good. I’m on my way ” I hang up.

“ What’s wrong? ”

“ The girl helping Thulani run the club. Her name is Shamiso and she says Gavin is at the club causing havoc. Security has locked him in a room. I’ll see you later love. I love you ”

“ I love you more. Be safe ” I kiss her then take my things and we go to the kitchen and find Mira and Faye in the kitchen. Helping themselves.

“ Who invited you to my mates kitchen? ” This girl fucken annoyed me. I want her gone cause I know one day going to kill her.

“ Good morning sir. Good morning Goddess ” Faye asks watching the news.

“ Good morning Faye ” we greet him back.

“ Uh I thought the food was left for us ” Mira says like it’s not a big deal. What is wrong with this girl.

“ Do you have a maid in here that cooked for you and left food in my mates kitchen? ”

“ No sir uh..... ”

“ Kelson?! Kelson?! ”

“ Don’t shout my name like this Elson! I’m your ancestor for Gods sake! ”

“ I want her gone. She’s messing with my mate and I’m going to kill her. She doesn’t fucken know her place! ”

“ I didn’t send them. Athena did. Take it up with her and oh. Your ritual is scheduled in three days. Goddess nice to finally meet you.” He kisses Angel’s cheeks then disappears.

“ Who the fuck is Athena? ”

“ The Goddess of Moon. I’ll deal with it. You go deal with that situation at work ”

“ I love you ” I tell her.

“ I love you more ” she says. I leave giving that Mira girl a death stare.

Zayon is already in the car waiting for me. We greet each other then drive straight to the club. When I get there I go down to the club and Zayon follows me cause I bet he knows it’s about to go down. When the elevator door opens I can hear that mother fucker screaming his lungs out demanding to see me. He’s calling me all sorts of names.

Thulani is outside the room and his white T-shirt looks bloody. I look at him hands and his vista have blood.

“ Who’s blood is that? ”

“ Sure boss. It’s his ”

“ Shamiso? ”

“ I’m here Master K. ”

“ Send an email to all members and tell them the club will be closed tonight. Tell everyone to stop working and go home. ”

“ on it Master K ” she leaves.

“ Take him to the last room. That big one used for displays. Switch off the cameras and make sure no one gets in.” I tell the guards.

“ Should we close the window sir. ”

“ Watch at your own risk but be warned. Whatever happens here stays here and if I find out that someone opens their mouth and talked. You’ll see what I’ll do to you. Watch what I’m going to do to Gavin. That piece of shit! ”

They drag him out and he looks like he has a broken nose. Thulani comes back and tells me everyone left including Shamiso and the place is on lock down so as the cameras. I take off my jacket and give it to one of the security guys. I follow them and they sit Gavin on the chair. I walk in and when he sees me he keeps quiet.

“ cat got your tongue Gavin? ”

“ Why man?! Why man?! Why kill her? ”

“ She was working with people who wanted to ruin my life. Gavin I don't know if you're brave or stupid but I seriously thought you would have ran away when you found tour girl dead but here you are in my club ”

“ She was innocent man ”

“ Don't make me laugh fool. That bitch wasn't innocent just like you!. You know what happens to people who break the code and rules if the club Gavin. You run signed a fucken contract when you joined this club that you can't talk about it to anyone else. What happens here stays here! But no. Not you mother fucker? You decide to help those two bitches that paid you with my fucken diamonds! ”

“ Man all they told me was they wanted to prove that you ruined her life. She wanted proof against your you and when she gave me those diamonds I couldn't say no man! ”

“ Mother fucker don't lie to me. I know you were asking about Bishop cause wanted to catch him in the act. Record everything then blackmail us with that bitch so you can have a piece of my club! Force me to give you something that we have worked hard for, for years. Am I lying Gavin? ”

“ Man it was all her idea. That girl with her friend is dangerous man I swear. She was very persuasive even though she gave me the diamonds I knew that I couldn't get anything in Bishop ” Amahle dangerous? I laugh.

“ Is that why you sent Lisa? To offer me some stupid deal. Bring your girls here and fuck with my money? Who the fuck do you think you are fool? ”

“ You killed her. You killed Lisa ”

“ I'm going to kill you too ”

“ The police will know it's you. I have proof that you're the last person who saw Lisa. I'll tell the police ”

“ How will you tell them when you're going to be dead? ”

“ Phelisa and amahle will know it's you. She warned me that you'll kill me when you find out but you won't kill her.”

“ The bitch is so sure of herself ”

“ Kabelo... ”

“ Don't fucken call me Kabelo wena! I'm not your fucken friend! ”

“ Look I know I know I messed up and I'm sorry. I shouldn't have involved myself I'm this whole thing bra but Lisa man. Things were finally working out for her and now she's dead ”

“ She's drad because she got involved I'm something that didn't concern her. Gavin you had a chance to come and tell me what they were planning but you didn't. Mother fucker do you think I'm the only one who runs this club?. We have investors mother fucker! People who out their millions into this and you all thought that you will just blackmail us and you have my club just like that? ”

“ Kabelo... ”

“ I said don’t fucken call my name! ” I punch him hard and a bone cracks. He screams.

“ Where’s the bitch?! ”

“ She knows I came here. If I don’t leave this place in an hour. She’s going to call the cops ”

“ Let her call the cops then cause you’re dying mother fucker! ”

“ Take it with her and leave me alone! ”

“ you came to my club and you’re asking me to leave you alone?. Where is that bitch mother fucker?! ”

“ I don’t know! ”

“ So you’re willing to die for that bitch? ”

“ Please don’t kill me Master K. Please don’t! ”

“ Where is Amahle? ”

“ I don’t know ”

“ I’ll make you talk fool. Tell me for the last time. Where is Amahle ”

“ I don’t.... ”

I quickly stand up and wrap my hand around her throat. He lands a mean lunch on my face and fuck he can hit.

“ Ok I’ll make you a deal. If you hit me five times. I’ll let you walk out of here. I won’t come after you and I won’t take your strip club and that escort agency Lisa ran. But if I land more than 5 hits on you. You’re dead. Deal? ”

“ Deal ” I take off my waist cost and whit shirt.

While I’m trying to put them down hee quickly lands one on my face and fuck I wasn’t expecting it. He tries to land another one but I move my face before he lands another and bitch slap him and he falls down. He holds his cheek like he can’t believe I have just bitch slapped him.

His face gets filled with rage and runs to me and we fight. Two grown ass man fighting but unfortunately for him he doesn’t know that I’m more than just a man. Punches land and kicks and I beat the hell out of Gavin. I beat him to a pulp and I feel a little bit of tension leaving my body. He lies flat on the ground not moving, groaning I pain cause I think I broke every bone in her body. I should go back to MMA fighting. So I won’t hit angel like that again.

“ Please.... Please. Master K. Don’t kill me ”

I pick him up like a rag doll, wrapping my fingers around his throat and he’s a mess. Blood all over his face and body.

“ Where is Amahle? ”

“ I don’t know. She’s somewhere around here in Durban. Staying at some hotel ”

I get in his mind and he is right he doesn’t know but the word Umhlanga keeps popping in his mind. So the bitch is in Umhlanga. I smile to myself.

“ Please... my head... Stop.. I... ” I squeeze my fingers tight and he struggles to breathe. He tries to kick me but doesn’t have any strength left in him and he looks pathetic. He pisses on his smell and even farts. Let me save him from his misery.

My fingers dig deep in his skin and it tears. I sink them in and feel his throat. His trying to talk, hitting my arm but it's no use cause when my fingers wrap around his throat I look deep into his eyes and see fear. He stares at death then I pull his throat out of his body and blood splashes on my face, body and all over the room. I look at my hand and it has his throat and tongue.

The smell of blood fills me. I drop down his throat on the floor and touch my face. Blood. I rub it between my hands and it feels good. I see his phone that fell and pick it up. I walk to the door that connects to where people watch and the guys look fucken scared. Some of them vomited on the floor.

"Clean the mess and get rid of that body."

"I'll get rid of it" Zayon says.

I walk to my office and sit down. His phone rings and it's an unknown number. I answer it but keep quiet.

"Hello? Gavin? Where are you?"

I hear a voice I never thought I would ever hear again in my life. It's that bitch.

"Gavin are you okay?"

"I'm coming for you. Run Amahle" She hangs up.

CHAPTER 41

[PREVIOUS](#) PAGE 44 [NEXT](#)

ANGEL

My mate leaves and I watch this stupid girl Mira sitting in my kitchen. I don't why she likes to behave like this is her house or she owns it but something tells me that she's up to no good. She will regret trying to mess with me. I don't know if she thinks I'm stupid or what but she be sorry.

When my mate summoned his ancestor I didn't think he will show up but he did. When he said it wasn't him who sent this guardians here and that it was Athena. I understood why this girl is behaving the way she does its Athena's doing. I know of Athena and about her cause I have heard many stories about her from my grandmother. You see I come from a family of goddesses. My ancestors represent life and light. I have always known this since I was little when I realized that I was special from my friends.

We didn't stay in one town for more than 7 years. Every year we had to move and have a different identity cause if we didn't. People would be suspicious of us meaning me specifically cause I'm different so

they did that to protect me. As for my aunt the one who used to be married to my uncle? Well her children didn't inherit any of the powers from their paternal grandmother. I don't know if my uncle ever told what we are cause the woman has never liked me.

Maybe she knew and that's why she couldn't stand me. Only the women from my maternal family inherit powers and no one else. I asked my grandmother why women only and she said it has been that way for hundreds of years. Maybe that's why she chose to move far away from me once my uncle passed away. I have always lived a comfortable life since I can remember even after my grandmother passed away cause my uncle made sure I had everything I needed. But all of that changed the day my uncle died. I knew I was alone and things were going to be difficult for me and they did.

After the reading of the will I found that I was rich. I had money and the house in Richard's Bay was actually under my name my aunt lost it. She swore that I was never going to get my hands on her husband's money and it happened. She paid people who made sure I don't get my 10 million rands. She lives comfortably in Joburg with her children and the husband she gave money to...my money to marry her.

I was so hurt and devastated when I realized what had happened but I knew that her day will come someday. I still hope so. I tried to reach out to Belinda to help me but she refused and I stopped. I'm glad she did cause maybe I would have ended up dead like her. She has been trouble from the first day my uncle brought her home after he adopted her. He was glad when she ran away and never came back. All of us were actually.

I could have reached out and asked for help from the gods or but I didn't. I stopped talking to them after my grandmother died. I blocked all of them from my life cause I wanted nothing to do with them. I could have saved her but they refused to let me save her life and then she left me. I have never been the same after she died. She was more of a mother to me than my grandmother. She's the only mother I knew cause my mom died giving birth to me. The only thing I have of her are her pictures. She was really a beautiful woman. I do wish though that someday I'll meet her.

My grandmother used to tell me stories about how I am special and one day I am going to marry someone who's special like me. He'll be a fearless God feared by everyone cause he is the key. She told me I will know and feel it when he comes into my life and indeed I did. I knew that day that something was going to happen. But I didn't think it would be that woman and two men who were looking for Belinda. The man who beat me up. I know them and that woman. I could have hurt them but I was scared what will happen to me when people realize what happened so I just let them be. I lost hope after that cause I thought I wasn't going to see him but I felt him the moment he walked through the gate. I knew it was him the moment he opened his mouth and talked to me.

I was so happy that finally my mate is here for me. He's been looking for me for years and at the end found me but I was wrong. I was very wrong cause he loved someone. I could smell her on him the moment I opened the door. I wanted to go and kill the bitch cause he wasn't hers to have. He was mine to have. When he left to go back to her I was broken. It was the worst week of my life and I never want to feel like that ever again. I had promised myself that he was the only man who was ever going to have me but when he rejected me that day. I thought about giving someone else my virginity but then I remembered what my grandmother told me. That any man who isn't my mate when they try to sleep with me they will die a horrible death. I didn't believe her. I thought it was just her way of making sure that I remain pure for many years or up until I get married. But when that man who tried to rape me froze to death and died. I realized that she was telling the truth and so I knew it's either I'm going to die a virgin or one day my mate and I will meet and we did. Look at us now. My eyes have been on Mira the whole entire time and the girl just doesn't care. Maybe she thinks she's wiser and older than me but she's not. If she doesn't stop all the stupid things she does and piss of my mate? She will terribly regret it.

“Mira ”

“Yes Goddess.”

“What is your problem exactly?. Don't you know you're here to work and not do as you please in my home?”

“I saw food and decided to eat. I don’t understand what the big deal is.” She sarcastically.

“Goddess I’m sorry for her behavior. I will talk to her again and make sure she understands where her place is.”

“Mira. I won’t tell you again this so I’m just going to say it once. Respect my mate. Respect me and respect our home. If you ever do one of your stupid stunts ever again. I will kill you and Athena will come and collect your body. Do you understand me?”

“Yeah well you don’t have the power to kill me plus. If you kill me you will be stripped of all your powers and be sent to hell “

“You forget who my mate is” I tell her.

“You have not had the mating bond yet. Some gods and goddesses don’t recognize your relationship cause he has not mated with you and who knows. Maybe he doesn’t want to be mated to you” Did this girl just say this to me? Talk to me like I’m one of her friends?

“Mira what the hell is wrong with you? Apologize to the goddess right now!”

“Why? Everyone is talking about it. You also know it too” I close my eyes and take a deep breath.

“ATHENA!” I call her name and the whole house literally shakes. That’s how fucken angry I am.

Wind blows my hair as the kitchen gets filled with air. A cloud of smoke forms in the kitchen then she steps out of it and the smoke and wind vanish. Why so much drama cause she could have just appeared.

“Oh lovely to be called by the goddess herself. It’s nice to finally meet you goddess”

“I didn’t think our first meeting would be like this Goddess Athena.”

“I understand. What seems to be the problem?”

“I want her gone before my mate kills her cause he will if he finds her here”

“ They are here to protect you so I can’t do that”

“So you want her death on your hands?”

“It’s against the law to kill a guardian. You know that right?”

“I don’t care about that and my mate won’t too cause he will kill her. She’s disrespectful, doesn’t know her place and has a big mouth. I

want her gone Athena. You can replace her with someone else I don't care but I want her gone. Now!"

"You can't talk to the goddess like..."

"Freeze" I say and ice covers her whole body. I am so sick of this girl.

"You cannot do that Thobeka. Unfreeze her" Athena says.

"No I won't. I asked you nicely to get rid of this girl and you refused.

You let her talk to me the way she wants like I'm not a fucken goddess. I want her gone before I kill her." I lift my arm towards her then snap my fingers once. The ice cracks around her then breaks into pieces.

She looks at me terrified and hides behind Athena.

"Thobeka. Mira is still young and learning. Give her another chance and I'm sure she will behave cause she has learned her lesson. Isn't that right Mira?" Mira nods.

"Don't say I didn't warn you Athena. Next time when you come here she'll be in pieces."

She lays her hands on my bare shoulder then she freezes and looks at me shocked. I can feel her body standing still and her heartbeat beating like she's going to have a heart attack. I can feel her fear. Her blood moving and I swallow. It calls to me. I feel the way it smells and I can almost feel how it would taste. She removes her hand and takes a step away from me.

"You can't stay here Mira."

"But.."

"Shut up!." She says to her. "Do you know what you are?" She asks me still in shock.

"Yes I do moon goddess. What you saw is exactly me."

"Your mate doesn't know does he?"

"He will know the day we mate"

"The person I will send won't cause trouble."

"How do I know she won't be like her too?"

"She won't I promise. Your mate has to do that ritual before the week ends then you have to mate goddess quickly after that."

"You're running out of time goddess. The two of you are running out of time. They will use you to force your mate to lure him out and that

could be the end. For all of us.” What is she talking about?. Who will lure who out?.

“What are you talking about?”

“Be careful” She says then disappears with Mira. Thank God that girl is gone.

“Let’s go to the mall Faye. Calvin is waiting for us.”

“After you my goddess” We leave the house and get in the car.

I text Calvin when we get to the mall and ask him to send me his location and he does. He sees me first when I get there and he looks good. We hug then sit down. Faye sits at another table.

“I have already ordered you your favorite.” I smile. I love pan cakes with maple syrup.

“Thank you Call.”

“So tell me. How was your first night at your home?” I think about what happened. How Kabelo whipped me with that belt just because of that girl but then I think about how he apologized and took care of me after.

“Uhm lets say it was interesting. Why didn’t you tell me he owns a interior decorating company?”

“I though you knew girl” He says biting his sausage.

“I didn’t know. He told me this morning and said I can order from there. Anything I want for our house.”

serif">“He’s the best boss ever.”

“Yeah he is.” I blush.

“So how much are we spending?”

“I don’t know. I get to buy everything for our home so he will see the bank notification.” He giggles.

“You and I same what’s app group.” I keep quiet and look at him.

“Can I ask you something?”

“Shoot” He says.

“Tell me about.....” His phone rings.

“Sorry doll. I hope it’s not your man calling me” He says picking it up from the table. He flips it, looks at the screen then his face changes.

He looks at me then looks at his phone. He’s deciding if he should answer it or not. I’m now curious to know who’s calling him. He decides to answer it.

“Why are you calling me?..... Why do you want to know where I am?No. I told you that our friendship is over. Stop calling me.”
He hangs up and throws his phone on the table.

“Who has got you so upset?” I ask him chuckling.

“What if I tell you and you get mad at me?”

“Get mad at you? Never. I promise I won’t.”

“I know if I tell you this you’re also going to tell him so I might as well tell you” He sounds nervous.

“Calvin you don’t have to tell me anything you don’t want to tell me.”

“ That was Amahle calling me. I don’t know if the boss told you about her” That bitch again.

“He did tell me about her. What does she want?”

“She wants me to take her to see the boss at work. She wants to talk to him to explain things. I don’t know what she means” hmm.

“What kind of person is she?”

“At first I thought she was this cool, sweet girl but then as I got to know her I realized she was manipulative. She will do and say anything to get things done her way. I never told sir that I didn’t like her cause they were in a relationship so when she called it quits I was happy”

“You were happy but you still have her phone number. It’s not blocked”

“Cause I wanted to see when she calls me.”

“Hmmm” I’m not judging I swear.

“Look Thobe I know that you don’t know me that well but you will know me and know that Kabelo is more of a big brother to me than my boss. My loyalty and trust is his. Anyone who’s against him is against me as well. I have never been around anyone he dates and I’ve been working for him for years. It has only been Amahle and you only. If it happens that things don’t go well between you two and he meets someone else and introduces them to me too?. I will get to know them thobe I’m not going to lie. It will hurt me to cut you off but I will do it without thinking twice cause I want him to be happy. And if he’s not happy with you then he deserves someone who’ll make him happy.”

“Thank you call. That’s what I wanted to hear. I’m happy to know that you want him to be loved and happy. He is loved by me and will continue to be loved by me only. I have his heart and he has mine. I will do my absolute best to make sure your big brother is always happy cause he’s my mate call. I will die without him” He nods. If only he knew I meant it literally.

“Thank you for believing me. I haven’t talked to amahle since I left her in her apartment. I’m surprised to get a call from her. I wonder why she wants to see him.” She messed up and she’s going to die.

“Calvin?” We booth look up and it’s a girl. She’s beautiful and young. He eyes lock with mine then she looks back at Calvin. I feel the hair on the back of my neck stands. I can feel my body changing inside as it goes on alert. She smells funny though like she bathed in something or she ate it. I don’t know. Calvin can’t smell it cause he’s just human but Faye and I can cause he’s right beside me too.

“Amahle? What are you doing here?. How did you find me?” So this is amahle. Ok. I can see why Kabelo liked her. She’s beautiful. That’s the only good thing I pick from her cause her energy is off. Way off.

“I need your help Calvin. I know he will listen to me if I show up with you. Please help me” She’s talking about my mate.

“You haven’t answered my question. How did you know I was here?”

“I have my ways ok. Now please let’s” She says irritated and impatient.

“No. I’m not taking you anywhere to see my boss. You want to see him call him yourself.”

“So you won’t help me? Why?”

“Because I don’t want to. Now leave please. Your disturbing us”

“You’re not having a meeting so why can’t you just come with me and then you’ll continue whatever this is where you left of.” It’s the dismissive tone she uses that gets to me. “ You don’t mind now do you?” She asks me cocking her head to the side.

Calvin opens his mouth to say something but I shake my head. I don’t even know what he was going to say.

“We were actually in a meeting with Calvin. I’m Thobeka Mr Ntanzi’s personal assistant. I can take you to him if that’s what you want cause Calvin here doesn’t want to”

“Really? You would?” Calvin asks for a bill.

“Yes I would. What do you say Cal? I mean between us I’m sure we can convince the boss to talk to her. I mean look at her. She’s desperate.” She reeks of desperation and something else.

“Yes you can take me. Lets go. I’ll Uber us”

“ Oh no. We have our own driver here who takes us anywhere we want to go. Perks of working for a wealthy man” Cal pays the bill and we leave.

“You sound like you’re in love with him.” She says like she’s disgusted.

“ I am in love with him but please don’t tell him, cause he’s my boss and he will fire me” She laughs.

“ Oh sweetie even if I tell him I wouldn’t be worried if I was you cause he would just laugh it off. He doesn’t date the help. No matter how beautiful they are” I smile and shake my head.

“But men are men Amahle. You’ll never know” Calvin says.

“Oh you of all people Cal should know. I mean he chose me out of all of them. No matter how big their eyes are and flawless skin they had. I know Kabelo. He’s not affected by those things.” I take a deep breath and close my eyes. I calm myself down cause I want to jump from this seat and wrap my hands around that neck. I can snap it before she even says my mates name.

Wow. I have never met a person like this. She is so sure of herself it’s so fucken pitiful and I feel very sorry for her. I cannot believe this girl actually believes that my mate is still hers and she knows him more than anyone. It’s either she has lost her damn mind or she’s pretending to be.

She takes something out of her handbag and opens it. It’s a small container that has something that looks like Vaseline but it’s dark in color. What in the hell is this?. She applies it on her eyebrows, under her eyes and then lips. She takes some and puts it in her tongue. She’s going to use umuthi on Kabelo to what? Win him back or what?/ I am shocked.

“I cannot believe you have just done that Amahle! What is wrong with you?.”

“Look I messed up okay and I have to clean my mess. I will do whatever I need to do to make sure that Kabelo forgives me and takes me back. I know I fucked up allot and have learned from my mistakes. Kabelo will forgive me cause I know he still cares about me so don’t you judge me for what I’m doing. We do what we have to do in order to survive.” I feel like I’m listening to a story someone is telling me cause I still can’t believe the things she says with her mouth.

I take out my phone and type a message to him.

“Get ready, we are coming.” Faye looks at me and shakes his head. He’s choked like me.

We arrive at the offices after thirty minutes and we get in the elevator. Faye presses the 4th floor button.

“This floor” He says.

When the door opens I see Kabelo standing there waiting for us and he looks so good like a bad mother fucker. My whole body gets chills. The atmosphere is at of a predator waiting to pounce at any time. I can smell blood here, Someone died. Kabelo killed someone. He cocks his head when his eyes lock with mine and I put my finger on my lips. He nods.

“Well look at what is in front of me. Did I not tell you to run Amahle so I can hunt you and kill you?” He asks her. Not even a single emotion on his face. The temperature in the room changes. It gets chilly.

“Kabelo I’m sorry”

“Oh you will be sorry by the time I’m done with you”

CHAPTER 42

[PREVIOUS](#) PAGE 45 [NEXT](#)

Advertisement

ANGEL.

“ Kabelo I’m sorry”

“Oh you will be sorry by the time I’m done with you” He is mad.

"I was stupid ok. I thought I could take you on but I was wrong" I try not to laugh but I fail and I laugh out loud. Everyone in the room laughs cause she sounds ridiculous and believes what she's actually saying.

"You thought you could take him?" I ask her walking towards my mate.

"This doesn't involve the help. You and Calvin helped me to see my man so I would like all of you to leave and give us some space. Go"

"She just called you her man" I look at my mate.

"I can't believe she called you the help" We look at each other then we burst out laughing.

"Ah this bitch is crazy. I can't believe you were going to spend the rest of your life with her"

"Don't call me a bitch, bitch!" I don't find that offending. Everything else she has said really offended me.

"I was crazy angel, I don't know what was happening to me." He says laughing cause it is funny now.

"You told her about me?"

"Yes he did. I am his helper after all" I grin and she looks at me annoyed.

"Kabelo tell them to leave. I want us to talk"

"You think you can come here and call the shots? Who do you think you are?"

"The same woman you fucked raw over and over again. The same woman you professed your love to. The same woman who made come undone in her hands, body and mouth. Tell me you don't miss those things."

"Yeah I said them at that time cause I did love you. Yes I fucked you cause you were a great lay. That's what you were. Just a lay. You fooled me into believing you were this sweet girl but you weren't. A lying conniving bitch. You have some nerve coming here and think you can sweet talk your way into me not killing you"

"You still care about me. I know you do. That is why you haven't moved on Kabelo. It'd be because you knew I will come into my senses and realize that I love you. I still love you and I want us to fix things." She walks towards him.

"If you dare lay one little finger at him. I'll rip you into pieces little girl." I mean it. If this girl touches him. I will kill her.

"Who the fuck are you and why are you all still here. Oh fuck this bitch is in love with you Kabelo. You see what happens when you hire incompetent help that doesn't know their place?. Well this happens.

My mate looks at me and smiles.

"You told her you love me?"

"Oh please God don't make me sick. I could hear how she talked about you. She had this stupid look on her face. God I want to vomit"

"It's not a stupid look. It's the feeling and look someone has when they look at the person who means the world to them. Your other half. The one who completes you. The one who calms you down when he takes over." Amahle looks at my mate shocked.

"What? What are you talking about?" she asks him.

"I'm talking about this woman who's my everything. The love of my life. You see I found her or she found me rather. Again and I promised myself I am never letting go of her ever again. Angel."

"Khawula" He walks towards me pulls me to his arms and kisses me, leaving me breathless. I sigh.

"I want more" He whispers.

"You're the one who doesn't want to ravish this cake" I wink at him.

"Oh I am going to tear it apart." I giggle.

"KABELO! What the hell is this?"

"Thulani. You, Calvin and the guards go upstairs. I'll call you when we're done here."

"I want to stay" Calvin and Thulani say at the same time.

"You still want to watch? Aren't you traumatized?"

"No man. I want to see what is going to happen."Thulani says.

"Call I think you should leave cause what you'll see here will fuck with you."

"If it gets too much. I swear I'll leave." I look at the guards and two of them decide to leave and the other two decide to stay.

"You knew about this and didn't tell me?"

"Why would I tell you anything when the last time I saw you I told you our friendship is over. I am loyal to my boss and not you amahle."

"Kabelo Please. This girl won't love you the way I love you. I'm sorry ok. I know I made many mistakes but I learned from them. I love you"

"Shut the fuck up. You ambush them so they take you to me then you come in smelling fucken shit. I don't know what muthi you bathed in cause you smell like shit. You thought you can do all the bullshit you did then when you realize that you are at the end of the rope you decide to go and see a sangoma to give you umuthi to make me forget what you did and agree to everything you are saying?. Did he not tell you who I am?"

He has been trying to contain his anger but he is slowly losing it. He is going to snap and I want to see and enjoy every moment she shreds her to pieces. I can't believe the bitch thought her muthi will work.

"Yes I did go and see someone but what was I supposed to do when you told me you are going to kill me? I made a mistake ok I'm sorry."

"Oh you didn't make a mistake ntombazan (Girl). You knew what you were doing. You thought you could take me on and mess with me just because I let you after I found out that you actually stole those diamonds. When they found your friend Belinda. I told them to put her in a cage. She was in a cage for almost two days before I killed her. What did I warn you about amahle?. Did I not tell you to never ever talk about my family. My brother in particular?" She sniffs.

"You said if I ever talk about your business or your family you will kill You will put me in the cage and then...."

"You did exactly that. You found people who will spy for you so you can get Bishop on videos so you can blackmail us to give you shares in our business.

You still continued to poke me even after I let you go when I found out you knew about the diamonds and you were selling them.”

“I had to have something. After we found out that my brother dies I knew I couldn’t give them to you. They were my life insurance.”

“Those diamonds weren’t yours to keep you stupid bitch!. Those were mbuso’s diamonds for his wife. You paid Gavin with my fucken diamond. I gave you more money from your brother’s pension fund. I paid an apartment a year in advance for you and still that wasn’t enough with the diamonds you had. Why couldn’t you just stray away from me And eat all that money with your best friend huh?!” He asks her. His eyes have changed colour and soon. He’s going to be on fire.

Her eyes have been going between me and my and I can feel the hate she feels towards me. I don’t know why she’s hating on me cause she’s the one who ruined things between the two of them.

“ I know that now okay. It was phelisa who convinced me okay. She was with my brother friend and they convinced me that I had to do this. Ok I agree that I might have talked about you running a club and Bishop being involved but I didn’t think they would want us to do that. I told them it was a bad idea and...”

“Ok I have heard enough of this bullshit. I want to go and finish house shopping.

“Why is she living my life Kabelo? Why is she...”

“I am not living your life you crazy bitch!”

“Kabelo. You I love you and you lo...” She doesn’t get to finish her sentence cause she falls down to her knees and looks at my mate. If I was someone else I sure as hell would have killed this crazy bitch the moment she said she loves my mate.

“Kabelo I submit to you. I’ll be your submissive

Advertisement

your slave. I’ll be anything you want me to be.” Calvin claps his hands.

“And here I thought I have seen it all.”

“You look fucken pathetic. Get the fuck up!”

“No master K. Please take me. I’m yours. I....” Fuck this bitch.

I raise my arm and her body gets up from the ground and into the air. The bitch fucken screams. I look at my mate and he’s grinning. Calvin, that Thulani guy and the other guards look scared. I live her there then go and take a seat at the bar. I know I don’t drink but I feel like I need a drink. I don’t get why kabelo couldn’t see what a manipulative bitch amahle is. I see a bottle of wine and I grab it and drink straight from the bottle.

“What is going on? Get me down! Oh my God I am so scared !” she shrieks. “ Put me down! Put me down!”

“You should be scared!”

“She’s tired of listening to your bullshit and so I am. I am tired of hearing your voice, looking at you and smelling the shit you’re covered in. You should have

disappeared in my life you never existed. Your friend and the man she came with to see Lisa will soon join you wherever your death takes you.”

“Kabelo please. Your family loves me, you love....”

Fire shoots out of my mate’s hands and cover amahle as she’s suspended in air. She screams loud as she burns. Finally the bitch is dying. I am so over this. She screams and clothing pieces fall to the floor. I also let her fall down roughly and she screams and tries to move around the room but she can’t see cause she’s on fire. I can feel her flesh burning. When her eyes pop out of their sockets. She screams until she lays flat on the floor and stops moving. She tries to lift her hand but she fails.

“With the eternal flame. I send your soul to the afterlife. Your soul will never come back here, harm or hurt anyone. You will go to the afterlife and meet with your family members who are waiting for you.” Kabelo says then opens his hands and the moment amahle’s souls leaves her body. The fire engulfs her souls then it disappears.

I can feel all of their heartbeats and fear. Calvin looks at me then looks at kabelo.

“What is going on?. What are you? What just happened?.”

“We are like this and so much more Cal. There is so much that is happening in this world that you don’t know about.” I tell him.

“If you open your mouth and tell anyone what happened here. What happened to amahle is nothing. I wanted her to scream and beg for mercy but my beautiful mate here and I wanted it to be over. She made me sick.”

“Call you want a drink?” He looks at me like he doesn’t know me. He gets up and takes the bottle from me and rinks all of it.

“I need something stronger. I need more”

“Me too. Let’s go to my house and get drunk”

“Angel?”

“Can you buy us some food cause we are going to our house and get drunk. Khawula please come home after you’re done getting rid of her body.”

“Ok baby. Faye will drive you home.”

“ Faye will take amahle’s body and teleport it to where she lives with that girl. She’s at amahle’s apartment. You should go with them too then kill that bitch and that friend then come home with food. We are going to take that bottle of tequila and drink it now. Right Cal?”

“Right angel.”

“Are you okay baby?”

“I am fine Khawula. I just want to go home and get drunk.Who’s driving us?”

“I will ma’am.” Says one guard. I get up and khawula meets me halfway.

“I’m sorry about the things she said that upset you and what I said and didn’t say. I could have let this thing end a long time but I didn’t. I’m sorry.”

“I’m not at you baby. It’s just that I hated hearing her telling you that she still loves you while I knew she didn’t and never did. She was a fool and didn’t know what she had until just know when she stared at death in the face.”

“Thank you baby. I love you”

“I love you more. Now go so you can come back and feed us.” I kiss his lips then we leave them.

A FEW DAYS LATER.

I can't believe Kabelo would spring this on me. Last night he told me that his friend Mbuso told him that the future king told mbuso to invite kabelo to his cleansing at Empangeni and it's this morning. I told him he can go but no he wants me to come with him. I can't believe I'm going to meet his friends in a day like this. God I hope I won't feel awkward and embarrass my mate.

“Hey stop worrying. They are going to love you.”

“You don't know that Khawula”

“Love I know okay and besides it's not like you are going to meet my family now. Next week is when you should be worried cause I am taking you to meet the whole family. I want them to meet future Mrs Ntanzi.”

“Oh God. I am going to faint that day. So do I cover my head? Cause I can't cover my shoulders. I'm not married”

“Hey now no need to be sarcastic love. This God is going to marry this beautiful ass.”

“I knew you love me for my ass only “ I say laughing.

“I eat it so that clearly shows you” I blush

“Khawula don't talk like that.” He kisses my nape and moans. “Please move so I can wrap this this around my head. We are already late”

He waits for me to finish then we walk out of the house. Zayon is driving us. Faye and the new guy are driving behind us. I guess Athena decided to send another woman. We get in the car and we drive to Empangeni.

“No woman is going to look as beautiful as you are. All eyes will be on you.”

“Thank you for making me feel better.” He pecks my cheek and I lay my head on his chest.

That day with Calvin we got so drunk. I woke up with a terrible hangover. I swore to never drink tequila again. Amahle is dead. Her friend too and the other guy. I am so glad to know that we are never going to deal with that crazy girl again. The only thing I'm worried about now is if his friends will like me.

“How are they going to react when they touch my hand and feel my cold hands?” I ask him.

“Don't worry they won't touch you.” I look at him.

“Ok”

“It's the rules baby. You don't touch another man woman. We all know it and respect it.”

“That's good.” I feel a little better.”

The car drives and until Zayon parks outside where there are so many cars parked.

“I'll call Mbuso and tell him we're outside” He takes his phone and calls him. A while later a man approaches us.

Not just a man but a very handsome man. Wow but my man is something else. He's gorgeous. He's a God. He looks at us as he approaches and his eyes get wide. He mouths wow. He gets closer.

"Ntanzi. Unjani Mfowethu (how are you brother)" He speaks nice too.

"Ngiyaphila Gumede unjan' wena? .(I'm good thanks and you?)"

"I'm great man. Sbu is going to lose it when he sees you again."

"It's been long time man. I want you to meet the love of my life. My future wife and goddess. She's my everything."

"Nice to meet you future wife, the goddess and his everything." He says then just pecks my cheek. Ok. They look at each other then laugh.

"Fool don't kiss my mate. I don't know where that mouth was before you came here" They laugh. "This is my mate Thobeka Lukhele."

"Nice to meet you MaLukhele. I am Mbuso Gumede and I have known this man and his brothers for a very long time. Lets go in. They are probably wondering why I'm not coming back."

We follow Mbuso as we walk in the yard. It is a very big yard and there are many houses. The biggest one is the royal house. Mbuso asks him questions about where his brothers are and he tells him. We get inside this tent and it is full of handsome men and beautiful woman. Wow. You can tell that all these people are fucken rich. I am so glad I also wore my best clothes cause I would have felt out of place.

Obviously Khawula and his friends swim in money. That's why he told me to use his card whichever way I want. I am so glad I took Calvin and we shopped until we dropped. All the men in the tent stand up. I look at Kabelo and he's grinning.

"These fucken fools. I should have known this was going to happen." He softly says. I am holding tight to Kabelo's hand I'm sure he can feel my heart beat.

"To everyone who doesn't know this man then let me introduce him. This is Kabelo Ntanzi. Sbu and I even Bonga here. Have known him and his brothers for years. And this on his side is his woman. The future Mrs Ntanzi. Her name is Thobeka Lukhele." A man who looks like Mbuso comes forward grinning.

"So this is the beautiful woman who cooked that wonderful curry we ate?" He asks.

"Love this is the fool who asked you to cook him something and bring it on his house warming." They laugh.

"The fool's name is Busani. The more handsome twin" laughs of grown ass men who have deep voices has never sounded do beautiful like how they sound now. Busani kisses my cheek and all the guys do that as they introduce themselves and their beautiful wives and I try my hardest not to blush but I can't.

One of the women who's name is Lesego's who's married to lungi's brother Scelo is pregnant. She looks so beautiful and glowing but I sensed something else in her. I have to ask Khawula if he felt it too. He looks at me and I know he felt it.

“The one and only Kabelo KB” says a voice behind us. We turn and I see another handsome man. God how do these women deal with being around all these men. Then I remember all of them are married.

“Sbuda bantwana” They laugh then bro hug. I feel Kabelo going still then he quickly masks it. Something is wrong. They talk and laugh then talk again and laugh.

“And this beautiful woman next to me is my Thobeka Lukhele. My future wife.”

“Wow brother where did you get her cause she looks like she bathes in milk and honey. Sawubona MaLukhele. USibusiso uMbatha. Ngijabulela ukuzwazi” I bow cause even though I know he’s going to king. Something tells me to bow and I do.

He takes my hand and pecks a kiss and my whole body goes still. Like I freeze. I don’t know what is happening to me cause I feel pain I have never felt before. I can feel his pain, everything that has happened. Is happening and what is going to happen.

“Bafo what is going on here?” That voice brings me back from reality.

I pull my hand back from Sbusiso and look at him. Then I look at the man whom I heard his voice.

“Angel? Are you okay?” I feel like crying and I do. My god.

“Bring her to me. Come with her.” Someone says. I can’t look to see who it is cause my heart is full of sorrow. I cling to Kabelo as he picks me up and we walk out.

CHAPTER 43

[PREVIOUS](#) PAGE 46 [NEXT](#)

KABELO.

The drive feels silent and it feels long cause Angel is now sleeping. I cause what earlier at Sbu’s place really took a toll on her. She is down and I can sense her energy is down too. I don’t know what exactly what she saw and felt but what I do know for sure is that she felt his pain and what happened to him. I didn’t know she could take on people’s pain and feel it too like it happened to her.

We arrive home and I wake her up. Her eyes are sad and she looks like she wants to cry. I guess she was holding it in for us to get home so she can let it out. I step out of the car and she does too. I pick up her up then use my speed and take us to our bedroom quickly. I put her down, quickly take off her clothes and mine then get in the shower. I move to the bathroom and fill the bathtub with water and the essential oils and things she loves to put in the bath.

She walks in, I take her hand and we get in the bath. I pull her close to my chest and she lays her head on it. I begin to wash her body while listening to her chest moving up and down. She threads our hands together then sighs. I

know she wants to talk about what she felt but maybe doesn't know how to begin.

"Talk to me angel. What did you see my love?"

"Have you ever hit a woman?"

"I have hit you angel"

"No. not like that. That was different. I mean like have you ever hit a woman cause you felt like you can do it. Because you're a man, you're bigger than her?"

"No love. I have never."

"He hit her Khawula. He beat her up like she was nothing. She's never going to be the person she was before."

"I'm sorry love you saw that" She sniffs.

"That man is wicked khawula. No woman deserves to be touched like that." Is he talking about skhu?

"Love who are you talking about?"

"When I touched sbu I don't know how it happened cause it has never happened before in my life. I felt his love and connection to her. I felt his pain cause he doesn't know where she is. They are connected now in more ways than others cause they share something and somehow it made me see her and her emotions."

"Love who hit khwezi?"

"Sbu's brother. He knows she has nothing to do with it but he still hit her even when she begged him on her knees. Does he know what kind of bad luck he brought to him and his family by putting his hands on her?" Fuck that monster. I wipe her tears.

"I knew he knew something about her but I couldn't read his thoughts cause that man's soul is dark. Skhumbuzo tapped into something he shouldn't have cause he wanted to be the next king. Sbu is going to kill him when he finds out."

"Nothing is going to go right for skhumbuzo. He will be punished severely and unfortunately his family will suffer too."

"Do you know where she is love?"

"I do know but you know what the seer told us. We can't interfere and take him to her. He has to be the one who goes to her and finds her.

"I can't believe he knows what we are." I say. I was shocked when he asked us to stay behind. He said he knew we are much more than humans.

"He knows what you can do. Wake up the dead, give and take life too.

Shouldn't humans not know these things?" Angels asks.

"Remember he said his forefathers and everyone in his family who has his gift know that there are people like us who live amongst them. He never expected though to meet them." I say.

"Especially you."

"I know that's not the only thing that got you upset. Talk to me love."

"That woman who's married to lungi brother. Lesedi that's her name right?"

"Yes love. What about her?"

"Did you feel something around her. Some negative energy surrounding her?"

"Now that you mention it I did. I thought maybe it was because skhumbuzo was near us and I was feeling his energy."

"No it's her. Something is wrong with her. I don't know if it's her or the baby. But something is going on and I don't know."

"Do you want to maybe see her and finds out what's wrong and if we can help them?"

"Please Khawula. I would sleep better knowing that something is not wrong or we helped her in some way."

"Ok love. I'll call Mbuso tomorrow and ask him if we can see the Ngcobo's"

"Thank you."

"Are you hungry?" I ask her.

"No. I just want you to hold me."

"Lets go to bed then." We step out then I dry us and moisturize ourselves then we go to bed.

"Angel?"

"Love?"

"What did your grandmother say?"

"She told me I must give sbu some healing first cause he's going to need it for when he finds her cause things are going to be hard between them. She also said I have to go to her and make a protection spell where she lives. She told me to touch her forehead before I leave."

"How are we going to go to her?"

"Zayon and Faye will teleport us there. We would teleport ourselves but you don't want us to mate."

"Angel I do want to mate with you love. Believe me I do but I want to marry you first. Is that so wrong?"

"No baby it's not. I am flattered that you want to pop my cherries before you mate with me but I don't care. It doesn't matter to me if you pop it now or later cause it's yours and I want you to have it. I know you're going to marry me baby. Just take what's yours or else..."

"ANGEL! Don't threaten me!" She giggles.

"I will never baby. I was just saying that I will buy a toy to keep me company." I look at her and chuckle.

"Love. Have you ever used one?"

"Nope but I will"

"You won't. Aren't my fingers enough?"

"No cause they are not that weapon of mass distraction. Don't you want this?" She rubs her ass against my hard dick. Fuck man. This woman will kill me.

"What about my tongue when I eat your ass and that pussy?"

"Oh that I fucken love. I never knew feeling someone's tongue in there was so damn good. Your tongue, lips and whole mouth can do what you always do and more." I laugh. This girl is crazy.

I shift us and get between her thighs. My dick is right at her entrance. Her eyes get bigger than what they are. Her breathing changes and she licks her lips.

“Take that tongue out and lick my lips” She gasps.

She opens her mouth and that tongue slips out. I open my mouth and swallow that whole tongue. She moans inside and I kiss the shit out of her. I grind my dick against her clit and she moans. She’s fucken wet. My dick is coated with her juices and I can feel her pussy closing and opening. Her scent fills my nostrils, lungs and head. The whole room smells of her fucken aroused scent. “Angel?”

“yes” she whispers.

I move from her neck, to her boobs suckling then stomach and finally that sweet mana from heaven. I stuff my face and eat her like I’m eating a watermelon. Her juices coat my chin God! This woman tastes fucken amazing. My angel rides my face saying my name. I muff her, I play with that clit and suck it for dear life holding her down with my hands. She screams and I see her throwing her head back as she comes.

I move up her body, wrap her legs around waist and look at her. She looks so fucken beautiful right now. I love this woman.

“Hello beautiful” she smiles then giggles. “Look at me” her eyes open and they lock with me. I kiss her and let her taste herself. She doesn’t mind cause she moans. My dick is literally leaking of pre-cum. I flex my hips.

“Khawula” she says breathlessly.

“My love. Are you ready?.”

“Uh-huh” Our eyes lock. “Look at me

don’t look away. It’s going to hurt but the pain will be better and eventually disappear okay?”

“Okay” She says nodding.

“Don’t move at all.” She nods. Her heartrate is now beating fast. I thread our hands together. Put my weight on her chest so she won’t move while kissing her until I feel her body relaxing.

My dick knocks on her entrance and she tries to move but she can’t. I push my dick in her and the head get inside. I stop and look at her.

“Are you ready?” She nods. I bring my head down and our lips lock. She moans.

I trust in hard, fast and I breach that burrier and she screams moving her head to the side. I get still and feel her warm tight pussy contracting around me. I pull almost out then thrust back my whole dick in her and tears prickle her eyes.

“Do you want me to stop angel?” She shakes her head. “wrap your arms around my neck love” She does.

I wrap my arms around her and hold her tight. I pull out again then thrust back in hard and fast. I swallow hard cause she’s fucken tight then begin to fuck her. Every deep thrust in and out makes her scream my name out loud. I love it cause it’s music to my ears.

As soon as I see she's enjoying it cause her body relaxes. I don't hold back as I fuck the shit out of her and she immediately comes. Her pussy spasms and milks my dick. I fuck her through her orgasm then quickly pull out and muff her again. Then go back to her and fuck her hard. My balls wanting to release cause finally we have ended the dry spell.

I can feel her blood moving in her body, her heart racing then I can feel her heart beating the same as mine. Each beat is the exact same as mine. I pull out then pull in again and lose myself in her. All the blood goes to my balls and I feel my dick growing inside her. God I don't want this feeling to stop. I'm going to fucken come hard.

Angel's neck is exposed and I case see the pulse in her neck. I can see that vein that badly wants me to sink my teeth into it. As soon that thought crosses my mind as I'm fucking her my throats get dry and I can practically taste her blood and my dick wants to release. Oh shit fuck! My head moves to her neck, I lick it then I feel myself sinking my teeth in her and taste her blood.

I groan loud cause it tastes so good like something that is pure and forbidden. It moves from my mouth to my throat and it so good. My dick springs inside her and I cum hard shooting my seed in her and I can literally feel her womb welcoming my seed in her and keeping it. I feel something pricking me too on my neck then I feel her mouth closing in on me and our minds become one. My body lights up and all the lights in the house. I open my eyes and I see us moving up from the bed and we get suspended in the air. Fire breaks out of me and it surrounds us. She opens her eyes and gasps and tries to move her mouth from my neck but I put my hand on her head and stop her cause what is happening now is a mating ceremony. The fire grows then a crystals of us come out of her body and the form a ball. A fireball forms too and both balls move above us. They come together and form this one huge ball of fire and ice. They become one then they explode and I feel this excruciating pain on my chest and my skin burns and also the pain shoots straight to my heart too. Angel winces too as she feels the pain then we get laid down in bed again. I feel everything she's feeling. Everything she is. Her wants, her needs. Her core and her soul. I discover something about her that scared me to death and I realize she might not know. When she's had the feel of my blood she sinks her teeth out and closes the bites with her tongue by licking it. I lick her neck closed too then look at her and she's glowing. She is literally glowing like her body is covered in diamonds. I pull out and look at her. I feel so strong like I have never felt before

My strength, senses and eyesight have doubled out. I can see in the dark now clearly like it's during the day. Wow angel. I suspected angel but I didn't actually ask her cause I was waiting for her to tell me who she really is. Maybe her wanting us to mate before I married her was her way of letting me. My angel God. I can't believe he's her father. Does she even know it's him?

"Hello my vampire. Finally you have come out." I say kissing her lips and she laughs

"How did you know?" She asks smiling.

"Your beautiful and cold skin. You can at night and you don't age love. You look like you're still 29. So tell me my love. How old are you really?" She bursts out laughing and I join her.

"I am 28 Khawula. I'm never going to grow old or even die. And you too now cause you took my blood."

"And it tastes fucken good like it was forbidden" She grins.

"You're glowing love."

"I know. My grandmother told me that will happen when I finally meet my mate."

"Thank you for sharing your precious blood with me in both ways." She laughs. "I am now connected to you in ways I never thought were possible"

"But we can't read each other's thoughts" she says.

"we can feel them and communicate mentally" she giggles "How was it though?" I ask her putting the towel between her thighs and wiping her.

"You were amazing and I fucken loved it." She says blushing.

"Thank you for waiting for me. I will always treasure this moment we shared. I love you angel."

"I love you Khawula. You're hard again" She says.

"I'm not done with you" I tell her getting between her thighs again and I sink in home. Fuck this is better than any pussy I've had before. I groan and she moans. I make love to my fucken woman until she tells me her pussy is on fire. ANGEL.

It's the middle of the night when I feel khawula getting out of bed and answering his phone. He listens then hangs up. He rushes to the bathroom but his speed has now changed cause he collides with the table he falls and it breaks into pieces. He curses and I laugh out loud. He stands up and laughs too.

"Really Angel? The first time I sleep with you, you do this to me?"

"Sorry baby" I'm still giggling. "Don't rush again cause who knows what you break in that bathroom" I say laughing

He walks to the bathroom and after a while I hear things breaking and lots of curses. He comes out looking mad. I burst out laughing cause I know he broke everything in there.

"You might want to wake up Zayon if you don't want to cause accidents on the roads or wreck your car." He shakes his head and goes to the closet and comes after a minute full clothed.

"There are things I might like that I now have because of you. I have to go love. Sbu's brother got into an accident."

"Okay baby."

He walks towards me, lifts me out bed and I wrap my legs around him and kiss him for dear life. I love this man.

"I don't want to leave you but I have to go."

"I know baby. Go and come back to me." I hug him.

“Always love. Always.” He lays me down again and touches me where I am marked now with his symbol of fire. He plants a kiss on where his mark is then looks at me in a different light. I see love. Possessiveness and I can feel his whole dominant, alpha male side and it shakes me to my core to actually see and feel how scary and dangerous Kabelo is. He looks at me one last time then leaves calling Zayon’s name. I sigh and fall into deep sleep. He’s carrying my mark, has my blood and I have his mark and blood in me. What more could I ask for?

THE NEXT DAY.

Khawula hasn’t been home since he left last night. I know he’s safe but I’m worried about why isn’t he back cause it wasn’t his friend who was hurt. It’s that man that I hate. I walk into the bathroom and it’s a mess. Everything is broken. I laugh walking out and go shower in the guest bedroom. When I go downstairs to the kitchen I am shocked.

I walk in and faye is sitting watching tv like nothing is happening.

“Faye?”

“Good morning goddess”

“Good morning. Why is my house looking like this? Where do all these things come from?”

“It’s the gifts from the Gods goddess”

“Why did they send us gifts?”

“Because...Uhmhhh”

“Because we mated my love. Good morning.” He says kissing me like nobody’s business.

“Morning baby. Does everyone know now what we did?”

“Only those who matter love. Can you make us some food. I’m hungry.”

“How is he?”

“He’ll live.”

“Ok. Can you please hurry so we can go and see lesego?”

“I’ll be right back”

“Please don’t break anything else in the other bathroom” I say giggling.

“I’m going to get you” he says chuckling.

“Faye can you please take this gold and put it somewhere safe in the house.”

“Yes goddess.” He gets up[and begins to take the gold in my living room and kitchen. I quickly make breakfast for us then khawula comes out and we eat then we leave and go to the Ngcobo household. The gate opens and their home is beautiful. These people really have money.

Zayon parks the car and I see Mbuso and Scelo coming out of the house and they meet us halfway as we step out of the car. I brought flowers for Lesedi and now I realize lungi is here too and I feel bad. We greet each other. Then Khawula gives Scelo his brandy and cigar.

“It’s lovely to see you again MaLukhele”

“Thank you for welcoming us.”

"I'm sorry my wife couldn't come out and welcome you. She's not feeling okay."

"It's okay. I hope these flowers will make her feel better."

We walk inside and the house is very beautiful. There are people inside too. As we walk Kabelo threads his hands with mine and we look at each other. He feels what I'm feeling.

"Mapholoba. This is our friend and his woman. Kabelo Ntanzi and Thobeka uMaLukhele. Guys this is my father and his wife usisNonto." We shake hands and greet them.

"Thank you Mapholoba for welcoming us in your home."

"It's our pleasure Khawula. Your brother is Bishop Ntanzi right??"

"Yebo baba" Khawula says. He nods.

"Let me show you where my wife is"

We follow Scelo and Mbuso and the more we walk in and this energy is strong. It's all over the house. When we walk in the bedroom she's sleeping and lungi is watching her. She gets up when she sees us.

"Sanbona" She says. Shame she's sad. We greet her back and I walk to Lesego and take her hand. I put it back and look at Khawula then Scelo.

"Can you move her to the living room and lay her down there?" Scelo nods.

The man looks stressed.

He picks up and she winces. We follow them and he lays her down on the couch. I sit down next to her and take her hand.

"Where are the kids?" Khawula asks them.

"They are at my house" Mbuso says.

"Keep them there for a couple of days."

"What's wrong with her cause the doctors don't see anything wrong?. Even our healer doesn't see anyone wrong with her."

"Do you know she's pregnant?" I ask Scelo and he shakes her head.

"What? No...I didn't know. My God " He sits down.

"Luh? Did you know?" Mbuso asks her.

"I don't know." She is shocked too.

"There is something in this house that was sent to cause problems between you and your wife and now it's targeting her and the baby she's carrying. She's going to lose the baby if this thing is not dealt with."

"Oh my God. Do you know who sent it?" Mapholoba asks.

"You must take her home baba to where she was smeared with bile. Your traditional healer baba will help her. But what is inside this house is something else. It needs someone powerful to take it out"

"I know someone who can." Khawula says. "Is there anything you can do?" He asks me.

"Lesego? Lesego wake up?" I touch her forehead hoping she will wake up but she doesn't. "Can you call Faye to come here. I think he can wake her up."

Khawula walks out and comes back with Faye. He greets everyone and Khawula explains that Faye can help Lesego wake up.

"How long has she been like this?" Faye asks.

"She woke up then showered and got back to bed like a zombie. She didn't talk or eat. I'm worried about her."

"Uhhh Sir, they are going to see what I'm going to do" Faye says mentally.

"I will show them something else don't worry. Just help her." He answers mentally.

"I'll show them him praying for her." I smile.

Faye rubs his hands then his hands light up. He moves his hands from the top of her head until to the bottom. He does this three times. Then stops.

"Her family did this. They sent her sister to bring something here and leave it behind when she lives." Khawula and I look at each other.

Lesedi moans then holds her head. Scelo runs to her and holds her tight.

Mbuso gives her a glass of water and she looks at us confused.

"Hi you're here?" she asks confused looking at us/

"They came to help us love. Thank you guys. Thank you very much.

"Why are you crying?" she asks him.

"Did you know we're pregnant?"

"I was going to tell you when I woke up in the morning but I don't know what happened." She looks at him smiling.

"Thank you baby. Thank you"

Khawula and I look at each other smiling.

CHAPTER 44

[PREVIOUS](#) PAGE 47 [NEXT](#)

Advertisement

HIS TO HAVE

CHAPTER 44

ANGEL.

Had we arrived a day later.. I'm afraid something would have happened to her and the baby. Especially the baby. I really don't get how people can be wicked. Use your own child against your other child is totally crazy. What kind of mother does something like this. Why are they so keen to see her unhappy.. Faye and I get up from them to give them space. Scelo was really worried about her and he should cause this thing now targeting their youngest in the house. It was him cry allot and not be able to sleep. His room too is definitely okay.

"thank you for helping her. I really don't know what is happening in this house." Scelo says. "Can you tell us what's wrong?"

"Your children are at their aunts house right?" Khawaja asks.

"yes they are" Scelo says.

"You need to take all three of them including yourselves to Ladysmith. Your family's healer will help all of you." He tells them.

"Please tell us what has been causing all of this mayhem on this house?"

“ sir I really don't want to cause trouble between the families” khawula replies.

“ It's my family isn't it? It's them who are causing all of this in my home? ” shame man she knows it's them.

“ it doesn't matter now cause what they were trying Hondo didn't succeed. You and your baby are okay now. That's all that matters.” She looks at scelo and breaks down.

“ I told you the first time that I didn't want my sister here but you keep letting her visit and see what almost happened this time and I'm tired of them trying to make my life difficult. What do they want from me? ” she says crying. Man that's so sad..

“ Well give you two space to talk. Let's go have some tea in the kitchen ” we leave them and Faye goes outside and joins Zayon. We sit down and the housekeeper makes tea for us.

“ Will she be okay though? ” Mapholoba asks us.

“ They be fine but there's something in this house that's causing fights and tension. It has even began to affect the children too but it will leave tonight and go back to the people that sent it”

“ How will you manage to get it out? ” Mrs Ngcobo asks.

“ Leave that to us. We know someone who will take it out ” Khawula says.

Lesego and her husband walk in and she's not okay.

“ ugh guys can we talk. You too dad ” the man stand up and leave. Lesego sits down and sighs.

“ Congratulations on your pregnancy ” I say.

“ Thank you. I'm so excited to have another baby although my youngest is still little.” She smiles.

“ How old are your kids? ”

“ They are 3. This is going to be our fourth baby. ”

“ Wow that's amazing and you lungi? ”

“ they are 4 and I'm done having kids ” she says.

“ Oh please you're lucky because your kids are sets of twins ” lesego says. “ I wish I got pregnant like that and not four times ”

“ lucky or not. I'm not having another child and I made sure. ”

“ Does your husband know? ” Mrs Ngcobo asks. She's her stepmother but I can feel the love they have for each other.

“ He knows sis nonto cause we both made that decision.” She says smiling.

“ I can't wait to have children too.” I say and they look at me. Ok did I say something wrong? “ Did I say something wrong? ”

“ No ” they all say at the same time. Ok but why are they starring at me?

“ you are so beautiful it's like you're not a real person.” Lesego says

“ it's like they carved everything about you cause wow. You're fucken beautiful and I'm sure you hear that all the time.”

“ Khawula tells me every time. Thank you guys.”

“ You know Thobe I have been with my husband for years and during that time I have never seen him... How can I put this. I have never seen him look at another woman like how he looked at you ” oh my God no.

“ Lungi please I... ”

“ Oh no Thobe I wasn't implying anything bad or what. I was trying to say that he finds you attractive and that's okay cause he's a human being and it is bound to happen. It was a first for me seeing him that way and yes it made me feel jealous I won't lie but it was also nice to see that side of him cause I never do. I'm sorry if what I was trying to say made you feel like I'm saying something bad about you but no. I was saying you're fucken beautiful and your ma is handsome too. You really make and amazing couple. Damn”

“ Thank you. You got me worried there for a minute ”

“ I'm sorry ” she apologizes.

“ It's okay. Your husbands are handsome too.” We all giggle.

“ just so you know Thobe. Our husbands might have a crush on you ”

“ Oh my God I did not want to hear that but they'll get over it soon” they will.

“ it's those eyes of yours and your flawless skin. What products do you use? ” lesego asks.

“ I make my own soap, body moisturizers, scrubs and other things too. I use those.”

“ Ok girl you need to hook us up please ” lungi says.

“ I'll make them for you then let you know when you can pick them up.”

“ I want them too ” Mrs Ngcobo says and we giggle. .

“When I come back from Ladysmith. We should all hangout and have a girls day. What do you say Thobe? ” lesego asks me.

“ I would really love that. Can I bring someone? ”

“ No Thobe. Our men are not allowed ” lungi says. I giggle.

“ No he's a fried. He's my male bestie.”

“ What? You have a male bestie? Mbuso would never allow me to have a make bestie. Yoh he would lose it ” Lungi says looking at me shocked.

“ Scelo would make sure he fucks the male bestie out of my life ” we burst out laughing.

“ I can't believe you've just said that ”

“ it's the truth. How did you get Kabelo to agree to allow you to have a male bestie? ” Lesego asks me.

“ He's the one who introduced us.”

“ What? Uh-huh girl. There's something you're not telling us. That man in the would never allow you to have a make bestie. Hell no unless... ” lungi says then looks at Lesego and they nod. “ he's gay isn't he? ”

“ What? Khawula is not gay guys come on. Umshayi wesinqe uKabelo ” the burst out laughing.

“ Nooo.. We mean your male bestie is gay. That's why he allowed you to have one ” lesego says

“ Oh yes Cal. He's gay and he is his assistant. He's like a little brother to us.”

“ We can’t wait to meet him ” lungi says excited.

“ you’re going to love him.” The guys walk back in. Khawula threads our hands and we look at each other. God I love this man. He smiles.

“ We have to leave mama and go home. Ngwende is expecting us.” Scelo says to lesego. He calls her mama. That’s so beautiful.

“ I’ll go pack our clothes then ”

“ already did. ” he says.

“ And I have to go to see Sbu. His little brother just called me and said he’s packing his clothes. I have no idea what’s going on in that mind of his.” Mbuso says.

“ Let’s go home so I can pack for you ” lungi says and he nods.

“ we’ll go with you so we can drive down with the kids.” Mapholoba says. “ It was nice to meet you Ntanzi and MaLukhele.. Thank you for what you did for my children. I hope someday you’ll visit us in the farm.” Wow I would love that.

“ We will. Mapholoba. Thank you ” they shake hands. Lungi and I hug and she promises to keep in touch and takes my numbers then she lives with her husband and father. It’s just the four of us now.

“ Ok. We are alone now. Please tell us what’s really going on and what were dealing with here.” I look at khawula and he nods.

“ It’s your mother Lesego. Everything time your sister visit she comes carrying this muthi and she spreads it around your home when there’s no watching her and she talks. The muthi she’s using was making you fight. The last she came here she had tokoloshe with her and it stayed behind when she went back home cause she came to drop it off. Ever since it has been here the kids have been having trouble sleeping especially your last born cause he’s still young and he sees it. He’s scared of it that’s why he cries allot.”

“ Oh my God Papa. What do they want from me? ” I take her hand in mine and hold it.

“ They are not happy that you are very happy and married to an amazing husband. They are jealous and now they are targeting your husband. ” I look at khawula.

“ What do you mean MaLukhele? ”

“ They want you to cheat on Lesego with her little sister. Get her pregnant then you’ll be forced to take her as your second wife.”

“ what? ” they both say.

“ I’m going to kill that bitch! ” Lesego says.

“ I would never cheat on you mama. You know that my love ”

“ I know Papa you’ll never do that. It’s them that I don’t trust ”

“ Your healer will explain some things to you. You have to leave now and be home before it gets dark. Your housekeeper too must leave cause this thing affects everyone who lives here.” Khawula tells them..

“ I’ll tell them to pack ”

“ When you come back tomorrow. This animal will be back to its owner. It will cause trouble for them. If that’s what you want MaNcgobo. Or we can just get rid of it.” Khawula says.

“ No. Sent it back to the owner and if you can. Please make sure it is best friends with all of them.” She’s mad as hell.

“ we will do that.” I say.

“ When you come back tomorrow your house will be rid of the animal.”

“ Thank you.”

Lesego goes to tell her house keeper to pack then comes back. Then are talking and I can hear but lesego obviously can’t. Scelo says he wants then to my suffer cause now they messed with his children. Especially that little bitch. His sister in law.

“ You know when I first met you. I knew I was going to like you cause you have that thing about you.” She says smiling.

“ Pregnancy suits you. You are so beautiful.”

“ Thank you. You and kabelo need to start making babies too ” I giggle.

“ I can’t wait to be pregnant too ” the thought just makes me smile.

“ Let’s exchange numbers so we can talk everyday. ” we exchange phones and program our numbers.

“ Thanks sis. I’ll let you know how it goes when we get down there”

“ I’ll be waiting ” I tell her.

“ we are done MaNgcobo ” says the housekeeper.

Kabelo and scelo walk towards us.

“ I’ll see you tomorrow ” khawula says..

“ Thank you again guys. We really appreciate it.” We nod.

They take their bags and leave. Khawula walks them out then comes back with Faye and Zayon. The animal is in their bedroom sleeping on the bed Lesego and Her husband sleep on. This is fucken sick.

“ Where’s that annoying girl? ” I giggle

“ Athena took her after I threatened to kill her.”

“ Good. House on lockdown.” Khawula says the windows and doors lock up then curtains close themselves. “ complete silence and darkness in the house. ” The house gets completely silent. It’s like the world has moved still and it’s only us in the house. We can hear each other’s heartbeats and breathing. The animal in the bedroom gets up from the bed alarmed as it feels that something is in the house. Something more powerful and sinister than it. As it gets up, it sheds its fur on the bed and leaves it there.

My god it has been doing that since it came here and they would sleep on it cause they can’t see like us. It jumps down the bed then slowly walks out. I can feel it and I can see what kind of disgusting and evil creature it is. How can her mother do this to her own child?.

Faye and Zayon transform and reveal their true selves. Light surrounds me and I transform also. God it feels so good cause I have only done this twice. White clothes cover me from my feet to my neck and my whole arms. They fit

me tight then ice from in top it. My nails get long, my incisors elongate too then my eyes turn red. My powers surface and I get ready. My man on other hand just stands there. Not transforming or anything. His hands just form fire balls.

“ it’s coming down guys. I want you to be ready cause this thing is very dangerous. Use everything you have it don’t kill it. It has to go back to the others and be a problem to them. Here it is.”

The animal is short but it looks very strong. It had hair from the top of its head and all over it’s body covering it. It’s nails are so long and they look fucken dirty. This thing is disgusting. It walks towards us then begins to laugh. When it laughs it’s like it has many voices of people coming out of it laughing at the same time.

“ I am not going anywhere. You are just wasting your time. I will kill all of you” it says speaking deep and very scary. God. I have never experienced this.

“ Leave this house and never return. Go back to where you come from and I will let you leave. ” Khawaja says and the animal laughs.

“ You? Kill me? ” it laughs again “any have tried but failed! I am not leaving! ” it says shrieking.

“ You will leave and when you get were you come from. You will never leave them. You and your maker will be peas in a pod. When she dies you will die to. You will do the things you were doing here there. You will make their lives very miserable. You will never come here, or go anywhere else to cause trouble for people.”

“ Never! Never! I’ll never leave this house! ”

The thing says and runs towards me but a fire ball sends it back and it falls. The fur catches fire but it doesn’t but. The animal just shakes it off laughing. It runs again but I lift my arms and clap my hands hard and ice covers it. It stands trapped in inside. Faye has a spear

Advertisement

he goes to where the animal is standing and puts the spear on the ice and animal growls loud like it is in pain but the ice begins to melt.

Khawula looks at us then at it. He threads my hand with his and we walk towards the animal too. The ice melts from his head to its shoulders Zayon quickly moves and puts his hands on the animal head and the animal goes crazy. The ground begins to shake. It growls loud then breaks out of the ice and we attack. We fight with this thing and it doesn’t get tired. I shoot ice on it, fire balls from khawula, Faye’s spear pokes the animal but it doesn’t look like it’s hurt.

“ I told you I’m not going anywhere! I won’t leave my wife! ”

“ you will leave this house and marry your owner. I’m sick of this. I have somewhere to be. ”

“ You will die! ” it says to Khawula. Hell no.

“ you’re the one who dying mother fucker! ” I say and it laughs.

I move my hands to my waist and remove the invincible chain. They look at me as they feel something heavy falling on the floor but they can't see it. When the last part of it comes off it emerges. The moment I pick it up with my hands the animal takes a step back.

Khawula grins then also removes something from his neck and when it falls to the floor. The ground shakes. The chain also emerges and it's on fire. The animal takes a step back again

"As you seal us in. Form a protective barrier around us until we take him back where he belongs." Something moves around the living room as he says that.

"Give me the tip of your chain angel." I give it to him, he takes it then takes the end of his chain. "let these chains become one and never separate from one another as we are one. Fire and ice." The chains move from the ground and dangle in the air. When the end parts meet a spark shoots out and they become one chain. Ice lives from the other side and fire moves to the opposite side and both sides are fire and ice.

The tokolosh moves and around the living trying to run away but everywhere it goes a force moves it back sends it crushing down the floor. It looking at the chains like it's worst nightmare.

"You will not chain me. I'm not going back to being chained! No!!!! "

"You will be chained. Just hear the screams and voices of people you have killed coming out of your mouth. Innocent children's! You thought you can come here and mess with my friends. You will regret it!" Khawula says angrily.

"Take the other end angel. Faye, Zayon. The moment we get it in chains teleport us back to where he lives." They nod.

Khawula and I take the others ends and we swing it to the tokosh and it screams when the chain touches it. It's skin burns and something black comes out of it. This time we swing fast and the chain moves and wraps around the animal and bit screams as it burns.

Faye takes my hand and my body feels like it's floating and running out of breath. I'm holding tight to the chain as the animal tries to pull away from it but I won't let it. We land and I let out a deep sigh of breath

"What the hell is this?!" says a woman screaming.

We are in this room. It looks big and it has many things inside. There are cages inside. What the hell is this place. I look at the woman and she's beautiful. This is lesego's cause she looks like her. She's naked..

"you witch!" I say.

"oh my god! What have they do to you my hlompho! "

"Give Mr the chain angel." I give to him them Khawula takes it and in one speed wraps it around that witch and she screams and falls down. "By this chain I bind you for life. Even in death you will always be chained together. Wherever you go, whatever you do. You will always be together. You will live a very slowly and miserable life. You will pay for what you did to all the people especially your daughter and grandchildren."

The witch screams loud as her skin burns. I don't feel sorry for her. She was hell been on making her daughters like miserable. Now let's see how she'll feel when she gets the taste of her own medicine. She stops screaming then laughs. "That child she is carrying will die. It will not live. I made sure if it. She will. Never have anymore children!"

"You witch! You will burn in hell!" she laughs.

"Killing you is very easy but I want you to suffer and you will suffer. You will go and apologize to all the family's of the people you killed. People you kept as prisoners here."

She is down cause the chains is holding her and her animal down.

"May all the souls trapped in here leave and follow the light they see. Return to where you belong tell your families that you have been set free. You're free to go leave" khawula says and things begin to unlock and souls of people emerge from around the room and the go to one direction.

"Nooooo! Leave them! They belong to me! They work for me! Nooo! She says screaming and crying.

"You will get every single thing that you deserve."

I hear something behind me and I walk towards it and I see a cage. As I walk towards it I see a wolf inside. My God!. It looks thing and very sick. Like it has been starving.

"I won't hurt you. I want to set you free. Please don't bite me." Cause I will if it bites me.

"Angel?"

"wait love" I say.

I open the cage and then take it out. It is still a pup.

"we have to take it with us and care for it"

"Angel no..."

"Please khawula. He's hurt. I'll take care of it. Please"

"You know that's a human right and he hasn't shifted cause he was trapped in there."

"I know he's human. I can feel it. Please let's take him home with us."

"Fine but he's your responsibility" he says.

"Thank you baby. Are done here?"

"you can leave" he says.

Now that I have mated with a half human and A god. I can teleport cause I have his blood in me so I teleport to my house. Who are you? How did you get caught?

I hear something in the kitchen like someone is here. I walk there and find these men in my house. Oh my God they are his brothers.

They look at me then look at the little wolf in my hands and frown.

CHAPTER 45

ANGEL.

His brother look at me the look at wolf in my hands. I'm probably sure they are asking themselves what is going. I can hear their thoughts very well and I realize that they don't know what kabelo really is. They know that he has this soul of another person in him but they really have no idea what he really is. This little pup is scared right now and if I put it down it's probably going to freak out.

" Good afternoon. I'm sorry about the mess in the house. I forgot that you will be coming here today. " I lie cause kabelo didn't tell me anything.

" You must be Thobeka Lukhele. How are you? " his older brother asks. Damn they are handsome.

" I'm good. "

" I'm karabo the older brother and this is our last born brother Kane its nice to finally meet you. We have heard allot about you. "

" Me too. " I know about their relationship and how very close they are when I took his blood in me.

" I'm sure you must be hungry. I'll go and quickly change then come and make you something quickly while I actually cook. "

" That would be lovely " Karabo says. I can't believe I'm in the same space as Bishop Ntanzi.

" You have a wolf in your hands. Is it your pet? " Kane asks.

" Uhmm, I'm taking care of him until he gets better then he will leave. " The wolf makes a sound as I say that. He doesn't want to leave. I smile and run my hand. " He just need food and lots of love them he will be fine. "

" Where did you meet my brother? " Kane asks.

" She's the one that got away. The one we left behind at Richards Bay and our brother was never the same after that. " Bishop says sitting down with his big body. They are almost the same size with khawula but my man is a little bigger and taller than him. They are huge men even Kane.

" Damn I would be too if I left you behind. I can't believe he left you for that girl. "

" Shut up Kane. "

" You're absolutely breath-taking. You're beautiful Thobe. Damn" Kane is a character.

" Thank you. I'll be right back " "

I walk to the kitchen and take a carton of milk then open the freezer and look at the meat. He's not going to eat this cause it's cold and is not fresh. I take a bowl then go upstairs. I walk to our closet and take two towels and put them on the floor. I pour milk on the bowl then try to put the wolf down but he refuses cause he begins to cry.

“ I’m not leaving you I promise. I want you to try and drink this milk while I showed okay?. I’ll take you with me to the kitchen when I go and cook. I won’t leave you.” He looks at me then I try again and put him down and he allows me. Good. “ Thank you. ” it lays there but doesn’t eat. I sigh.

I walk to the bathroom, take off my clothes then get in the shower. Someone fixed it but I don’t know when. I still can’t believe Lesego’s mom did that to her own child. Right now I’m worried about the baby she’s carrying because of what her mother said and I didn’t detest any lies from her. My god. After I’m done drying myself and putting lotion. I take a towel and cover myself then walk out.

The little pup is sleeping now and he ate his milk. I get in the closet and wear my comfortable clothes. I don’t know if I should take him with me cause he’s sleeping but what if he wakes up and I’m not here and he freaks out?. I pick him up with the towels and walk out with him. When I get in the living room the brothers are watching TV and Kane is drinking alcohol. Bishop has a cup of tea in his hands.

“ I hope you don’t mind I made myself a cup of tea.”

“ Of course I don’t mind.” I say politely. There’s something about Bishop that demands authority. Kabelo has it too and it’s intense. Sometimes it even scares me.

I put the wolf on the kitchen counter where I’ll be able to see him. He’s still sleeping so that’s good I guess. I wash my hands then begin to take out pots and begin cooking.

“ Oh my god I remember now that it was you! ” Kane says sitting down.

“ Me what? ”

“ It was you who used to cook for us at the penthouse. Damn I missed your cooking ” he says chuckling.

“ How did you know it was me? ”

“ Cause he told me when he found you. He was so happy. He sounds happy these days and it’s you. Thank you for making my brother happy” he tells me and I know that he means every word.

“ I love your brother. He’s the best thing that has ever happened to me. There’s nothing I wouldn’t do for him and I would never hurt him but will hurt anyone who tries to hurt him.” He grins.

“ I like you ” Kane says as I begin chopping vegetables to roast

“ Get your own damn woman that you can like. Not mine.” Khawula says walking in. My god he’s so gorgeous and damn sexy.

Our eyes lock as he walks towards me and it feels like he’s walking slowly so I can check him out. He stops when he’s in front of me and turns me around. He puts his hands around my neck forcing my head to move up then he kisses me. Taking my breath away and I forget we have people in the house until Kane coughs. We take out time kissing then stop.

“ Angel ”

“Khawula ” he kisses my forehead then pulls me to him and holds me tight. “ Are you okay? ” I ask him.

“ I love you. I really love you and I don’t want to lose you” he says. I pull away from his arms and look at him.

“ Hey, you won’t lose me. I’m not going anywhere. Ever. Only death will separate us and you know that I can never live without you and I won’t.” his older brother joins Kane and they watch us. Why is he feeling so emotional. “ What happened there? ” he sighs and shakes his head.

“ she’s not dead but what she has been doing to her own daughter makes me sick. I should have killed her ”

“ You did good by not killing her. Karma will deal with her. She won’t get away with it.” I cub his face and he kisses my hand.

“ It will. I’ll kill anyone who tries to do shit to you.” I smile.

“ I know you would and I love you for that.”

“ Ncooooh ” Kane says and I giggle looking at him. “ you guys are so in love. It’s so beautiful and I love it.” Bishop is quiet looking at kabelo like he’s seeing something different in him.

“ You look and feel different. You’re less intense and there’s calmness now around you. I can feel how happy and content you are for the first time in your life and I’m happy for you brother. Thank you MaLukhele. Thank you for loving all of him”

“ That means allot to me. Thank you”

He stands up and walks around the kitchen island. He pulls me to his arms and hugs me tight and kisses the top of my head. I hug him back.

“ Thank you. You’re one of us now ” he declares.

Kane comes too and does the same. They are making me feel so emotional right now.

“ We will love you and protect you like anyone see we love but with you it will be extra more cause finally kabelo has found his home with you. He is complete. Thank you” I nod wiping my tears.

“ Thank you. I promise I won’t disappoint you all ” They smile and go back to the living room. Khawula takes a bottle of water and follows them. They sit down and behind to talk. I sigh. I feel happy and accepted and very loved right now. Thank you God for this man.

I hope the food will be enough for us and everyone else outside cause I think there are four extra people excluding Faye and Zayon. I decide to roast the vegetables and the chicken and make some rice on the side. I hope the brothers don’t have any allergies. I keep checking my wolf and he’s still sleeping. He’s going to be hungry when he wakes up. I hope he’ll be able to eat.

“ Faye? ” I mind link with him.

“ Goddess? ”

“ Can you please come to get some money so you can go to the butchery and get me some fresh meat for my little friend here.”

“ I’m coming goddess. ”

“ Come through the kitchen door ”

I go upstairs and search for money in my hang bag and take out all the notes. I go back to the kitchen and find Faye touching my wolf. I have to give him a name. I can't keep calling him a wolf it my pup. I'm sure he has a name but I wonder if he'll tell me.

“ Is he okay? ”

“ He's traumatized from the things he saw and what happened to him but hell be fine. He likes you goddess ”

“ who's a goddess? ” Kane asks looking at us.

“ She's my goddess Kane. Leave her alone. ”.

“ Goddess Angel. Damn bro I'm jealous. ” he says chuckling.

“ Do you know what's his name? ” I ask Faye?

“ No. I don't think he knows his name too. ”

“ Why would he know what's his name his when he's just a wolf.” Kane asks confused.

“ You wouldn't understand” I say.

“ How old do you think he is? ”

“ maybe one or two years. Somewhere there ” Damn.

“ I wonder how he got separated from his mother. Shame man ”

“ I'll be back goddess ” he says and leaves..

“I'm so hungry. Is the food ready? ”

“ Almost. Can you help me set the table please ”

“ My pleasure. Your house is beautiful. You bought the furniture from our company right? ”

“ I did. I love it.”

“ Did you know that him and Calvin would go and buy all the things that are sold in the company?. He has an exquisite taste when it comes to things and you obviously.” Khawula comes and slaps his head from the back. “ Kabelo man! ”

“ Stop hitting on her ” he says and his eyes change colour

“ That's not funny Kabelo. Stop it! ” he says freaking out. Khawula laughs

“ I mean hungry love.”

“ You could have helped me with the preparation you know? ”

“ Why didn't you ask Kane love? ” I give him the oh really look. “ and besides I'm not hungry for that.”

“ I'm still here you know ” Kane says.

“ Shut your ears then ”

“ Kane, the plate mats are on that draw and the plates on the upper draw.” He nods. “ Stop freaking him out. He doesn't know how to be around you when you do that.”

“ I won't do it again. I'm sorry. ” I smile.

“ I'm horny though ”

“ My God baby. There's a child in here ” he looks behind me and sighs.

“ He's sleeping ”

“ Do you know who he could be? ”

“ I will have to touch him to know that but I’m too strong for him. My powers scares him.”

“ I will take care of him until he’s better ”

“ Do you think that’s wise though love for us to raise a wolf?.”

“ Yeah why not?” I don’t understand

“ He’s a wolf, you’re a half vampire and half Goddess. I’m half human and a God. How will that work? ”

“ Not so loud. Kane will hear you. Look we love each other very much and he needs that love too. Also a home to live in and a family to love him. He’s just a little boy baby. He needs us.”

“ I don’t want you to be attached to him and be hurt when we find his family cause that will hurt you.”

“ I would want someone to do this for our child if it ever happens. God forbid it doesn’t but if we ever find ourselves in a situation like this.”

“ I know love. I love your beauty heart and compassion. I don’t want you to hurt.”

“ I would be hurt if I don’t show him love. He’s ours for now. Are you ready to be a parent daddy ” he grins.

“ I am read love. I want to see your belly full this with my kids.” I keep quiet and look at him.

“ What if. .. ”

“ Don’t say it. ” he warns me and his mood Instantly changes.

“ We have to talk about it though cause it is a possibility ”

“ It’s not. I don’t want us to have this convention again ”

“ But ”

“ Angel. Don’t!. ” He says and that’s final.

“ I’m all done. ” Kane says

“ can you please put the serving dishes here so I can transfer the food.”

“ I don’t mind you cooking but you need a maid angel. Who’s going to wash these dishes? ”

“ Your brother will ” I say looking at kabelo. He frowns and walks away.

“ what’s wrong now? ” Kane asks.

“ nothing”

He helps me transfer the food to the serving dishes and when we’re dine we take it to the dining table.

“ please call everyone to come and eat.”

“ Yes ma’am ” he replies and walks to the living room.

I walk back to the kitchen and Faye walks in carrying bags of meat and it’s allot of meat. He puts them on the counter.

“ Thank you Faye. Please wash your hands and go join the others in the dining room. ”

“ Thank you goddess ” He washes and goes to the dining room where chairs are being pulled.

I take a bowl and fill it with warm water and little bit of soap and a drop of jik. Take a dishwashing cloth and then walk to the dining room where everything is seated. I greet everyone then start with my man and he washes his hands. He's still mad. I then go to his order brother, young brother. Zayon

Faye and the rest of the guys. I bring jars filled with water and juice. I walk back to the kitchen and cut the meat to bite sizes for my wolf and put it on a plate. I take him with me and put him on the floor next to my feet with his meat. He's now awake and watching me. I see the surprised looks from the other men as they see my wolf. I then take my empty seat next to my mate.

"Would everyone hold hands and close your eyes." Bishop says and Kane takes my right hand and Kabelo takes my right hand as he's seated at the head of the table. "Father Lord please bless this food and we thank the hands that prepared this lovely meal. Amen" he says.

"Amen." We say.

Serving dishes move from one hand to another as they dish for themselves the way they want but they are silent. It's like they are afraid to talk or what I don't know cause I definitely don't want to know what's in their minds. I shut out their thoughts. Kane breaks the awkward silence and talks about foot and the conversation flows as they talk. Bless Kane with his big mouth. He knows when to talk.

I keep watching my wolf and he's not eating as I expected so I decide to give him my plate and he eats. I smile. He should have said he wants my plate and not his. He's a beautiful grey and white wolf with brown eyes. I can't wait to see how when he picks up weight and that fur of his to shine and be soft. I'm going to nurse you back to health my little wolf.

I look at Khawula and he's in a deep conversation with his older brother. I watch as my wolf finishes his food then stand up and pick him up. I'm no longer hungry so I pick up the plate he was eating on and take it to the kitchen sink then go upstairs to our bedroom. I put him on the couch and he sleeps. I would take him to bed but Khawula would freak.

He doesn't want to face a situation that might be my reality. I don't know why he was getting upset cause I thought he aware that it is a very big possibility but now I know he didn't think about that. I move the pillows off the bed and open the duvet. I walk out of the bedroom and go to the other bedrooms and make sure they have everything they need and open the beds for Karabo and Kane.

Kane is sweeping the floor and Karabo is setting the table back to how it was. I guess Kabelo is in the kitchen washing dishes. Why didn't he just put them in the dish washer.

"I have made everything ready for you in the bedrooms. I'm going to bed so have a good night"

"Thank you for the lovely meal. Good night" Bishop says. I nod.

"Night my angel" I smile then leave them. Wow. Their grandmother did a great job.

I check my wolf and he's sleeping. I put a jaw of water on the floor in case he gets thirsty. I take off my clothes then get in bed and sigh. My eyes close and as I fall into sleep he walks in but he doesn't close the door. The whole bedroom gets filled with his scent. He's going to scare him if he doesn't let his anger calm down. He does something around then walks out and comes back and locks the door as it shuts..

The shower runs and stops after a few minutes. Why is kabela angry my god. I can feel it and it's too much. I sit up and look at the couch and my wolf is not there. He took him out. I open mouth to speak but he raises his eyebrow. He walks towards me all aroused with that hard look ok his face and my body betrays me. I get wet and he growls. He can feel it and smell it. He grabs the duvet and roughly pulls it off the bed. He gets on the bed then opens the draw and takes out cuffs. I swallow hard.

He takes my hands and cuffs them to the bed then pulls my body down and I lay flat. He then takes out a gag and gags me with it. Spit comes out and moves down to my neck. I can't swallow or do anything about it. I just have to suck it up. He lifts my left leg up, beds it then puts my feet into his mouth and licks it. I moan cause it feels so good. He licks my toes, my feet then moves down and licking my whole leg leaving wet kisses behind. He does the same to my other leg and it feels so good.

My body is can't stay still cause his mouth keeps getting closer and closer to where I want but he's denying me and I getting frustrated. I groan and he looks at me. He separates my legs then swipes his fingers over my pussy and my back arches. He blows air to my pussy and my legs open wider. His arms hold me down, then his hands separate my vulva. His warm mouth closes around me and muffs me so good.

I can't move my body cause I'm held down, I can't scream cause I'm gagged. The only thing I can do is moan. My neck and chest are wet with my saliva. Kabela muffs the shit out of me and I fail to hold in cause his tongue is busy playing with my tongue God I'm close. My toes curl then his fingers enter me and move in an out while his moaning and I scream as my orgasm rocks me. He groans then quickly moves up my body and enters me hard groaning. He stills and catches his breath. His head moves down and licks my saliva groaning. He sounds so sexy right now. He pulls out then thrusts in roughly and fucks me hard. I pull my hands hard and I wince cause I forgot I'm in cuffs. He's not being gentle on my pussy cause he fucken tears it apart. He's fucking me so, so good but also slight painful. He doesn't give me time to breathe cause it's one fast thrust after another. He lifts my legs to over his shoulders and gets deeper and I scream cause he doesn't stop and continues to fuck me. He's groaning making those sexy sounds cause he's enjoying it. He flexes his hips then hits my g-spot over and over again I scream out as my body shakes and I climax.

He un cuffs me, then turns me around and I get on my hands and knees. He takes my hands and put them on my back and my back arches. I think he will

ungag me but he doesn't cause he enters me from behind holding both my hands and massaging them to bring back blood but it hurts. He fucks me like crazy and I fall flat on the bed cause my body is shaking. He quickly removes the gag and claimed my mouth.

All of his weight is on my body and his thrusts get deeper and deeper. It feels so good though but my mouth hurts a little from the gag. His hands moves down and finds way to my pussy and he ribs my clit. My pussy contracts around his dick, his mouth finds my ear and his tongue plunges inside and I fucken come hard. I scream his name over and over again. He groans then I feel his seed filling my womb. He continues to thrust then I think I hear him asking ne to marry him but I'm not sure cause I blackout.

HAPTER 46

[PREVIOUS](#) PAGE 49 [NEXT](#)

ANGEL.

#NotEdited.

I'm in the kitchen making breakfast for everyone. That means everyone else excluding Khawula cause I woke up alone after he cuffed me again and fuck me senseless. God it was so amazing. Trusting him with my body and letting go was so freeing. I want to do it again although my pussy is sore. I have no idea where he went cause I blacked out again and woke up with him gone. I could ask him where he is but I don't want to cause what he said keeps playing in my mind. I have no idea if he meant it or he simply said it because he was in the moment. He always said that he wants to marry me first before mating with me but then temptation won so I guess he meant it when he asked me to marry him but I want him to ask me while I'm sober and not drugged by the things his body goes to me.

Khawula knows what he's doing in bed and I love that dominant side of him. It makes me melt and want to say yes to every thing. I wonder if he would ever take me to the club. I am going to ask him. Just thinking about it makes me skin break out in goose bumps. I can just see him looking all serious and so damn sexy. Would he let people watch us as he does things to me? God. I shake my head. Let me not think about that. I focus on making sure my boyfriends brothers her breakfast when they wake up. I think I'm going to need some help in this house cause it is big. I'm dicing apples for the fruit salad when I hear

" Good morning MaMdluli " He says kissing my cheek. I cut myself. Fuck!

" Good morning " I say running to the sink opening the faucet.

" I'm sorry I startled you. Where's the first Aid kit? " Karabo says.

“ uhm can you check on that draw over there.” I take the paper towel and cover my finger. He looks got the kit then finds it. I sit down and he comes with it.

“ let me help you ”

I move my hand out and party that the wound doesn't quickly close it self while he's watching cause he'll probably freak out. He cleans it then takes the Elastoplast and covers my fingers

“ Thank you bhuti.” I get up but I see that he's looking at the bruise around my wrists. I get up but he holds my hand and moves my top up my arms. Just a little bit. He takes my other hand and looks at it too.

“ Did he do this with your permission? ”

“ Yes he did. It doesn't hurt honestly and I didn't mind.” He nods.

“ Did he put some cream on it? ”

“ He did bhuti cause my hands smelled of it when I woke up.”

“ he's not here? ”

“ No he left. I think he went to see sbu.” He nods. “ breakfast is ready”

“Thank you ” he says sitting down

“ you're welcome.”

Kane walks in looking jolly.

“ Morning Fam. I had the best sleep in years. Sis you need to take me to the shop where you bought that stuff cause it is amazing ” he says kissing my cheek. “ Papa se seun (my father's son)” he say sitting down after brushing his brothers head. I chuckle.

“ I made them. I'll make some for you before you leave ”

“ Are you serious? ”

“ Yeah. I use one of the rooms in the cottage but it's small. So I need a bigger space.”

“ we have space at the company building. You can hire some people will help you make this. Bro? Do you know what this means? ”

“ Uh no? ” karabo says.

“ It means we stop buying from that company. We have our own maker here. We but from her all the oils, candles and everything else from her for the clubs.”

Older brother grins. My inner goddess sighs. Kabelo's older brother is something else. He has that thing that I can't pin point what it is exactly. But it's there. It's intense and it makes him... ok let me stop talking about my future brother in law like that.

“ The clubs? You mean the sex clubs that you all run? ” they look at me surprised.

“ He told you? ” Karabo asks me..

“ Yes he did. I know all of you are Dom's and I know who's the leader here. It's you bhuti.”

“ So you are okay with that? ” what?

“ I am very okay with that. Why wouldn't I be? I mean this is you. It's who you are.” They smile

“ Angel I love you” Kane says grinning.

“ I love you too Kane ” I say chuckling.

“ I will talk to Khawula and hear what he says. I make all types of candles and they have different scents. When poured on the skin they melt and so they can rub it. They lift moods and some enhances.”

“ Wow. We didn't know we needed you until you came to our brothers life. Thank you angel ” big brother says.

“ Thank you big brother. So you better get your money ready cause I don't come cheap. ” I say eating.

“ we'll just let our brother ask for a discount in different ways. Like lasy night” I get red.

“ Shut up fool” bhuti reprimands Kane. It feels so wrong to call this man by his name.

“ Sorry ” I chuckle.

“ It's okay Kane. He can ask for it but he'll do allot of begging.” I say grinning. They chuckle.

“ As soon as you have set everything. Lease met us know so you can start making money.” Kane says and I nod. His phone and he excuses himself.

“ So you are like him? ” he knows that he has another soul living in him but he doesn't really have a nice of what his brother really is.

“ You can say that.” He nods.

“ Your skin is cold Angel but not ice cold. Is it always like that? ”

“ It has been always like that. You know that in this world there are things that live with us. Things that a human naked eye can not see but only a person ones can see.”

“ I know that. Before I really understood what kabelo was, we used to perform exorcism bat church. Sometimes I ask myself if those people were really possessed or it they were like my brother. I blame myself when I think about it cause deep down it's like I knew they needed he'll and were like my brother.”

“ Don't blame yourself bhuti. You were also scared and confused. It didn't help you cause Khawula also hid that part of himself from you. Had he been open you would have understood.”

“ He was also scared angel. He didn't know how to deal with it.”

“ But he can be open to you know and show you who he really is. I know he trusts you and knows that you can never betray his trust.”

“ That goes for you too. You can trust me. I have always taken care of us before we went to live with our grandparents. He might have powers and do things but to me. He's my little brother that I have to always protect from anything or anyone that wants to hurt him. I love them and they are my everything. My whole family is too and that includes you too now”

“ Thanks you bhuti.”

“ But warm me please if you’re going to change or do something. I don’t want to have a heart attack.” I chuckle. He might look big, strong and very sexy. A very dominant man but deep down he’s a very good, caring and loving man. His dominance is nothing compared to that of Khawula. He is everything about BDSM.

“ Since were having open conversation. Can I say something? ”

“Yes you may. ”

“ I can feel the stress and responsibilities it comes to leading so many people. They look up to you as their leader and you’re always expected to always be this perfect man who doesn’t do anything wrong or make mistakes and it’s getting to a point where it’s hard for you. Sometimes you feel like you can just walk away from all of it. Am I right? ”

“ Yeah you’re very right. I’m afraid to let people know that other side of me cause I’m afraid I’m going to be judged. Called names because I want and crave this.”

“ And it’s making you lonely.”

“ Yeah it does get lonely.”

“ When are you going to start living for yourself?. You have done everything that was expected from you so when are you going to live the life you want and be happy? ”

“ I don’t want to disappoint my grandfather.”

“ Your grandfather will understand. You are not getting younger bhuti and you can’t run away from love.”

“ Yeah I know I’m not getting younger but I don’t think I want children.”

“ You won’t be like your parents. Don’t be afraid of wanting to have a family of your own cause of the fear of being like your parents. I mean the three of you are not fuck ups” He chuckles

“ I took a vow of celibacy angel ”

“ You were young. You thought the things you liked and wanted were wrong. You thought it goes against everything your grandparents taught you. You thought by going to Bible School and growing in the church will make all these things you want go away but they didn’t. They got worse instead. That why you and khawula chose to start the club. Where you are most free.”

“ I love going to church. I find peace in there too.”

“ That’s your home too. Nobody said you can’t have find peace in there too. It’s time you put yourself first. The church will be fine. It will grow because it has all of you. Your cousin is young and he’s going to do amazing.”

“ Thank you angel. I feel better now. I think I needed to hear that.”

“ You should talk to her.”

“ Who? ”

“ The one who’s on your mind. Approach her.” He looks at me surprised.

“ What are you angel? ”

“ I am a goddess ” I say smiling. He chuckles and shakes his head.

“ Like you would tell me.” He says drinking his juice. He doesn’t believe me.

Kane comes back and sighs as he sits down.

“ What’s wrong? ” I ask him

“ Girlfriend trouble. She’s doesn’t believe me that I’m here with you guys. She thinks I took my other girlfriend for a vacation.”

“ You have another girlfriend? ”

“ No Sisi. I don’t. She’s just feeling jealous and insecure. She stresses me man.”
I giggle.

“ You always have girl trouble.” Bhuti says shaking his head.

Mpume walks in carrying my baby. I was looking for him then I realized she took him last night when khawula called her. Mpume is the the girl Athena sent after taking Mira with her. I like mpume better than Mira. Kane whistles as she walks in. Mpume rolls her eyes.

“ Good morning everyone. This little person has been busting me but when I said I’m bringing him to you he stopped.” I take him from her and I can hear him sighing. He missed me.

“ Why are referring the wolf as a person and not an animal? ”

“ cause it’s a human being Kane. He’s also a human too and his name is Shadow.” Kane gets up and stands far from the table. Mpume bursts out laughing.

“ That’s not funny Sisi please ”

“ I’m serious Kane. Don’t be surprised next when you come here you find a little person running around the house. He’s in his wolf form cause he’s still scared.”

“ What? Are you like that too? ”

“ No I’m not ” I chuckle.

“ Ok but don’t let him bite me. I wouldn’t want to hurt him.”

“ Don’t hurt my baby Kane ”

“ Ok. Ok I won’t ” he eats his food..

“ Did he eat? ”

“ some milk only.” Mpume says taking a seat.

I take my plate and dish for him the food on the table and he eats. I smile. I know he won’t eat this food for long. He’s going to want fresh meat with blood. For now though I’m just happy he is gaining weight cause he’s eating. I just wish he would be in his human form so I can really take care of him. Shadow please baby. Transform for mommy.

We finish breakfast and surprisingly Mpume and Kane offer to do dishes.

Bishop tells us he’s going to the club to check how things are going. I pick shadow and walk with his outside. I put him down to see if he’ll get up and follow me. I walk from him and stand just a few metres from him. I can see him clearly and I see the panic on his face. He gets up looks at my direction. I waive at him.

“ Come on Shadow. I know you can hear and see me. Come to mommy. Come baby”

He takes a step towards me then falls. He trues again then falls again. I worry cause it seems like there's something holding him down. I walk towards him and pick him up. I put my hand on his head and close my eyes. A spell was performed on him to not walk or transform to his human form. My God. She was going to use him to just be her thing she will use at night on people.

Where and how did he get you.

" Angel? " It's Khawula. He's mind-linking with me.

" Honey?" I feel him smiling.

" Is it okay if Khwezi comes and stays with us for a while until sbu deals with things? "

" Yeah it's okay. I'll prepare a room for her? "

" she's going to come with her little sister. Is that also okay? "

"They will be safe here baby. It's okay "

" Thank you love. I'll see you when I come back."

" Where are you though? "

" In volkrust."

" Ok be safe."

" I will. Please make sure your phone is close cause sbu is going to call to make sure if you agreed."

" ok."

" I love you "

" of course you do " he chuckles. " shadow and I love you more."

" How is he? "

" Lesego's mom bound him to a spell"

" Yeah I felt that when I picked him up. I'll fix it when I come back. Don't worry okay? "

" Ok." He cuts off our connection.

I walk back to the house and find Kane and Mpume playing a play station. We have one?. They begin to argue and I leave then there and go to my bedroom. The phone rings and I talk to the king and tell him it's okay. His queen can stay with us until everything has passed. I go the bedrooms and begins to leave prepare them. I dint know if they are coming today or tomorrow but I have to make sure everything is perfect before they come today or tomorrow.

After hours of making sure everything is fine. I think of making lunch but I feel tired. so I decide to take a nap on my bedroom. I look shadow and he's looking at me. I wonder if giving him my blood will make him okay. I close my eyes and let sleep take over.

I feel kisses on my face and a bread. He smells so good. I moan and turn my head facing up. He chuckles. I smile.

" Hey sleep head. Wake up "

" I'm tired "

" you've been sleeping for hours. Wake up " I open my eyes.

" When did you come back? "

" Three hours ago. " I sit up and Shadow's not here.

“ where is shadow? ”

“ My Shadow? ”

“ Not you Elson. The wolf my Shadow? ”

“ Oh Mpume took him outside for a walk.”

“ we have to help him or he’s always going to be stuck like that. I know you can recite spells. Please help him.”

“ you really care for him don’t you? ”

“ I do. Maybe us finding him wasn’t a coincidence. Maybe we were meant to find him cause maybe I can’t give you kids.” He cubs my cheek.

“ I thought I told you I don’t want to hear you say that. We will have kids of our own.”

“ I’m vampire khawula.”

“ You’re half a vampire and half a goddess angel. We will have children okay.”

“ What if we can’t. What if Shadow is the only baby we get to have? ”

“ Have faith angel please. I believe and I know we will have children. As many as we want. Stop thinking about what if. Don’t. If we can’t have kids then we’ll see what we can do but I will make sure we have children no matter what. I will give you the life you want.”

“ I know you will Khawula.” I sigh and wipe my face but I feel something cold on my finger. I look at it then look at him.

“Khawula what is this? ” He smiles then kneels down.

“ Thobela Lukhele. Goddess of Ice. Daughter of Goddesses. Daughter of the First Vampire to ever exist. Will you marry me Kabelo Ntanzi and make me the happiest man alive? ”

“ Are you sure Khawula? ”

“ With everything I am ”

“Even if I can’t give you children? ”

“ I love you still the same. Please say yes angel. I love you.”

“ yes I’ll marry you. Yes ” he smiles then throws his body on me and we kiss.

I love this man very much and I’ll do anything to give him the family he wants even if it means I have to sell my soul. He will be a father.

CHAPTER 47

[PREVIOUS](#) PAGE 50 [NEXT](#)

Advertisement

ANGEL.

I can’t believe I was sitting with royals in my house and dining with them today. Khwezi is such an amazing woman and I can’t wait to get to know her cause I know her and I are going to be best friends. Mpilo

is another ray of sunshine. Such a bubbly and happy child for someone her age who has been through allot but all of that is past her now. She's going to be an amazing young lady.

I was really hoping I will talk to Khawula about some part of the building to get my business off the ground but he left with Sbu after we came back from taking Mpilo out for Ica-cream. I need to show him that I'm really serious about it so I'm going to need Calvin's help. He knows how to draft a business plan so I need a solid one. Khwezi and Mpilo are sleeping so I lock my door just in case cause I want to go see my baby Shadow and see how he's doing cause he can't stay here with us while we have guests.

I teleport to the penthouse and find Mpume watching tv. She quickly gets up but realizes it's me so she relaxes.

"You should be more alert Mpume. Someone who have had your head if they came her to attack."

"I'm sorry goddess. I was too focused on this movie."

"It's fine. How is he?" I ask her walking towards shadow who's sleeping.

"He's been sleeping allot today but I don't sense anything wrong with him."

He does sleep but not the whole day. I pick him up but he doesn't open his eyes. I touch his head and he's in pain. Something is wrong with him. I get worried.

"Shadow? What's wrong baby?"

"He isn't supposed to be in his wolf form up until he turns the age of 16."

"I know Mpume. A spell is binding him. I have no idea where that woman got him from or he quickly turned cause he was human when his mother gave birth to him."

"We know nothing about wolves."

"I know that our species don't get along but with him it's different. Him and I connected the moment I saw him held down in that cage."

"Maybe we need a powerful witch to help us unbind him"

"No, my mate will do it."

"I'm going to take him with me. When my mate returns I'll bring him back. Stop messing with Kane. He's family"

“But it’s fun scarring him”

“I know it is but stop it cause my mate won’t find it funny that you’re messing with his brother”

“Yes goddess.”

I teleport back to our bedroom and lay him on bed. I go to the kitchen and take some milk on the fridge and a bowl. I pour him some on the bowl than take it to him. I try to wake him up but he’s sleeping. I sigh. The door opens and Khawula walks in.

“Angel?”

“He’s not okay Khawula. Please help him.” He sighs.

“I hope we won’t regret this. Let’s go to the penthouse.”

He says picking up shadow and we teleport back to the penthouse. He lays shadow on the carpet then lifts his hand above him.

“I the god of eternal light unbind the magic that was used to bind this child. I release him to all the spells and concoctions used to trap him to this form. Everything that is inside him that doesn’t belong there may it come of his system and let the acid him burn it. I release you and set you free from the one who called herself your master.”

My shadow groans in pain and it hurts me to see him like that. I try to go to him but Khawula stops me and shakes his head. He gets up growling moving around and growling. My god. His fur changes and white fur covers the top of his head and it goes down to his nose and mouth. The rest of the body gets covered with dark grey hair.

I have never seen a wolf in my life but this one has to be the most beautiful one I have ever seen. He opens his eyes and they are orange. The colour of fire. His eyes lock with mine than he looks at Khawula. He walks to us then he kneels and lays his head on Khawula’s feet. That’s so beautiful.

“He’s recognizing me as his Alpha. Wow.” Khawula is in awe. He crouches down and rubs his fingers under his neck and shadow groans like he likes it. I giggle. Shadow looks at me then stands up and walks towards me.

“What do I do?” I ask Khawula.

“He won’t hurt you. Shadow, that’s my mate. Mine.”

Shadow looks at him then rubs his head on my legs. I crouch down too and run my fingers on him too. He groans then licks my face. I giggle and move my face away.

“You look so handsome. I can’t wait to see you in your human form. Please show me?” I say brushing his head. Damn he’s big. He stops just beneath my thighs and above Khawula’s knees.

“He’s going to be naked love. Are you sure you want to see that?”

“Stop it Khawula. He’s just a child.”

“I was just asking.”

“Then make sure you cover him up”

“As you wish my goddess”

“Don’t annoy me Khawula” Why am I feeling annoyed towards him?.

Ugh and the fool grins. “Shadow. Show mommy what you are.”

My baby takes a few steps from us then he moves his head to the side and begins to transform. We see his hands, back and I close my eyes cause I don’t want to see him naked. I wait for a while then I hear Khawula cursing.

“What the fuck is this?!” I open my eyes and get the shock of my life.

“What? But how?” I look at Khawula then look at Shadow. “Oh my God!”

“How is this possible?”

“He looks like you. Like he’s your son?”

“Who the fuck are you?” Khawula charges to him but I quickly move and stand in front of shadow cause the child is scared.

“Khawula stop please. You’re scarring him.”

“Why the fuck does he look like me?” Zayon and Faye teleport. I guess they felt his rage too.

“Guys take Shadow to the master bedroom.” They try to take him but he shakes his head not wanting to leave. “Go shadow. He won’t hurt me. Go” He leaves with them looking at his father. What? He’s looking at the man who looks like him.

“I don’t know what the fuck is going but this shit is not funny angel”

“I don’t know what is going on too. I’m shocked and confused like you Khawula.”

“Angel I...” We stop talking as the air changes around us then Athena appears.

“Why are you waking everyone up with your anger demi god?”

“Finally we meet Athena. What the fuck is going on with that wolf in there?”

“Is that why you’re so angry and waking us up? Just because the boy looks like you?”

“He’s not my son!”

“Biologically he’s not but now he’s yours cause you saved him and cared for him. He took the image of the first alpha male he knows and who’s been a father to him”

“I haven’t been a father to that wolf Athena!”

“Oh just stop cause you know you have. You care about him as much as she does. Look his mother was killed and somehow that witch found him in a forest when she was doing her evil things. She didn’t know that he is human too and made that magic to bind him so he will stay that way and never grow cause it was going to be impossible hiding a grown ass wolf like that.”

“Why choose my image then?”

“Because every son wants to be like their father. His a special kind of wolf. If a female is born the daughter will take the image of the first woman they connect to and sometimes it won’t be the mother. The same happens to the boy child that is born. They will take after their father or an uncle and in this case. He chose you the God of eternal light to be his father. It is an honor and privilege cause he chose you as his family. You chose him too and decided to care for him instead of just leaving him somewhere. It’s his way of thanking you.”

I feel his anger leaving his body. Thank God cause I wouldn’t have allowed him to hurt shadow.

“So now we are his parents. He’s a fucken wolf Athena!”

“And your wife is a half vampire. You’re half human just like him. You make a beautiful complete family.”

“Where is his father since his mother was killed? I’m sure he wasn’t the only one born.”

“Unfortunately his father died three weeks ago and he was the only one born. His mother had a difficult pregnancy with him and she died after giving birth to him.”

“That’s so sad. How old is he?”

“He’s 10 years old. He has you now to love and care for him.”

“Wait Athena. A wolf that has no pack can be taken to the Alpha king to stay there and be under his protection. Why can’t you take him there?”

“Why are you so against him living with us Khawula?. Why do you want him gone?”

“Cause we can’t live with him. How the hell am I going to explain to everyone where this child suddenly comes from?”

“We’ll come up with a plan okay.”

“No angel he has to go.”

“He’s not going anywhere. He’s not going to stay with people he doesn’t know. What if they don’t like him?”

“He’s not our fucken responsibility angel. He’s going and that’s that!”

“This is a chance for us to be parents Khawula. It could be our only chance. Please don’t take it away from me.”

“So this is about you and not him. You want to use him so you be a mother that you so badly want to be. You want to use him to make yourself feel good?” I flinch cause that hurts. It hurts so bad.

“What? No! How could you say that to me?”

“What do you want me to say angel cause it looks that way?”

“Is that really so bad though? To want to be someone’s mother? To love and care for them Khawula” I wipe my tears.

“We will have children of our own.”

“What if we don’t. What if I can’t get...”

Advertisement

serif">“ENOUGH! I told you to stop saying that!”

“You need to face the truth because that is a possibility. You want to throw away a gift we were given to by the gods cause you simply don’t want to raise a child that is not of your own blood.”

“That’s not true angel. Don’t say that.”

“It is the truth and you know it.” I say sniffing. I am so hurt right now. Why would he think I’m using shadow. He needs us and we need him too.

“Athena take him. He can’t stay here.”

“Khawula I beg you. Please don’t let her take him away please!”

“No Angel.”

I burst into tears and cry. I run upstairs cause I know Athena is going to do what Khawula tells her. I get in and they sitting on the bed.

“Where is he?”

“In the bathroom goddess.” I run there and the moment I open the door. I see Athena disappearing with him. I try to run to them but I’m too late. She took him and he had tears in his eyes too. He didn’t want to leave but who says no to the Goddess of moon Athena.

I teleport back to my house in our bedroom. I go to the bathroom and get in the shower. I open the faucet and move it to hot water. I sit down on the floor and let the water warm me up cause I feel cold inside. I pull my knees to my chest and cry cause it feels like my own child was taken away from me. He gets in the bathroom and sighs. I hate him right now and I want him very far away from me.

“I’m sorry angel but you know we can’t stay with him. He will not be safe here”

“But he had us to protect him and teach him how to live with other humans but you didn’t care.”

“Angel please stop crying. This is for the best”

“For you it is.” I get up and step out of my wet clothes and leave them on the floor and go to bed. I move the pillows then get in bed. I am literally shaking cause I feel cold. I wipe my tears.

He curses when he gets in bed with me. He shifts me so I can face him and I let him.

“You are cold angel and you’re shaking” I keep quiet. “Angel please don’t be angry with me. You’ll thank me”

I cry hard cause he truly doesn’t understand how I’m feeling. Or maybe he does but he just doesn’t care. He holds me soothing me and I fall asleep crying on his chest.

When I wake up the next day he’s not in bed. We’ll that’s not a surprise cause he loves doing that. I really don’t want to get out of bed or see anyone and even talk to them but I have to cause we have guests in our home. I go to the bathroom and shower quickly then wear my jeans and top when I’m done and walk out. I come in and see everyone in the dining table having breakfast and they are wearing warm winter clothes. I frown cause it’s the summer season.

“Good morning” I say sitting down. Khawula is looking at me weird and the others are frowning.

“Good morning” They say but they don’t sound sure.

“What’s wrong?” I ask them as I sit down.

“It’s cold and you’re wearing a top and jeans only.” Kane says.

“That Durban weather for you. It get’s like this when it rains.”

“It looks like it wants to snow outside aunty. You look like you’re sick aunty. Are you feeling okay?” Mpilo asks me.

“I’m fine baby.” But I’m not really.

“Thank you for preparing breakfast Khwezi. You really didn’t have to.”

“It’s me uncle Kabelo and uncler Kane who made breakfast aunty. Do you love it?”

“I do baby. Thank you”

“Angel are you sure you’re okay?” Bhuti asks me.

“I am bhuti. I just feel off I guess. It must be the weather.” I try to eat but the food just tastes different. I opt for some tea but it tastes worse.

“I wanted us to meet Calvin today but I’m not feeling okay. Can we do it tomorrow instead?” I ask Khwezi?

“That’s fine angel. Can I make you something to feel better?” Can she talk to Khawula and bring back shadow for me?. She can’t.

“No sis. I think I’ll just lie down and maybe I’ll wake up feeling fine. Thanks though.” I get up and walk back to our bedroom. I shouldn’t have made the bed. I move the pillows like they did something to me then get in bed.

I cover my head and I begin to sniff. He’s just a child and she took him and left him God knows where. He could be frightened where he is. I wipe my tears.

“Angel please don’t cry.” Khawula says sitting next to me. I sniff.

I want him to go away and stop talking to me.

“He can’t stay with us angel.”

“Can you please leave?”

“Love please”

“I want to be alone please.”

“Look I know you’re mad at me but love I’m doing this for him and us. You’ll forget about him.” I cry harder

“kabelo you better give me some space before I freeze you to death!”

“That won’t work with me.”

“Ok then since you won’t leave me alone why don’t I just leave and come back when I have forgotten about him.”

“Ok. Ok fine I’m leaving. I’ll be in the longue. I love you”

“I don’t like you” What I wanted to say is that I hate him.

“I know love. I know.”

He gets up and I feel him walking to the door and closes it after a while. I wish I knew where she took him so I can go and get him myself. I feel a presence in the room and it’s a woman. I swear to go I won’t be responsible for what happens if Athena is here to gloat. I throw the covers away and ready to tell her where to get off but I stop cause it’s not Athena that is here. It’s a very beautiful woman and she’s a goddess too.

“May I take a seat here?”

“Yes you may.” I get up and walk towards her. I don’t smell anything malicious on her. She’s one of the good guys.

“I’m not here to hurt you goddess. Please sit.” She says like her heart is very heavy. I sit down. On the other couch across from her.

“My name is Lwandle Mvelase. Goddess of Rain and thunder. I am matted to the God of time. Sthembiso Ngcobo the Alpha King.”

“Oh wow. What an honor to meet you goddess. What brings you here?.”

“I am afraid that the past has somehow caught up with me.” She says tearing us.

“What does the goddess mean?”

“I don’t want you to do the same mistakes I did. I once attacked Athena and cause she did something and I regretted it the moment I did cause I knew I was going to be punished.”

“What did you do?”

“I can’t talk about it now cause your mate is in the house but don’t worry he won’t us. Goddess I need you to keep what I’m going to say to you between us. Please goddess you can’t share this to your mate even.”

“You can trust me. Tell me what’s wrong?” This woman is in tears.

“After I attacked Athena. A meeting was held for me after a while from the incident. I was called the gods who makes the rules and everything were there. My punishment for attacking Athena was that since there are more Goddesses than Gods. I had to get pregnant and have a child.”

“That’s a good thing goddess.”

“I thought it was too but they told me we will not raise the child. That child belongs to the gods only. It cannot be claimed by me or my mate. They told me it’s either I chose that or they take one of our triplets and strip them of all their powers and everything. One of them would have to live with being just a mere human while the rest of us have powers. I couldn’t allow that to happen to any of my children. I couldn’t tell my mate cause I knew he was going to kill Athena and he would have been sent to hell and I couldn’t live with that.” She says crying. My God!

“I am so sorry you had to go through that.”

“They took my child when he was still in my womb. I never got to give birth to him or hold him in my arms as he suckled on me breasts. I never got to see what he looks like.” This is hard.

“Where did they take him to after he was removed from your womb?”

“I wasn’t allowed to ask about him at all. I tried finding out what they did to him but they never told me until you.”

“Me? What did I do?”

“I kept hearing your voice begging and crying and I couldn’t understand what was going on and who’s voice I was hearing. I went to consult the witch and she told me it’s a voice of a goddess crying for child who was bound by magic of an evil witch. The child was a wolf she found in the forest. She has been keeping him in a cage ever since they left him there. If it wasn’t for you I wouldn’t have found my son. When you begged your mate to help him I felt it and I knew it was him.” Oh my God. I tear up.

“I understand goddess. He’s your son and he belongs to you.” I wipe my tears. She takes my hands to hers.

“No goddess. My son doesn’t know me that I am his mother but in you he found a mother and your mate as his father. Those are the only people he knows as his parents and it’s going to stay that way.”

“Goddess no. You have found your son and your mate needs to know”

“I lied to my mate that I had a miscarriage goddess. I cannot simply tell him now that I lied and our son was never dead. They will take my children away from me goddess, kill the one that I never birthed and tell my mate. I can’t have that. Sthembuiso will kill me. I know he would. This is my punishment and I have to live with it. A part of me died with him but you gave me him back too because you love him like he is yours. He belongs to you and your mate. He took his father’s features when he transformed back.”

“My god goddess. This is very heart breaking for you”

“There’s not a single day that I don’t think about him but now that I know he loved and will always be safe makes me find some comfort in that.”

“The truth always has way of coming out goddess. You will get tired of keeping this secret and by then.”

“That’s a risk I’m willing to take.”

“You can come and see him anytime.”

“I can’t do that cause I will get attached to him. Just promise me you will talk to your mate and get my son back from Athena. Please goddess promise me.”

“I promise I will get my son back.”

“Thank you so much. Whatever you need please let me know. Just say my name and I will come.”

“I will.”

“Take care of yourself. Your mate and friends are very blessed to have you.” We hug each other then she vanishes.

My god this is hard. How does she live everyday hiding this secret from her mate?. The gods are the ones making sure that he never finds out. What did Athena do to her that made the goddess attack her?.

CHAPTER 48

[PREVIOUS](#) PAGE 51 [NEXT](#)

Advertisement

ANGEL.

I am still in shock because of what the Goddess has to me. The child is hers and they took him from her because she attacked Athena. No one just attacks someone else without a reason. I sit on the bed and sigh. I am really not okay. I don't know how I'm going to convince my mate to allow us to raise the boy. I just don't understand why he would be so dead against it. Maybe if I take a nap I'll be wake up feeling better.

I feel air around me then I look up and it's Athena. She likes these big entrances of her. Why can't she just appear then disappear without being dramatic. I get in bed and look at her. She's watching me too. She goes to the window and looks outside. She shakes her head smiling then she turns around folding her hands and looks at me like she's expecting me to say something first. I am really in no mood for this cause if she's here to gloat about taking the boy. Then she better leave.

"I wonder what is going on in that pretty head of yours"

"What do you want Athena?"

"To talk to you. Did you see how cold it is outside?"

"Yeah so?"

"Do you know what caused it?"

"It's a cold front Athena. These things happen here in the human world. Not everything is beautiful and sunny like where you live."

"It does rain too where I live but never cold"

"I can see that judging by what you're wearing."

"I know the Goddess was here and what she told you."

"Were you eavesdropping on us?"

"No I wasn't. I knew she would tell you."

"Why did you take her child Athena?"

"Her child? That wolf is not her child."

"But she said it was her punishment for attacking you"

"Do you think I would take a child of the God of Time and just throw him somewhere like that?. That man will surely kill me. The wolf you found is not their child."

"I'm confused now. Why would she say and think that it is her child?"

“ You see Goddess. When Lwandle was given her punishment for attacking me. She agreed that she will accept any punishment given to her by the Gods. Then she was told she will get pregnant with a Male child but she will not raise it as hers cause that child will belong to the Gods. She agreed and went home. What she doesn't know though is that she was never pregnant. A memory was implanted to her and her mate to make them think that she got pregnant and lost a child but to Lwandle. She thinks the child is this one and he's alive.”

“ But why do that. Why let her think that she has a child somewhere in the world living alone. That's very cruel.”

“It is cruel but it is her punishment. Things could have been worse for her but the Gods are not heartless goddess. Her mate the God of time would have turned this world upside down had we really did that. A God child will not leave alone and let it to fend for themselves. That child is not theirs. We could never let you mother your own cousin.”

“ What? If he was Lwandle's the child would have been my cousin?”

“ Yes goddess. You see Lwandle's mate is brothers to your father. Her sister is mated to your father.”

“ My father is alive?”

“ He is alive goddess.”

Wow. I don't know what hurts the most right now about finding out that my father is alive after all this time when I thought he was dead and he knew that he has a child but he has never. Even once thought of looking for me and seeing if I am okay?.

“ He doesn't know you live cause your mother never told him. Your mother didn't know she was pregnant up until it was too late and your father was gone. Your father is a vampire like you princess. One of the firsts vampires and the only oldest one still living. He's their king and you are his only living child. His only princess.”

“ Why didn't my mother try to find him and tell him?.”

“ To keep you safe Thobeka. Had the underworld knew of your existence they would have came for your blood. Take you to force your father to come out. They know he exists but no one knows where he truly is. You are his true blood line. The only link directly to him.”

“ Why is he hiding?”

“ He's not. He still rules the underworld without being seen by anyone. They want to know who's their king cause right now they just think he's nothing but an old wives tale. He doesn't exist. There are those from the underworld who want to rule this world but that won't happen as long as your father still lives.”

“ So Lwandle's mate is also a vampire. My uncle?”

“No they are not blood related. But your father lived with them for years then he left cause he couldn't stay with them cause they would see that he's not aging. He still looks the same. So he had to live. Lwandle's mate is the Royal Alpha king of wolves. The God of time. He can change the past and visit it. Change the future or make time stand still. Only he has the power to do that.”

“ Does Lwandle know that she's my aunt?”

“ No she doesn't.”

“ If the Child is not theirs then who's child is he then?”

“ That's what were all trying to find out. No one knows who birthed him. He's not your cousin. Lwandle and her mate felt the child when your mate broke the spell because the spell your mate performed on the child was powerful and they felt in the moment it was broken and he transformed.”

“ Please bring him back to me Athena. Let me care for him and love him.”

“ Ask your mate that. If he agrees. I will bring the child back. He's safe and being taken care of where he is. He misses you both. Wolves and vampires don't get along but you and that child are different. ”

“ I miss him too.”

“ You gave your mate your royal blood goddess. I don't think your father is going to be happy about that.”

“ Why does it matter cause he's my mate.”

“ It matters because your mate has now royal blood in him and that connects him to your father. It doesn't make him royal though. Your father shared his blood with your mother only. Your mother wasn't supposed to get pregnant but she did. You're their miracle child. Your father is going to be happy when he knows about you.”

“ Is there a way for me to talk to him?”

“ He will find his princess. Talk to your mate and stop being sad. You’re making people cold.”

“ Me?”

“ Yes goddess. When you're really sad. It will get cold and snow until you are okay. You are the Goddess of ice after all and your mood affects the weather. That’s why even the goddess Lwandle was able to find you. Your son is safe and you will see him soon.” She says and disappears.

What the God's do sometimes is just crazy. How do you let someone think that they have a child somewhere when they don't. Imagine carrying this secret alone and hiding it from your mate. How the hell do you even live. Lwandle is strong cause if it was me. I would have told my mate. Speaking of him he opens the door and walks in. Our eyes lock. He closes the door and walk to my side and sits next to me.

“ I hate the silent treatment your giving me angel” he Cubs my face.

“ Tell Athena to bring him back.”

“ Angel we talked about this.”

“ We didn't talk about it. You decide that he had to go and that’s that. You didn’t care about what I wanted.”

“ We will have children of our own love. I promise you.”

“ you don’t know that. Stop saying that and just accept that my other 50 percent being a vampire might affect me.”

“ Your mother got pregnant with you. You will also get pregnant. Just have faith my love please.”

“ I want to be alone. Can you please leave?”

“ Angel?”

“ Just go Khawula please” he sighs and gets up. He kisses my cheek then leaves. I burst into tears the moment he closes the door.

I should have asked Athena if I can get pregnant but I’m scared. My phone rings. I answer it and its Khwezi.

“ Hello?” I clear my throat.

“ Angel hi. Are you okay?”

“ Yeah I am. I think the weather is just affecting me that’s all. What’s up?”

“ I was thinking that Mpilo can come and spend the night here.”

“ Ok I will pack her clothes and ask Khawula to drop her off.”

“ Why don't you come with her so we can have a girls day. Watch movies wearing our pyjamas and have fun. The weather certainly agrees with us.”

“ I don't know khwezi. I wouldn't want to impose on you and the king.”

“ you could never. Please come.”

“ Ok I will.”

“ ok. I'll see you later.” She says and hangs up.

I might as well just go and spend the night at her house cause being here is making me sad and I hate that. Maybe when I come back I'll be feeling better. I get up and pack the clothes I will need. I go to Mpilo's room too and pack some of her clothes. I make sure there's everything she will need then take our bags to the dining room.

“ Mpilo?.....Mpilo?”

“ Aunty?” she walks in running.

“ don't run in the house. You'll hurt yourself.”

“ I won't run again I promise.”

“ Please go change your clothes. We are going to spend the night with your sister at her house.”

“ Really aunty? I'm going to the palace?” I giggle.

“ No baby. It's just your aunty house.”

“ Ok I'll be right back.” She goes to her bedroom..

“ So you're leaving me all alone in this house?” he says standing behind me.

“ I'll be back. I just need time.”

“ I love you. You know that right?”

“ I love you.” I tell him.

He wraps his hands around me and I lie my head on his chest. He wraps his hand around my neck forcing my head up and he kisses me deeply. Leaving me wanting more. I know he's doing this because he doesn't want me to leave but I am. He steps away from me just as Mpilo announces that's she's done. He helps us with our bags to the car.

Advertisement

serif;mso-ansi-language:EN-US">They put them in the boot and Mpilo gets in the car. Khawula takes my hand and threads them.

“ The child is watching us Khawula”

“ She’s not. Why do I feel like you're leaving me.” Oh my God. Why is he being a baby.

“ I’m not leaving you khawula. You know exactly where I’m going. It’s just for tonight only.”

“ Promise me you’ll be back home tomorrow?”

“ I promise” He gives me a deep kiss then opens the door for me. “ I’ll see you later when you’re sleeping.” He whispers in my ear.

I get in the car and off we leave with Mpume and Faye.

KABELO.

I watch as the car leaves until it disappears. Angel is mad at me but I know she will come around. She just needs time to forget about the boy. Yeah I’m lying to myself cause I also can’t forget about him. How could I when he looks exactly like me. He took my image and it freaked me out cause I could see myself in him. I keep telling angel that I dint want her to be hurt when I actually know that deep down I’m afraid that I might disappoint them both.

I heard what Athena said about the boy taking a man image when he is born but why did it have to be me?. Why could he just choose to look like someone else and not me?. Now angel is hurt because I told athena to take the boy. What else could I do cause I still have to figure out how will I explain this to my family. I don’t want them to think that I hid a child from them when we go visit cause I want angel to meet my whole family. I want to marry her.

I walk back to the house and about to go to my bedroom when my ancestor Kelson appears. I sigh cause I dont know what he wants. He looks at me like he’s not impressed with me. He can join the club.

“ Good afternoon my ancestor. What brings you here today?”

“ You. What did you do to your mate?”

“ Not you too please”

“ You're hurting her. What is so hard about you giving her what she wants?”

“ It's not that easy. You know that.”

“ No one said it will be easy. The gods bless you with a child and you turn your back on that child?”

“ I want them to bless us with our own child. Why can't they do that?”

“ Ask me what you're afraid to ask?”

I sigh. I really dont want to think about that honestly cause it scares me. I sit down and look at him.

“ Will she able to carry our children?”

“ What do you think?”

“ Please Kelson. Just tell me okay?”

“ Why wouldn't she be able to carry them?”

“ Because she's half vampire. You know that.”

“ I do know that. You and angel will be able to have beautiful children. Her vampire genes won't stop her and you from having beautiful children.”

“ Thank you”

“ When was the last time you talked to your mother?” what?

“ what did she do now?”

“ They are looking for her. I don't know what she did but they are looking for her.”

“ I haven't talked to her in a year. The last time we talked she told me she will try to keep them away from me but she never said who.”

“ Her fellow witches are after your blood and she's been making sure that they don't find you. Things are now complicated.”

“ How are they complicated?”

“ You took the Dark kings blood from his daughter. Technically you weren't supposed to take it but you knew that as soon as you felt it on your tongue and you didn't stop.”

“ she's my mate though.”

“ She was supposed to drink from you only and not from her. The blood you from her purity when you mated was enough. I should have told you this before you mated. It doesn't matter now cause it had happened by he won't be happy when he finds out.”

“ Why would he be angry?. I love his daughter and she's my mate. We are bound together forever. That is not going to change.”

“ His blood is his only and he gave it to a woman who he loved very much that is his daughter. He wanted her to live forever and not die

but unfortunately she did. He doesn't know what they have a child together and when he does he's going to smell his blood in you and you should be prepared. His blood belongs to his family. He's the one who gives it. No one takes it from him."

"I haven't bitten her since that last time cause it changed me."

"You're not a vampire. Your strength and everything else just tripled that's all. You got a taste of her blood and you still crave it and you will take it again. I know you will cause you crave blood."

"Fuck."

"The witches after your mother should never get their hands on your blood or hers. Especially hers cause if they do. They will cause havoc."

"That's never going to happen "

"Careful now. You can never say never"

"I will cause hell if they ever touch her and get even a taste of her blood. I'll burn everything down."

"Which is why we need to leave now so we can complete the process of making you one with Elson. He's ready and he knows you are too. That's why he's been silent and sleeping. The first part is complete cause you have mated with your mate. We now need to do the rest and be ready cause I have the feeling that your mom will soon come."

"Here coming here will be inviting trouble and causing us allot of problems. I can't have that."

"I know she did allot in the past but she's trying really hard and her being here. If she comes here it will be because she's a mother and she's worried about you. Be open to that and don't be so hard on her."

"Said easier than done."

"You are about to start a new chapter of your life and you need to let some of the things go in order to move forward. Accept apologies and make decisions that will improve your life and make your mate happy."

I know what he's trying to say and I hear him. I will take time thought and think about this clearly.

"When are we going to do the ritual then?"

"Now. We have to leave."

“ Do I need to bring anything?”

“ No. However I must warn you that some of the guardians are not also happy that you took her blood but they'll get over it.”

“ Who else am I going to meet there?”

“ Only the guardians who are part of this ritual. They are the only ones allowed.”

“ And how long will it be?”

“ So many questions man. Let's go. It won't take the whole day.”

This one is very impatient. “ Don't let go of my hand.

He takes my hand then I feel air around me and see different colors.

Then my feet land on the ground. I look around and I am inside a circle surrounded by men and women who are wearing white gown. Pure white gowns. They look beautiful. Kelson is standing outside the circle with them.

“ Welcome human Kabelo. Welcome to our world. Welcome former guardian and we also welcome the God in you Kabelo. God of eternal fire. You are today cause we have been expecting you for years and now that the day has arrived. We are thankful.” Says another guardian.

“ You might have met these two guardians on your cousins funeral. The two people you saw glowing...” they come forward and it is them. “ They came cause we had to sure if it's really and plus we were worried about you being in the same place as your mother but we saw no threat and they left.” Another one says too.

“ write now though we will make you one with Elson. Elson come out.” Ah fuck!

I get on my hands and knees as that pain hits me again. Excruciating pain that is worse than the last time he came out. I scream so loud as I feel him literally coming out. Fuck I hate this shit. I am just glad I am never going to feel it again. I gasped for air as his last part leaves my body.

“ I hate this!” I say.

“ Oh stop it.” Elson says and helps me get up and look at him.

“ You look human now. How is it possible?”

“ When you accepted me as yourself. Not the other part if you buy you. You believed and accepted that we are one. I’m not human but I’m showing you how I was when I was human.”

“ Damn you're tall.”

“ So are you.” He says. “ It's time I go to sleep forever. You just be Kabelo now. The God of eternal fire. I will morph into your body and you are going to feel different and act different but you will still be you. You will have my full powers more than the ones you already have. You will know everything I have learned as the guardian that will help you become the God you are. This is the last time we speak. Your life will just be your life. The guardians here will always watch over you and your family. Whatever you need. You have them.” He says.

“ ok..i guess I’ll see you when I see you.”

“ Thank you for allowing me to enter your body. You have also taught me many things but my time has come into an end. Can I ask something though before I leave?”

“ Anything.”

“ Name one of your children after me.”

“ I will do that. It will be my honor. Thank you for choosing me to be your host. You have done some many things for me ever since I was a boy. I promise I will do you proud. I won’t fail you.”

“ I know you won’t. Ok. We're ready.” Elson says.

“ Do not say anything or leave the circle until we are done.” Kelson says. I nod.

The guardians hold hands and lift them forward as they are surrounding the circle. They begin to chant something in a language I cannot understand. The atmosphere changes and my body gets on fire. I look at elson too and he’s in fire. He takes my hand and we thread our hands. The more they chant the intense the fire gets and I scream cause I feel like I am burning. I can feel pain from inside my body. From my blood, veins, bones and vessels. Pain in my heart, my mind and eyes and everywhere else.

I continue to scream and memories of Elson study potions, learning about his powers and everything else hit me and fill my body.

Everything he learned and all the knowledge he has becomes mine. I

feel the pain decreasing down, slowly and the it completely stops. I open my eyes and look around me and there's no Elson. He's gone. I look at he guardians and they look different. Before they looked like humans but now. I see their true image. Their bodies are half human and half animals.

“We wish you all the best. You have all the knowledge you to make us proud. It wasn't a mistake that you were chosen. You will be blessed. Till we meet again God of Eternal fire.”

Kelson says and then I feel like I'm falling on the sky. I try to hold on to something but my body gets light and my eyes close.

CHAPTER 49

[PREVIOUS](#) PAGE 52 [NEXT](#)

ANGEL.

The distance between us makes me think that maybe he would really understand how serious this issue is. I want our wine to be back with us cause honestly I feel incomplete without him. Lwandle has to know the truth though of what really happened. That my son is not her son. Athena and the Gods really punished her cause she thinks her son is living while she was never pregnant. How can they be so cruel and what do they think is going to happen when the God of time finds out about the cruel joke punishment like that they did on his mate. The Gods will surely know the hard way. I hope he makes them pay for hurting his mate.

We arrive at Khwezi's house and honestly I need this. This distance between us. Mpilo jumps out as soon as the car parks and runs to the house. I follow her carrying our bags. I walk in and Khweziis waiting for me. I don't know why but I get emotional and my eyes get teary. She pulls me into a hug and holds me. I hold her back and let a few tears fall. I pull away and wipe my tears.

“ Good day MaLukhele" the prince says greeting.

“ Good day my prince. That you for welcoming me in your home.”

“ Our home is also your home. You are welcomed at any time.” He says.

“ Thank you.”

“ Honey. Can you please take her bags to the guest bedroom.” He nods and takes the bags from me. “ Let’s go and make some hot chocolate so you can tell me what’s making you cry.” I don’t know though if I want to talk about it.

I follow her as we walk in the kitchen when I sit down and she makes us some hot chocolate while chatting. Mbatha walks I’m mad kisses his love and tells her he’s going out. I know he’s going to Khawula to ask him what’s going on between us cause I was crying.

We move to the lounge so we can have some privacy from the maids. Mpilo doesn’t even see us cause she’s focused on the cartoons she’s watching. I open up to Khwezi cause I know she’s someone I can trust so I tell her about my fear of maybe not being able to give Khawula a child and she advises me that maybe we should go and see a doctor so I can be sure. So I wouldn’t worry about something that maybe doesn’t exist. I wish I could tell her that I am half vampire and maybe those genes are more dominant than my human and half Goddess Genes. If things weren’t so complicated. If I wasn’t who I was and was just a mere human. I would have went to the doctor’s office and gave them my blood to examine but I can’t do that. I can’t offer anyone my blood. The only person who’s had my blood is my mate.

“ Don’t worry about it angel. You are young, beautiful and very healthy. Once you start popping out babies. You’re not going to stop cause you are going to enjoy every moment of it. No matter how long it takes the two of you to conceive but you know it is going to happen some day and who knows. Maybe you’re already pregnant but you just don’t know it yet.” She says smiling.

“ Yeah maybe” That’s not possible cause I would know.

We chill and watch movies while having a good day indoors in this cold weather. I can’t believe Athena said it is me who’s making people cold. She’s crazy. We are done setting the table when Mbatha and Khawula walk in just in time for dinner. We bring a bowl and dish cloth. They wash their hands and thank us. We come back and sit in

the table having dinner. They chat, Khwezi and I chat also. They decide to invade our chat and we all have a conversation but I don't really participate in it cause I just answer what Khawula asks me and it frustrates him. Good.

After dinner I excuse myself and head to bed. I don't know if Khawula left or not but I don't care cause I didn't invite him. I shower, brush teeth then head to bed after I am done putting lotion. I switch off the lights and sigh as I close my eyes enjoying the silence but that doesn't last cause I feel him in the room. He left and decided to teleport in here. What was the use of him leaving if he was going to come in here again.

The bed dips as he gets in behind me. He smells so good fresh and clean like water. He plants a kiss on my neck. I breath out.

“ Why are you here?”

“ I don't want to sleep alone. That's why I'm here.” He says whispering in my ear. He knows what that does to me and he's doing it intentionally

“ I asked that you give me some space Khawula.”

“ is this what you will always do?. Get mad and leave every time things don't go your way?” he asks like I'm being crazy. Maybe I am “ You made a decision without talking about it with me first. You didn't consider my feels about it cause you didn't care. If that is how things are going to be in this relationship then I get mad cause obviously it's you who gets to make decisions in this family.”

“ What happens when his family finally finds him and want him back?”

“ They won't and if they do. They will have to explain to me how the hell they lost him. He's mine Khawula. He belongs with us and you know that but you took him away from us. You hurt him.” He sighs and lays on his back facing up.

“ What did the Goddess want?”

“ Which one?”

“ There was another one excluding Athena?”

“ Yes. The Goddess of Rain and Thunder. Lwandle Mvelase.”

“ What? The Luna and Queen of the dark moon pack was at our house and I didn't sense that?”

“ She was.” I say shifting and facing him.

“ Was it about the wolf?”

“ She thinks it’s her son. The one the Gods took from her as punishment .”

“ What? The Goddess was punished by the Gods? Why?”

“ Apparently she attacked Athena and attacking a powerful Goddess is a punishable offence.”

“ It is a very serious offence and the Gods don't take that lightly. So you say she thinks the wolf is her son?”

“ Athena came after she left and told me that...” I tell him everything Athena told me excluding the part about him taking my blood and who my father is and how Lwandleis related to me.

“ So the Gods have no idea who is wolfie?”

“ No. She told me he is our son and I must talk to you first then she will bring him back to me if only you agree.”

“ I’ll think about it.” He says sighing. What? Is this man serious?.

“ What’s there to think about?”

“ I need to do some investigating first then if he really doesn’t have anyone. We will take him and raise him as our own.”

“ Athena would have told me if he had a family. Khawula I beg you. Please tell Athena to bring him back.”

“ I said I’ll think about it.” His face is hard and I know he means it. He’s n going to agree unless he finds what he wants. I turn away from him and pull the comforter up to my neck.

He turns and I feel his hard dick sliding between my ass cheeks.

“ Can you please leave. I would like to get some sleep.” I ask him fighting back the tears that are threatening to fall at any time.

“ You're punishing me?”

“ I want to sleep so it’s ether you leave or you behave yourself and sleep.”

“ But I’m hard and I want you love. Please angel just feel how hard I am..” He says moving his hips.

“ I swear I will get off this bed and go sleep with Mpilo if you don't keep your hands and dick to yourself.”

“ you're being unfair love. You want me to sleep all night like this?”

“ You can Jack off then sleep.”

“ Yoh!” He sighs sighing. I smile to myself cause that serves him good.

I woke up with Khawula gone. I had no idea when he left cause he slept grumpy and tossing and turning the whole night cause I wouldn't give him some love. During breakfast Khwezi let me know that she is planning a dinner for everyone cause Mbatha wants to officially introduce her to all his friends especially the wives of his friends cause they are also very important to him since they are all family. I thought we could do this alone but we clearly are lost so I called in Calvin and he came to the rescue and took over. When the day if the dinner actually came. His people showed up to decorate while I was cooking with Mpume's help cause we are fast and also we used our ability to be quick.

The maids took over to look after the small details while we were getting pampered by the glam squad Calvin got for us. They made sure we looked like a million dollars. I knew our men would be speechless when they saw us and that's what exactly happened when Khawula saw me. His mouth was wide open as Calvin walked me down the stairs to him. I felt like I was going to get engaged that day. What surprised me the most was when walked up to me. He pulled something out of his breast pocket and I was surprised when I saw it. He put it around my neck. A thick diamond collar. He saw the surprise on my face and I saw the pride on his face as he put it around me.

We waited for the princess to come down cause the night was about her and when she did. Everyone was in awe of her beauty. She truly looked like a the real princess she was. In each and every way. Mbatha introduced her to everyone especially the wives but the reaction I saw and what I expected were two different things. Maybe I was seeing things but I definitely heard their loud thoughts. I knew this dinner was going to be long and it was. After the men left us to give us some time alone. Lungi and Who's the other girl's again.....uhmmm. Simphiwe yes. That's her name.

They jumped into it and started accusing Khwezi of all sorts of things. I was so shocked cause when Khawula told me about Lungi.

He described a sweet loving woman but this woman I was seeing in front of me was someone different and don't get me started on sims. I was so disappointed with how they behaved themselves at someone's house when it was their first time being invited. Khwezi told them her truth and where to get off. She stood up for herself and I was so proud of my girl but I could feel how hurt and judged Khwezi was feeling and that made me upset especially when lungi accused me of wanting to replace her husband with Khawula. . I almost lost my shit but Khawula and Mpume came to rescue me.

When I got outside and felt the air hit my face. I calmed down and went back inside again but the mood was ruined cause Khwezi was hurt. The Gunede wives they have had enough of the dinner and they decided to leave. Lesego bless her heart she tried to get her sister in-laws to order but they didn't listen to her. She apologized and promised to see us and they left. I decided to leave with Khawula too cause Khwezi needed her man cause the Gumede wives ruined what was meant to be the most amazing and beautiful night as they were hosting their friends for the first time. They truly disappointed us but that's life. Not everyone is going to love you.

AFTER THE DISASTROUS DINNER.

Khwezi and Mpilo are back again in my house and I can tell that this back and forth of sleeping here then they are at her house the next day is beginning to take a toll on her even though I know she won't admit it but I can see. It's taking a toll physically and emotionally and what happened yesterday added to that toll. She is stressed and she needs to slow down. We are sitting on my back yard in this beautiful day cause the weather has cleared and its now warm.

I am telling her about the existence of Khawula's son that we didn't know existed and how Khawula refuses to let him live with us so we can be his parents. I know I am lying to her but how would I explain to her that the boy is not only human but he is something else and where we found him. She would think that I am crazy so this is the

best way for me to put it this way. She listens and tells me that maybe Khawula is afraid that I will later resent him if we fail to have children of our own and I tell her I would never do that cause I love him very much and he knows my heart. I excuse myself and go to the bathroom. When I come back I find them talking. He is afraid that his family would think that he abandoned his only child.

“Or you could just blame it on me and say that I kept him away from you cause I was angry at you.” I walking in.

“ Never. I could never do that to you.” He says and I nods. He takes my hand and sits me on his lap. “ I’m sorry I didn’t seem to get where you're coming from. I’ll fix it okay?”

“ You will?” he seriously will after days of begging him he will bring our boy home?

“ I promise. I’ll fix it love. I'll bring our son home.”

“ Thank you Khawula. I promise you

you won’t regret it.” I kiss him and hug him tight. Thank you God. I get off him and he stands.

“ I’ll see you later ladies. Enjoy the rest of your day” He kisses me then leaves.

“ Thank you for talking with him.” I say hugging her and kiss her cheek.

“ ugh angel. Your lips were just down your man's throat.” She says and I laugh out loud.

“ Hey now. It wasn’t like that”

“ Yeah right.” She shakes her head.

We laugh and Mpune walks in.

“ Goddess. You have guests.” I look at Khwezi and sighs cause I know who our guests are.

“You can bring them in. Can you please get some refreshments. I know you’re not my maid but please.” I ask her.

“ I do whatever you tell me to do Goddess” Mpume says and walks out.

“ I love how they call you. Goddess. It fits you perfectly.” She says smiling.

“ Thank you my queen.” We laugh.

The guests walk in and its Lesego on the front followed by Lungi and the ever so rude Simphiwe. I stand up and Khwezi stands too. She

doesn't have to but she's being polite. She's such a good woman. I love that about her. Lesego smiles and opens her arms. I return her infectious smile and hug her tight. She hugs Khwezi too and then the Gumede wives just stand there. Ok.

"Please take a seat." They do. "I am surprised to see you here in my home. Had I known you were coming I would have made us lunch."

"We didn't know if we would be welcomed or not." Simphiwe says. "Then why did you come to my home if you weren't sure you would be welcomed?" I ask her.

"Lesego asked us to come." Of course she did cause she wants them to apologize for how they behaved last night.

"I was expecting Lesego but not you two. So...." I honestly tell them.

"Luh do you want to say something to angel?" Lesego says looking lungi. Lungi looks and sighs.

"I'm sorry for being rude and acting funny towards you."

"Why do it cause I have never offended you Lungi?. Why do you not like me?" I want to understand why she hates me. Mpume walks in and places drinks and mini sandwiches on the table and leaves when she's done.

"I don't hate you Thobeka."

"so if you don't hate me then what's going on?" Lungi looks at sims and they have this silent conversation between them. What the hell?. I could read their minds right now and tell them exactly what they are thinking but I wont. It's not who I am but if they force me I will.

"Luh hates the fact that her Husband finds you attractive. She has never seen mbuso reacting to anyone the way he does." Sims speaks for her. Is she her spokes person now?.

"What does that have to do with me cause I don't find your husband attractive. He's not my type." I am annoyed by that. Khwezi's mouth forms a ghost smile.

"I didn't say you find him attractive"

"Lungi let me tell you something you clearly don't know about men. Khwezi said it and I'll say it too. Men lust after what they can't have. Men lust after women every time and your husband does find other women attractive it's just that you don't know about it. You're only experiencing this now cause it happens that I'm one of the women he

finds attractive and you don't know how to deal with it. Instead of talking to your husband and telling him how you feel about this lust that he has which will go away. You decide to be a mean bitch to us instead like I asked your husband to feel those stupid feelings of lust towards me" she looks at shocked.

"I told her the same thing. All our husbands find you attractive and that's okay because its life and we are humans. I too do find other men sexy." Lesego adds

"Your husband knows it and he's okay with that cause he knows that you would never do something stupid. He trusts you. But you Lungi. You don't trust your husband cause if you did. You wouldn't be behaving like an insecure and jealous wife who's husband always cheats on. Has Mbuso ever cheated on you cause that maybe would explain why you're so mean to us." I lay it to her.

"Mbuso has never and will never cheat on me."

"Then stop this behavior cause nothing annoys a man like an insecure and jealous woman. Mbuso loves you lungi. You're his everything stop this behavior of yours cause it will push him away and to the arms of another woman. You don't want that." If she's not careful. I feel sorry for her.

"I'm sorry Thobeka."

"Yeah" I would believe her if she meant it but she doesn't.

"Sims?" Lesego says.

"What?" she says.

"Apologize?"

"For what exactly?"

"Save it Simphiwe. I don't need anymore fake apologies." I tell her. I dint like this woman at all.

"Can we go now?" Simphiwe says looking at lungi and Lesego.

"Simphiwe don't be rude. You haven't even drank something."

Lesego is trying shame.

"I'll pass thank you." She says standing up.

"Simphiwe you're not welcome in my house anymore cause I don't like the energy you bring in my home cause it will affect my flowers and many other things." I tell her.

“ I don't care cause you will never see me here ever again. Goodbye.”
She takes her bag and storms out. Girl bye.

“ I guess I have to go too. I'll see you.” Lungi says like she
doesn't know if she should go or stay.

“ Bye” we say.

“ Are you coming?” lungo asks Lesego.

“ No I'm staying. My husband will pick me up.”

“ Oh ohk” she says disappointed. She leaves too.

“ Guys I know that after the first encounter you had with her you have
mixed feelings about lungi but she's really a nice person. I just don't
know what is going on with her.” Lesego says.

“ She's not sick or anything like that LG. She's just jealous. That sim
though is something else. I don't like her at all.” I tell them.

“ Ay guys I don't know now.” She says.

“ Enough about the Gumede wives. Why don't we go to a spa and
pamper ourselves. Let me spoil you two pregnant mommies”

“ you're pregnant too?” Lesego asks Khwezi

“ Yeah I am.” Lesego shrieks in excitement.

“ I am so happy to know that I'm not the only one pregnant. This is
going to be so much fun. Oh my God”

“ I'm excited too” I look at them and I wish I was too. I'll have to
connect to my grandmother and ask her before I talk to Athena.

“ Ok ladies let me go and change then off we go.”

“No” LG and Khwezisay at the same time.

“ Ok fine. Let's go them.”

“ I know the best place.” LG says then we take our bags and leave.

We had a wonderful day at the spa. I really love that place and I do
want to go back to it but alone next time so I can unwind. I also love
the fact that no man are allowed so you can walk around naked or
show off your boobs without worrying about another man looking at
you. Lesego really knows places and I'm looking forward to the
others we are going to see all of us as girls. We have just dropped her
off and then well drop of the princess too and the last stop is me. Ever
since the dinner we all had at the Khwezi's house things between
Khawula and I are still tense. I haven't let him touch me cause I am

mad at him and I don't want to sleep with him while I'm angry and hurt and he doesn't understand.

He thinks that I am using sex to punish him and that's not the truth.

How do you honestly let your man touch you when you're angry cause

I might decide to bite him and suck out all of his blood. I know

there's what they call angry sex but that wouldn't work between us

cause we are of different nature. Once you feel threatened your

instincts take over and your body gets ready to fight. Khawula can

easily overpower me cause he's much more powerful than me and I

know he would exert that power over me to show me how dominant

he is. I wonder if he would exactly show me the dominant Master K. I

can't wait to meet that other side of him since I got only a glimpse.

My clit twitches as I think about it.

The cars stop cause there seems to be a traffic of stuck cars. We look

outside and we see that there's an accident. Mpume steps outside the

car and goes to look. My mood instantly changes. I don't know why

but something is off. Mpume comes back with the royal guards and

tell us that it's going to take long for cars to clear so we have to take a

different route. I entwine my hands with Khwezi's as the cars reverse

and drive out. She looks at me and asks me if I am okay and I nod. I am

not okay. Something is off.

"Khawula? Khawula?" I mind link but I can't get to him. It's like

something is blocking me from connecting to him.

My body is alert and I know danger is coming. My fangs elongate and

my eyes change color. I want to transform cause whatever that is

coming is big.

"Faye? Mpume? You feel that?" I mind link with them.

"We do Goddess." They answer back.

"Protect yourselves now!"

"Yes Goddess"

"Khawula?! Khawula?! There are people here. Khawula!"

Whatever it is or whoever they are close and they want me. They are

going to kill anyone who stands in their way and I can't let them do

that. I close my eyes and recite the spell.

"I am of fire and Ice. Born of blood and darkness. My blood is sacred

and no one will get it. I walk between two worlds as I am the princess

of the underworld. Who ever touches my blood will feel the wrath of the Dark King. Ice surround them. Fire keep them warm inside. No spell or magic will hurt them. Protect them and....”

I use my powers and wrap myself around Khwezi as it car gets hit hard and it flies to the air. Ice forms around her protecting her and fire jeeps her and her baby warm inside. The car hits the ground hard and I scream as I feel something hitting him. Those are not bullets but something else. The hit me and I try to leave the car so I can fight them but something hard hits me in my chest knocking the air out if my body and I fall down screaming Khawula's name.

CHAPTER 50

[PREVIOUS](#) PAGE 53 [NEXT](#)

KABELO.

My head is aching so bad that I want to scream and hit it against something hard. I look around and I'm in my house alone. Angel went to the spa with her friends. I hope they'll have a good day. But I have to do something that I should have done. Bring our son back home. He chose me for a reason and I rejected him. I feel so bad right now cause the child just wanted to be loved by me. I shouldn't have done that but I am going to fix it. When angel comes back. She's going to find wolfie back home. I decide to take a quick shower. I leave my bedroom when I'm done cause my heart feels like is literally breaking. What the hell?. I walk slowly until I'm in the lounge and sit down. My head feels like someone is hitting me with a hammer. Like they want to split my head into two. Someone is trying to get into my head. I lock them out and try to connect to angel but I can't something is blocking me

“ Zayon?” He appears next to me.

“ Sir. Something is going on.”

“ I can't get through to angel. Someone or something is blocking me from mind linking with her. Can you try?”

“ I can't sir. It's like we are all blocked.”

“ Mpume?.....Mpume?” I try to mind link with her too but I am blocked. I scream as my body feels pain. Like I am being stabbed with with a sharp knife or bullets are piercing my skin.

“ Angel?! Angel?!” I think I can hear her voice calling my name. She says someone is after her. I close my eyes and teleport to where she is. When I get there is see my car and it has multiple advantages gun shots.

I walk closer and see Khwezi screaming Angel’s name. Faye and Mpume with some of the guards are all passed out. Khwezi hits Mpume on the face asking her where angel is. I walk about the car and touch it. There were four of them and all men. I walk around and trying to find their scent but there is none. It's vampires. Vampires took angel and that means they want her father. Fuck!

“ Mpume, Faye. Take the princess to my penthouse. Call the prince and then come to my house.” They nod. I take one of the bullets and wince as it burns my skin. What the fuck is this. I pick it up again and it smells and turns grey. Wait is this mercury?. What the hell?. I teleport to my house. My body goes on alert as I smell a very unfamiliar smell.

“ I know you’re in here. Come out before I kill you.” I saw walking around the living room.

“ Its me Kabelo. I’m coming out.” Fuck!. She walks in the living looking as beautiful as ever. Like she’s not my mother but my sister.

“ How did you get in here cause the house is protected?”

“ I have my ways but you allowed me in cause you have forgiven me.”

“ My mate is missing. Do you have a hand in her disappearance?.”

“ She is? I guess I was you late. I came here to warn you about being in danger.”

“ Who’s in danger?. Me or her.”

“ Her too. They are going to use her to lure you out...” She walks closer to me and runs my face. “ you took his blood Kabelo.” She removes her hand and looks at me with worry. Why are they all worried about his blood like it’s the blood of Jesus himself.

“Do you know who took her?”

“ Vampire witches. They want her blood cause she has his blood. She has yours too now and you’re all connected. It’s only you who knows where he is.”

“ I know where he is but why the hell would I summon the Vampire king for them?” He's going to kill me when he smells his blood in me.

“ You will summon him cause they have your mate and they will kill her if you refuse. I knew this was going to happen the moment I saw Elson in you. I saw the other guardians that day if the funeral. I was told you will mate with Dark Lord's child but when I saw that girl. I knew it wasn't her. I tried to protect you Kabelo until you and Elson because one person. My fellow witches now know that he lives in you and they still want you dead and I wont let them. You are my son.”

“ Why do they want me dead?”

“ You, Elson sent one of the most powerful witches to hell. You sent their leader and that leader met the enemy of your mates father. They are working together now and they will not stop until you and her father are dead. Unless you and the Dark Lord work together.” Her leader too.

“ So what you’re telling me is that Angel is in hell right now?”

“ No not hell but somewhere worse where their dark magic can touch her hurt her.”

“ Where is that place?”

“ I don't know son. I'll have to make a spell and find her cause no one knows where it is or how it can be found.”

“ Well mother. You are also one of the strongest and powerful witches. I'm sure you can find that place before they hurt angel cause I swear. If the try to touch her or get a nip and drop if her blood. The Vampire King will be the least of their worries cause I'll unleash all the hell of this world on them. Find her!”

The guys teleport and they are not looking good.

“ Is Khwezi and the baby ok?”

“ They are sir. We are sorry we could protect the Goddess.”

“ I need to go talk to the princess. Maybe she saw something else. Find that place mother!.” I teleport to my penthouse. When the doors open we all walk in.

They are all there and Khwezi is sitting down looking stressed. I go to her and take her hand.

“ Don’t cry princess. What happened was not your fault at all. I don’t want you blaming yourself okay?” she nods. “ Good. Do you remember what happened?” she nods again. “ please tell me.”

“ The cars turned back because of the accident that was on the road. Faye came and told us we’ll have to take another route cause the one who clear anytime soon. The cars followed each other and I remember thinking that angel was feeling nervous and edgy. I asked her if she’s okay and she.....she nodded smiling and threaded our hands. Then we heard tires screeching and I swear at that exact moment she literally wrapped her body on me. I know it sounds crazy but she wrapped herself around me cause I could feel her body covering me.” I rub her hand gently urging her to continue.

“ The car gets hit hard and it flies to the air and hits the ground hard. I didn’t feel any pain and I couldn’t understand what was going on cause it didn’t feel but it was. The next I feel cold like I’m surrounded in ice but the ice is not cause I was warm inside. I could feel and hear what sounded like gunshots but they hit me. Instead I heard Angel’s scream like she was excruciating pain. I tried to get of the cocoon I was inside in but I couldn’t move or scream. When I opened my eyes there’s was this bright light around me and I quickly closed them then everything went silent. I have never heard that kind of silence. The ice melted but I was dry. I step out of the car screaming angels name and she’s not there but everyone else was. I run to mpume and woke her up then you showed up and that the last thing I remember.”

“ Thank you my princess.”

“ I know she saved my life kabelo. I was never going to survive that accident but she made sure that nothing happens to me. I’m so sorry.”

“ Angel saved your life. She would do it for anyone she loves. The people who took her were not after you or the kings family. I want you to know that okay?”

“ ok.” She says. I stand up and looks at everyone around the room.

“ What I am going to say to you guys comes from the bottom of my heart and I don’t mean anything bad about all of you but I need you to listen to me carefully. What I am dealing with now concerning

Angel's abduction is beyond something any of you could ever imagine. It's very dangerous and no one in here can help me excluding the four I came with. What I need from you now is please. And I beg you guys. Please don't come to my house to try and see me cause I will not be there. I am going to inform my family too that I'm going somewhere and I don't need them to worry. You will all be safe. No one or anything will touch you I promise. But I need to leave and go find angel. If I need your help. I will let you know. Do you promise me you'll do that?"

"We promise. We are here for you Ntanzi. Know that." Mbatha says.

"I know." I look at Khwezi and takes her hand again. "I will not come back until angel is back. I'll make sure I find her before you give birth to this baby and have your best friend back."

"Thank you." She says sniffing.

"I'll be in contact." I tell them and we walk out. I teleport back to my house.

My mother is in the kitchen and brewing something on the stove."

"Goddess Athena. I need your help." Wind blows around us then she appears. Ohk.

She truly does look like Goddess. Very beautiful. I expected her to look like that but I didn't expect her to be wearing very revealing clothes that live very little to the imagination.

"You call for me God of eternal fire."

"My mate has been taken. I need your help in finding her."

"Your mother is here and it's one of her people who took her."

"She doesn't know where they too her."

"And I do?"

"There's nothing you don't know. You knew they were going to take her but you didn't warn us."

"Sometimes you have to learn the hard way. If I decide to help you what do I get?"

"Leave us." They disappears but my mother walks in.

"I want your soul." Athena says.

"you cant claim his soul. His blood now is also mixed with that of the dark lord. She will kill you Athena if you take his soul cause she's going to know the moment she touches him."

“ He can give me his human soul.”

“ No I won't. It's no longer just mine.”

“ Well I can't help you then if I'm not going to get anything back.”

“ Athena please!” I beg her.

“ You know we won't be able to find her without your help.”

“ Give me what I want.” She says.

“ I am a God Athena. You cannot get my soul.”

“ Well then I guess the Goddess is not as important to you as you claim she is.”

“ Watch it. That's my mate we're talking about.”

“ I'll give you my soul. You can take mine.” My mother says.

“ No.”

“ It's the least I can do.”

“ You will die if she takes your soul. No. I won't let you do that.”

“ I have a better idea. I'll take the boy's soul and keep it.”

“ I'll kill you myself and send you to hell if you touch that boy.” I warn her.

“ Calm me if you change your mind. You're running out of time. If I was you. I would have already found her cause a beautiful woman like her. In a cage, naked and horny demons vampires and witches looking at that body. One or more of them will surely want a piece of her.”

“ Wait. Just wait.....” I say. “ I will give you what matters more than my soul.” She frowns.

“ And what is that God of eternal fire?.”

“ The chance to be a parent.....”

“ Kabelo No!. Don't do that. I will find her grandmother and she will lead us to her.” My mother shouts. Why does she care if I have children or not?.

“ I care cause I want another chance with you. You will have children with her. I know you will my son. Please don't sacrifice that chance. We will find your mate.”

“ I'll take that deal. Shake on it.”

“ Back off Athena. He's not making any deal with you!.” Says a woman's voice. I look behind me and there are four people behind us.

“ Well, well! Well!. Look what the cat dragged in. Wolves. Call me if you change your mind.” She says and disappears.

“We are so sorry to just budge in.” That damn headache again. Fuck. I grab my head and I fall down screaming. I feel myself teleporting to somewhere. I get up and look around and it looks like I am in an abandoned house. Who lives here and why am I here?. My senses are all up and I’m re to fight.

I hear heavy chains being dragged on the floor and they are walking towards me. The heavy footsteps and chains keep dragging until I see this huge man walking in followed by two other people who are hitting him hard with a Kane. What is this place. They walk in and pass me like they can’t see me. I walk next to one of those who is hitting the other. As he’s about to hit the big guy. I grab the Kane from him and they look at each other confused.

“ They can’t see you. You are a God.”

“ But you can see me? What is this place?”

“ On my way to hell. The first stop to hell. You are the God of eternal fire but you can’t even recognize this place.”

“ I have never been here before.” He turns and looks at me. I grab the other kane from the other men and slash both of them as they burst into flames. I grab those chains and they melt off his hands.

“ If you have never been here then...”

“ She was here. I can feel her. She was here and she was in chains like you.”

“ The....woman....the one who has his blood? You are the Vampire king? The....”

“ I am not the vampire king. She is my mate. I need you to tell me where they took her?”

“ I don’t know where they took her but there are talks that she will be killed if the king doesn’t show himself.”

“ I need you to find out where she is exactly and let me know who has her and how many are they.”

“ I’m in the land of the dead. It’s going to be hard to reach you and why the hell would I want to help you?.”

“ Cause if you help me. I promise you I will give you a second chance in life. You will come back to the land of the living as a brand new man. Your past erased and all your mistakes. You get a second chance. Please help me.”

“ Why cant you just walk in there and demand to see her.”

“ It if were that easy I would have done exactly that. Hell isn't a child's play. Horrific and disturbing things are waiting for you there. If you decide to help. You wont have to go to hell.”

“ How do I know you'll keep your word to me?”

“ What are you?”

“ I would rather not say what I was.”

“ Ok fine. I know you are and it doesn't matter right now. I the God of Eternal Fire. Promise you vampire that you will be given a second chance in life. Only if you give your life for hers and protect her in every way you can. By fire, by ice with this invisible sign on your forehead I bind you to me. I will see what you see and hear everything you hear. You'll be my ears and eyes.” I make a cross on his forehead and he screams as his skin burns.

“ I will find her and let you know.” He says.

We hear the heavy footsteps and chains of people running.

“ Leave. They are sensing you! Leave”

I feel like I am being pushed out. I gasp for air and look around. I'm back in my house. I slowly get up and they are all watching me.

“ I forgot you're still here.” I say getting up.

“ where did you go to?”

“ Calm down Alpha king. I found a vampire who'll be my eyes and ears. I was between worlds. Angel is somewhere there. We have to tell her father.”

“ How long have you known that she is his daughter?.”

“ I knew of him before I mated with her but when I took her blood. I knew she was his.”

“ And you still continued to take her blood.”

“ She's my mate. I am also of blood. Her blood belongs to me just like mine belongs to her.”

“ He will kill you.”

“ Not if he wants to have a relationship with his daughter. They took her because of him!.”

“ and you too!”

“ then don't blame me. Blame your brother too.”

“ He didn't know he has a daughter.”

“ But you God of time knew. You knew of her existence and you kept it away from him. Why?.”

“ I was protecting her. I kept her safe until you met with her.”

“ Then your brother should be mad at you more than me.”

“ I didn't take his blood!”

“ Can you just stop bickering! My niece is somewhere between the two worlds! She's in danger.” The wolf says. His brother Sandile. What is he again?. A guardian or what?.

“ She's in grave danger Kabelo.” My mother walks in holding a boiling pot. She puts it down and steam forms around the room. A face of a woman appear. An older version of her. It's her grandmother.”

“ They are keeping her at a place where it all began. He is there and keeping her there. He has escaped hell and he will hurt her”

“ He who? Where is that place?” I ask her.

“ Go back in time. He knows where it all began.” She says.

“ MaLukhele are you talking about her father?”

“ Summon him and tell him his daughter is being held by Tailon.”

The steam disappears.

“ No!” The Alpha king whispers.

“ Who the fuck is Tailon?.” I ask him

“ The men who killed Angel's mother.” Fuck.

“ I.....” I scream again as that damn head hits me again. This time I feel him. I hear him. He's laughing at me and I can hear Angel's screams. She's in pain. Fuucccck!.

Something hard and powerful sends me across the room. I hit the wall hard and struggle to breath or even move. My skin feels like it's going to peel of my bones. I can feel my blood literally moving. What the fuck is going on?. I try to fight and manage to get off the wall but I am sent flying back there again and then I see him. Looking like he's 30 years but the power around him is too much. It's suffocating me.

His feet get off the ground as he moves so he can be face to face with me. He lifts his finger and my t-shirt turns into cut pieces as they fall off. He moves his index finger in the air but I feel it on my skin as he writes something on my chest. I scream in excruciating pain cause it feels like he is stabbing my heart.

I look down and on my chest screaming in pain and see that he has branded me where Angel's mark is on. I get angry cause I feel like he is erasing it. Never!. I transform and my whole body gets covered with fire and I charge for him. He grins and disappears. I feel lashes on me and I look around he's carrying a long whip that is on fire. His eyes are on fire too. Ok. Let's fight fire with fire. I charge for him but that damn whip hits me again and I scream. What the fuck! Why is it hurting me?.

I try to hit him but I can't. Lashes and lashes land on me and I have had enough!. He tries to lash me again but I grab that whip and it freezes. He lets go and I break it into pieces. He looks at me then stands down on the ground.

“ I get it okay. You angry but you can't punish me for taking her blood. She offered and I took. I will continue to do it but what you want to do is erase her mark on me. I won't allow you to do that.”

“ Erase her mark? Who's mark?”

“ What? Why are you hitting me then?.”

“ You stole my blood. Where I keep it God of Fire. You know where it is. Who's mark do you think I was erasing?”

“ What were you doing on my chest.”

“ Branding you since you took my blood without my permission and now I have to put you under protection. Wait. What are you all doing here?” he asks his brothers.

“ I can explain.” The alpha king says.

“ What did you do sthe?” The whole room goes eerily quiet. Like we all stop breathing. Sthembiso takes deep breath and holds his hands up.

“ I was going to tell you when the time was right.”

“ Tell me what?!” he walks slowly to him. It's like my blood follows him too. What the hell?.

“ They made me promise not to tell you until when the time was right.”

“ Tell me then cause it seems as if the time is right.”

“ You have a daughter and she was taken by the man who killed her mother. Tailon.” I tell him. He looks at me and the next I see is me flying in the air and falling down hard and pass out.

CHAPTER 50 PART 1

[PREVIOUS](#) PAGE 54 [NEXT](#)

Advertisement

ANGEL

My skin feels like it's burning. I am in so much I scream out. I try to cool myself down but I can't. What's wrong with me? What's going on?. My body and my mind know that I am in danger. I have to get out of here. What do they want with me?. I know they are people here and they are watching me. They know that I am awake now. I slowly open my eyes and groan cause a headache just hurts me. I look around where I am and the place looks scary. What the hell is this place and where am I?. It feels like I have been here in days. I am hungry and very thirsty. I feel so dirty and I want to pee. I look at the things in front of me. Dead people. Am I dead too?.

All eyes are on me. Red, blue green, yellow and grey eyes are all looking at me. All dead eyes are watching me. They are looking at me like they want to skin me alive. No!. They can't take my blood. I am here because they want my blood. They want my father whom I've never met. Why didn't they go after me instead of taking me?. My mind finally clicks that I am inside a cage. They have put me in a cage like I am some animal. My hands go to my neck and try to pull of the choker that is around my neck. It's big, heavy and it's digging on my skin. Chains clink on the floor causing some noise as I try to pull this think off my neck. My hands and feet are cuffed with heavy chains. Oh God. They have made sure that I don't try to escape.

Do they know that I can get out of these chains and kill everyone of them. I try to sit up as best as I can wincing as the choker and chains dig in my skin. These are not ordinary chains. They have been made with strong magic. My God. In the mean time they all looking at me. I can smell them. Vampires, Demons, Witches and all filthy things they

are. I won't say a word to show them how fucking scared I am. They can probably feel it because of the way they are looking at me. I have to get out of here cause u know I am running out of time. I close my eyes and try to teleport myself out of here but I scream outlook cause it feels like someone has just put their fingers on my brain. I try again and it's like I'm locked out. I cant do anything. I can't move or use my powers. I won't be able to transform. I try again and I scream. Laughing voices fill this hell hole. My pain is amusing to them. Tears wet my cheeks. I try to call Khawula's name and mind-link with him but I can't. God does he know they took me. Does he know where I am?. I sniff again and I hear Henry boots coming towards me. I open my eyes and see one of the demons who standing there watching come towards me. I shift but it's no use. I am surrounded by them. Any of them could poke something between the steel bars and hurt me.

This demon has his eyes on me and I can see lust on his eyes. I don't know if he's lusting over my body or my blood. I stand still. I won't show him fear. He stood next to the cage and takes the long chain that is chained around my neck coming from somewhere outside the cage. He grins and shows me his rotten yellow teeth before he pulls the chain rough. He yanks it and I stand still not moving an inch. His eyes flair like I'm exciting him. He yanks it again harder and I still don't move. It looks like I still have some of my powers. The others laugh around him and his eyes change and get angry. He puts his other hand and yanks harder and sends flying. I connect to the cage and it burns my skin. He holds me there laughing while I am trying to get off it. I wont let him hear me scream and give him the satisfaction that he is hurting me. My left cheek is getting burned by the steel bars of the cage. I don't care about my face or any other burns on my body. I will heal. I make sure my eyes connect with him. His smile grows and he smells the flesh of my skin burning. He licks his lips and I realize that he wants a drop of my blood. I'd rather die first than let him have any of my blood. I put the hands outside the small space between the bars and put them on the chain that he has grabbed. I don't take my eyes off him as I grab that chain looking at him and wish with all my might that he freezes to death.

Ice begins to form on the chains and I hear shocked gasps around me. He hasn't moved or let go of the chain. Stupid demon. The ice continues to travel until it touches the tip of his finger. He lets go but it is already too late. The ice already has already touched him. I watch and feel it as it travels all over his body and he looks at me scared. "What have you done to me you vampire!" he says screaming. "Stop it! Stop it!" He demands. Like hell I would.

I grin as I feel the ice freezes his inside. He screams. His blood freezes, his heart then kills at me terrified and bursts into pieces of broken ice. He deserves it. The chain around my neck, hands and feet breaks too cause it caught ice. Thank God for that moron for coming to me, him touching that chain made me able to use my powers cause somehow the cage that I'm locked in has demon blood.

Someone clap their hands somewhere. I look around and see bodies parting letting the person walk through them. She walks through them until she stops next to me. I have no idea who this witch is. She is beautiful though but her heart is fucking dark. Her eyes connect to mine as she tries to get in my mind but I quickly block her. I lock her out of my mind and heart. She wants to read my thoughts and know what I know. She crouches down and looks at me.

The next thing I feel is her hand pulling my hair hard and puts my head in the cage and it burns my other cheek. I want to scream but I keep quiet. She puts her middle finger on my forehead and that's when I scream. It feels like needles and knives are stabbing my forehead and head. She wants to force her way into my mind but I won't let her in. I put my hand on her finger and she screams and lets go. She moves away from me holding her finger. Her face is filled with rage and I know she wants to kill me.

"You burned my finger. It's impossible. Your powers are not supposed to be working in there." She says.

"Let me out of this cage so I can show you what my powers can really do."

I mean it. The moment they open this cage. I am going to freeze all of them to death.

"You will be out vampire but not now."

She says amuse. Like she's looking forward to it.

“ Scared that I will kill you with all your minions in here?”

I say goading her. I want to make her so mad that she loses her cool and opens the cage and tries to kill me. That’s when I’ll show her who I really am.

“ You're the one who should be scared. You don’t know what’s in store for you little vampire.” She laughs and they all join her.

I know danger is lurking somewhere around here. I can feel it and it makes my blood run cold.

“ What do you want from me? Who are you?.”

“ Oh she doesn’t know who I am? What a pity. I thought I was a very famous powerful witch and known all over. By the Gods, vampires the living and the dead but I guess I was wrong cause this vampire goddess doesn’t know me. It’s clear at your mate never told you about me?”

I chuckle. I chuckle out loud. She doesn’t like it cause her face changes.

“ So I am here because of my mate? What did he do witch? Send you to hell cause I’m sure of he did. You clearly deserved it.”

“ You don’t know what you’re talking about little girl....”

“ Witch. Don't you dare insult me. I am pretty sure I am older than you.” She huffs and walks closer but stands at a safe distance. “ You all yourself a powerful witch but you afraid of standing close to me? Why is that?. You’re afraid that if you get closer I will kill you like that demon?”

I chuckle and look around me. They are watching is not saying a thing. I guess I am keeping them company by entertaining them this witch bullshit.

“ I am not afraid you. I am going to kill you but first. I need that little mate of yours. I want you to watch me as I kill him and take him away from you.”

She says like she is sure she can hurt a whole God. What is wrong with this witch.

“ you know that he can squash you like the bug you are right and not drop a sweat? What did he do to you so bad that you're still hung up on him?.”

That seems to tick her off cause she takes out something from her pocket and blows it towards my direction. My whole skin itches and it begins to burn. I touch my arms and scream. Fuck my whole body hurts. It happens for like 10 minutes then it stops. I look at this witch and she laughs. I am so going to enjoy killing her.

“ I know that Elson's soul went to that boyfriend of yours. He's the one I want and unfortunately your boyfriend has to pay the price. Elson killed me then sent me to hell to suffer. I have suffered. Look at me. Look at what I look like!” she demands.

“ I didn't want to say but you look like shit. You look like you're a walking rotten corpse.”

Well the truth is her skin looks burned. Wait. I am in hell?.

“ I am in hell with you?”

“ Of course you're not but you will be going there once you die.”

“ Why did Elson kill you?.”

I already know who she is and why she's here. When I took Khawula's blood I also got all his memories.

“ I'm a witch and I collect souls of everyone. How else will I become powerful if I don't get blood of guardian and Gods. Collect their souls and do many evil things?. He was suppose to die that night but he killed me first and they sent me to hell. They killed him after but his soul escaped and it went to that witches son. She kept quiet and never told her fellow witches. That is an offence. You do not keep such things from other witches. We didn't know that they never captured his soul. We have been looking for him for years but she made sure that she protects him and also his people were guarding him. It wasn't easy.”

“ So you thought let me take his mate to lure him out so I can kill him?. Is that why you did it?.”

“ This is bigger than you vampire. Yes we took you cause we wanted him to open the gates of hell. To lure.....”

Advertisement

serif">“ That's enough Witch!” A Male voice says and shakes the whole room. The air changes around the room as he walks in. Sickening feeling of fear, death and many scary things. He slowly walks in and my skin goes cold. I look at him and it's like I'm looking at death itself. The most evil creature I have ever seen. I want to run away from here and

never look back. I want the ground to open me so I can disappear as it swallows me. This thing vampire terrifies me. He grins as he smells my fear.

“ Look at you. Looking like your beautiful mother. She was a beauty that one. Hope you wont suffer the same fate she did.”

He says and laughs out lou. They join his evil and scary laugh He knew my mother? How?.

“ Get her up and take her to my chambers. Her and I need to talk. Alone.” He says the last part directed to the Witch. Her nostrils flare like she wants to disagree to that.

Four very big vampires pick the cage up and walk out with me. I look around and this place doesn't look like somewhere I know. Its dark and there are no windows. They are hiding here. It makes sense. How did they escape hell if they all were there?

“ A witch was experimenting with spells and potions not knowing that she will open a window for us in hell so we quickly climbed out of the hell whole before it closed. The witch you saw took over her body but something burned her skin as she took the woman's body but as for me. You can see for yourself that I am perfectly fine.”

The vampire says. Oh No. He can read my mind. That is not good. I have to shut him out. He chuckles.

“ I will get in that mind of yours. I will summon your mate to come here so he can open the gates of hell and unleash every scary, terrifying thing out in the world. I want him to find your father and bring him here so he can watch me kill you. If your mate doesn't do that then you will still die regardless.”

“ I wont let you kill me or let you use me to get to my father.”

We enter this room and it is big. There's a huge bed in there and everything looks expensive. They put the cage down.

“ You won't let me?” he laughs. “ I will make you until you do. I don't care how long it takes but you will do it. Your father will come and I will kill him myself cause the world is not bug enough for the two of us. There can only be one Lord and that is me.”

“ He will kill you. They will all kill you!” I tell him.

“ Your mother said the same thing as I raped her. As she refused to tell me where your father was as I ripped her throat out with my fangs

and watch her die. As I plunged my fingers in her chest and ripped out her heart. I laughed cause I didn't care what happens to me. I killed the woman he loved. I took her away from him and that was enough for me cause I knew he will live a very long and miserable life.”

Tears fill my eyes and I cry. I didn't know my mother died in such a horrible way. My grandmother told me that she died giving birth to me but that was a lie. She didn't want me to know she died painfully protecting my father.

“ When I get out of this cage. I swear I am going to kill you! I am going to make you lay for what you did to my mother!”

He laughs his sick evil laugh then he puts his hand between the bars and roughly grabs my hair painfully. I scream and try to take his hand off but he doesn't. instead he puts his other hand on my forehead. I scream cause he invades my mind and breaks down the wall I built to lock him and the witch out of my thoughts. He does this like it's nothing to him. Like I didn't lock him out of my mind. He searches for Khawula and finds him. I can see him screaming as he falls down clutching his head.

“ She will die if you don't give me what I want. Bring I'm t me or she dies.” He says laughing and roughly pushes me back.

I feel something wet on my mouth and I look at it as I wipe it and its blood. The vampires looks at me with hungry eyes then they all try to grab me so they can taste my blood. I try to move away but it's hard cause they have me surrounded. Their hands grab me as they try to pull me to them. I kick, push shove then I scream so loud as one grabs hits my face. The next thing I hear is pieces of ice splashing me on the face. I open my eyes breathing heavily through my tears. All of them are dead pieces of ice.

The mother fucker vampire laughs and claps his hands like I have just given my most best performance yet.

“ You better pray that he heard me or else. Your days and nights are going to be the longest and worst days you have ever had.”

He laughs again. That sick psycho.

KABELO

He only had to look at me to send me flying across the room and pass out. How powerful is Angel's father? Cause I have never felt that kind of power from anyone. I open my eyes groaning and look around. The Alpha king is in the air and his Luna is threatening to kill The Vampire kings. The Dark Lord. God is this Goddess crazy? But it is her mate that is in the air. The other two are just looking at them. Sandile helps me get up and watch them.

“ I have a daughter and you hid her from me? From your own brother Sthe?!”

The whole house literally vibrates. His power and anger shakes us to our knees. If we weren't that powerful we could have fallen on our knees.

“ The God's made me promise. It was the law I had to obey brother.”

“ My word is law. My word is final. My word!. Fuck you and your Gods! I am your fucking brother and you decide to hide my child! My own flesh and blood?! HOW DARE YOU!” glasses inside the house shatter into pieces and Lwandle and my mother scream. The Luna can see that her brother in law is angry. No one is going to calm the Lord down. No one!

“ I didn't don't to spite you or keep her away from you. We did it to protect her from your enemies. No had to know that you have a child brother. I am so sorry please believe me. It was one of the hardest decisions I have ever had to make!”

“ You betrayed me as your brother. You chose your Gods over me as your family. You showed me who really matters in your life.”

He says like he's broken. I look at sthembiso and I feel his pain. Both their pains. That cuts so deep. Sthembiso falls down on the floor in a hard thud.

“ Brother. We made sure she was always protected. She was always safe and no harm happened to her. When she found her mate we knew that we had to tell you cause soon they were going to mate and you would have known but....”

“ Out of the three of us. You Sandile have always be the one with the most sense. I don't know why you allowed to be dragged into this. I could have protected my daughter. My child.” Akani says.

“ How would you have protected her when you were in hiding yourself? We all thought you died! You walked out of our lives like we meant nothing. You thought that I would have let you do that to my own niece?. Never!” Sthembiso says.

“ I could have given anything to make sure she was protected. The same way I have been protecting you for years without you knowing. I would have never walked out of her life. Ever! Do you know how lonely I have been all those years?. I couldn't come to the only home I know cause how was I going to explain to you why I haven't aged. You said you forgave me for walking out on your lives but now I see that you didn't cause you kept my daughter away from me.”

“ We were doing it for her. For her safety. She had to live a normal life like everyone one else.” Sandile the guardian says.

“ But she didn't. she couldn't stay at a place for a long time or people will start noticing. After her grandmother died she lived with her uncle who also died. His wife married another man and left her alone. She was alone this whole time. I am guilty cause I also left her. All of us did her wrong and now is the time to make up for that. We have to get her back before Tailon kills her like how he killed her mother.” I tell them.

“ Blaming each other wont work. The should've and could've don't matter anymore. What matters is killing those bastards who took her, the witch and that mother fucker Tailon. I'll turn this world upside down and unleash hell on him if he harms even an inch of her.....”

I fall down and grab my head. It feels like it is splitting into two. I can hear his voice, her cries of pure agony. His laughs enjoying her crying. He has hanging from somewhere and she's naked

“ I can do worse. You know what a want.” He says laughing and my angel screams!.

“ I am going to tear your limbs and enjoy it. You won't die. Not even hell can hide you. I am of Fire and Blood. The God of Eternal Fire. I will bath in your blood while your soul is watching me screaming. Begging for mercy and you will get none.” I tell him and he lets go of her.

“ You were talking to him. Where is he?.” Akani asks me.

“ Where it all began with you.”

“Where is that?” Sthembiso asks.

“Alaska.” Akani and I say at the same time.

“Let's go then.” Sandile says.

“I'm coming with.” My mother says.

We all hold hands then teleport. This Tailon has woken up a monster in me. He will regret it.

CHAPTER 50 PART 2

[PREVIOUS](#) PAGE 55 [NEXT](#)

Advertisement

ANGEL

My head hurts. My body hurts. Everything in me hurts. They have taken me out of the cage, took off my clothes and then they hanged me upside down. I screamed, kicked and fought them with everything I have but he was just too strong for me. This vampire is powerful and he's nothing like I have ever met before. I have met many of them but I have never fought one. This one though is something different and very scary. I'm just thankful that he hasn't violated me yet. Chains are all wrapped all over my body. I cannot move or do anything. I'm just dangling there waiting for them to cut me and take my blood.

I thought they would have done that by now since I am incapable of protecting myself but he hasn't. The only thing he does is getting in my head and invading my thoughts. It hurts so much and I scream every time he does that. He laughs cause he enjoys it. He wants to see me in pain. That sick bastard. I am hungry and thirsty. They wont give me anything to eat or drink. They don't care what happens to me. The door creek's open and he walks in followed by his vampire minions and that witch. She has something in her hands and it looks like a steel knife. Only it doesn't look like a normal knife. Her lips curl into an evil smile and my blood runs cold. God, they are going to cut me. God please don't let them scar me. I sniff.

“Turn her around and make her stand on her feet.”

He tells his minions and they release the chain from someone and I fall down with a hard thud. They pick me up and fasten the chain again. He walks up to me and moves around me.

“ I thought you would have melted these chains too off your body. I’m surprised to find you still in chains.”

“ Let go of me so I can show you what I’m made of”

“ You take me on?” He laughs at me. “ I’ll squash you like a little bug little girl. You don’t know me.”

“ I know that you prey after women. You could have went straight for my mate but you chose me thinking I’m weak and defenseless. Take these chains off of me and I’ll show you who the hell I am.”

“ I was not going to let her hurt this pretty skin you have but I think I will before I make you bleed. Unchain her”

I should be scared in guess but I am not. If they want to hurt me then I’m not going down without a fight. I will hurt each and every one of them. As soon as the chains fall off my body I attack. I grab one vampire and wrap my hands around his throat. He tries to fight me and another one tries to get chains on me but I lick him hard and send him flying across the room. The one I am choking punched me on my ribs and I wince but not let go. My fingers sink into his skin then Ingram his throat and rip it out and he falls down on the floor. Black blood squirts everywhere. Ugh.

The fool laughs like he’s enjoying the show and the witch is watching but I can see she itching to be part of the action too. I look around and they have surrounded me. They eyes are lasting on my body and they make my skin crawl. I try to teleport but I fail again. Damn it’s like I’m hitting a brick wall. They laugh at me. I get angry. I’m sick of it. I’m freezing this whole place and everyone in it. My fangs elongate, my eyes change color and I transform. They move back away from me looking scared. I’m a vampire and a Goddess too. It’s time I showed them why they call me the Goddess of Ice.

“ Attack her!” Their leader says. His voice shakes and I think he knows what I’m about to do.

“ FREEZE!” I say screaming at the top of my lungs and then I clap my hands once and very hard. They all freeze including their leader. Good. I have to leave now before he manages to unfreeze himself. Ice

begins to form around the room. I take that chance and run to the door. The whole place is going to be covered in ice. They won't be able to get out of it. I don't know which way to go so I follow my instincts and take a left down the corridor and run like my life depends on it. Well it does. The ice is moving so fast it's and I know in a matter of minutes it's going to be completely covered in hard ice. I am naked, my body hurts and I'm running on top of the ice. I run down until I see a door and pull it open. I get inside and I'm back to the room I woke up in. Damn. If they can see me but can't move or do anything. Soon they will all be dead. Their eyes follow me as I look for a door that leads outside or somewhere. I keep looking but I can't find it. I'm running out of time.

“ Hidden secrets of this place reveal yourselves. Hidden doors and passages show me the way out.” I chant a spell and something moves behind me.

I turn around and see a door appearing. I don't waste time and run to it. I push it open and step out of it. There is a flight of stairs that lead up high. The stairs are so long, it would take me forever to get on top so I use my vampire speed and run through the flight of steps. When I get on top there's a door. I push it open but it's so heavy even when I use all strength. I am hungry and tired. I don't have energy on me anymore. I take a deep breath and put my hands on the door. I press on it hard and the ice begins to melt. Drops of it fall on my head, my face and chest. I don't care if I get wet. I want to get out of here. I push it off hard and the door bursts open. I take the few steps left but what I see stops me on my tracks.

This place was underground and in the middle of nowhere. The only thing I see is snow and forest trees. So long I can't see the sky. The ground begins to shake where I'm at and I know that evil creature has managed to free himself. I put my hands on the ground and quickly chant.

“ With air, water and fire. I seal this door and trap everyone inside. May they get buried inside here and die. With this ice” The snow begins to move to where injury came out. “ With this ice I seal this pathway. No one will come out. Fire, air, water and ice. Become one and bury themselves. Let them suffocate , let them freeze to death without any warmth. Let the dead be dead and go back to where they belong.”

The whole gets filled with ice and closes itself with snow on top. He won't be able to come after me now.

“ Don't be so sure little girl. I'm coming after you!” the vampire says screaming mad in my head. “ You better run before I catch you!”

I don't wait to be told twice. I take off to where my gut tells me and run for my life. I run as fast as I can and my feet hurt. It seems as if this forest is big and I'm not getting out of it. I don't even know by now if I'm running into circles or what. Somethings pickles my feet and fall down hard and scream. I try to get up but I fall again. I look down and there's blood on my feet. I sit on my ass in the snow freezing now. I lift my foot and there's a stick that is inside my foot. I close my eyes and pull it out. It hurts so fucken much I scream.

The birds and things were making noise but suddenly everything goes quiet and my blood runs cold. I listen attentively and realize there is something lurking in the shadows. I look up and its beginning to get dark. For the first time since they took me in what feels like months, I break down and cry. I hear growls and I know that sound. Wolves are here. I am in their territory and they are going to kill me. I slowly get up and I feel them approaching. I can see their eyes and I think they are five or six. I want to ask them for help but I know they wont help me.

Vampires and wolves don't get along at all. I look around me and then take off running. They run after me chasing me down. I use all the energy I have and run. I just hope to God by some miracle that someone saves me from those wolves. I try to mind link Khawula but I can't get through to him. Their breathing gets closer and closer and I try to run as fast as I can but I realize that I'm getting slower. I don't know what to do but I know they I can't let them get me cause they will kill me.

I can feel their growls getting closer and closer and then something sharp bites me on my knee. I scream falling down and kick off the wolf that has just bit me. I tries to bite me again but I sink my fingers in its ribs and press on them hard until they break and moves away from me. I sink my fingers in its thick fur and rip out its throat kick and falls down dead. I kick it off me and run but I don't get far cause I feel three more claws slicing me all over my body. Another one hits my body hard and I fall down. Their fangs bite where they can. I scream crying and fighting them. Every bite on my skin, in my bones hurts so much I feel like I am going to die. I fight for my life as hard as I can but it seems like I am failing. These wolves are gigantic and very strong. They are all males and they want me dead cause I am a vampire even though they can clearly see I am a woman.

“ Stop. Please stop!. He's going to find me and kill me please!. ”

I beg them mentally while I'm screaming out loud.

“ I don't mean anyone any harm. Another vampire kidnapped me and he's going to kill me when he finds me. Please help me. ”

They don't stop biting me and I am losing the fight. They say when you die your life flashes before your eyes and mine is flashing right

now. I think about Kabelo Ntanzi. My soulmate. A man I haven't known for long but it feels like I have known him forever. He's my everything. My family, my best friend and my lover. My mate and now I'm going to lose him just like that. I scream his name so loud like we are in the house and I'm searching for him. I shout it so loud and I feel something breaking.

The biting stops and I feel myself getting warm. They stop biting me. Did he find me? Did he hear me?. I open my eyes and see that I am on fire. My whole body is consumed in fire. What is happening to me?. Why am I on fire?. I try to get up but I can't. I look around and see five huge men looking at me. I feel snow being thrown on me. They keep throwing it on me until the fire stops and I cool down. I try to talk but my head feels heavy. I close my eyes and pass out. He's going to find the wolves and kill them then take me back to that place.

KABELO.

We land in Alaska and it's damn cold. I don't know what time it is but it's getting dark quickly. I look around and there's only snow and trees. I crouch down and feel the snow in my hands. I don't know why I do that but a part of me thinks it can connect me to her. I close my eyes and try to see where she is but I can't feel her or see her. Is she even here though?. I look at Akani and he's walking around. Searching for something.

“ There's a pack house nearby. Let's go there and seek shelter cause it's about to snow heavily now.”

“ we came here to look for angel. I'm not about to go and seek shelter somewhere. I want my mate.”

“ Kabelo. The storm that is coming is very strong and it will kill you. God or not. I want my niece too but we have to be able to do that.”

“ In case you have forgotten. We have the vampire king here and they won't let a vampire in the pack premises.” I tell him.

“ In case you have forgotten that vampire is my brother. I am the Alpha King. They will listen and do anything I want them to do.”

“ You go ahead to the pack house. I’ll join you.” Akani says and leaves.

“ Where are you going?.” A woman's voice says. Akani stood walking and turns. I turn too when I hear the voice.

Advertisement

serif;mso-ansi-language:EN-US">She gives my mother a jacket and then me. I thank her. Take it and wear it.

“ I told you not to come here Milly.”

“ I am your mate. You can’t just shut me out.” Oh he has a mate too?

Hmmm

“ This place is very dangerous for you.” He says.

“ but not for them? You know very well that I can take care of myself. Why wont you let me help you find your daughter?”

“ Cause I don’t want to lose you too damn it! He could kill you too!”

“ He will never lay his filthy hands on me. I am staying here. Whether you like it or not.”

Akani shakes his head then walks away.

“He’ll be back. He’s going to the place where he killed Tailons mate.”

“ This is my sister Milly. Akani's mate. Milly this is Kabelo and his mother.”

“ I know who they are. Let’s go. The storm is near.” She says and walks away. Ok, just like that?.

Sthembiso and Sandile both shame their heads. I take my mothers hand warming her up and we walk for almost two hours when Sthembiso asks us to stop and he vanishes.

“ Where did he go to?.” I ask his mate.

“ To the pack house. He has to let them we are here and they must let us through.” She says.

I pull my mother to my chest and warm her up cause she is cold.

“ Thank you. My feet are so cold.” She says.

“ I’ll warm them up when we arrive. I promise.” She nods.

After an hour or so. Sthembiso comes back.

“ Their Alpha is out hunting but the Luna has agreed for us to come in. Let’s go.”

“ Why could we just teleport there?.”

“ This place is heavily protected by magic. It could hurt us.” I nod. That makes sense.

We walk for like thirty minutes then come see this big town in the middle of the forest. The lights are shining so brightly making the roof of the houses covered in snow look so beautiful. Smoke is coming out of Chimneys. I bet all those log houses are so warm. I wonder if angel is warm wherever she is. I sigh.

I can feel the magic Sthembiso was talking about cause as soon as we get close my powers come in full blast and all my senses get on alert.

I can tell how many people are on each house. The whole town goes silent. They can feel the power that has entered their pack territory.

The beta of the pack comes forward with some of the pack members.

“ Alpha King. Queen Luna. Our Lina has instructed us to take you to the quarters where you will be spending the night. She apologizes for not being able to welcome you properly queen Luna but she will come as soon as she has put the baby to sleep.”

Their eyes are on me and I bet it's the blood that is me. Angel's blood. Akani's blood. They know that I am mated to a vampire.

“ Don't worry about them Kb. The Luna and the beta know you're mated to a vampire.” Sthembiso says mind linking me.

“ then he better take his eyes off me before I make him go blind.” He chuckles.

“ Thank her for welcoming us unexpectedly.” The Luna says and they bow.

“ Everything has been made ready for you. Please follow us King Alpha.” He says bowing.

Sthembiso nods and we follow them. The house is a little further away from all the other houses. They open the door and we walk in.

The warmth hits me on my face. Damn this place is warm. The house looks big and very homey.

“The are rooms for all of you. The Alpha king and queen Luna will take the big bedrooms and the rest of you can....”

I fall down and scream so loud. Everything in my body hurts. I can feel her fear, her screams. She's scared where she is. My feet fucken hurts. I take off my shoe cause it feels like something went in me. There's no blood or anything but it fucken hurts.

“What’s wrong Kabelo?” Sthembiso asks

“She's in pain. She’s hurt.” I tell him. I try to see where she is but I only see darkness. I try to mind link her but I can’t. Fuck!

“Can you tell where she is?”

“I only see darkness” The pain seems to stop.

They help me get up and sit me on a chair. The wolves are looking at me like they ready to fight me. I take off the jacket cause I’m fucking hot right now.

“Get the fuck out!” I tell them. They look at me scared then leave.

I groan in pain.

“I can’t see her or talk to her. I can only feel her. She's scared.”

“We have to go and search for her!” Sandile says.

“We can’t. The snow is falling hard right now.”

“I.....”

I fall down again and take off my shirt. I scream loud as I feel bites all over my body. They fucken hurt like shit!. I try to talk and tell them that wolves are attacking her but I can’t.

“Wolves.... Wolves!” I say through my clenched teeth.

“What about them?” Lwandle asks.

These damn wolves are biting her hard. They are going to kill her if they don’t stop.

“Kabelo! Kabelo!....FUCK!” sthembiso shouts my name but I don’t hear a thing. The only thing I can hear is her screaming my name in so much agony. Fuck No! She can’t leave me. She can’t die!

“Noooooo!” I say screaming.

“Get out Now!”

Sthembiso shouts at them what does he mean we must get out?.

I get up from the floor and its then that I realize that I am on fire. Her voice screaming my name keeps playing. That makes me so angry.

The angry I get the more of the fire keeps growing. This place is going to burn into pieces if I don't leave now.

My chest hurts and I see my mating mark burning. No! No! I run out of the house and head straight to the mountains calling Angel's name. It feels like I am flying the way I am running. I look behind me cause I know someone is following me. I look back and its Angel's dad.

“ You heard her too?”

“ I did. She is hurt. I felt it on my chest” He says. His eyes are literally blazing with fire. That's how angry he is.

“ She is dying.” I say and tears cloud my eyes.

“ We will not let her die. You hear me?. She needs you. We have to be strong for her. We will not leave this mountain until we find her.” I nod.

Sthembiso and Lwandle shoot past us in their wolf forms. Three more wolves follow and we run after them too. We stop when we find them cause there are other wolves there.

I freeze and my blood runs cold. Fury takes over. I scream so loud and hit the ground hard. The ground shakes and I hear something breaking somewhere.

Akani goes into attack mode and attack the wolves. I go to and we fight. I may not be a wolf or even a vampire but I'm a God and fucking strong. I land punches in the huge wolf and send it flying somewhere. I cries it pain and the tree breaks in half. Akani is about to RIP the other one's head off when I feel something.

“ Stop! Stop!” Sthembiso says shouting.

“ They have her blood. They bit her!” Akani says shouting. “ Where is she? Where the fuck is she?!”

My feet move on their accord and I find myself digging somewhere. I dig and dig until I see a finger. I dint know who also joins me as I dig through the snow then I see her beautiful face. I pull her out and hold her cold naked body. I scream so loud the ground shakes on me.

“ The snow is falling. Take cover!” Someone says shouting.

“ Angel? Angel? Wake up baby I'm here. Angel?” my voice breaks.

“ Let me...”

“ You touch her and I'll kill you!” I tell the person.

I put my finger on her neck and feel her pulse. It is faint. She's still alive. I cradle her to my chest and break down. I kiss her cold lips then a flame covers us. I rub her back until she begins to get warm. She stirs in my arms and her eyes open.

“ Angel? Can you hear me love?”

“ You... You found me. You heard me....” She says with a very weak voice and breaks down. I pull her tight to me and cry with her. I close my eyes and teleport us back to our home.

CHAPTER 50 PART 3

[PREVIOUS](#) PAGE 56 [NEXT](#)

KABELO.

I lay her down on our bed but she doesn't want to let go of me. She is still crying hysterically and that breaks my heart. Her body has deep bite marks if those wolves. Every part of her skin has bites. I felt the pain she felt and I still don't know how she is still alive. They bit her and left her fir dead after they buried her. They thought she was dead. My God. I'm going to kill every one last of them who got their claws and fangs on them. They are all dead. I dint care what their Aloha king thinks. The door opens and Mpume, Faye and Zayon walk in. They look like they have been to war.

“ What happened to you?.” I ask them pulling the throw blanket and covering Angel.

“ The Goddess buried them inside the ground. We managed to get out before we froze to death.” Zayon explains

“ I don't understand. “ Angel holds me tight. “ You're home love. It's okay. Mpume please go and run a bath for her.” She nods and goes to our bathroom.

“ We have been doing an investigation of our own and we found out that the Goddess was held somewhere in Alaska. The person managed to get us in inside the underground building where they were all hidden at. We came in before she left and she froze the whole place down with everyone inside. We all almost

got caught in the cold blizzard but we managed to escape after hours of trying to get out of that place. We couldn't teleport out because of the magic inside. We tried looking for her but then we just couldn't find her." Faye explains.

"I found her. I need you to find the wolves who bit her. All of them then keep them somewhere where no one will find them. No one." They nod. Mpume walks out of the bathroom.

"The bath is prepared sir."

"Her blood was supposed to have healed her wounds and closed them but she's not. She has deep wounds internally too." Zayon says.

"I will make her something that will heal her wounds and clean her blood from the inside." My mother says walking in. They all walk in.

"Her wounds are deep. These wolves have some poisonous chemicals that react when they bite something. You need to prepare it now. I will try and close the wounds and her blood will also try to fight the poison but it's still going to make her sick and it's going to be painful for her unless her father gives her his blood. She has to drink it straight from her father."

"Akani won't be back until he finds Tailon." Sthembuso says.

"He escaped the underground building. We don't know where he is hiding now." Faye says. "but I will find him. I have his t-shirt with me that I found in his room"

"Give it to me. I know a spell that will reveal his exact location." My mother says.

"Close her wounds. I'll find her father." I tell Zayon. "Love. I'm going to lay you down in our bed. I'm right here. I'm not going anywhere." She shakes her head and holds me tight.

"It's fine sir. You don't have to lay her down."

He puts his hands on her and a white light appears beneath his hands as he moves them from her head to her body and feet. She screams and keeps writhing on my arms. I hold her to my chest and listen to her screams and cries. I look at Sthembuso and he knows what I'm going to do. That Alpha and his men are dead

wolves. I am going to kill them myself. When Zayon is done I get up with her.

“ Please leave us.”

They all nod and walk out and close the door behind them. I walk with her to the bathroom. She keys me put her in the bath. She looks so small, fragile and broken. I quickly take off my clothes and gets in the bath with her. I pull her to my chest and hold her. I listen to her breathing get even and I know she’s falling asleep.

“ Let me bath you first then take you to bed.” She nods.

She allows me to wash her body. Although Zayon managed to close her wounds, there’s still proof of her being bitten by wolves. The bite marks are so deep I’m scared to think that maybe they’ll always be there. After I’m done, I dry her and take her to our bedroom. I lotion her body with aloe vera and then put her in her pyjamas. I open the comforter and get her in bed. I kiss her forehead and breathe her in.

“ I’m going to go see how my mother is doing with the herb that she’s making for you. I’ll be right back okay?” she shakes head. “ Hey it’s okay. The house is protected. No one will get in who’s not welcomed. I promise you love.” She still shakes her head. I hate seeing her like this.

“ I’ll watch over her sir.” Mpume says walking in.

“ Is it okay if I leave you with her?”

She looks at me and her eyes look vacant. Dead like she’s not there at all. God what am I going to do?. I need my angel back. She nods. I get up and leave the bedroom. I close the door and sigh.

“ It will take time but she will heal.”

I ignore him and he follows me as I leave the upstairs and go to the kitchen looking for my mother.

“ Kabelo?” He touches my shoulder.

“ Don't fucking touch me!”

“ I couldn’t let you kill them. The whole pack would have came after us.”

“ And I would have killed each and everyone one of them.”

“ They will pay Kabelo I promise you.”

“ They fucking bit your niece to death and then buried her! They buried her like some animal. Like she was a thing to be thrown.”

“ She's a vampire Kabelo. They only saw that.”

“ She begged them. She told them what is happening but they didn't care. She was naked, scared and very hurt. She was defenceless!”

“ She killed one of their own. They saw the vampire in her and not a scared woman”

“ Are you fucking kidding me right now? You are going to defend them? She was protecting herself from them.”

“ They will pay. I promise you.”

“ Oh they will pay.”

“ Kabelo let me handle them. I am their Alpha king.”

“ They tried to kill my mate and you want me to step aside and let you handle it? Did you let anyone else handle it when your mate was kidnapped?” He looks at his mate and keeps quiet. “ I didn't think so. You step aside and let me handle it. If you dare interfere. You and I will have a very big problem.”

“ Look I'm sorry okay. I'm sorry for what happened to Angel. They should have listened to her when she begged them and explained but they didn't. I want to pass judgement on them but that wouldn't be fair to you and angel. I hate them for what they did. I really do and you have every right to kill everyone who hurt your mate. I won't stand in your way.”

“ Like you would stop me.”

I walk to the kitchen and see my mother brewing something that doesn't exactly smell good.

“ Is it done?”

“ Not yet but I will let you know when it is.” I nod.

She walks to me and takes my hand.

“ I know that we don't have a relationship Kabelo but I was hoping all of that will change. It hurt me so you the way you have been these past days especially earlier tonight. I am so sorry for what your mate is going through. What the two of you are going through.”

"It's okay ma. I am just scared for her. Her eyes look dead. She can see me and hear me but I don't know...."

"Be patient with her. She will come back to you." I nod.

"I'm going to check on her." She nods.

I walk out of the kitchen and go to the living room where the Mvelase's are. They are all quiet.

"There are bedrooms in the house. Choose whichever one. There's food in the kitchen whoever wants to cook is welcomed."

"Thank you Kabelo." Lwandle says.

"Have you heard anything from your mate?"

"He has cut off our connection. He's hunting so I won't hear from him until he finds Tailon and deals with him." I nod.

I know where he is and he's not in a good frame of mind. If I go to him right now. He will kill me so I need to let him be.

"Do you know where he is?" Sthembiso asks me.

"I do but if anyone goes to him right now. They are dead."

"The first time he sees his daughter he finds her almost bitten to death and buried. Left for dead. That would send anyone over the edge." Sandile says. He's right.

"Don't do it please. They are innocent." Sthembiso says.

"Get the fuck out of my mind."

"Your thoughts are very loud. We can all hear you." Lwandle says

"They will all die. All of them and no one in here will stop me."

"The Luna has just given birth Kabelo. There are innocent children."

"Angel was innocent too and they didn't care. I dint give a fuck about their children or their women!." They keep quiet.

I leave them and walk back to our bedroom but I pass Mpume in the corridor.

"Where's angel?" I ask her panicking

"She has a guest."

I pass her and walk quickly to our bedroom and open the door.

My feet stop moving as I see who in bed with her. I look at her and see the light coming back to her eyes. I take a deep breath and

close the door. They all look up and me and Shadow moves closer to Angel. She is sitting up. He is still in his wolf form.

“Athena.”

“God of eternal fire.”

“When did you get here?” My eyes are on Shadow and his looking at me straight. I can feel his anger towards me.

“A few minutes ago. I had to bring him here cause he hasn’t been okay the last few weeks. He knew she was missing.” I nod and sit on the bed. Next to Angel.

“Hey buddy.” I take out my hand to him so he can sniff it and know that I don’t mean him any harm. He looks at me the slowly brings his head towards my hand and sniffs it.

I run my hands on his thick fur and he allows me but his eyes are still on me. Not breaking any contact.

“I’m sorry I sent you away. I hurt your mother and I especially hurt you. I am so sorry. I know you're angry at me for what happened to Angel and I blame myself too. I should have made sure that she was protected in everyway. I promise you that I will never let that happen again. I will always make sure that the two of you are safe and always protected. Will you forgive me for the mistakes I have made?” I ask him.

Angel takes my hand and offers me a small smile. Shadow looks at me then he stands up on the bed. Damn he has gotten so big. He walks to me and puts his head on my neck the licks my face. I smile and let him while running my fingers under his neck.

“Thank you.” Angel says.

“No love. Thank you. I shoal have never sent him away. We found him, he is ours and he belongs with us. He’s our son.”

Shadow transforms and I take the throw blanket and cover him with it. I suck in my breath cause he still looks like me. Exactly like me.

“We need to give him a proper name. We can’t be calling him Shadow. That will be his wolf name.” Angel says. We both look at her.

“We'll call him Kabelo Junior Ntanzi.” I tell them and he smiles. The little man also smiles like me. Damn I’m fucked.

"I love it. I love my name." He says. Angel and I look at him surprised. We have never heard him talking before. Ever.

"He has been attending school since I left with him. You have one smart child here. A genius." Athena says. I had forgotten about her.

"No one will ever hurt you again Angel." He says then puts his hand on her chest and angel winces.

He removes his hand and I move her pyjama top a little on her chest and see a mark on her chest of a half moon in a shape of a wolf. Him. I look deep in the eyes and see a Shadow deep in his eyes like it's moving. What the hell?. I look at little Kb..

"The eyes on the mark move. There's a shadow behind those eyes." Even in his eyes as I look at him. There's a shadow in there. A very dangerous one. Who is this child?

"She called me shadow the first time she gave me a name. I will always be her shadow. No wolf or any other animal will ever hurt her again. Even you." He says looking at me.

"Your my shadow too?"

"No but I will always protect you too." He says. I smile.

"Can I see your mark?"

He moves the blanket and his whole chest is covered with our complete mark. Of mine and angel when we mated. Fire and Ice and in the middle you can see a Shadow of a wolf. What the hell?. Angel gasps as she looks it at. It is fucking beautiful. Clothes immediately cover him after courtesy of Athena.

"The Gods chose you two for a reason to be his parents. It was meant to be. It wasn't a coincidence that you helped your friends with the issue they had. What happened to them had to lead you to finding the gift the Gods gave you."

"Thank you Athena. Thank the Gods for us." I tell her and angel tears up. I wipe her tears.

"Where is my mark Kb junior?" he smiles and touched my chest too.

My skin tingles for a while then he removes it. I take off my t-shirt and look on my chest It's the same as angels but the wolf's eyes in mine has burning eyes.

“Your eyes Kabelo.” He says. I chuckle.

“You can’t call me by my name junior. I’m your father. Thobeka is your mother. That’s her name but I call her angel cause she looks like an angel. You will call her ma, mama or mother. Whichever one you prefer but not her name.”

“But she’s my angel too. She’s our angel.”

“Junior. No.”

“But why? You call her angel why can’t I?” Oh God. I look at angel to help me out and she’s just amused. Life is coming back to her eyes.

“Cause I’m your mother junior.” Angel says.

“Ok mommy.” What? Just like that? No why’s and all that?. I shake my head and angel laughs.

I look at her and cub her face. So beautiful.

“It’s nice to hear you laugh. I’m glad he’s here to make you happy and smile.”

“You both do. I love you two very much.”

“We love you too mommy. How are you feeling?” He asks her. I chuckle.

“I feel better. Did you do something to me?”

“You were hurting and I wanted to make you not hurt. I don’t like it when you cry or feeling pain.”

“Thank you baby.” She kisses his forehead.

“Thank you junior.” He grins.

“I’m hungry. Can I go get something to eat.”

“Come. Let me go make you a sandwich.”

“Thank you mommy.”

They both get up from the bed. Angel wears her morning shoes. Kisses my cheek then they walk out. She looks better physically but I’m worried about her mental state.

“She will be fine. Don’t worry.”

“Who is he Athena. There’s something about him that I can’t put my finger on.” She looks away then looks at me. What are Gods hiding from us.

“He’s yours Kabelo. Like I said the Gods gave you a gift. A son.”

“ Does that mean we won't have children of our own except him?”

“ I have to go. We can't allow you to burn down the whole pack. There are innocent women and children. You can kill those who tried to kill angel only.”

“ I wasn't going to do that.”

“ The building angel froze still has everyone she trapper inside except the witch and Tailon. Burn it down and make sure when they arrive in hell. They should are trapped in there. Seal the gates of hell Kabelo after Tailon and the witch die. We cannot afford for anyone to escape ever again.”

“ Done. Where is Tailon?”

“ Akani found them.”

“ I need you to do something for me.”

“ What is it?” I tell her and when I'm done she's looking at me scared and shocked.

“ what you're asking me is very difficult Kabelo. It has never been done before.”

“ Can you do it or not?”

“ I'll do it but you know you don't ask me something this big without me getting anything in return.”

“ What do you want?.”

“ I'll come and collect someday. You'll get what you want.”

She says and disappears. I leave the bedroom and go downstairs. I have to tell angel that I'm going after Tailon. The mother fucker needs to die. With that witch of his. When I walk in junior is eating cereal. At this time?. I look at angel she smiles. God how did I get do blessed to have her? I walk towards her and everyone stops talking. Her eyes follow me and she frowns. I stand next to her and she palms my face.

“ You don't have to be afraid anymore. You found me, I am home with you and our son. That's all that matters. It's okay love.”

“ I almost lost you. I.....you.....”

I let her and everyone else see how fucking scared I was. In that moment I get weak. She pulls me to her arms and hold me. My eyelids get wet and tears stream down. I wipe them.

“ I can't live without you.”

“ And you never will.” She promises me. “ I love you so very much Kabelo.” I hold her tight then plant a chaste kiss on her lips.

“ I love you more angel. Your father has Tailon. I have to go.”

“ Ok. Promise me you’ll both come back.”

“ Always.” I kiss her again then look at junior. He stirring his cereal Ok his bowl.

I go to him and sit next to him. My mother looks at us both. Angel told her about junior. She has this look on her face of pure adoration. She smiles at me and nods.

“ Junior”

“ I want to come with you.” He says.

“ I need you here so you can protect your mother. She needs you here than there. If we both leave who will protect her?”

“ What if you don’t come back to us? I can protect you too where you’re going.”

“ I don’t doubt that you wouldn't son but I need you here protecting your grandmother and mother. Can you do that for me?”

“ Touch your chest when you need me and I’ll be there.” His eyes are full of tears. I pull him to my chest and hug him. He wraps his little hands around my neck and holds me too. I might not have birthed him but he is my son in everyway. For a 10 year old. He is brave. Athena did a great job with him these past few weeks he was gone but it's in him. He is like that. He was born like that.

“ I promise I will do that when I need you. I will be back okay?” he nods. I let go of him and ruffle his hair. He needs a cut.

“ Lwandle, Milly. You will all stay here until we come back.”

Sthembiso tells them. They nod.

“ Take this. You will pour it on the witch and Tailon to be rid of the magic that is protecting them. You will be able to hurt them.”

My mother says giving me a 2 litre bottle. I take it then we teleport.

I look around where we have landed and it looks like it’s an abandoned house. It looks like it might fall at any minute. I hear a voice grunting and we rush to it. Akani is sitting in a chair looking like he has been fighting a war. A few steps away lies a body of a

man and then in a corner is the witch. Her eyes connect with me and she screams.

“ No! I’m not going back there again. No!” she keeps screaming that.

“ what are you doing here? I can take care of this on my own.”

“ You look like shit.”

“ You should see the other guy.” He says chuckling then coughs

“ you’re hurt.” Sandile says going to him.

“ I’ll be fine. I will heal.”

I open the bottle and then pour half of it on the vampire that's on the floor then walk to the witch and pour it on her too and she screams as her skin burns. I watch her enjoying her screams as they fill my ears.

“ Raise up for master.” I command

The witches body gets off the floor even though she tries to fight it. She can’t. I’m stronger than her. I watch Tailon as he keeps fighting and doesn’t get off the floor.

“ Stubborn mother fucker.” Akani says.

“ You’ll never easily kill me. Never!” Tailon says laughing.

“ Your Master and God told you to raise up. Raise up.” I snap my fingers and his body begins to float in the air.

“ Be still and watch Tailon.”

I go to the witch and stand next to her floating body. She tries to reach me but her body halts as she’s close. I grin.

“ You will leave this body and go back to where you come from.”

“ This is my body now!” she says shouting.

I lift my hands and rub them together. Fire balls form. Her eyes get big like she’s about to pass out. Her mouth hangs open and I shoot the first fireball on her and she swallows it looking at me. Her hand goes to her chest and she begins to cough I walk to her and touch her head. Her hair catches fire then it engulfs her. She begins to scream as she burns. I turn around and loom at Tailon.

“ Are you done with him?” I ask Akani.

“ Hell no.” thought so.

“ Do you remember me Tailon? You took my mate and tortured her. I told you I find you. I will kill you slowly then bathe with

your blood while your soul is watching me. But this is not your blood is it?" The mother fucker laughs.

" I don't care what you do to this body. It's not mine."

" I know what you care about though. Your dead mate." I tell him.

He looks at me. I chuckle

" he killed her. He killed my mate." Tailon says shouting.

" You killed my mate first then I killed yours." Akani says.

" That bitch deserved it. She poked her nose where it didn't belong."

" She was helping me you fool. I was hurt and she helped me. You killer a fucken Goddess! What Gods did you think were going to let you live?"

" I killer one God and I would have killed all of them." I laugh and he looks at me.

I quickly turn around and grab the witches soul as it leaves the burning body.

" we meet once again witch. This time you're not just going to hell. No. You are going to the depths of hell. I'm sending you to the God of death himself."

" Nooooo! Please don't!. You're sending me to the devil himself! Nooo!"

" You him, your buddy Tailon here will all get along and live happily ever after."

" FIRE, BLOOD, DARKNESS AND DEATH. I SUMMON ONLY YOU THE GOD OF DEATH. CHAINS BREAKS. EARTH OPEN. REVEAL YOURSELF AND KNEEL BEFORE YOUR MASTER."

The ground shakes. Literally shakes like it's an earthquake. The ground splits open and fire shoots out and up. Scary, crying voices in torture and sickening noises fill the room then they stop. A shadow with a figure of a man appears. It walks up to me then kneels.

" God of Eternal Fire. God of Gods. You call and I your servant answer. My master. What can I do for you."

" Kneel up God of death."

" As you wish my master."

“ I need you to destroy take all the souls that are buried somewhere here. You take them and make sure they never escape where they will be held. These two here escaped hell. Take this one and send her to the depths of hell.”

“ As you wish my master.” He walks close then grabs the soul of the witch. The witch screams as he throws her soul in the fire that is still on. “ What about this one master.” He asks me.

“ wait for a moment. Athena?” She appears the moment I call her name.

“ Dark Lord. King of Vampires. God of Time. God of Light. God of Eternal fire....” The she stops and takes a deep breath. “ God of Death.” She says.

“ Goddess Athena.” He says bowing to her.

“ Here is what you asked for God of Eternal fire.”

She throws her at me then disappear. Tailon looks at her and screams. Akani gasps.

“ You evil God! What the hell did you do?.” He screams and swears calling me all sorts of vile names.

“ You kidnapped my mate. Tortured her and she almost died because of you.”

“ NO! NOT HER! SHE IS INNOCENT!”

“ MY ANGEL IS INNOCENT TOO.”

“ YOU....”

Akani goes to Tailon and hits him hard on his chest. Sthembiso claps his hands and time stands still while Sandile goes to Tailon and chants something then his soul leaves his body. Sthembiso grabs it then claps again and times moves normally. I wrap my hands around the soul of her mate. She is scared shitless.

“ I wanted to torture you like how you did with my mate but hen I thought this will be better.” I tell him smiling.

“ She doesn’t belong here.”

“ Who the fuck does? My daughter? Her mother you killed in cold blood cause you wanted to be the next king and you thought killing my mate would automatically make you their king?”

“ You took what was rightfully mine!”

“ They chose me! Me to lead them not you! I had to go in hiding after what you did cause I knew you will tell them about me and you did!”

“ I don't regret anything that I did. If I had to do it, I would do it again but her. She doesn't belong here.” He says crying.

“ You were macho and showing off your power to my mate then when you meet people who are way above your level you act like a fucking pussy? Show me the big bad vampire you were before we he found you, you fucking dick head!”

“ Take her back to where she belongs. She deserves the light and not this darkness. Please!”

“ You took away my mates mother. Robbed her from receiving and feeling love. You fucked with the wrong mate this time. No one fucks with the God of Eternal fire especially Kabelo. You want your mate. Here she is.”

I throw her mate to the God of death and he takes her and sends her straight to the depths of hell. He screams but doesn't run after her. I shake my head.

“ What do we do with this one?.” Sthembiso asks.

“ The God of death will make him his own personal slave.”

I lift my hand and he slips past Sthembiso's hold and goes straight to death. He welcomes him as he grabs his throat. He then chants something in a language I do not understand then he throws her down the hole as he screams.

“ They have captured every creature that escaped the gates of hell. Is there anything else you need my master.”

“ I am instructed to seal the gates of hell. Everything in there must not leave.”

“ I understand. You must do what you have to do. You control both worlds.”

I walk up towards him and take my hand out. He looks at it and shakes his head.

“ I can't. “ He says.

“ Please Dorian.”

He looks at me the sticks his hand out. The moment I touch him he gasps and turns into human form. He takes a deep breath then looks at me with his grey eyes.

“ He is you now. You are him.”

“ We are one now. I’m Kabelo.”

“ I’m Dorian.”

“ I am going to seal the gates of hell but I will be in touch.”

“ Thank you for giving me this moment. For reminding me what’s it like to be human again. Thank you.”

“ I’ll be in touch.”

He nods then we both let go. He returns back to his shape. He moves to the fire. Gets in and disappears as the ground closes. I turn and look at them.

“ You were talking with death.” Sandile says.

“ I was God of Light. Is there a problem?” Damn I forgot he once died.

They all shake their heads including Akani.

“ You know we have stared death in the face but seeing him. Like this this is fucken scary to me.” Sthembiso says.

“ He's a friend. Maybe you will meet him some day.”

They all shake their heads and I laugh.

“ Let’s go home guys. We are done here.”

“ At least we wint be worried about one thing.” Sandile says.

“ Which is?.”

“ Death wont come for us.” Akani says and I scoff and laugh.

“ Why are you laughing?.” Sthembiso asks.

“ Who says he won't come for you?”

“ You'll make sure he doesn't if you want to marry our daughter.”

“ What? You are not serious!”

“ Oh yes we are.” They say laughing and Teleport.

I shake my head.

“ Flames of Fire. Engulf this place and turn it into ashes then bury it deep in the ground and cover it with ice. Cleanse this place and bring new life to it.” I say chanting.

I watch as the whole place catches fire and burns to the ground. I teleport to where Zayon and Faye are. They have chained the

Alpha and his pack members. I look each and everyone one of them in their eyes.

“ This is the face of the mate's vampire you bit almost to death the buried her like she was nothing. You wanted her dead but is you who's dying right now.”

Their alpha tries to explain but I blaze them with fire and watch them burn to death. I open the portal and send them all to hell then close it.

“ Let's go home guys.”

We teleport back home.

CHAPTER 50 THE FINALE

[PREVIOUS](#) PAGE 57 [NEXT](#)

Advertisement

ANGEL.

I watch Khawula and what I think are my uncles disappear. Well from what I have picked up they are my uncles. Lwandle is Sthembiso's mate and Milly is my father's mate. She looks so young though and I think she's a few years older than my human years but I am way older than her. She's very beautiful though. Kabelo's mom is worried. They all are but I know they will come back. Kabelo's powers have grown. They are so strong and his aura now is very intense and scary. I don't know what happened to him. Athena took care of kb junior. He looks healthy and I guess happy. I brush his cheek and he smiles. My heart melts and a part of me feels complete. I love this boy and I don't care who his parents are. He is ours and he belongs with us.

“ Mommy?.” I love that.

“ Yes baby?.”

“ Can I go and watch cartoons?.”

“ No. It's late. You need to sleep.”

“ But I don't feel sleepy yet.”

“ Junior it's late. Lets go to bed.”

“ But I want to watch dragon balls.” Lwandle giggles

“ ok you can watch them in bed for thirty minutes only.”

“ Thank you mommy.” He says smiling.

“ I'll take him Goddess. Come junior.”

“ Make sure he brushes his teeth first.” I kiss his cheek. “ I'll be right there.” They leave us.

“ You are going to be an amazing mother to him.” Milly says.

“ I hope I will.” I say.

“ She has already started.” Kabelo's mom says.

“ Thank you ma. Thank you all for coming here and helping my mate find me.”

“ We are family Angel.” I nod.

“ How are you feeling though?.” Milly asks me.

“ I'm just thankful to be alive. To be still here.” They nod.

“ I have been where you've been angel. I know how you're feeling. It's going to take time but you will heal.”

“ With all of you around me. I'm sure I will.”

“ I'm just glad that we found you. That's what matters.” Lwandle says.

“ Me too.”

“ Are you ready to meet your father?.” Milly asks me.

“ I am. I want to meet him.” Although I'm a little scared.

“ I had made you something that will help you heal internally and clean your blood. I don't know if you would still want it.”

“ Thank you ma. Can I drink it after I have had something to eat, I'm hungry.”

“ Lucky for you. We were already cooking something.” Lwandle says.

“ And it smells great.” It really does.

We continue to talk and get to know each other then after an hour Milly dishes up and we eat. Just as we are done eating. They all teleport back. All of them. My eyes land on the man who behind everyone else. I stand up and they part and make way for him. He walks forward and my blood moves. Every step he takes my blood seems to be moving with him.

He stood when he's next to me and we look at each other. He doesn't look like he's a year older than thirty. Khwezi won't believe this is my father. She's going to laugh at me. I have the same beautiful skin

that he also has. My eyes, forehead and nose are like his too. I can't believe this is my father.

"Hello Thobeka. I am your father...." I throw my arms around him and hug him tight. He stands frozen the he holds me and hugs me tight too.

"I am so happy to finally meet you. You don't look like your old." He chuckles. I look at him and he palms my face.

"You are so beautiful. Just like your mother." I smile. "I'm sorry for not being there to raise you myself."

"Don't apologize dad. My grandmother, my uncles. They all did what they thought was right. Don't blame them. You have me now. I have you. That's all that matters." He pulls me tennis chest again and holds me.

"I don't know if you have met everyone but this is my mate. Millie."

"We have already met. She's beautiful. She's perfect for you." He smiles.

"We have to take you to Vryheid and introduce you to the whole family." Uncle sthe says. "But not now. You will tell us when you're ready."

"Thank you uncle." He nods.

"I guess we will leave now and head back home." Uncle Sandile says.

"When will you come back?." I ask them I'm sad to see them leave but a part of me too is feeling overwhelmed with everything that happened.

"Oh we'll be popping in and out of her. Invited or not." He says looking at Kabelo who shakes his head.

"Thank you all for what you did for us. Thank you."

"You are my daughter. There's nothing I wouldn't do for you."

"Thank you dad. Do you have any other kids that you don't know about?." My father looks at uncle sthe who shakes his head. "No princess. I don't." I nod. "get some rest. I'll see you and my grandson tomorrow. He has too take my blood too. He is now a part of you two."

He says then slices his wrist.

"Drink." He says.

I take his wrist then close my mouth on his wrist and drink his blood. It flows down my throat and then he lets go. I feel my body becoming mine again. Everything in me heals and I feel strong.

“ You good?” My father asks me.

“ Super.” He chuckles.

The past few weeks have been hard on me. I almost died and never got to see the man I love anymore. When they buried me. I was sure that I was dead but I knew that Khawula would know and find my body. I called out to him and heard me. My mate heard me and found me. Our bond made it possible for him to find him. I don't know what I would have done had that evil man did things to me to break our bond. I wanted to look at him one last time as he died but I didn't want to give him that satisfaction. He told me what happened to the wolves who bit me and I don't feel sorry for them. They got what they deserved.

Advertisement

Right now in my life I am at my happiest. I have everyone that I love around me. My son, my mate, my father and the whole family. I still can't believe that I have a family. My grandfather, uncles and their wives and cousins. It still feels surreal to me. The only people that I have yet to meet is Kabelo's family. I have only met his mother and she has changed. She is an amazing woman and I just hope that one day her other sons will forgive her and give her a chance.

A week ago I went to see Star. She is beautiful, glowing and heavily pregnant. She is my sister now. No one will ever hurt her. I'm just glad she survived after being poisoned. I am here now for her and her son. I can't wait to introduce Kb junior to everyone. They are so going to be shocked. He walks and talks like his father. He does everything he says and my mate loves it. When Calvin saw me. He cried and didn't want to let go of me. He lost so much weight too and I cried cause he didn't look like himself. That day Khawula let me sleep on the same bed as Calvin. We both knew he was scared and these last few months have been hard in him.

It's been a few months since I've been home and life is slowly getting back to normal and moving on cause we have a child to take of now. He's in school right now. He begged us to send him to a normal school but we refused. He's going to school where Lwandle's kids

gonto. A school for special children like them. I am now being driven somewhere by Zayon. I got a message from Khawula telling me that he wants to see me there's an emergency at his office. I have no idea what is going on.

Zayon parks the car and comes to open my door. I step out the car and we go to the elevator. He presses the top floor where his office is at. The elevator door opens and a receptionist tells me he's at the boardroom. I walk towards it and open the door.

“ Surprise!” The voices say and I scream cause I got scared and I wasn't expecting it.

“ Oh my God you guys. You almost killed me.” They all laugh.

“ I'm sorry love. You are a very hard woman to keep secrets from. Happy birthday.” Khawula says walking up to me and giving me a kiss.

“ Thank you baby.” I say and we walk in. I see our friends and my family. His mother and his brothers only. I get a little sad but I don't show it. I thought his whole family will be here too. I also meet Khwezi's brother Mfundo. I hug everyone in there. Lungi is also here which surprises me. Calvin, Lesego and Khwezi laugh at me.

“ You guys knew about this surprise.”

“ If Zayon took you to the restaurant you would have known, so we had to have it at the least place you would ever expect.” He right. I would have never thought of this place.

“ Thank you for coming Lungi.”

“ I wouldn't have missed it. Angel I'm sorry for everything you went through when you were missing. I'm sorry for bring a bitch to you too. Will you forgive me. Please?.”

“ Here's the Lungi Khawula was telling me about. Not the bitch I met. Of course I forgive you.” We hug. She wipes a tear. “ Where is sims.” She sighs.

“ I need wine for that story.” She says and we chuckle. Someone clicks a glass. I turn and its Khawula.

“ Thank you for coming everyone. As you know these past few months have been hell for me. Everyday not seeing her was like someone was taking a piece of me away. It was pure hell and I never want to feel that ever again. As you know that we are celebrating my

mates birthday but today is also a very special day to us cause we want to share something with you. Love come here.” I go to him and he takes my hand and we look at our friends his family.

“ Before angel kidnapped. We discovered that I...that we have a son. His mother left him where I live and never looked back. I didn't know what to do but this amazing woman right next to me. She took him in, loved him as her own and has been his mother ever since. They instantly bonded and I can't imagine my life without either of them. I didn't want to tell you all about him while angel was missing cause I wanted her to be here next to me as I share these news with you. So guys please welcome Kabelo Junior Ntanzi.” Oh my God. I didn't think he was going to introduce him like this. What if his family finds out that he didn't bring junior home first?.

Junior walks in with Mpume and he runs to me and hugs me. He fists bumps with his dad. There are shocked gasps. I don't blame them. Junior looks exactly like him. I look at his older brother and he has a proud smile on his face. Well if that is a smile. Bishop hardly smiles. Well Kane has a full blown smile on his face as they are clapping. Oh my God they are not surprised. He told them first. I smile.

“ Junior. Do you have something for your mother?.” He nods and I frown.

“ I didn't bunk school mom I swear.” He says and I chuckle. They do too. “ Dad and I have been planning this for weeks now. We had to get you something perfect so... We got you this.” He takes out a maroon velvet box. He gives it to Khawula who takes it and kneels down.

“ Don't worry love. Your father knows I'm proposing.” They chuckle. He is somewhere here lurking in the shadows.

“ Thobeka Lukhele- Mvelase" yeah I adopted my father's Adoptive surname too. He still wont say what is his real surname and frankly I don't care cause he said that man died the day he became a vampire.

“ I know I have forever with you. You are my other half, my soulmate, my sane place. With you I found a home and everything I have ever wanted. I found my perfect match in you. I let you go once and I regretted it. They took you away from me and I was slowly

losing my mind. I will never let that happen again. Today is all about you.”

He says and opens the velvet box and I I gasp. It's a fancy vivid blue diamond. I have no idea how many carats but thing is heavy and it looks fucking expensive. Someone says wow somewhere.

“ This ring was designed by me and our son with the help of a designer and of course Calvin had to have a say in it” We all laugh.

“ My love no words could ever describe how much I love you.....will you please marry me and make me your husband?.”

“ Of course I'll marry you.” I say smiling through my tears.

He slips the ring on my finger and it fits perfectly. I look at junior and he is very excited. He comes to us and hugs us and kisses my cheek.

“ You love it mom?” he asks me.

“ I love it baby. Thank you for helping your dad and uncle Calvin.”

He grins.

“ Are you happy baby?.”

“ I am baby. This is the best present ever.”

“ After this we are going home. They are waiting for us.”

“ Home where?.”

“ Kroonstad. The whole family is waiting for you and junior.” I smile.

“ You told them about us?.”

“ Of course I did.” He says smiling. I hug him and kiss his lips. Junior makes a sound and we laugh.

Our friends and family come to congratulate us. I look at everyone in here and realize how happy and blessed I am to have all these people in here who loves us. Kabelo was made for me. I was his to have.

She can't stop laughing and looking at her ring. I want to see her always like this. Happy. My brothers walk up to me and congratulate us. I told them first about junior. The real truth and you know Kane, he couldn't handle talk about all that. Karabo listened and was very shocked but as always my big brother knows me and he understands me. I then called my family and told them about angel first then junior. My grandparents were upset that I kept this for so long but are happy and told me I better bring them home tomorrow.

“ We are happy for you brother. You finally found your one.” Bishop says.

“ She's my everything.”

“ I can't wait to meet my mate too.” Kane says and we chuckle.

“ You will brother. You will.”

“ You're blessed man. Angel is an amazing woman.”

I nod. He is right. She's more than amazing. I was made for her and she was made for me. She was mine to have.

THE END.